English Grammar in Use
A self-study reference and practice book for intermediate learners of English
Fourth Edition
with answers and CD-ROM
Raymond Murphy
English Grammar in Use
A self-study reference and practice book for intermediate learners of English
Fourth Edition
with answers
Raymond Murphy
Contents

Thanks vii
To the student viii
To the teacher x

Present and past
1 Present continuous (I am doing)
2 Present simple (I do)
3 Present continuous and present simple 1 (I am doing and I do)
4 Present continuous and present simple 2 (I am doing and I do)
5 Past simple (I did)
6 Past continuous (I was doing)

Present perfect and past
7 Present perfect 1 (I have done)
8 Present perfect 2 (I have done)
9 Present perfect continuous (I have been doing)
10 Present perfect continuous and simple (I have been doing and I have done)
11 How long have you (been) ... ?
12 For and since When ... ? and How long ... ?
13 Present perfect and past 1 (I have done and I did)
14 Present perfect and past 2 (I have done and I did)
15 Past perfect (I had done)
16 Past perfect continuous (I had been doing)
17 Have and have got
18 Used to (do)

Future
19 Present tenses (I am doing / I do) for the future
20 (I'm) going to (do)
21 Will/shall 1
22 Will/shall 2
23 I will and I'm going to
24 Will be doing and will have done
25 When I do / When I've done When and if

Modals
26 Can, could and (be) able to
27 Could (do) and could have (done)
28 Must and can’t
29 May and might 1
30 May and might 2
31 Have to and must
32 Must mustn’t needn’t
33 Should 1
34 Should 2
35 Had better It’s time ...
36 Would
37 Can/Could/Would you ... ? etc. (Requests, offers, permission and invitations)

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH UNITS YOU NEED TO STUDY, USE THE STUDY GUIDE ON PAGE 326.
If and wish
38 If I do ... and If I did ...
39 If I knew ... I wish I knew ...
40 If I had known ... I wish I had known ...
41 Wish

Passive
42 Passive 1 (is done / was done)
43 Passive 2 (be done / been done / being done)
44 Passive 3
45 It is said that ... He is said to ... He is supposed to ...
46 Have something done

Reported speech
47 Reported speech 1 (He said that ...)
48 Reported speech 2

Questions and auxiliary verbs
49 Questions 1
50 Questions 2 (Do you know where ... ? / He asked me where ...)
51 Auxiliary verbs (have/do/can etc.) I think so / I hope so etc.
52 Question tags (do you? isn’t it? etc.)

-ing and to ...
53 Verb + -ing (enjoy doing / stop doing etc.)
54 Verb + to ... (decide to ... / forget to ... etc.)
55 Verb (+ object) + to ... (I want you to ... etc.)
56 Verb + -ing or to ... 1 (remember/regret etc.)
57 Verb + -ing or to ... 2 (try/need/help)
58 Verb + -ing or to ... 3 (like / would like etc.)
59 Prefer and would rather
60 Preposition (in/for/about etc.) + -ing
61 Be/get used to something (I’m used to ...)
62 Verb + preposition + -ing (succeed in -ing / accuse somebody of -ing etc.)
63 Expressions + -ing
64 To ... , for ... and so that ...
65 Adjective + to ...
66 To ... (afraid to do) and preposition + -ing (afraid of -ing)
67 See somebody do and see somebody doing
68 -ing clauses (Feeling tired, I went to bed early.)

Articles and nouns
69 Countable and uncountable 1
70 Countable and uncountable 2
71 Countable nouns with a/an and some
72 A/an and the
73 The 1
74 The 2 (school / the school etc.)
75 The 3 (children / the children)
76 The 4 (the giraffe / the telephone / the piano etc., the + adjective)
77 Names with and without the 1
78 Names with and without the 2

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH UNITS YOU NEED TO STUDY, USE THE STUDY GUIDE ON PAGE 326.
79 Singular and plural
80 Noun + noun (a tennis ball / a headache)
81 's (your sister's name) and of ... (the name of the book)

Pronouns and determiners
82 Myself/yourselves/ourselves etc.
83 A friend of mine My own house On my own / by myself
84 There ... and it ...
85 Some and any
86 No/none/any Nothing/nobody etc.
87 Much, many, little, few, a lot, plenty
88 All / all of / no / none of etc.
89 Both / both of / neither / neither of / either / either of
90 All, every and whole
91 Each and every

Relative clauses
92 Relative clauses 1: clauses with who/that/which
93 Relative clauses 2: clauses with and without who/that/which
94 Relative clauses 3: whose/whom/where
95 Relative clauses 4: extra information clauses (1)
96 Relative clauses 5: extra information clauses (2)
97 -ing and -ed clauses (the woman talking to Tom, the boy injured in the accident)

Adjectives and adverbs
98 Adjectives ending in -ing and -ed (boring/bored etc.)
99 Adjectives: a nice new house, you look tired
100 Adjectives and adverbs 1 (quick/quickly)
101 Adjectives and adverbs 2 (well/fast/late, hard/hardly)
102 So and such
103 Enough and too
104 Quite, pretty, rather and fairly
105 Comparison 1 (cheaper, more expensive etc.)
106 Comparison 2 (much better / any better / better and better / the sooner the better)
107 Comparison 3 (as ... as / than)
108 Superlatives (the longest, the most enjoyable etc.)
109 Word order 1: verb + object; place and time
110 Word order 2: adverbs with the verb
111 Still, yet and already Any more / any longer / no longer
112 Even

Conjunctions and prepositions
113 Although / though / even though In spite of / despite
114 In case
115 Unless As long as Provided/providing
116 As (As I walked along the street ... / As I was hungry ...)
117 Like and as
118 Like / as if / as though
119 For, during and while
120 By and until By the time ...
This is the fourth edition of *English Grammar in Use*. I wrote the original edition when I was a teacher at the Swan School of English, Oxford. I would like to repeat my thanks to my colleagues and students at the school for their help, encouragement and interest at that time.

Regarding the production of this fourth edition, I am grateful to Nóirín Burke, Annabel Marriott, Matthew Duffy, Liz Driscoll, Jane Walsh, Jeanette Alfoldi and Kamae Design. I would like to thank Cambridge University Press for permission to access the Cambridge International Corpus.

Thank you also to the following illustrators: Humberto Blanco, Paul Fellows, Sophie Joyce, Katie Mac, Ian Mitchell, Gillian Martin, Sandy Nicholls, Roger Penwill, Lisa Smith, Dave Whamond and Simon Williams.
To the student

This book is for students who want help with English grammar. It is written for you to use without a teacher.

The book will be useful for you if you are not sure of the answers to questions like these:

- What is the difference between *I did* and *I have done*?
- When do we use *will* for the future?
- What is the structure after *I wish*?
- When do we say *used to do* and when do we say *used to doing*?
- When do we use *the*?
- What is the difference between *like* and *as*?

These and many other points of English grammar are explained in the book and there are exercises on each point.

Level

The book is intended mainly for intermediate students (students who have already studied the basic grammar of English). It concentrates on those structures which intermediate students want to use, but which often cause difficulty. Some advanced students who have problems with grammar will also find the book useful.

The book is not suitable for elementary learners.

How the book is organised

There are 145 units in the book. Each unit concentrates on a particular point of grammar. Some problems (for example, the present perfect or the use of *the*) are covered in more than one unit. For a list of units, see the Contents at the beginning of the book.

Each unit consists of two facing pages. On the left there are explanations and examples; on the right there are exercises. At the back of the book there is a Key for you to check your answers to the exercises (page 336).

There are also seven Appendices at the back of the book (pages 292–301). These include irregular verbs, summaries of verb forms, spelling and American English.

Finally, there is a detailed Index at the back of the book (page 373).

How to use the book

The units are not in order of difficulty, so it is not intended that you work through the book from beginning to end. Every learner has different problems and you should use this book to help you with the grammar that you find difficult.

It is suggested that you work in this way:

- Use the Contents and/or Index to find which unit deals with the point you are interested in.
- If you are not sure which units you need to study, use the Study guide on page 326.
- Study the explanations and examples on the left-hand page of the unit you have chosen.
- Do the exercises on the right-hand page.
- Check your answers with the Key.
- If your answers are not correct, study the left-hand page again to see what went wrong.

You can of course use the book simply as a reference book without doing the exercises.
Additional exercises

At the back of the book there are *Additional exercises* (pages 302–325). These exercises bring together some of the grammar points from a number of different units. For example, Exercise 16 brings together grammar points from Units 26–36. You can use these exercises for extra practice after you have studied and practised the grammar in the units concerned.
To the teacher

*English Grammar in Use* was written as a self-study grammar book, but teachers may also find it useful as additional course material in cases where further work on grammar is necessary.

The book will probably be most useful at middle- and upper-intermediate levels (where all or nearly all of the material will be relevant), and can serve both as a basis for revision and as a means for practising new structures. It will also be useful for some more advanced students who have problems with grammar and need a book for reference and practice. The book is not intended to be used by elementary learners.

The units are organised in grammatical categories (*Present and past, Articles and nouns, Prepositions* etc.). They are not ordered according to level of difficulty, so the book should not be worked through from beginning to end. It should be used selectively and flexibly in accordance with the grammar syllabus being used and the difficulties students are having.

The book can be used for immediate consolidation or for later revision or remedial work. It might be used by the whole class or by individual students needing extra help. The left-hand pages (explanations and examples) are written for the student to use individually, but they may of course be used by the teacher as a source of ideas and information on which to base a lesson. The student then has the left-hand page as a record of what has been taught and can refer to it in the future. The exercises can be done individually, in class or as homework. Alternatively (and additionally), individual students can be directed to study certain units of the book by themselves if they have particular difficulties not shared by other students in their class. Don’t forget the *Additional exercises* at the back of the book (see *To the student*).

This fourth edition of *English Grammar in Use* has been revised and updated. There are no new units, but some of the exercises have been rewritten or replaced.

An edition of *English Grammar in Use* without the Key is available. Some teachers may prefer this for use with their students.

An online version of *English Grammar in Use* is also available.
English Grammar in Use
Present continuous (I am doing)

Study this example situation:

Sarah is in her car. She is on her way to work. She is driving to work.

This means: she is driving now, at the time of speaking. The action is not finished.

Am/is/are + -ing is the present continuous:

| I am (= I'm) | driving |
| he/she/it is (= he's etc.) | working |
| we/you/they are (= we're etc.) | doing etc. |

I am doing something = I'm in the middle of doing it; I've started doing it and I haven't finished:

- Please don't make so much noise. I'm trying to work. (not I try)
- ‘Where’s Mark?’ ‘He’s having a shower.’ (not He has a shower)
- Let's go out now. It isn't raining any more. (not It doesn't rain)
- (at a party) Hi, Jane. Are you enjoying the party? (not Do you enjoy)
- What’s all that noise? What’s going on? (= What’s happening?)

Sometimes the action is not happening at the time of speaking. For example:

Steve is talking to a friend on the phone. He says:

I'm reading a really good book at the moment.
It's about a man who ...

Steve is not reading the book at the time of speaking. He means that he has started it, but has not finished it yet. He is in the middle of reading it.

Some more examples:

- Kate wants to work in Italy, so she’s learning Italian. (but perhaps she isn’t learning Italian at the time of speaking)
- Some friends of mine are building their own house. They hope to finish it next summer.

You can use the present continuous with today / this week / this year etc. (periods around now):

A: You're working hard today. (not You work hard today)
B: Yes, I have a lot to do.
C: The company I work for isn’t doing so well this year.

We use the present continuous when we talk about changes happening around now, especially with these verbs:

- get
- change
- become
- increase
- rise
- fall
- grow
- improve
- begin
- start

- Is your English getting better? (not Does your English get better)
- The population of the world is increasing very fast. (not increases)
- At first I didn’t like my job, but I’m beginning to enjoy it now. (not I begin)
Exercises

1.1 The sentences on the right follow those on the left. Which sentence goes with which?

1 Please don’t make so much noise.  
2 I need to eat something soon.  
3 I don’t have anywhere to live right now.  
4 We need to leave soon.  
5 They don’t need their car any more.  
6 Things are not so good at work.  
7 It isn’t true what they said.  
8 We’re going to get wet.

a It’s getting late.  
b They’re lying.  
c It’s starting to rain.  
d They’re trying to sell it.  
e I’m getting hungry.  
f I’m trying to work.  
g I’m looking for an apartment.  
h The company is losing money.

1.2 Complete the conversations.

1 A: I saw Brian a few days ago.  
   B: Oh, did you? What’s he doing these days? (what / he / do)
   A: He’s at university.
   B: What’s he doing? (what / he / study)
   A: Psychology.
   B: Do you like it? (he / enjoy)
   A: Yes, he says it’s a very good course.

2 A: Hi, Nicola. How’s it going? (your new job / go)
   B: Not bad. It wasn’t so good at first, but it’s getting better now.
   A: What about Daniel? Is he OK?
   B: Yes, but he started his work right now. (he / begin) He’s been in the same job for a long time and he’s not enjoying it. (he / enjoy) He’s been in the same job for a long time and to get bored with it. (he / begin)

1.3 Put the verb into the correct form, positive (I’m doing etc.) or negative (I’m not doing etc.).

1 Please don’t make so much noise. I’m trying (I / try) to work.
2 Let’s go out now. It isn’t raining (it / rain) any more.
3 You can turn off the radio. I’m not listening (I / listen) to it.
4 Kate phoned me last night. She’s on holiday in France. She’s having (she / have) a great time and doesn’t want to come back.
5 I want to lose weight, so this week I’m not eating (I / eat) lunch.
6 Andrew has just started evening classes. He’s learning (he / learn) Japanese.
7 Paul and Sally have had an argument. They’re speaking (they / speak) to each other.
8 I’m getting tired. I need a rest.
9 Tim isn’t working (work) today. He’s taken the day off.
10 I’m looking (I / look) for Sophie. Do you know where she is?

1.4 Complete the sentences using the following verbs: start get increase change rise

1 The population of the world is increasing very fast.
2 The world is changing. Things never stay the same.
3 The situation is already bad and it’s getting worse.
4 The cost of living is rising. Every year things are more expensive.
5 The weather is getting better. The rain has stopped, and the wind isn’t as strong.
Study this example situation:

Alex is a bus driver, but now he is in bed asleep. He is not driving a bus. (He is asleep.)

but He **drives** a bus. (He is a bus driver.)

Drive(s)/work(s)/do(es) etc. is the **present simple**:

- I/we/you/they **drive/work/do** etc.
- he/she/it **drives/works/does** etc.

We use the present simple to talk about things in general. We use it to say that something happens all the time or repeatedly, or that something is true in general:

- Nurses **look** after patients in hospitals.
- I usually **go** away at weekends.
- The earth **goes** round the sun.
- The cafe **opens** at 7.30 in the morning.

Remember:

- **I work** ...
- **He works** ...
- They **teach** ...
- **My sister teaches** ...

We use **do/does** to make questions and negative sentences:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>do</th>
<th>does</th>
<th>drive?</th>
<th>work?</th>
<th>don't</th>
<th>doesn't</th>
<th>work</th>
<th>drive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I/we/you/they</td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>I/we/you/they</td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>I/we/you/they</td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>I/we/you/they</td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I come from Canada. Where **do** you **come** from?
- I don't go away very often.
- What **does** this word **mean**? (not What means this word?)
- Rice **doesn't grow** in cold climates.

In the following examples, **do** is also the main verb (do you **do** / doesn't **do** etc.):

- 'What **do** you **do**?' ‘I work in a shop.’
- He's always so lazy. He **doesn't do** anything to help.

We use the present simple to say how often we do things:

- I get up at 8 o'clock **every morning**.
- How often **do** you **go** to the dentist?
- Julie **doesn't drink** tea very often.
- Robert usually **goes away** two or three times a year.

**I promise / I apologise etc.**

Sometimes we do things by saying something. For example, when you **promise** to do something, you can say 'I promise...'; when you **suggest** something, you can say 'I suggest...'.

- I promise I won't be late. (not I'm promising)
- 'What do you **suggest** I do?' ‘I **suggest** that you ...’

In the same way we say: **I apologise** ... / **I advise** ... / **I insist** ... / **I agree** ... / **I refuse** ... etc.
Exercises

2.1 Complete the sentences using the following verbs:

cause(s) connect(s) drink(s) live(s) open(s) speak(s) take(s)

1. Tanya ______ German very well.
2. I don't often ______ coffee.
3. The swimming pool ______ at 7.30 every morning.
4. Bad driving ______ many accidents.
5. My parents ______ in a very small flat.
6. The Olympic Games ______ place every four years.
7. The Panama Canal ______ the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans.

2.2 Put the verb into the correct form.

1. Julie ______ tea very often.
2. What time ______ (the banks / close) here?
3. I've got a car, but I ______ (not / use) it much.
4. 'Where ______ (Ricardo / come) from?' 'From Cuba.'
5. 'What ______ (you / do)?' 'I'm an electrician.'
6. It ______ (take) me an hour to get to work. How long ______ (it / take) you?
7. Look at this sentence. What ______ (this word / mean)?
8. David isn't very fit. He ______ (not / do) any sport.

2.3 Use the following verbs to complete the sentences. Sometimes you need the negative:

believe eat flow go grow make rise tell translate

1. The earth ______ round the sun.
2. Rice ______ in Britain.
3. The sun ______ in the east.
4. Bees ______ honey.
5. Vegetarians ______ meat.
6. An atheist ______ in God.
7. An interpreter ______ from one language into another.
8. Liars are people who ______ the truth.

2.4 You ask Lisa questions about herself and her family. Write the questions.

1. You know that Lisa plays tennis. You want to know how often. Ask her.
   How often ______ Lisa ______ tennis?
   ______ your sister ______ tennis?
3. You know that Lisa reads a newspaper every day. You want to know which one. Ask her.
   ______ Lisa ______ the newspaper every day?
   ______ Lisa's brother ______?
5. You know that Lisa goes to the cinema a lot. You want to know how often. Ask her.
   ______ Lisa ______ to the cinema a lot?
   ______ Lisa's grandparents ______?

2.5 Complete using the following:

I apologise I insist I promise I recommend I suggest

1. Mr Evans is not in the office today. ______ you try calling him tomorrow.
2. I won't tell anybody what you said. ______.
3. (in a restaurant) You must let me pay for the meal. ______.
4. ______ for what I did. It won't happen again.
5. The new restaurant in Hill Street is very good. ______.
Present continuous and present simple 1
(I am doing and I do)

Compare:

Present continuous (I am doing)
We use the continuous for things happening at or around the time of speaking. The action is not complete.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I am doing</th>
<th>future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>past</td>
<td>now</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The water is boiling. Can you turn it off?</td>
<td>I'm always doing something = I lose things very often, perhaps too often, or more often than normal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Listen to those people. What language are they speaking?</td>
<td>I'm always doing (something) = I do it every time:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Let's go out. It isn't raining now.</td>
<td>I always go to work by car. (not I'm always going)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'I'm busy.' ‘What are you doing?’</td>
<td>You're always playing computer games. You should do something more active. (= You play computer games too often)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I'm getting hungry. Let's go and eat.</td>
<td>Tim is never satisfied. He’s always complaining. (= He complains too much)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kate wants to work in Italy, so she's learning Italian.</td>
<td>The population of the world is increasing very fast.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The population of the world is increasing very fast.</td>
<td>We use the continuous for temporary situations:</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We use the continuous for temporary situations:
- I'm living with some friends until I find a place of my own.
- You're working hard today.
- Joe isn't lazy. He works hard most of the time.

We use the simple for permanent situations:
- My parents live in London. They have lived there all their lives.
- I'm always losing things = I lose things very often, perhaps too often, or more often than normal.

Present simple (I do)
We use the simple for things in general or things that happen repeatedly.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I do</th>
<th>future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>past</td>
<td>now</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water boils at 100 degrees Celsius.</td>
<td>I'm always doing something = I lose things very often, perhaps too often, or more often than normal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Excuse me, do you speak English?</td>
<td>I always do (something) = I do it every time:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It doesn't rain very much in summer.</td>
<td>I always go to work by car. (not I'm always going)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What do you usually do at weekends?</td>
<td>You're always playing computer games. You should do something more active. (= You play computer games too often)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I always get hungry in the afternoon.</td>
<td>Tim is never satisfied. He’s always complaining. (= He complains too much)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Most people learn to swim when they are children.</td>
<td>The population of the world increases by about 200,000 people.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Every day the population of the world increases by about 200,000 people.</td>
<td>We use the simple for permanent situations:</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We use the simple for permanent situations:
- My parents live in London. They have lived there all their lives.
- I'm always losing things = I lose things very often, perhaps too often, or more often than normal.

More examples:
- You're always playing computer games. You should do something more active. (= You play computer games too often)
- Tim is never satisfied. He’s always complaining. (= He complains too much)
Exercises

3.1 Are the underlined verbs right or wrong? Correct them where necessary.
1 Water boils at 100 degrees Celsius. OK
2 The water boils. Can you turn it off? is boiling
3 Look! That man tries to open the door of your car.
4 Can you hear those people? What do they talk about?
5 The moon goes round the earth in about 27 days.
6 I must go now. It gets late.
7 I usually go to work by car.
8 ‘Hurry up! It’s time to leave.’ ‘OK, I come.’
9 I hear you’ve got a new job. How do you get on?
10 Paul is never late. He’s always getting to work on time.

3.2 Put the verb into the correct form, present continuous or present simple.
1 Let’s go out. It isn’t raining (it / not / rain) now.
2 Julia is very good at languages. She speaks (she / speak) four languages very well.
3 Hurry up! (everybody / wait) for you.
4 ‘(you / listen) to the radio?’ ‘No, you can turn it off.’
5 ‘(you / listen) to the radio every day?’ ‘No, just occasionally.’
6 The River Nile (flow) into the Mediterranean.
7 The river (flow) very fast today – much faster than usual.
8 (we / usually / grow) vegetables in our garden, but this year (we / not / grow) any.
9 a: How’s your English?
b: Not bad. I think (it / improve) slowly.
10 Rachel is in New York right now. (she / stay) at the Park Hotel.
   (she / always / stay) there when she’s in New York.
11 Can we stop walking soon? (I / start) to feel tired.
12 a: Can you drive?
b: (I / learn). My father (teach) me.
13 Normally (I / finish) work at five, but this week (I / work) until six to earn a little more money.
14 My parents (live) in Manchester. They were born there and have never lived anywhere else. Where (your parents / live)?
15 Sonia (look) for a place to live. (she / stay) with her sister until she finds somewhere.
16 a: What (your brother / do)?
b: He’s an architect, but (he / not / work) at the moment.
17 (at a party) (I / usually enjoy) parties, but (I / not / enjoy) this one very much.

3.3 Finish B’s sentences. Use always -ing.
1 a: I’ve lost my phone again.
b: Not again! You’re always losing your phone
2 a: The car has broken down again.
b: That car is useless. It
3 a: Look! You’ve made the same mistake again.
b: Oh no, not again! I
4 a: Oh, I’ve forgotten my glasses again.
b: Typical!
We use continuous forms for actions and happenings that have started but not finished (they are eating / it is raining etc.). Some verbs (for example, know and like) are not normally used in this way. We don’t say ‘I am knowing’ or ‘they are liking’; we say ‘I know’, ‘they like’.

The following verbs are not normally used in the present continuous:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>like</th>
<th>want</th>
<th>need</th>
<th>prefer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>know</td>
<td>realise</td>
<td>suppose</td>
<td>mean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>understand</td>
<td>believe</td>
<td>remember</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>belong</td>
<td>fit</td>
<td>contain</td>
<td>consist</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I’m hungry. I want something to eat. (not I’m wanting)
- Do you understand what I mean?
- Anna doesn’t seem very happy at the moment.

Think

When think means ‘believe’ or ‘have an opinion’, we do not use the continuous:
- I think Mary is Canadian, but I’m not sure. (not I’m thinking)
- What do you think of my plan? (= What is your opinion?)

When think means ‘consider’, the continuous is possible:
- I’m thinking about what happened. I often think about it.
- Nicky is thinking of giving up her job. (= she is considering it)

See hear smell taste

We normally use the present simple (not continuous) with these verbs:
- Do you see that man over there? (not Are you seeing)
- This room smells. Let’s open a window.

We often use can + see/hear/smell/taste:
- I can hear a strange noise. Can you hear it?

Look feel

You can use the present simple or continuous to say how somebody looks or feels now:
- You look well today. or You’re looking well today.
- How do you feel now? or How are you feeling now?

but
- I usually feel tired in the morning. (not I’m usually feeling)

He is selfish and He is being selfish

He’s being = He’s behaving / He’s acting. Compare:
- I can’t understand why he’s being so selfish. He isn’t usually like that. (being selfish = behaving selfishly at the moment)
- He never thinks about other people. He is very selfish. (not He is being)

(= He is selfish generally, not only at the moment)

We use am/is/are being to say how somebody is behaving. It is not usually possible in other sentences:
- It’s hot today. (not It is being hot)
- Sarah is very tired. (not is being tired)
Exercises

4.1 Put the verb into the correct form, present continuous or present simple.

1. Are you hungry? Do you want (you / want) something to eat?
2. Don’t put the dictionary away. (I / use) it.
3. Don’t put the dictionary away. (I / need) it.
4. Who is that man? What (he / want)?
5. Who is that man? Why (he / look) at us?
6. Alan says he’s 80 years old, but nobody (believe) him.
7. She told me her name, but (I / not / remember) it now.
8. (I / think) of selling my car. Would you be interested in buying it?
9. (you / not / use) it very often.

10. Air (consist) mainly of nitrogen and oxygen.

4.2 Use the words in brackets to make sentences. (You should also study Unit 3 before you do this exercise.)

1. (you / not / seem / very happy today)
   You don’t seem very happy today.

2. (what / you / do?)

3. (who / this umbrella / belong to?)
   I have no idea.

4. (the dinner / smell / good)

5. (these gloves / not / fit / me)
   They’re too small.

4.3 Are the underlined verbs right or wrong? Correct them where necessary.

1. Nicky is thinking of giving up her job. OK
2. Are you believing in God? (are)
3. I’m feeling hungry. Is there anything to eat? (am)
4. This sauce is great. It’s tasting really good. (taste)
5. I’m thinking this is your key. Am I right? (think)

4.4 Complete the sentences using the most suitable form of be. Use am/is/are being (continuous) where possible; otherwise use am/is/are (simple).

1. I can’t understand why he’s being so selfish. He isn’t usually like that.
2. Sarah is very nice to me at the moment. I wonder why.
3. You’ll like Sophie when you meet her. She is very nice.
4. You’re usually very patient, so why are you so unreasonable about waiting ten more minutes?
5. Why isn’t Steve at work today? is
Past simple (I did)

Study this example:

Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart was an Austrian musician and composer. He lived from 1756 to 1791. He started composing at the age of five and wrote more than 600 pieces of music. He was only 35 years old when he died.

Lived/started/wrote/was/died are all past simple.

Very often the past simple ends in -ed (regular verbs):
- I work in a travel agency now. Before that I worked in a department store.
- We invited them to our party, but they decided not to come.
- The police stopped me on my way home last night.
- Laura passed her exam because she studied very hard.

For spelling (stopped, studied etc.), see Appendix 6.

But many verbs are irregular. The past simple does not end in -ed. For example:
- write → wrote
- see → saw
- go → went
- shut → shut

I went to the cinema three times last week.

In questions and negatives we use did/didn’t + infinitive (enjoy/see/go etc.):

I enjoyed
she saw
they went

Did you go out last night?

Yes, I went to the cinema, but I didn’t enjoy the film much.

‘When did Mr Thomas die?’ ‘About ten years ago.’

They didn’t invite us to the party, so we didn’t go.

‘Did you have time to do the shopping?’ ‘No, I didn’t.’

In the following examples, do is the main verb in the sentence (did ... do / didn’t do):

What did you do at the weekend? (not What did you at the weekend?)

I didn’t do anything. (not I didn’t anything)

The past of be (am/is/are) is was/were:

I/he/she/it was/wasn’t
we/you/they were/weren’t

Was the weather good when you were on holiday?

They weren’t able to come because they were so busy.

Did you go out last night or were you too tired?

Note that we do not use did in negatives and questions with was/were:

I was angry because they were late.

Was the weather good when you were on holiday?

They weren’t able to come because they were so busy.

Did you go out last night or were you too tired?
Exercises

5.1 Read what Laura says about a typical working day:

I usually get up at 7 o'clock and have a big breakfast. I walk to work, which takes me about half an hour. I start work at 8.45. I never have lunch. I finish work at 5 o'clock. I'm always tired when I get home. I usually cook a meal in the evening. I don't usually go out. I go to bed at about 11 o'clock, and I always sleep well.

Laura

Yesterday was a typical working day for Laura. Write what she did or didn't do yesterday.

1 She got up at 7 o'clock. 7 She tired when home.
2 She had a big breakfast. 8 She had a meal yesterday evening.
3 She walked to work. 9 She didn't walk yesterday evening.
4 It took her about half an hour to get to work. 10 She didn't go out yesterday evening.
5 She started work at 8.45. 11 She started work at 8.45.
6 She had lunch. 12 She didn't have lunch.

5.2 Complete the sentences using the following verbs in the correct form:

buy catch cost fall hurt sell spend teach throw write

1 Mozart wrote more than 600 pieces of music.
2 'How did you learn to drive?' 'My father taught me.'
3 We couldn't afford to keep our car, so we sold it.
4 Dave fell down the stairs this morning and hurt his leg.
5 Joe threw the ball to Sue, who caught it.
6 Ann spent a lot of money yesterday. She bought a dress which cost £100.

5.3 You ask James about his holiday. Write your questions.

Hi. How are things?

Fine, thanks. I've just had a great holiday.

1 Where did you go?
   To the U.S. We went on a trip from San Francisco to Denver.
2 How did you get there? By car?
   Yes, we hired a car in San Francisco.
3 It's a long way to drive. How long did it take to get to Denver?
   Two weeks.
4 Where did you stay? In hotels?
   Yes, small hotels or motels.
5 How was the weather good?
   Yes, but it was very hot - sometimes too hot.
6 Did you visit the Grand Canyon?
   Of course. It was wonderful.

5.4 Complete the sentences. Put the verb into the correct form, positive or negative.

1 It was warm, so I took off my coat. (take)
2 The film wasn't very good. I didn't enjoy it much. (enjoy)
3 I knew Sarah was busy, so I disturbed her. (disturb)
4 We were very tired, so we left the party early. (leave)
5 The bed was very uncomfortable. I didn't sleep well. (sleep)
6 The window was open and a bird flew into the room. (fly)
7 The hotel wasn't very expensive. It cost much to stay there. (cost)
8 I was in a hurry, so I didn't have time to phone you. (have)
9 It was hard carrying the bags. They were very heavy. (be)
Past continuous (I was doing)

Study this example situation:

Yesterday Karen and Jim played tennis. They started at 10 o'clock and finished at 11.30.
So, at 10.30 they were playing tennis.

They were playing = they were in the middle of playing.
They had not finished playing.

Was/were -ing is the past continuous:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I/he/she/it</th>
<th>were</th>
<th>playing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>we/you/they</td>
<td>were</td>
<td>working</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I was doing something = I was in the middle of doing something at a certain time. The action or situation had already started before this time, but had not finished:

- I started doing
- I was doing
- I finished doing

Options:
- This time last year I was living in Brazil.
- What were you doing at 10 o'clock last night?
- I waved to Helen, but she wasn’t looking.

Compare the past continuous (I was doing) and past simple (I did):

- Past continuous (in the middle of an action)
  - I was walking home when I met Dan.
  - Kate was watching TV when we arrived.

- Past simple (complete action)
  - I walked home after the party last night. (= all the way, completely)
  - Kate watched television a lot when she was ill last year.

We often use the past simple and the past continuous together to say that something happened in the middle of something else:

- Matt phoned while we were having dinner.
- It was raining when I got up.
- I saw you in the park yesterday. You were sitting on the grass and reading a book.
- I hurt my back while I was working in the garden.

But we use the past simple to say that one thing happened after another:

- I was walking along the road when I saw Dan. So I stopped, and we had a chat.

Options:
- When Karen arrived, we were having dinner. (= we had already started before she arrived)
- When Karen arrived, we had dinner. (= Karen arrived, and then we had dinner)

Some verbs (for example, know and want) are not normally used in the continuous (see Unit 4A):

- We were good friends. We knew each other well. (not We were knowing)
- I was enjoying the party, but Chris wanted to go home. (not was wanting)
Exercises

6.1 What were you doing at these times? Write sentences as in the examples. The past continuous is not always necessary (see the second example).

1. (at 8 o’clock yesterday evening) 1 was having dinner.
2. (at 5 o’clock last Monday) 1 was on a bus on my way home.
3. (at 10.15 yesterday morning) ........................
4. (at 4.30 this morning) ........................
5. (at 7.45 yesterday evening) ........................
6. (half an hour ago) ........................

6.2 Use your own ideas to complete the sentences. Use the past continuous.

1. Matt phoned while we were having dinner.
2. The doorbell rang while I was having dinner.
3. The car began to make a strange noise when we were driving.
4. Jessica fell asleep while she was reading.
5. The television was on, but nobody was watching.

6.3 Put the verb into the correct form, past continuous or past simple.

1. I saw Sue in town yesterday, but she saw (not / see) me.
2. Tom and Jane met (meet) at the airport a few weeks ago. They went (go) to Paris and I went (go) to Rome. We had (have) a chat while we waited (wait) for our flights.
3. I cycled (cycle) home yesterday when a man stepped (step) out into the road in front of me. I went (go) quite fast, but luckily I managed (manage) to stop in time and not hit (not / hit) him.

6.4 Put the verb into the correct form, past continuous or past simple.

1. Jenny was waiting (wait) for me when I arrived (arrive).
2. ‘What were (you / do) at this time yesterday?’ ‘I was asleep.’
3. ‘What were (you / go) out last night?’ ‘No, I was too tired.’
4. How fast were (you / drive) when the accident happened (happen)?
5. Sam took (take) a picture of me while I was not (not / look).
6. We were in a very difficult position. We didn’t know (not / know) what to do.
7. I haven’t seen Alan for ages. When I last saw (see) him, he was trying (try) to find a job.
8. I heard (hear) footsteps behind me. Somebody was following (follow) me. I was scared and I started (start) to run.
9. When I was young, I wanted (want) to be a pilot.
10. Last night I dropped (drop) a plate when I was doing (do) the washing-up. Fortunately it didn’t break (not / break).
Study this example situation:

Tom is looking for his key. He can’t find it.
He has lost his key.
He has lost his key = He lost it recently, and he still
doesn’t have it.

Have/has lost is the present perfect simple:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I/we/they/you</td>
<td>have (= I’ve etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>has (= he’s etc.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The present perfect simple is have/has + past participle. The past participle often ends in -ed (finished/decided etc.), but many important verbs are irregular (lost/done/written etc.).

For a list of irregular verbs, see Appendix 1.

When we use the present perfect, there is a connection with now. The action in the past has a result now:

- ‘Where’s your key?’ ‘I don’t know. I’ve lost it.’ (= I don’t have it now)
- He told me his name, but I’ve forgotten it. (= I can’t remember it now)
- ‘Is Sally here?’ ‘No, she’s gone out.’ (= she is out now)
- I can’t find my bag. Have you seen it? (= Do you know where it is now?)

Note the difference between gone (to) and been (to):

- James is on holiday. He has gone to Italy. (= he is there now or on his way there)
- Jane is back home now. She has been to Italy. (= she has now come back)

You can use the present perfect with just, already and yet.

Just = a short time ago:

- ‘Are you hungry?’ ‘No, I’ve just had lunch.’
- Hello. Have you just arrived?

We use already to say that something happened sooner than expected:

- ‘Don’t forget to pay your electricity bill.’ ‘I’ve already paid it.’
- ‘What time is Mark leaving?’ ‘He’s already left.’

Yet = until now. Yet shows that the speaker is expecting something to happen. Use yet only in questions and negative sentences:

- Has it stopped raining yet?
- I’ve written the email, but I haven’t sent it yet.

You can also use the past simple (did, went, had etc.) in the examples on this page. So you can say:

- ‘Is Sally here?’ ‘No, she went out.’ or ‘No, she’s gone out.’
- ‘Are you hungry?’ ‘No, I just had lunch.’ or ‘No, I’ve just had lunch.’
7.1 Read the situations and write sentences. Use the following verbs in the present perfect:

arrive  break  fall  go up  grow  improve  lose

1. Tom is looking for his key. He can't find it.
Tom has lost his key.

2. Lisa can't walk and her leg is in plaster.
Lisa

3. Last week the bus fare was £1.80. Now it is £2.
The bus fare

4. Maria's English wasn't very good. Now it is better.
Her English

5. Dan didn't have a beard before. Now he has a beard.
Dan

6. This morning I was expecting a letter. Now I have it.
The letter

7. The temperature was 20 degrees. Now it is only 12.
The

Put in been or gone.

1. James is on holiday. He's gone to Italy.

2. Hello! I've just been to the shops. I've bought lots of things.

3. Alice isn't here at the moment. She's been to the shop to get a newspaper.

4. Tom has gone out. He'll be back in about an hour.

5. 'Are you going to the bank?' 'No, I've already been to the bank.'

7.2 Complete B's sentences. Make sentences from the words in brackets.

1. Would you like something to eat? No, thanks I've just had lunch.
I've just had lunch.

2. Do you know where Julia is? Yes, I just saw her.
I just saw her.

3. What time is David leaving? He's already left.
He's already left.

4. What's in the newspaper today? I don't know. I've not read it yet.
I've not read it yet.

5. Is Sue coming to the cinema with us? No, she's already seen the film.
She's already seen the film.

6. Are your friends here yet? Yes, they just arrived.
They just arrived.

7. What does Tim think about your plan? We're not going to tell him yet.
We're not going to tell him yet.

7.3 Read the situations and write sentences with just, already or yet.

1. After lunch you go to see a friend at her house. She says, 'Would you like something to eat?'
You say: No thank you. I've just had lunch.

2. Joe goes out. Five minutes later, the phone rings and the caller says, 'Can I speak to Joe?'
You say: I'm afraid he's gone out.

3. You are eating in a restaurant. The waiter thinks you have finished and starts to take your plate away. You say: Wait a minute! I've not finished.

4. You plan to eat at a restaurant tonight. You phoned to reserve a table. Later your friend says, 'Shall I phone to reserve a table?' You say: No, you'd better do it.

5. You know that a friend of yours is looking for a place to live. Perhaps she has been successful. Ask her. You say: Has she found a place yet?

6. You are still thinking about where to go for your holiday. A friend asks, 'Where are you going for your holiday?' You say: I'm not going to decide yet.

7. Linda went shopping, but a few minutes ago she returned. Somebody asks, 'Is Linda still out shopping?' You say: No, she's just come back.
Present perfect 2 (I have done)

Study this example conversation:

DAVE: Have you travelled a lot, Jane?
JANE: Yes, I've been to lots of places.
DAVE: Really? Have you ever been to China?
JANE: Yes, I've been to China twice.
DAVE: What about India?
JANE: No, I haven't been to India.

When we talk about a period of time that continues from the past until now, we use the present perfect (have been / have travelled etc.). Here, Dave and Jane are talking about the places Jane has visited in her life, which is a period that continues until now.

Some more examples:
- Have you ever eaten caviar?
- We've never had a car.
- 'Have you read Hamlet?' ‘No, I haven't read any of Shakespeare's plays.’
- Susan really loves that film. She's seen it eight times!
- What a boring film! It's the most boring film I've ever seen.

Been (to) = visited:
- I've never been to China. Have you been there?

In the following examples too, the speakers are talking about a period that continues until now (recently / in the last few days / so far / since breakfast etc.):
- Have you heard anything from Brian recently?
- I've met a lot of people in the last few days.
- Everything is going well. We haven't had any problems so far.
- I'm hungry. I haven't eaten anything since breakfast. (= from breakfast until now)
- It's good to see you again. We haven't seen each other for a long time.

In the same way we use the present perfect with today / this evening / this year etc. when these periods are not finished at the time of speaking (see also Unit 14B):
- I've drunk four cups of coffee today.
- Have you had a holiday this year?
- I haven't seen Tom this morning. Have you?
- Rob hasn't worked very hard this term.

We say: It's the (first) time something has happened. For example:
- Don is having a driving lesson. It's his first one.
  It's the first time he has driven a car. (not drives)
  or
  He has never driven a car before.
- Sarah has lost her passport again. This is the second time this has happened. (not happens)
- Bill is phoning his girlfriend again. That's the third time he's phoned her this evening.
Exercises

8.1 You ask people about things they have done. Write questions with ever.
1 (ride / horse?) Have you ever ridden a horse?
2 (be / California?) Have you ever been to California?
3 (run / marathon?) Have you ever run a marathon?
4 (speak / famous person?) Have you ever spoken to a famous person?
5 (most beautiful place / visit?) What’s the most beautiful place you’ve ever visited?

8.2 Complete B’s answers. Some sentences are positive and some negative. Use these verbs:
be be eat happen have have meet play read see try

1 What’s Mark’s sister like? I’ve no idea. I’ve never met her.
2 Is everything going well? Yes, we haven’t had any problems so far.
3 Are you hungry? Yes, I’ve had a lot of food today.
4 Can you play chess? Yes, but I’ve been playing for ages.
5 Are you enjoying your holiday? Yes, it’s the best holiday I’ve had for a long time.
6 What’s that book like? I don’t know. I’ve never read it.
7 Is Brussels an interesting place? I’ve no idea. I’ve never been there.
8 I hear your car broke down again yesterday. Yes, it’s the second time this month.
9 Do you like caviar? I don’t know. I’ve never tried it.
10 Mike was late for work again today. Again? He’s been late every day this week.
11 Who’s that woman by the door? I don’t know. I’ve never seen her before.

8.3 Write four sentences about yourself. Use I haven’t and choose from the boxes.
used a computer travelled by bus eaten any fruit
been to the cinema read a book lost anything

1 I haven’t used a computer today.
2
3
4
5

8.4 Read the situations and write sentences as shown in the example.
1 Jack is driving a car, but he’s very nervous and not sure what to do.
You ask: Have you driven a car before?
He says: No, this is the first time I’ve driven a car.
2 Ben is playing tennis. He’s not good at it and he doesn’t know the rules.
You ask: Have you played tennis before?
He says: No, this is the first
3 Sue is riding a horse. She doesn’t look very confident or comfortable.
You ask: Have you ridden a horse before?
She says:
4 Maria is in Japan. She has just arrived and it’s very new for her.
You ask: Have you been to Japan before?
She says:
Present perfect continuous (I have been doing)

It has been raining
Study this example situation:

Is it raining?
No, but the ground is wet.

It has been raining.

Have/has been -ing is the present perfect continuous:

I/we/they you have (= I’ve etc.)
he/she/it has (= he’s etc.)
been doing waiting playing etc.

We use the present perfect continuous for an activity that has recently stopped or just stopped. There is a connection with now:
- You’re out of breath. Have you been running? (= you’re out of breath now)
- Paul is very tired. He’s been working very hard. (= he’s tired now)
- Why are your clothes so dirty? What have you been doing?
- I’ve been talking to Amanda about the problem and she agrees with me.
- Where have you been? I’ve been looking for you everywhere.

It has been raining for two hours.
Study this example situation:

It began raining two hours ago and it is still raining.

How long has it been raining?
It has been raining for two hours.

We use the present perfect continuous in this way especially with how long, for … and since … . The activity is still happening (as in this example) or has just stopped.

- How long have you been learning English? (= you’re still learning English)
- Tim is still watching TV. He’s been watching TV all day.
- Where have you been? I’ve been looking for you for the last half hour.
- Chris hasn’t been feeling well recently.

You can use the present perfect continuous for actions repeated over a period of time:
- Silvia is a very good tennis player. She’s been playing since she was eight.
- Every morning they meet in the same cafe. They’ve been going there for years.

Compare I am doing (see Unit 1) and I have been doing:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I am doing</th>
<th>I have been doing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>present continuous</td>
<td>present perfect continuous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>now</td>
<td>now</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Don’t disturb me now. I’m working.
- We need an umbrella. It’s raining.
- Hurry up! We’re waiting.
- I’ve been working hard. Now I’m going to have a break.
- The ground is wet. It’s been raining.
- We’ve been waiting for an hour.
Exercises

9.1 What have these people been doing or what has been happening?

1. earlier now
   They've been shopping.

2. earlier now
   She

3. earlier now
   They

4. earlier now
   He

9.2 Write a question for each situation.

1. You meet Paul as he is leaving the swimming pool.
   You ask: (you / swim?) Have you been swimming?

2. You have just arrived to meet a friend who is waiting for you.
   You ask: (you / wait / long?)

3. You meet a friend in the street. His face and hands are very dirty.
   You ask: (what / you / do?)

4. A friend of yours is now working in a shop. You want to know how long.
   You ask: (how long / you / work / there?)

5. A friend tells you about his job – he sells mobile phones. You want to know how long.
   You ask: (how long / you / sell / mobile phones?)

9.3 Read the situations and complete the sentences.

1. It's raining. The rain started two hours ago.
   It's been raining for two hours.

2. We are waiting for the bus. We started waiting 20 minutes ago.
   We have been waiting for 20 minutes.

3. I'm learning Spanish. I started classes in December.
   I have been learning since December.

4. Jessica is working in a supermarket. She started working there on 18 January.
   She has been working for ten years.

5. Our friends always spend their holidays in Italy. They started going there years ago.
   They have been going there for years.

9.4 Put the verb into the present continuous (I am -ing) or present perfect continuous (I have been -ing).

1. Maria has been learning (Maria / learn) English for two years.

2. Hello, Tom. (I / look) for you. Where have you been?

3. Why (you / look) at me like that? Stop it!

4. Linda is a teacher. (she / teach) for ten years.

5. (I / think) about what you said and I've decided to take your advice.

6. 'Is Paul on holiday this week?' 'No, (he / work).'

7. Sarah is very tired. (she / work) very hard recently.
Study this example situation:

There is paint on Kate’s clothes. She has been painting her bedroom. 

Has been painting is the present perfect continuous.

We are thinking of the activity. It does not matter whether it has been finished or not. In this example, the activity (painting the bedroom) has not been finished.

Her bedroom was green. Now it is yellow. She has painted her bedroom.

Has painted is the present perfect simple.

Here, the important thing is that something has been finished. Has painted is a completed action. We are interested in the result of the activity (the painted bedroom), not the activity itself.

Compare these examples:

- My hands are very dirty. I've been repairing my bike.
- My bike is OK again now. I've repaired it.
- Joe has been eating too much recently. He should eat less.
- Somebody has eaten all the chocolates. The box is empty.

We use the continuous to say how long (for something that is still happening):
- How long have you been reading that book?
- Lisa is writing emails. She’s been writing emails all morning.
- They’ve been playing tennis since 2 o’clock.
- I’m learning Arabic, but I haven't been learning it very long.

We use the simple to say how much, how many or how many times:
- How much of that book have you read?
- Lisa is writing emails. She’s sent lots of emails this morning.
- They’ve played tennis three times this week.
- I’m learning Arabic, but I haven't learnt very much yet.

Some verbs (for example, know/like/believe) are not normally used in the continuous:
- I’ve known about the problem for a long time. (not I’ve been knowing)
- How long have you had that camera? (not have you been having)

For a list of these verbs, see Unit 4A. For have, see Unit 17.

But note that you can use want and mean in the present perfect continuous:
- I’ve been meaning to phone Jane, but I keep forgetting.
Exercises

10.1 Read the situation and complete the sentences. Use the verbs in brackets.

1 Tom started reading a book two hours ago. He is still reading it and now he is on page 53.
   He has been reading for two hours. (read)
   He has read 53 pages so far. (read)

2 Rachel is from Australia. She is travelling round Europe at the moment. She began her trip three months ago.
   She has been travelling for three months. (travel)
   She has visited six countries so far. (visit)

3 Patrick is a tennis player. He began playing tennis when he was ten years old. This year he won the national championship again – for the fourth time.
   He has won the national championship four times. (win)
   He has been playing since he was ten. (play)

4 When they left college, Lisa and Sue started making films together. They still make films.
   They have made five films since they left college. (make)

10.2 For each situation, ask a question using the words in brackets.

1 You have a friend who is learning Arabic. You ask:
   (how long / learn / Arabic?) How long have you been learning Arabic?

2 You have just arrived to meet a friend. She is waiting for you. You ask:
   (wait / long?) Have you been waiting long?

3 You see somebody fishing by the river. You ask:
   (catch / any fish?) Have you caught any fish?

4 Some friends of yours are having a party next week. You ask:
   (how many people / invite?) How many people are you inviting?

5 A friend of yours is a teacher. You ask:
   (how long / teach?) How long have you been teaching?

6 You meet somebody who is a writer. You ask:
   (how many books / write?) How many books have you written?
   (how long / write / books?) How long have you been writing books?

7 A friend of yours is saving money to go on a world trip. You ask:
   (how long / save?) How long have you been saving money?
   (how much money / save?) How much money have you saved?

10.3 Put the verb into the more suitable form, present perfect simple (I have done) or continuous (I have been doing).

1 Where have you been? Have you been playing (you / play) tennis?

2 Look! (somebody / break) that window.

3 You look tired. (you / work) hard?

4 ‘Liz is away on holiday.’ ‘Is she? Where (she / go)?’

5 ‘Sorry I’m late.’ ‘That’s all right. (I / not / wait) long.’

6 ‘Is it still raining?’ ‘No, (it / stop).’

7 ‘I lost my phone.’ (you / see) it anywhere?

8 ‘I read the book you lent me, but (I / not / finish) it yet. It’s very interesting.

9 ‘I read the book you lent me, so you can have it back now.

10 ‘I have read it since I was a child.'
How long have you (been) … ?

Study this example situation:

Dan and Jenny are married. They got married exactly 20 years ago, so today is their 20th wedding anniversary.

They **have been** married for 20 years.
We say: They **are** married. (**present**)

**but** How long have they **been** married? (**present perfect**)
(Not How long are they married?)

They **have been** married for 20 years.
(Not They are married for 20 years)

We use the **present perfect** to talk about something that began in the past and still continues now.

Compare the **present** and the **present perfect**:

- Paul is in hospital.

**but** He's **been** in hospital since Monday. (= He **has** been ...)
  (Not Paul is in hospital since Monday)

- Do you **know** each other well?

**but** Have you **known** each other for a long time?
  (Not Do you know)

- She's **waiting** for somebody.

**but** She's **been waiting** all morning.

- Do they **have** a car?

**but** How long have they **had** their car?

I have known/had/lived etc. is the **present perfect simple**.
I have been learning / been waiting / been doing etc. is the **present perfect continuous**.

When we ask or say 'how long', the continuous is more usual (see Unit 10):

- I've **been learning** English for six months.

- It's been raining since lunchtime.

- Richard **has been doing** the same job for 20 years.

- 'How long have you **been driving**?' ‘Since I was 17.’

Some verbs (for example, know/like/believe) are not normally used in the continuous:

- How long have you **known** Jane? (Not have you been knowing)

- I've **had** a pain in my stomach all day. (Not I've been having)

See also Units 4A and 10C. For **have**, see Unit 17.

You can use either the present perfect continuous or simple with live and work:

- Julia **has been living** / **has lived** here for a long time.

- How long have you **been working** / have you **worked** here?

But use the simple (I've lived / I've done etc.) with **always**:

- I've **always lived** in the country. (Not always been living)

We say 'I **haven't done** something since/for ...' (**present perfect simple**):

- I **haven't seen** Tom since Monday. (= Monday was the last time I saw him)

- Sarah **hasn't phoned** for ages. (= the last time she phoned was ages ago)
11.1 Are the underlined verbs right or wrong? Correct them where necessary.

1. Ben is a friend of mine. I know him very well.
   OK

2. Ben is a friend of mine. I know him for a long time.
   I’ve known him

3. Sarah and Adam are married since July.

4. The weather is awful. It’s raining again.

5. The weather is awful. It’s raining all day.

6. I like your house. How long are you living there?

7. Gary is working in a shop for the last few months.

8. I don’t know Tom well. We’ve only met a few times.

9. I gave up drinking coffee. I don’t drink it for a year.

10. That’s a very old bike. How long do you have it?

11.2 Read the situations and write questions from the words in brackets.

1. A friend tells you that Paul is in hospital. You ask him:
   (how long / be / in hospital?) How long has Paul been in hospital?

2. You meet a woman who tells you that she teaches English. You ask her:
   (how long / teach / English?)

3. You know that Jane is a good friend of Katherine’s. You ask Jane:
   (how long / know / Katherine?)

4. Your friend’s brother went to Australia some time ago and he’s still there. You ask your friend:
   (how long / be / in Australia?)

5. Tom always wears the same jacket. It’s a very old jacket. You ask him:
   (how long / have / that jacket?)

6. You are talking to a friend about Joe. Joe now works at the airport. You ask your friend:
   (how long / work / at the airport?)

7. A friend of yours is having guitar lessons. You ask him:
   (how long / have / guitar lessons?)

8. You meet somebody on a plane. She says that she lives in Chicago. You ask her:
   (always / live / in Chicago?)

11.3 Complete B’s answers to A’s questions.

A

1. Paul is in hospital, isn’t he?
2. Do you see Ann very often?
3. Is Amy married?
4. Are you waiting for me?
5. You know Mel, don’t you?
6. Do you still play tennis?
7. Is Joe watching TV?
8. Do you watch TV a lot?
9. Do you have a headache?
10. Adrian is never ill, is he?
11. Are you feeling ill?
12. Sue lives in Berlin, doesn’t she?
13. Do you go to the cinema a lot?
14. Would you like to go to New York one day?

B

Yes, he has been in hospital since Monday.
No, I haven’t seen her for three months.
Yes, she’s married for ten years.
Yes, I’ve been waiting for the last half hour.
Yes, we’ve been friends for a long time.
No, I don’t play tennis for years.
Yes, he’s been watching TV all evening.
No, I’ve been watching TV for ages.
Yes, I’ve been having a headache all morning.
No, he’s been ill since I’ve known him.
Yes, I’ve been feeling ill all day.
Yes, she’s been living in Berlin for the last few years.
No, I’ve been going to the cinema for ages.
Yes, I’ve always wanted to go to New York. (use always / want)
We use for and since to say how long something has been happening.

We use for + a period of time (two hours, six weeks etc.):

- I've been waiting for two hours.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>two hours ago</th>
<th>now</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- Sally has been working here for six months. (not since six months)
- I haven’t seen Tom for three days.

We use since + the start of a period (8 o’clock, Monday, 1999 etc.):

- I’ve been waiting since 8 o’clock.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>8 o’clock</th>
<th>now</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- Sally has been working here since April. (= from April until now)
- I haven’t seen Tom since Monday.

It is possible to leave out for (but not usually in negative sentences):  
- They’ve been married (for) ten years. (with or without for)  
- They haven’t had a holiday for ten years. (you must use for)

We do not use for + all ... (all day / all my life etc.):

- I've lived here all my life. (not for all my life)

You can use in instead of for in negative sentences (I haven’t ... etc.):

- They haven’t had a holiday in ten years. (= for ten years)

Compare when ... ? (+ past simple) and how long ... ? (+ present perfect):

**A:** When did it start raining?
**B:** It started raining an hour ago / at 1 o’clock.

**A:** How long has it been raining?
**B:** It’s been raining for an hour / since 1 o’clock.

**A:** When did Joe and Carol first meet?
**B:** They first met a long time ago.

**A:** How long have they known each other?
**B:** They’ve known each other for a long time.

We say:

- It’s been (= It has been)  
- since something happened  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>six months (etc.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- It’s two years since I last saw Joe.  
- (= I haven’t seen Joe for two years)

- It’s ages since we went to the cinema.  
- (= We haven’t been to the cinema for ages)

- How long is it since Mrs Hill died?  
- (= When did Mrs Hill die?)

- How long have you (been) ... ?  
- Unit 11
Exercises

12.1 Write for or since.
1. It's been raining since lunchtime.
2. Sarah has lived in Paris since 1995.
3. Paul has lived in Brazil since ten years.
4. I'm tired of waiting. We've been sitting here since an hour.
5. Kevin has been looking for a job since he left school.
6. I haven't been to a party since ages.
7. I wonder where Joe is. I haven't seen him since last week.
8. Jane is away. She's been away since Friday.
9. The weather is dry. It hasn't rained since a few weeks.

12.2 Write questions with how long and when.
1. It's raining. (how long?) How long has it been raining?
   (when?) When did it start raining?
2. Kate is learning Japanese. (how long / learn?) When did Kate start learning Japanese?
   (when / start?)... Since when has Kate been learning Japanese?
3. I know Simon. (how long / you / know?) How long have you known Simon?
   (when / you / first / meet?) Since when did you first meet Simon?
4. Rebecca and David are married. (how long?)... How long have Rebecca and David been married?
   (when?)... Since when have Rebecca and David been married?

12.3 Read the situations and complete the sentences.
1. It's raining. It's been raining since lunchtime. It started raining at lunchtime.
2. Ann and Jess are friends. They first met years ago. They've known each other for years.
3. Mark is ill. He became ill on Sunday. He has been ill a few days.
4. Mark is ill. He became ill a few days ago. He has been ill a few days.
5. Sarah is married. She's been married for a year. She got married a year.
6. You have a headache. It started when you woke up. I've had a headache since I woke up.
7. Sue has been in Italy for the last three weeks. She went to Italy last week.
8. You're working in a hotel. You started six months ago. I've been working in a hotel for six months.

12.4 Write B's sentences using the words in brackets.
1. A: Do you often go on holiday?
   B: No, I haven't had a holiday for five years.
2. A: Do you often see Laura?
   B: No, I haven't seen Laura in a long time.
3. A: Do you often go to the cinema?
   B: No, I haven't been to the cinema in a long time.
4. A: Do you often eat in restaurants?
   B: No, I haven't eaten in restaurants in a long time.

Now write B's answers again. This time use It's ... since ...
5. (1) No, it's five years since I had a holiday.
6. (2) No, its
7. (3) No,
8. (4)
Present perfect and past 1 (I have done and I did)

Study this example situation:

Tom is looking for his key. He can’t find it. He has lost his key. (present perfect)
This means that he doesn’t have his key now.

Ten minutes later:

Now Tom has found his key. He has it now.
Has he lost his key? No, he has found it.
Did he lose his key? Yes, he did.
He lost his key (past simple)
but now he has found it. (present perfect)

The present perfect (something has happened) is a present tense. It always tells us about the situation now. ‘Tom has lost his key’ = he doesn’t have his key now (see Unit 7).

The past simple (something happened) tells us only about the past. If somebody says ‘Tom lost his key’, this doesn’t tell us whether he has the key now or not. It tells us only that he lost his key at some time in the past.

Do not use the present perfect if the situation now is different. Compare:

- They’ve gone away. They’ll be back on Friday. (they are away now)
  They went away, but I think they’re back at home now. (not They’ve gone)
- It has stopped raining now, so we don’t need the umbrella. (it isn’t raining now)
  It stopped raining for a while, but now it’s raining again. (not It has stopped)

You can use the present perfect for new or recent happenings:

- ‘I’ve repaired the washing machine. It’s working OK now.’ ‘Oh, that’s good.’
- ‘Sally has had a baby! It’s a boy.’ ‘That’s great news.’

Usually, you can also use the past simple:

- I repaired the washing machine. It’s working OK now.

Use the past simple (not the present perfect) for things that are not recent or new:

- Mozart was a composer. He wrote more than 600 pieces of music.
  (not has been … has written)
- My mother grew up in Italy. (not has grown)

Compare:

- Did you know that somebody has invented a new type of washing machine?
- Who invented the telephone? (not has invented)

We use the present perfect to give new information (see Unit 7). But if we continue to talk about it, we normally use the past simple:

- A: Ow! I’ve burnt myself.
  B: How did you do that? (not have you done)
- A: I picked up a hot dish. (not have picked)
- A: Look! Somebody has spilled something on the sofa.
  B: Well, it wasn’t me. I didn’t do it. (not hasn’t been … haven’t done)
Exercises

13.1 Complete the sentences using the verbs in brackets. Use the present perfect where possible. Otherwise use the past simple.

1. The office is empty now. Everybody _________________________
   goes home.

2. I can’t get in. I’ve lost _______ (lose) my key.

3. I meant to call you last night, but I _______ (forget).

4. Yes, I _______ (have) a headache, but I’m fine now.

5. Helen _______ (go) to Egypt for a holiday, but she’s back home in England now.


13.2 Are the underlined parts of these sentences right or wrong? Correct them where necessary.

1. Did you hear about Sue? She’s given up her job.  OK
   She’s _______ (give) up her job.

2. My mother has grown up in Italy.  OK
   My mother has _______ (grow) up in Italy.

3. How many poems has William Shakespeare written?  OK
   How many poems _______ (write) has William Shakespeare?

4. Ow! I’ve cut my finger. It’s bleeding.  OK
   Ow! I _______ (cut) my finger. It’s bleeding.

5. Who has invented paper?  OK
   Who _______ (invent) paper?

6. Where have you been born?  OK
   Where _______ (be) you _______ (be) been born?

7. Ellie isn’t at home. She’s gone shopping.  OK
   Ellie _______ (not be at / be) home. She’s _______ (go) shopping.

8. Albert Einstein has been the scientist who has developed the theory of relativity.  OK
   Albert Einstein _______ (be) the scientist who _______ (develop) the theory of relativity.

13.3 Put the verb into the correct form, present perfect or past simple.

1. It stopped _______ (stop) raining for a while, but now it’s raining again. (it / stop)
   It _______ (stop) _______ (stop) raining for a while, but now it’s raining again.

2. The town where I live is very different now. It _______ (change) _______ (change) a lot. (it / change)
   The town where I live _______ (be) very different now. It _______ (change) _______ (change) a lot.

3. I studied German at school, but most of it now. (I / forget)
   I _______ (study) German _______ (study) _______ (study) at school, but most of it now.

4. The police _______ (arrest) _______ (arrest) three people, but later they let them go. (arrest)
   The police _______ (arrest) three people, but later they let them go. (arrest)

5. What do you think of my English? Do you think _______ (improve)? (it / improve)
   What do you think of my English? Do you think _______ (improve)? (it / improve)

6. a: Are you still reading the paper?  I________ (finish)
   b: No, _______ (finish) _______ (finish) with it. You can have it. (I / finish)
   b: No, I _______ (finish) _______ (finish) with it. You can have it. (I / finish)

7. For a job as a tourist guide, but I wasn’t successful. (I / apply)
   I _______ (apply) for a job as a tourist guide, but I wasn’t successful. (I / apply)

8. Where’s my bike? Outside the house, but it’s not there now. (it / be)
   Where’s my bike? _______ (be) _______ (be) outside the house, but it’s not there now. (it / be)

9. Quick! We need to call an ambulance. _______ (be) _______ (be) an accident. (there / be)
   Quick! We need to call an ambulance. _______ (be) _______ (be) _______ (be) an accident. (there / be)

10. a: Have you heard about Ben?  His arm. (he / break)
    b: Really? How _______ (happen)? (that / happen)
    a: _______ (fall) _______ (fall) off a ladder. (he / fall)
    b: Really? How _______ (happen)? (that / happen)
Present perfect and past 2 (I have done and I did)

Do not use the present perfect (I have done) when you talk about a finished time (for example, yesterday / ten minutes ago / in 2005 / when I was a child). Use a past tense:
- It was very cold yesterday.  (not has been)
- Paul and Lucy arrived ten minutes ago.  (not have arrived)
- Did you eat a lot of sweets when you were a child?  (not have you eaten)
- I got home late last night. I was very tired and went straight to bed.

Use the past to ask When ...? or What time ...?:
- When did your friends arrive?  (not have ... arrived)
- What time did you finish work?

Compare:

**Present perfect**
- Tom has lost his key. He can’t get into the house.
- Is Carla here or has she left?

**Past simple**
- Tom lost his key yesterday. He couldn’t get into the house.
- When did Carla leave?

We use the present perfect for a period of time that continues until now. For example:
today / this week / since 2007.

**Past simple**
- I did a lot of work yesterday.
- We use the past simple for a finished time in the past. For example:
yesterday / last week / from 2007 to 2010.

**Present perfect (have done)**
- I’ve done a lot of work today.

We use the present perfect for a period of time that continues until now. For example:
today / this week / since 2007.

**Past simple (did)**
- I did a lot of work yesterday.

We use the past simple for a finished time in the past. For example:
yesterday / last week / from 2007 to 2010.

**Past simple**
- You use past simple when you talk about a finished time in the past. For example:
yesterday / last week / from 2007 to 2010.

**Present perfect**
- It hasn’t rained this week.
- Have you seen Anna this morning? (it is still morning)
- Have you seen Tim recently?
- I don’t know where Lisa is. I haven’t seen her. (= I haven’t seen her recently)
- We’ve been waiting for an hour. (we are still waiting now)
- Jack lives in Los Angeles. He has lived there for seven years.
- I have never played golf. (in my life)
- It’s the last day of your holiday. You say: It’s been a really good holiday. I’ve really enjoyed it.

- It didn’t rain last week.
- Did you see Anna this morning? (it is now afternoon or evening)
- Did you see Tim on Sunday?
- A: Was Lisa at the party on Sunday?
  B: I don’t think so. I didn’t see her.
- We waited (or were waiting) for an hour. (we are no longer waiting)
- Jack lived in New York for ten years. Now he lives in Los Angeles.
- I didn’t play golf last summer.
- After you come back from holiday you say: It was a really good holiday. I really enjoyed it.
Exercises

14.1 Are the underlined parts of these sentences right or wrong? Correct them where necessary.
1. I've lost my key. I can't find it anywhere.  
   OK
2. Have you eaten a lot of sweets when you were a child?  
   Did you eat
3. I've bought a new car. You must come and see it.  
4. I've bought a new car last week.  
5. Where have you been yesterday evening?  
6. Lucy has left school in 1999.  
7. I'm looking for Mike. Have you seen him?  
8. 'Have you been to Paris?' 'Yes, many times.'  
9. I'm very hungry. I haven't eaten much today.  
10. When has this book been published?

14.2 Make sentences from the words in brackets. Use the present perfect or past simple.
1. (it / not / rain / this week) It hasn't rained this week.
2. (the weather / be / cold / recently) The weather has been cold recently.
3. (it / cold / last week) It was cold last week.
4. (I / not / read / a newspaper yesterday) I didn't read a newspaper yesterday.
5. (I / not / read / a newspaper today) I haven't read a newspaper today.
6. (Emily / earn / a lot of money / this year) Emily has earned a lot of money this year.
7. (she / not / earn / so much / last year) She didn't earn so much last year.
8. (you / have / a holiday recently?) Have you had a holiday recently?

14.3 Put the verb into the correct form, present perfect or past simple.
1. 'What's Madrid like?' 'I don't know. I haven't been there.'
2. When I got home last night, I was very tired and I went straight to bed.
3. a: Have you seen Lisa recently?
   b: Yes, I saw her a few days ago.
4. I'm tired. I didn't sleep well last night.
5. The bus drivers were on strike last week. There were no buses.
6. Mr Lee worked in a bank for 15 years. Then he gave it up. Now he works as a gardener.
7. Mary lives in Dublin. She has lived there all her life.
8. a: Have you gone to the cinema last night?
   b: Yes, but it was a mistake. The film was awful.
9. My grandfather died before I was born. I never met him.
10. I don't know Karen's husband. I never met him.
11. It's nearly lunchtime, and I haven't seen Martin all morning. I wonder where he is.
12. 'Where do you live?' 'In Boston.'
   'How long have you lived there?' 'Five years.'
   'Where did you live before that?' 'In Chicago.'
   'And how long have you lived in Chicago?' 'Two years.'

14.4 Write sentences about yourself using the ideas in brackets.
1. (something you haven't done today) I haven't eaten any fruit today.
2. (something you haven't done today)  
3. (something you didn't do yesterday)  
4. (something you did yesterday evening)  
5. (something you haven't done recently)  
6. (something you've done a lot recently)  

Additional exercises 2–4 (pages 303–04), 14–15 (pages 310–11)
Past perfect (I had done)

Study this example situation:

Sarah went to a party last week. Paul went to the party too, but they didn’t see each other. Paul left the party at 10.30 and Sarah arrived at 11 o’clock. So:

When Sarah arrived at the party, Paul wasn’t there. He had gone home.

Had gone is the past perfect (simple):

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\text{I/we/they/you} & \text{had} & \text{gone} \\
\text{he/she/it} & (= \text{I'd etc.}) & (= \text{he'd etc.}) \\
\text{seen} & \text{finished etc.} & \\
\end{array}
\]

The past perfect simple is had + past participle (gone/seen/finished etc).

Sometimes we talk about something that happened in the past:

- Sarah arrived at the party.
- This is the starting point of the story. Then, if we want to talk about things that happened before this time, we use the past perfect (had ...):
  - When Sarah arrived at the party, Paul had already gone home.

Some more examples:

- When we got home last night, we found that somebody had broken into the flat.
- Karen didn’t want to go to the cinema with us because she’d already seen the movie.
- At first I thought I’d done the right thing, but I soon realised that I’d made a big mistake.
- The man sitting next to me on the plane was very nervous. He hadn’t flown before.
  - ... He had never flown before.

Compare the present perfect (have seen etc.) and the past perfect (had seen etc.):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present perfect</th>
<th>Past perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>had seen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>past</td>
<td>now</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Who is that woman? I’ve seen her before, but I can’t remember where.</td>
<td>I wasn’t sure who she was. I’d seen her before, but I couldn’t remember where.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We aren’t hungry. We’ve just had lunch.</td>
<td>We weren’t hungry. We’d just had lunch.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The house is dirty. They haven’t cleaned it for weeks.</td>
<td>The house was dirty. They hadn’t cleaned it for weeks.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Compare the past simple (left, was etc.) and the past perfect (had left, had been etc.):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Past simple</th>
<th>Past perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A: Was Tom there when you arrived? B: Yes, but he left soon afterwards.</td>
<td>A: Was Tom there when you arrived? B: No, he had already left.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kate wasn’t at home when I phoned. She was at her mother’s house.</td>
<td>Kate had just got home when I phoned. She had been at her mother’s house.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Exercises

15.1 Read the situations and write sentences from the words in brackets.
1. You went to Sue's house, but she wasn't there.
   (she / go / out)  She had gone out.
2. You went back to your home town after many years. It wasn't the same as before.
   (it / change / a lot)  It had changed a lot.
3. I invited Rachel to the party, but she couldn't come.
   (she / arrange / to do something else)  She had arranged to do something else.
4. You went to the cinema last night. You got to the cinema late.
   (the film / already / start)  The film had already started.
5. It was nice to see Daniel again after such a long time.
   (I / not / see / him for five years)  I had not seen him for five years.
6. I offered Sue something to eat, but she wasn't hungry.
   (she / just / have / breakfast)  She had just had breakfast.

15.2 For each situation, write a sentence ending with never ... before. Use the verb in brackets.
1. The man sitting next to you on the plane was very nervous. It was his first flight.
   (fly)  He'd never flown before.
2. Somebody sang a song. I didn't know it.
   (hear)  I had never heard it before.
3. Sam played tennis yesterday. He wasn't very good at it because it was his first game.
   (play)  He had never played before.
4. Last year we went to Mexico. It was our first time there.
   (be there)  We had never been there before.

15.3 Use the sentences on the left to complete the paragraphs on the right. These sentences are in the order in which they happened – so (a) happened before (b), (b) before (c) etc. But your paragraph begins with the underlined sentence, so sometimes you need the past perfect.
1. (a) Somebody broke into the office during the night.
   (b) We arrived at work in the morning.
   (c) We called the police.
   
   We arrived at work in the morning and found that somebody had broken into the office during the night. So ...................................................... the police.

2. (a) Laura went out this morning.
   (b) I rang her doorbell.
   (c) There was no answer.
   
   I went to Laura's house this morning and rang her doorbell, but no answer. ...................................................... out.

3. (a) Jim came back from holiday a few days ago.
   (b) I met him the same day.
   (c) He looked very well.
   
   I met Jim a few days ago.  Just ...................................................... holiday. He looked very well.

4. (a) Kevin sent Sally lots of emails.
   (b) She never replied to them.
   (c) Yesterday he got a phone call from her.
   (d) He was very surprised.
   
   Yesterday Kevin ...................................................... from Sally. He was very surprised. He had never replied to them.

15.4 Put the verb into the correct form, past perfect (I had done) or past simple (I did).
1. ‘Was Paul at the party when you arrived?’ ‘No, he ...................................................... (go) home.’
2. I felt very tired when I got home, so I ...................................................... (go) straight to bed.
3. The house was very quiet when I got home. Everybody ...................................................... (go) to bed.
4. Sorry I'm late. The car ...................................................... (break) down on my way here.
5. We were driving along the road when we ...................................................... (see) a car which ...................................................... (break) down, so we ...................................................... (stop) to help.

Additional exercises 5–8 (pages 304–07)
Past perfect continuous (I had been doing)

Study this example situation:

Yesterday morning I got up and looked out of the window. The sun was shining, but the ground was very wet.
It had been raining.
It was not raining when I looked out of the window; the sun was shining. But it had been raining before.

Had been -ing is the past perfect continuous:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>l/we/you/they</th>
<th>had</th>
<th>been</th>
<th>doing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>(= I'd etc.)</td>
<td>(= he'd etc.)</td>
<td>working</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>playing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some more examples:

- When the boys came into the house, their clothes were dirty, their hair was untidy and one of them had a black eye. They'd been fighting.
- I was very tired when I got home. I'd been working hard all day.
- When I went to Madrid a few years ago, I stayed with a friend of mine. She hadn't been living there very long, but she knew the city very well.

You can say that something had been happening for a period of time before something else happened:

- We'd been playing tennis for about half an hour when it started to rain heavily.
- Paul went to the doctor last Friday. He hadn't been feeling well for some time.

Compare have been -ing (present perfect continuous) and had been -ing (past perfect continuous):

**Present perfect continuous**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I have been -ing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>past</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I hope the bus comes soon. I've been waiting for 20 minutes. (before now)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James is out of breath. He has been running.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Past perfect continuous**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I had been -ing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>past</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At last the bus came. I'd been waiting for 20 minutes. (before the bus came)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James was out of breath. He had been running.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Compare was -ing (past continuous) and had been -ing:

- It wasn't raining when we went out. The sun was shining. But it had been raining, so the ground was wet.
- Katherine was sitting in an armchair resting. She was tired because she'd been working very hard.

Some verbs (for example, know and like) are not normally used in the continuous:

- We were good friends. We had known each other for years. (not had been knowing)
- I was surprised when Lisa cut her hair. She'd had long hair since I first met her. (not she'd been having)

For a list of these verbs, see Unit 4A. For have, see Unit 17.
16.1 Read the situations and make sentences from the words in brackets.
1. I was very tired when I arrived home.
   (I / work / hard all day)   I’d been working hard all day.
2. The two boys came into the house. They had a football and they were both very tired.
   (they / play / football)
3. I was disappointed when I had to cancel my holiday.
   (I / look / forward to it)
4. Ann woke up in the middle of the night. She was frightened and didn’t know where she was.
   (she / dream)
5. When I got home, Mark was sitting in front of the TV. He had just turned it off.
   (he / watch / a film)

16.2 Read the situations and complete the sentences.
1. We played tennis yesterday. Half an hour after we began playing, it started to rain.
   We had been playing for half an hour when it started to rain.
2. I had arranged to meet Tom in a restaurant. I arrived and waited for him. After 20 minutes
   I realised that I was in the wrong restaurant.
   I ........................................ for 20 minutes when I ........................................
   ........................................... the wrong restaurant.
3. Sarah got a job in factory. Five years later the factory closed down.
   At the time the factory ........................................, Sarah ........................................ there for five years.
4. I went to a concert last week. The orchestra began playing. After about ten minutes a man in
   the audience suddenly started shouting.
   The orchestra ........................................ when

This time make your own sentence:
5. I began walking along the road. I ........................................ when

16.3 Put the verb into the most suitable form, past continuous (I was doing), past perfect
(I had done) or past perfect continuous (I had been doing).
1. It was very noisy next door. Our neighbours were having (have) a party.
2. We were good friends. We’d known (we / know) each other for years.
3. John and I went for a walk. I had difficulty keeping up with him because
   (he / walk) so fast.
4. Sue was sitting on the ground. She was out of breath. (she / run).
5. When I arrived, everybody was sitting round the table with their mouths full.
   (they / eat).
6. When I arrived, everybody was sitting round the table and talking. Their mouths were empty,
   but their stomachs were full. (they / eat).
7. James was on his hands and knees on the floor. (he / look) for his contact lens.
8. When I arrived, Kate (wait) for me. She was annoyed because I was late and
   (she / wait) for a long time.
9. I was sad when I sold my car. (I / have) it for a very long time.
10. We were extremely tired at the end of the journey. (we / travel) for more than 24 hours.
Have and have got (= for possession, relationships, illnesses etc.)

You can use have or have got. There is no difference in meaning:

- They have a new car. or They’ve got a new car.
- Lisa has two brothers. or Lisa’s got two brothers.
- I have a headache. or I’ve got a headache.
- Our house has a small garden. or Our house has got a small garden.
- He has a few problems. or He’s got a few problems.

With these meanings (possession etc.), you cannot use continuous forms (am having etc.):
- We’re enjoying our holiday. We have / We’ve got a nice room in the hotel. (not We’re having a nice room)

For the past we use had (without got):
- Lisa had long hair when she was a child. (not Lisa had got)

In questions and negative sentences there are three possible forms:

| Do you have any questions? | I don’t have any questions. |
| Have you got any questions? | I haven’t got any questions. |
| Have you any questions? (less usual) | I haven’t any questions. (less usual) |
| Does she have a car? | She doesn’t have a car. |
| Has she got a car? | She hasn’t got a car. |
| Has she a car? (less usual) | She hasn’t a car. (less usual) |

In past questions and negative sentences we use did/didn’t:
- Did you have a car when you were living in Paris?
- I didn’t have my phone, so I couldn’t call you.
- Lisa had long hair, didn’t she?

Have breakfast / have a shower / have a good time etc.

We also use have (but not have got) for many actions and experiences. For example:

- breakfast / dinner / a cup of coffee / something to eat etc.
- a bath / a shower / a swim / a break / a rest / a party / a holiday
- an accident / an experience / a dream
- have a look (at something)
- a chat / a conversation / a discussion (with somebody)
- trouble / difficulty / fun / a good time etc.
- a baby (= give birth to a baby)

Have got is not possible in the expressions in the box. Compare:
- Sometimes I have (= eat) a sandwich for my lunch. (not I’ve got)
  but I’ve got / I have some sandwiches. Would you like one?

You can use continuous forms (am having etc.) with the expressions in the box:
- We’re enjoying our holiday. We’re having a great time. (not We have)
- Mark is having a shower at the moment. He has a shower every day.

In questions and negative sentences we use do/does/did:
- I don’t usually have a big breakfast. (not I usually haven’t)
- What time does Chris have lunch? (not has Chris lunch)
- Did you have trouble finding a place to live?
### Exercises

#### 17.1
Write negative sentences with have. Some are present and some are past.

1. I can’t get into the house. (a key) I haven’t got a key.
2. I couldn’t read the letter. (my glasses) I didn’t have my glasses.
3. I can’t get onto the roof. (a ladder) I
4. We couldn’t visit the museum. (enough time) We
5. He couldn’t find his way to our house. (a map) ...
6. She can’t pay her bills. (any money) ...
7. I can’t go swimming today. (enough energy) ...
8. They couldn’t take any pictures. (a camera) ...

#### 17.2
Which alternatives are correct? Sometimes two alternatives are possible, sometimes only one.

1. Excuse me, a pen I could borrow?
   A) have you got  B) are you having  C) do you have  (both A and C are correct)
2. a time to go to the bank yesterday?
   A) Had you got  B) Did you have  C) Had you
3. I need a stamp for this letter. one?
   A) Do you have  B) Are you having  C) Have you got
4. What does Jack do? a job?
   A) Does he have  B) Is he having  C) Has he got
5. a lot of friends when you were a child?
   A) Did you have  B) Were you having  C) Had you
6. When you worked in your last job, your own office?
   A) had you  B) have you got  C) did you have

#### 17.3
Are the underlined verbs OK? Change them where necessary.

1. Is there anything you want to ask? Do you have any questions?
2. Lisa had got long hair when she was a child.
3. Tom couldn’t contact us because he hadn’t our number.
4. ‘Are you feeling OK?’ ‘No, I’m having a toothache.’
5. Are you enjoying yourself? Are you having a good time?
6. It started to rain. I got wet because I hadn’t an umbrella.
7. Will can’t drive. He doesn’t have a driving licence.
8. Did your trip go OK? Had you any problems?
9. My friend called me when I was having breakfast.

#### 17.4
Complete the sentences. Use an expression from the list with have in the correct form.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>have a baby</th>
<th>have a break</th>
<th>have a chat</th>
<th>have trouble</th>
<th>have a good flight</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>have a look</td>
<td>have lunch</td>
<td>have a party</td>
<td>have a nice time</td>
<td>have a shower</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. I don’t eat much during the day. I never have lunch.
2. David starts work at 8 o’clock and
3. We last week. It was great – we invited lots of people.
4. ‘Are you feeling OK?’ ‘No, I’m having a toothache.’
5. Jim is away on holiday at the moment. I hope he
6. I met Ann in the supermarket yesterday. We stopped and
7. A: finding the book you wanted?
   B: No, I found it OK.
8. Suzanne a few weeks ago. It’s her second child.
9. A: Why didn’t you answer the phone?
   B: I
10. You meet your friend Sally at the airport. She has just arrived. You say:
    Hi, Sally. How are you?
Something used to happen = it happened often in the past, but no longer happens:

- I used to play tennis a lot, but I don’t play very much now.
- David used to spend a lot of money on clothes. These days he can’t afford it.
- ‘Do you go to the cinema much?’ ‘Not now, but I used to.’ (= I used to go)

We also use used to ... for things that were true, but are not true any more:

- This building is now a furniture shop. It used to be a cinema.
- I used to think Mark was unfriendly, but now I realise he’s a very nice person.
- I’ve started drinking tea recently. I never used to like it before.
- Lisa used to have very long hair when she was a child.

‘I used to do something’ is past. There is no present. You cannot say ‘I use to do’.

To talk about the present, use the present simple (I do).

Compare:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>past</th>
<th>he used to play</th>
<th>we used to live</th>
<th>there used to be</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>present</td>
<td>he plays</td>
<td>we live</td>
<td>there is</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- We used to live in a small village, but now we live in London.
- There used to be four cinemas in the town. Now there is only one.

The normal question form is did (you) use to ... ?: 

- Did you use to eat a lot of sweets when you were a child?

The negative form is didn’t use to ... (used not to ... is also possible):

- I didn’t use to like him. (or I used not to like him.)

Compare I used to do and I was doing:

- I used to watch TV a lot. (= I watched TV often in the past, but I no longer do this)
- I was watching TV when Rob called. (= I was in the middle of watching TV)

Do not confuse I used to do and I am used to doing (see Unit 61). The structures and meanings are different:

- I used to live alone. (= I lived alone in the past, but I no longer live alone)
- I am used to living alone. (= I live alone, and I don’t find it strange or difficult because I’ve been living alone for some time)
18.1 Complete the sentences with use(d) to + a suitable verb.

1. Nicola doesn’t travel much now. She used to travel a lot, but she prefers to stay at home these days.
2. Sophie used to ride a motorbike, but last year she sold it and bought a car.
3. We moved to Spain a few years ago. We lived in Paris.
4. I rarely eat ice-cream now, but I used to when I was a child.
5. Jackie used to be my best friend, but we aren’t good friends any more.
6. It only takes me about 40 minutes to get to work now that the new road is open. It used to take more than an hour.
7. There used to be a hotel near the airport, but it closed a long time ago.
8. When you lived in New York, did you go to the theatre very often?

18.2 Compare what Karen said five years ago and what she says today:

**FIVE YEARS AGO**

- I travel a lot.
- I’ve got lots of friends.
- I’m very lazy.
- I don’t like cheese.
- I go to a lot of parties.

**TODAY**

- I eat lots of cheese now.
- I work very hard these days.
- I don’t know many people these days.
- I don’t go away much these days.
- Tea’s great! I like it now.

My dog died two years ago.

I read a newspaper every day now.

I haven’t been to a party for ages.

I haven’t played the piano for years.

Now write sentences about how Karen has changed. Use used to / didn’t use to / never used to in the first part of your sentence.

1. She used to travel a lot, but she doesn’t go away much these days.
2. She used to be a hotel receptionist, but she works in a bookshop now.
3. I used to play the piano, but I haven’t played it for years.
4. I used to go to a lot of parties, but I don’t go away much these days.
5. I never read newspapers before, but I read a newspaper every day now.
6. I don’t drink tea, but I do now.
7. I used to like cheese, but I don’t eat it anymore.
8. I had a dog before, but it died two years ago.

18.3 Write sentences about yourself like the examples. Begin I used to ... (I used to be/work/like/play/read etc.).

1. I used to live in a small village, but now I live in London.
2. I used to play tennis a lot, but I don’t play any more.
3. I used to like cheese, but I don’t eat it anymore.
4. I used to read a lot, but I do now.
5. Now begin with I didn’t use to ...
6. I didn’t use to go to parties, but I go now.
7. I didn’t use to be lazy, but I am now.
8. I didn’t use to like music, but I do now.
Present tenses (I am doing / I do) for the future

Present continuous (I am doing) with a future meaning

This is Ben’s diary for next week.

He is playing tennis on Monday afternoon.
He is going to the dentist on Tuesday morning.
He is having dinner with Kate on Friday.

In all these examples, Ben has already decided and arranged to do these things.

I'm doing something (tomorrow) = I have already decided and arranged to do it:

- A: What are you doing on Saturday evening? (not What do you do)
- B: I'm going to the theatre. (not I go)

- A: What time is Katherine arriving tomorrow?
- B: Half past ten. I'm meeting her at the station.

- I'm not working tomorrow, so we can go out somewhere.
- Steve isn't playing football next Saturday. He's hurt his leg.

'I'm going to (do)' is also possible in these sentences:

- What are you going to do on Saturday evening?

But the present continuous is more natural when we talk about arrangements. See Unit 20B.

Do not use will to talk about what you have arranged to do:

- What are you doing this evening? (not What will you do)
- A: What are you doing this evening? (not What will you do)
- B: Alex is getting married next month. (not will get)

You can also use the present continuous for an action just before you begin to do it. This happens especially with verbs of movement (go/come/leave etc.):

- I'm tired. I'm going to bed now. Goodnight. (not I go to bed now)
- Jess, are you ready yet?' 'Yes, I'm coming.' (not I come)

Present simple (I do) with a future meaning

We use the present simple when we talk about timetables, programmes etc. (for public transport, cinemas etc.):

- My train leaves at 11.30, so I need to be at the station by 11.15.
- What time does the film start this evening?
- It's Wednesday tomorrow. / Tomorrow is Wednesday.

You can use the present simple to talk about people if their plans are fixed like a timetable:

- I start my new job on Monday.
- What time do you finish work tomorrow?

But the continuous is more usual for personal arrangements:

- What time are you meeting Ann tomorrow? (not do you meet)

Compare:

Present continuous
- What time are you arriving?
- I'm going to the cinema this evening.

Present simple
- What time does the train arrive?
- The film starts at 8.15 (this evening).
Exercises

19.1 A friend of yours is planning to go on holiday soon. You ask her about her plans. Use the words in brackets to make your questions.

1 (where / go?) Where are you going?
2 (how long / go for?) ................................................
3 (when / leave?) ..................................................
4 (go / alone?) ...................................................
5 (travel / by car?) ............................................
6 (where / stay?) ................................................

Scotland.
Ten days.
Next Friday.
No, with a friend.
No, by train.
In a hotel.

19.2 Tom wants you to visit him, but you are very busy. Look at your diary for the next few days and explain to him why you can’t come.

Tom: Can you come on Monday evening?
You: Sorry, but I’m playing volleyball.
Tom: What about Tuesday evening then?
You: No, not Tuesday.
Tom: And Wednesday evening?
You: No, it’s (2)...
Tom: Well, are you free on Thursday?
You: I’m afraid not.

19.3 Have you arranged to do anything at these times? Write sentences about yourself.

1 (this evening) I’m going out this evening. or I’m not doing anything this evening.
2 (tomorrow morning) I
3 (tomorrow evening)
4 (next Sunday) 
5 (choose another day or time)

19.4 Put the verb into the more suitable form, present continuous or present simple.

1 I’m going (I / go) to the cinema this evening.
2 Does the film start (the film / start) at 3.30 or 4.30?
3 (we / have) a party next Saturday. Would you like to come?
4 The art exhibition (finish) on 3 May.
5 (I / not / go) out this evening.
6 ‘ (you / do) anything tomorrow morning?’ ‘No, I’m free. Why?’
7 (we / go) to a concert tonight.
8 (it / start) at 7.30.
9 A: Have you seen Liz recently?
   B: No, but (we / meet) for lunch next week.
10 You are on the train to London and you ask another passenger:
    Excuse me. What time (this train / get) to London?
11 You are talking to Helen:
    Helen, (I / go) to the supermarket. (you / come) with me?
12 You and a friend are watching television. You say:
    I’m bored with this programme. What time (it / end)?
13 (I / not / use) the car this evening, so you can have it.
14 Sue (come) to see us tomorrow.
    (she / travel) by train and her train (arrive) at 10.15.
(I'm) going to (do)

I am going to do something = I have already decided to do it, I intend to do it:
- 'Are you going to eat anything?' ‘No, I'm not hungry.’
- A: I hear Sarah has won some money. What is she going to do with it?
  B: She's going to buy a new car.
- I'm just going to make a quick phone call. Can you wait for me?
- This cheese smells horrible. I'm not going to eat it.

I am doing and I am going to do

We use I am doing (present continuous) when we say what we have arranged to do – for example, arranged to meet somebody, arranged to go somewhere:
- What time are you meeting Ann this evening?
- I'm leaving tomorrow. I've got my plane ticket.

I am going to do something = I've decided to do it (but perhaps not arranged to do it):
- 'Your shoes are dirty.' ‘Yes, I know. I'm going to clean them.’ (= I've decided to clean them, but I haven't arranged to clean them)
- I've decided not to stay here any longer. Tomorrow I'm going to look for somewhere else to stay.

Often the difference is very small and either form is possible.

You can also say that 'something is going to happen' in the future. For example:

The man isn't looking where he is going. He is going to walk into the wall.

When we say that 'something is going to happen', the situation now makes this clear. The man is walking towards the wall now, so we can see that he is going to walk into it.

Some more examples:
- Look at those black clouds! It's going to rain. (the clouds are there now)
- I feel terrible. I think I'm going to be sick. (I feel terrible now)
- The economic situation is bad now and things are going to get worse.

I was going to do something = I intended to do it, but didn't do it:
- We were going to travel by train, but then we decided to go by car instead.
- Peter was going to do the exam, but he changed his mind.
- I was just going to cross the road when somebody shouted 'Stop!'

You can say that 'something was going to happen' (but didn't happen):
- I thought it was going to rain, but it didn't.
**Exercises**

**20.1** Write a question with going to for each situation.

1. Your friend has won some money. You ask:
   *(what / do with it?)*
   **What are you going to do with it?**

2. Your friend is going to a party tonight. You ask:
   *(what / wear?)*

3. Your friend has just bought a new table. You ask:
   *(where / put it?)*

4. Your friend has decided to have a party. You ask:
   *(who / invite?)*

**20.2** Read the situations and complete the dialogues. Use going to.

1. You have decided to clean your room this morning.
   **friend:** Are you going out this morning?
   **you:** No, I’m going to clean my room.

2. You bought a sweater, but it doesn’t fit you very well. You have decided to take it back to the shop.
   **friend:** That sweater is too big for you.
   **you:** I know.

3. You have been offered a job, but you have decided not to accept it.
   **friend:** I hear you’ve been offered a job.
   **you:** That’s right, but

4. You have to phone Sarah. It’s morning now, and you have decided to phone her tonight.
   **friend:** Have you phoned Sarah yet?
   **you:** No, ................................................................................................................

5. You are in a restaurant. The food is awful and you’ve decided to complain.
   **friend:** This food is awful, isn’t it?
   **you:** Yes, it’s disgusting.

**20.3** What is going to happen in these situations? Use the words in brackets.

1. There are a lot of black clouds in the sky.
   *(rain)*
   **It’s going to rain.**

2. It is 8.30. Tom is leaving his house. He has to be at work at 8.45, but the journey takes 30 minutes.
   *(late)*
   **He**

3. There is a hole in the bottom of the boat. A lot of water is coming in through the hole.
   *(sink)*
   **The boat**

4. Lucy and Chris are driving. There is very little petrol left in the tank. The nearest petrol station is a long way away.
   *(run out)*
   **They**

**20.4** Complete the sentences with was/were going to + the following verbs:

- buy
- give up
- phone
- play
- say
- travel

1. We **were going to travel** by train, but then we decided to go by car instead.

2. I didn’t have time to go to the shops.

3. Oliver and I **played** tennis last week, but he had to cancel because he’d hurt his knee.

4. I **said** Jane, but I decided to email her instead.

5. a: When I last saw Tim, he **was going to leave** his job.
   b: That’s right, but in the end he decided to stay where he was.

6. I’m sorry I interrupted you. What **are you**?
We use I'll (= I will) when we've just decided to do something. When we say 'I'll do something', we announce our decision:

- Oh, I've left the door open. I'll go and shut it.
- 'What would you like to drink?' 'I'll have an orange juice, please.'
- 'Did you phone Lucy?' 'Oh no, I forgot. I'll phone her now.'

You cannot use the present simple (I do / I go etc.) in these sentences:

- I'll go and shut the door. (not I go and shut)

We often use I think I'll ... and I don't think I'll ... :

- I feel a bit hungry. I think I'll have something to eat.
- I don't think I'll go out tonight. I'm too tired.

In spoken English the negative of will is usually won't (= will not):

- I can see you're busy, so I won't stay long.

Do not use will to talk about what you decided before (see Units 19–20):

- I'm going on holiday next Saturday. (not I'll go)
- Are you working tomorrow? (not Will you work)

We often use will in these situations:

**Offering to do something**

- That bag looks heavy. I'll help you with it. (not I help)

**Agreeing to do something**

- a: Can you give Tim this book?
- b: Sure, I'll give it to him when I see him this afternoon.

**Promising to do something**

- Thanks for lending me the money. I'll pay you back on Friday.
- I won't tell anyone what happened. I promise.

**Asking somebody to do something (Will you ... ?)**

- Will you please turn the music down? I'm trying to concentrate.

You can use won't to say that somebody refuses to do something:

- I've tried to give her advice, but she won't listen.
- The car won't start. (= the car ‘refuses’ to start)

**Shall I ... ? Shall we ... ?**

Shall is used mostly in the questions shall I ... ? / shall we ... ?

We use shall I ... ? / shall we ... ? to ask somebody's opinion (especially in offers or suggestions):

- Shall I open the window? (= Do you want me to open the window?)
- I've got no money. What shall I do? (= What do you suggest?)
- 'Shall we go?' 'Just a minute. I'm not ready yet.'
- 'Where shall we have lunch?' 'Let's go to Marino's.'

Compare shall I ... ? and will you ... ?:

- Shall I shut the door? (= Do you want me to shut it?)
- Will you shut the door? (= I want you to shut it)
Exercises

21.1 Complete the sentences with I'll + a suitable verb.

1. I'm too tired to walk home. I think I'll take a taxi.
2. 'It's cold in this room.' 'Is it? I'll turn on the heating then.'
3. 'Bye! Have a nice holiday!' 'Thanks. I'll send you a postcard.'
4. 'Shall I do the washing-up?' 'No, it's all right. I'll do it later.'
5. 'I don't know how to shut down this computer.' 'OK, I'll show you.'
6. 'Would you like tea or coffee?' 'Coffee, please.'
7. 'Are you coming with us?' 'No, I think I'll stay here.'
8. Thanks for lending me the money. I'll give it back as soon as possible, OK?

9. a. I know you're busy, but can you finish this report this afternoon?
    b. Well, yes, I'll do it later, but I can't promise.

21.2 Read the situations and write sentences with I think I'll ... or I don't think I'll ...

1. It's a bit cold. The window is open and you decide to close it. You say:
   I think I'll close the window.
2. You are feeling tired and it's getting late. You decide to go to bed. You say:
   I think I'll go to bed.
3. A friend of yours offers you a lift in his car, but you decide to walk. You say:
   Thank you, but I don't think I'll take a lift.
4. You were going to have lunch. Now you decide that you don't want to eat anything. You say:
   I don't think I'll have lunch.
5. You planned to go swimming. Now you decide that you don't want to go. You say:
   I don't think I'll go swimming.

21.3 Which is correct? (If necessary, study Units 19–20 first.)

1. 'Did you phone Lucy?' 'Oh no, I forgot. I'll phone her now.' (I'll phone is correct)
2. 'I can't meet you tomorrow. I'm playing tennis.' (I'm playing is correct)
3. 'I'll meet you outside the hotel in half an hour, OK?' 'Yes, that's fine.'
4. 'I need some money.' 'OK, I'll lend you some. How much do you need?'
5. I'm having a party next Saturday. I hope you can come.
6. 'Remember to get a newspaper when you go out.' 'OK, I won't forget.'
7. 'What time does your train leave?' 'Yes, that's fine.'
8. 'I asked Sue what happened, but she doesn't tell me.'
9. 'Are you doing anything tomorrow evening?' 'No, I'm free. Why?'
10. I don't want to go out alone. Do you want to come with me?

21.4 What do you say in these situations? Write sentences with shall I ... ? or shall we ... ?

1. You and a friend want to do something this evening, but you don't know what.
   You ask your friend: Shall we do this evening?
2. You try on a jacket in a shop. You are not sure whether to buy it or not.
   You ask a friend for advice: Shall I buy it?
3. It's Helen's birthday next week. You want to give her a present, but you don't know what.
   You ask a friend for advice: What shall I get her?
4. You and a friend are going on holiday together, but you have to decide where.
   You ask him/her: Shall we go to France?
5. You and a friend are going out. You have to decide whether to go by bus or to walk.
   You ask him/her: Shall we go by bus, or shall we walk?
6. Your friend wants you to come and see her. You don't know what time to come.
   You ask her: Shall we meet at six or seven?
We do not use will to say what somebody has already arranged or decided to do:

- Diane is working next week.  (not Diane will work)
- Are you going to watch anything on TV this evening?  (not Will you watch)

For ‘is working’ and ‘Are you going ...’?, see Units 19–20.

But often, when we talk about the future, we are not talking about what somebody has decided to do.

For example:

Kate is doing an exam next week. Chris and Joe are talking about it.

Do you think Kate will pass the exam?

Chris: Yes, she’ll pass easily.

Joe: She’ll pass does not mean ‘she has decided to pass’. Joe is saying what he knows or believes will happen. He is predicting the future.

When we predict a future happening or situation, we use will/won’t.

Some more examples:

- They’ve been away a long time. When they return, they’ll find a lot of changes here.
- Where will you be this time next year?  ‘I’ll be in Japan.’
- That plate is hot. If you touch it, you’ll burn yourself.
- Tom won’t pass the exam. He hasn’t studied hard enough.
- Anna looks completely different now. You won’t recognise her.
- When will you get your exam results?

We often use will (’ll) with:

- probably
- (I’m) sure
- (I) think
- (I) don’t think
- I wonder

I’ll probably be home late tonight.
Don’t worry about the exam. I’m sure you’ll pass.
Do you think Sarah will like the present we bought her?
I don’t think the exam will be very difficult.
I wonder what will happen.

After I hope, we generally use the present (will is also possible):

- I hope Kate passes the exam.  (or I hope Kate will pass ...)
- I hope it doesn’t rain tomorrow.

Generally we use will to talk about the future, but sometimes we use will to talk about now.

For example:

- Don’t phone Ann now. She’ll be busy.  (= she’ll be busy now)

I shall ... / we shall ...

Normally we use shall only with I and we. You can say:

I shall or I will (’ll)  we shall or we will (we’ll)

- I shall be late this evening.  (or I will be)
- We shall probably go to France in June.  (or We will probably go)

In spoken English we normally use I’ll and we’ll:

- We’ll probably go to France.

The negative of shall is shall not or shan’t:

- I shan’t be here tomorrow.  (or I won’t be)

Do not use shall with he/she/it/you/they:

- She will be very angry.  (not She shall be)
Which form of the verb is better in these sentences? The verbs are underlined.
1. Diane isn’t free on Saturday. She’ll work / She’s working. (She’s working is correct)
2. I’ll go / I’m going to a party tomorrow night. Would you like to come too?
3. I think Amy will get / is getting the job. She has a lot of experience.
4. I can’t meet you this evening. A friend of mine will come / is coming to see me.
5. a: Have you decided where to go for your holidays?
   b: Yes, we’ll go / we’re going to Italy.
6. Don’t be afraid of the dog. It won’t hurt / It isn’t hurting you.

Put in will (‘ll) or won’t.
1. Can you wait for me? I won’t be long.
2. Don’t ask Amanda for advice. She won’t know what to do.
3. I’m glad you’re coming to see us next week. It’ll be good to see you again.
4. I’m sorry about what happened yesterday. It won’t happen again.
5. You don’t need to take an umbrella with you. I don’t think it’ll rain.
6. I’ve got some incredible news! You won’t believe it.

Complete the sentences using will (‘ll). Choose from the following:
   it / be she / come you / get you / like
   people / live it / look we / meet you / -pass

   1. Don’t worry about your exam. I’m sure you’ll pass.
   2. Why don’t you try on this jacket? It’ll look nice on you.
   3. You must meet Daniel sometime. I think you’ll like him.
   4. It’s raining. Don’t go out. It’ll be wet.
   5. Do you think you’ll be longer in the future?
   6. Bye! I’m sure we’ll meet again before long.
   7. I’ve invited Anna to the party, but I don’t think she’ll come.
   8. It takes me an hour to get to work at the moment, but when the new road is finished, it’ll be much quicker.

Write questions using do you think ... will ... ? + the following:
   be back cost end get married happen like rain

   1. I’ve bought this picture for Karen. Do you think she’ll like it?
   2. The weather doesn’t look very good. Do you think it’ll rain?
   3. The meeting is still going on. When do you think it’ll end?
   4. My car needs to be repaired. How much do you think it’ll cost?
   5. Sally and David are in love. Do you think they’ll get married?
   6. ‘I’m going out now.’ ‘OK. What time will you be back?’
   7. The future situation is uncertain. What do you think will happen?

Where do you think you will be at these times? Write true sentences about yourself. Use:
   I’ll be ... or I’ll probably be ... or I don’t know where I’ll be

   1. (next Monday evening at 7.45) I’ll be at home.
      or I’ll probably be at home.
      or I don’t know where I’ll be.

   2. (at 5 o’clock tomorrow morning)

   3. (at 10.30 tomorrow morning)

   4. (next Saturday afternoon at 4.15)

   5. (this time next year)
Future actions

Study the difference between will and (be) going to:

**Sarah is talking to Helen:**

*Let's have a party.* *That's a great idea. We'll invite lots of people.*

**Will (‘ll):** We use will to announce a new decision. The party is a new idea.

Later that day, Helen meets Dan:

*Sarah and I have decided to have a party. We're going to invite lots of people.*

**(be) going to:** We use (be) going to when we have already decided to do something. Helen had already decided to invite lots of people before she spoke to Dan.

**Compare:**

- ‘Gary phoned while you were out.’ ‘OK. I'll call him back.’
  - ‘Gary phoned while you were out.’ ‘Yes, I know. I'm going to call him back.’
- ‘Anna is in hospital.’ ‘Oh really? I didn't know. I'll go and visit her.’
  - ‘Anna is in hospital.’ ‘Yes, I know. I'm going to visit her this evening.’

Future happenings and situations (predicting the future)

We use both will and going to to predict future happenings and situations. So you can say:

- I think the weather will be nice later. or
  - I think the weather is going to be nice later.
- Those shoes are well-made. They'll last a long time. or
  - Those shoes are well-made. They're going to last a long time.

When we say something is going to happen, we know this from the situation now. What is happening now shows that something is going to happen in the future. For example:

- Look at those black clouds. It's going to rain. (not It will rain)
  - (We can see that it is going to rain from the clouds that are in the sky now.)
- I feel terrible. I think I'm going to be sick. (not I think I'll be sick)
  - (I think I'm going to be sick because I feel terrible now.)

Do not use will in this type of situation.
Exercises

23.1 Complete the sentences using will (‘ll) or going to.

1. A: Why are you turning on the TV?
   B: I’m going to watch the news. (I / watch)

   B: Haven’t you? Well, don’t worry. I’ll lend you some. (I / lend)

3. A: I’ve got a headache.
   B: Have you? Wait a second and I’ll get an aspirin for you. (I / get)

4. A: Why are you filling that bucket with water?
   B: I’m going to wash the car. (I / wash)

5. A: I’ve decided to repaint this room.
   B: Oh, have you? What colour shall we paint it? (you / paint)

6. A: Where are you going? Are you going shopping?
   B: Yes, I’m going to buy some things for dinner. (I / buy)

7. A: I don’t know how to use the washing machine.
   B: It’s easy. I’ll show you. (I / show)

8. A: What would you like to eat?
   B: I’d like a pizza, please. (I / have)

9. A: Did you call Lisa?
   B: Oh, no. I completely forgot. I’ll call her now. (I / call)

10. A: Has Dan decided what to do when he leaves school?
    B: Yes. Everything is planned. He has decided to take a holiday for a few weeks. Then he’s going to do a management training course. (he / do)

23.2 Read the situations and complete the sentences using will (‘ll) or going to.

1. The phone rings and you answer. Somebody wants to speak to John.
   CALLER: Hello. Can I speak to John, please?
   YOU: Just a moment. I’ll get him. (I / get)

2. It’s a nice day, so you have decided to take a walk. Just before you go, you tell your friend.
   YOU: The weather’s too nice to stay in. I’m going to take a walk. (I / take)
   FRIEND: Good idea! I think I’ll join you. (I / join)

3. Your friend is worried because she has lost her driving licence.
   YOU: Don’t worry. I’m sure I’ll find it. (you / find)
   FRIEND: I hope so.

4. There was a job advertised in the paper recently. At first you were interested, but then you decided not to apply.
   FRIEND: Have you decided what to do about that job you were interested in?
   YOU: Yes, I’m not going to apply for it. (I / not / apply)

5. You and a friend are stuck in traffic. You have to be in a meeting in five minutes and you need at least another 20 minutes to get there.
   YOU: The meeting begins in five minutes. We’re going to be late. (we / be late)

6. Ann and Sam are staying at a hotel. Their room is in very bad condition, especially the ceiling.
   ANN: The ceiling doesn’t look very safe, does it?
   SAM: No, it looks as if it’s going to fall down. (it / fall down)

7. Paul has to go to the airport to catch a plane tomorrow morning.
   PAUL: Kate, I need somebody to take me to the airport tomorrow morning.
   KATE: That’s no problem. I’ll take you. (I / take) What time is your flight?
   PAUL: 10.30.
   KATE: OK, I’ll pick you up at your house at about 8 o’clock then. (I / pick)

Later that day, Joe offers to take Paul to the airport.
   JOE: Paul, do you want me to take you to the airport?
   PAUL: No thanks, Joe. Kate will take me. (Kate / take)
Study this example situation:

These people are standing in a queue to get into the cinema.

Half an hour from now, the cinema will be full. Everyone will be watching the film.

Three hours from now, the cinema will be empty. The film will have finished. Everyone will have gone home.

I will be doing something (future continuous) = I will be in the middle of doing it:
- This time next week I’ll be on holiday. I’ll be lying on the beach or swimming in the sea.
- You have no chance of getting the job. You’ll be wasting your time if you apply for it.

Compare will be (do)ing and will (do):
- Don’t phone between 7 and 8. We’ll be having dinner.
- Let’s wait for Liz to arrive and then we’ll have dinner.

Compare will be -ing with other continuous forms:
- At 10 o’clock yesterday, Sally was in her office. She was working (past)
  It’s 10 o’clock now. She is in her office. She is working (present)
  At 10 o’clock tomorrow, she will be in her office. She will be working.

We also use will be -ing to talk about complete actions in the future. For example:
- The government will be making a statement about the crisis later today.
- Will you be going away this summer?
- Later in the programme, I’ll be talking to the Minister of Education …
- Our best player is injured and won’t be playing in the game on Saturday.

In these examples will be -ing is similar to (be) going to …

We use will have (done) (future perfect) to say that something will already be complete before a time in the future. For example:
- Sally always leaves for work at 8.30 in the morning. She won’t be at home at 9 o’clock – she’ll have gone to work.
- We’re late. The film will already have started by the time we get to the cinema.

Compare will have (done) with other perfect forms:
- Ted and Amy have been married for 24 years. (present perfect)
  Next year they will have been married for 25 years.
- When their son was born, they had been married for three years. (past perfect)
Exercises

24.1 Read about Andy. Then tick (√) the sentences which are true. In each group of sentences at least one is true.

Andy goes to work every day. He leaves home at 8 o’clock and arrives at work at about 8.45. He starts work immediately and continues until 12.30 when he has lunch (which takes about half an hour). He starts work again at 1.15 and goes home at exactly 4.30. Every day he follows the same routine and tomorrow will be no exception.

At 7.45
a he’ll be leaving the house
b he’ll have left the house
c he’ll be at home ✓
d he’ll be having breakfast ✓

At 7.45
a he’ll be Leaving the house
b he’ll have Left the house
c he’ll be at home /
d he’ll be having breakfast /

At 12.45
a he’ll have lunch
b he’ll be having lunch
c he’ll have finished his lunch
d he’ll have started his lunch

At 12.45
a he’ll have lunch
b he’ll finish lunch
c he’ll be working

d he won’t have finished lunch

At 8.15
a he’ll be leaving the house
b he’ll have left the house
c he’ll have arrived at work
d he’ll be arriving at work

At 8.15
a he’ll be leaving the house
b he’ll have left the house
c he’ll have arrived at work
d he’ll be arriving at work

At 9.15
a he’ll be working
b he’ll start work
c he’ll have started work
d he’ll be arriving at work

At 9.15
a he’ll be working
b he’ll start work
c he’ll have started work
d he’ll be arriving at work

At 4 o’clock
a he’ll have finished work
b he’ll finish work
c he’ll be working

d he won’t have finished work

At 4 o’clock
a he’ll have finished work
b he’ll finish work
c he’ll be working

d he won’t have finished work

At 4.45
a he’ll leave work
b he’ll be leaving work
c he’ll have left work
d he’ll have arrived home

At 4.45
a he’ll leave work
b he’ll be leaving work
c he’ll have left work
d he’ll have arrived home

24.2 Put the verb into the correct form, will be (doing) or will have (done).

1 Don’t phone between 7 and 8. We’ll be having dinner then. (we / have)
2 Phone me after 8 o’clock. We’ll be finishing dinner by then. (we / finish)
3 Tomorrow afternoon we’re going to play tennis from 3 o’clock until 4.30. So at 4 o’clock, (we / play)

4 A: Can we meet tomorrow?
   B: Yes, but not in the afternoon. (I / work)

5 B has to go to a meeting which begins at 10 o’clock. It will last about an hour.
   A: Will you be free at 11.30?
   B: Yes, ______________________________ by then. (the meeting / end)

6 Ben is on holiday and he is spending his money very quickly. If he continues like this,
   ______________________________ all his money before the end of his holiday. (he / spend)

7 Do you think ______________________________ the same job in ten years’ time?
   (you / still / do)

8 Lisa is from New Zealand. She is travelling around Europe at the moment. So far she has
   travelled about 1,000 miles. By the end of the trip, ______________________________ more
   than 3,000 miles. (she / travel)

9 If you need to contact me, ______________________________ at the Lion Hotel until Friday.
   (I / stay)

10 A: ______________________________ Laura tomorrow? (you / see)
    B: Yes, probably. Why?
    A: I borrowed this DVD from her. Can you give it back to her?
When I do / When I’ve done  When and if

Study this example:

Will you phone me tomorrow?

Yes, I’ll phone you when I get home from work.

‘I’ll phone you when I get home’ is a sentence with two parts:

- *the main part*: I’ll phone you
- *the when-part*: when I get home

The time in the sentence is future (tomorrow), but we use a present tense (I get) in the when-part of the sentence.

We do not use will in the when-part of the sentence.

Some more examples:

- We’ll go out when it stops raining. *(not when it will stop)*
- When you are in London again, come and see us. *(not When you will be)*
- *(said to a child)* What do you want to be when you grow up? *(not will grow)*

The same thing happens after while / before / after / as soon as / until or till:

- What are you going to do while I’m away? *(not while I will be)*
- I’ll probably go back home on Sunday. Before I go, I’d like to visit the museum.
- Wait here until (or till) I come back.

You can also use the present perfect *(have done)* after when / after / until / as soon as:

- Can I borrow that book when you’ve finished with it?
- Don’t say anything while Ian is here. Wait until he has gone.

If you use the present perfect, one thing must be complete before the other (so the two things do not happen together):

- When I’ve phoned Kate, we can have dinner.
  (= First I’ll phone Kate and after that we can have dinner.)

Do not use the present perfect if the two things happen together:

- When I phone Kate, I’ll ask her about the party. *(not When I’ve phoned)*

It is often possible to use either the present simple or the present perfect:

- I’ll come as soon as I finish. *or* I’ll come as soon as I’ve finished.
- You’ll feel better after you have something to eat. *or* You’ll feel better after you’ve had something to eat.

After if, we normally use the present simple *(if I do / if I see etc.*) for the future:

- It’s raining hard. We’ll get wet if we go out. *(not if we will go)*
- I’ll be angry if it happens again. *(not if it will happen)*
- Hurry up! If we don’t hurry, we’ll be late.

When and if

We use when for things which are sure to happen:

- I’m going out later. *(for sure)* When I go out, I’ll get some bread.

We use if *(not when)* for things that will possibly happen:

- I might go out later. *(it’s possible)* If I go out, I’ll get some bread.
- If it is raining this evening, I won’t go out. *(not When it is raining)*
- Don’t worry if I’m late tonight. *(not when I’m late)*
- If they don’t come soon, I’m not going to wait. *(not When they don’t come)*

If ➔ Units 38–40  Even if / even when ➔ Unit 112D  Unless ➔ Unit 115
Exercises

25.1 Complete the sentences using the verbs in brackets. All the sentences are about the future. Use will/won’t or the present simple (I see / he plays / it is etc.).

1. When you are (you / be) in London again, come and see us.
2. I want to see Sophie before (she / go) out.
3. Call me when (you / know) what time you’re going to get here.
4. I’m going out now. (I / get) back? (you / be) here when (I / get) back?
5. I think everything will be fine, but if (there / be) any problems, (I / call) you, OK?
6. We must do something soon before (it / be) too late.
7. Anna looks very different now. When (you / see) her again, (you / not / recognise) her.
8. Steve has applied for the job, but he isn’t really qualified for it. (I / be) surprised if (he / get) it.
9. I’m going to be away for a few days. If (you / need) to contact me while (I / be) away, here’s my mobile number.
10. I don’t want to go without you. (I / wait) for you until (you / be) ready.

25.2 Make one sentence from two.

1. It will stop raining soon. Then we’ll go out.
   We’ll go out when it stops raining.
2. I’ll find somewhere to live. Then I’ll give you my address.
   I’ll find somewhere to live when I give you my address.
3. I’ll do the shopping. Then I’ll come straight back home.
   I’ll do the shopping after I come straight back home.
4. It’s going to get dark. Let’s go home before that.
   Let’s go home before it gets dark.
5. She must apologise to me first. I won’t speak to her until then.
   She must apologise to me first until I speak to her.

25.3 Read the situations and complete the sentences.

1. A friend of yours is going on holiday. You want to know what she is going to do.
   You ask: What are you going to do when you are on holiday?
2. A friend is visiting you. She has to go soon, but you’d like to show her some pictures.
   You ask: Do you have time to look at some pictures before you leave?
3. You want to sell your car. Mark is interested in buying it, but he hasn’t decided yet.
   You ask: Can you let me know as soon as you have decided?
4. Your friends are going to Hong Kong soon. You want to know where they’re going to stay.
   You ask: Where are you going to stay when you get there?
5. The traffic is very bad in your town, but they are going to build a new road.
   You say: I think things will be better when they build a new road.

25.4 Put in when or if.

1. Don’t worry if I’m late tonight.
2. Be careful. You’ll hurt yourself if you fall.
3. I’m going to Rome next week. If I’m there, I hope to visit a friend of mine.
4. I’m going shopping. If you want anything, I can get it for you.
5. I don’t see you tomorrow, when will I see you again?
6. I’m going away for a few days. I’ll call you when I get back.
7. I hope Sarah can come to the party. It will be a shame if she can’t come.
8. We can eat at home or, if you prefer, we can go to a restaurant.
Can, could and (be) able to

We use *can* to say that something is possible or allowed, or that somebody has the ability to do something. We use *can + infinitive* (can do / can see etc.):

- We *can see* the lake from our hotel.
- 'I don't have a pen.' ‘You *can use* mine.’
- Can you *speak* any foreign languages?
- *I can come* and see you tomorrow if you like.
- The word ‘dream’ can be a noun or a verb.

The negative is *can’t* (= cannot):

- I’m afraid I *can’t come* to the party on Friday.

You can say that somebody *is able to* do something, but *can* is more usual:

- We are *able to see* the lake from our hotel.

But *can* has only two forms: *can* (present) and *could* (past). So sometimes it is necessary to use (be) able to. Compare:

- I *can’t* sleep.
- Tom *can* come tomorrow.
- Maria *can* speak French, Spanish and English.
- I haven’t been *able to* sleep recently.
- Tom *might be able to* come tomorrow.
- Applicants for the job *must be able to* speak two foreign languages.

**Could**

Sometimes *could* is the past of *can*. We use *could* especially with:

- see  hear  smell  taste  feel  remember  understand

- We had a lovely room in the hotel. We *could see* the lake.
- As soon as I walked into the room, I *could smell* gas.
- I was sitting at the back of the theatre and *couldn’t hear* very well.

We also use *could* to say that somebody had the general ability or permission to do something:

- My grandfather *could* speak five languages.
- We were totally free. We *could do* what we wanted. (= we were allowed to do)

**Could and was able to**

We use *could* for general ability. But if you want to say that somebody did something in a specific situation, use was/were able to or managed to (*not could*):

- The fire spread through the building very quickly, but fortunately everybody *was able to escape / managed to escape*. (*not could escape*)
- We didn’t know where David was, but we *managed to find / were able to find* him in the end. (*not could find*)

Compare:

- Jack was an excellent tennis player when he was younger. He *could beat* anybody.
  (= he had the general ability to beat anybody)
- Jack and Andy played a match yesterday. Andy played well, but Jack *managed to beat* him.
  (= he managed to beat him this time)

The negative *couldn’t* (could not) is possible in all situations:

- My grandfather *couldn’t swim*.
- We looked for David everywhere, but we *couldn’t find* him.
- Andy played well, but he *couldn’t beat* Jack.
Exercises

26.1 Complete the sentences using can or (be) able to. Use can if possible; otherwise use (be) able to.

1. Gary has travelled a lot. He ____________________________.
2. I haven’t been able to sleep very well recently.
3. Nicole ____________________________ drive, but she doesn’t have a car.
4. I used to ________________ stand on my head, but I can’t do it any more.
5. I can’t understand Mark. I’ve never ________________ understand him.
6. I can’t see you on Friday, but I ________________ meet you on Saturday morning.
7. Ask Katherine about your problem. She might ________________ help you.

26.2 Write sentences about yourself using the ideas in brackets.

1. (something you used to be able to do)
   I used to ____________________________.
2. (something you used to be able to do)
   I used ____________________________.
3. (something you would like to be able to do)
   I’d ____________________________.
4. (something you have never been able to do)
   I’ve ____________________________.

26.3 Complete the sentences with can/can’t/could/couldn’t + the following:

1. I’m afraid I ____________________________ to your party next week.
2. When Dan was 16, he ____________________________ 100 metres in 11 seconds.
3. ‘Are you in a hurry?’ ‘No, I’ve got plenty of time. I ____________________________.’
4. I was feeling sick yesterday. I ____________________________ anything.
5. Can you speak a little louder? I ____________________________ you very well.
6. ‘You look tired.’ ‘Yes, I ____________________________ last night.’

26.4 Complete the answers to the questions with was/were able to ... .

1. a: Did everybody escape from the fire?
   b: Yes, although the fire spread quickly, everybody ____________________________.
2. a: Did you finish your work this afternoon?
   b: Yes, there was nobody to disturb me, so I ____________________________.
3. a: Did you have problems finding our house?
   b: Not really. Your directions were good and we ____________________________.
4. a: Did the thief get away?
   b: Yes. No-one realised what was happening and the thief ____________________________.

26.5 Complete the sentences using could, couldn’t or managed to.

1. My grandfather travelled a lot. He ____________________________ speak five languages.
2. I looked everywhere for the book, but I ____________________________ find it.
3. They didn’t want to come with us at first, but we ____________________________ persuade them.
4. Laura had hurt her leg and ____________________________ walk very well.
5. I ran my first marathon recently. It was very hard, but I ____________________________ finish.
6. I looked very carefully and I ____________________________ see somebody in the distance.
7. I wanted to buy some tomatoes. The first shop I went to didn’t have any, but I ____________________________ get some in the next shop.
8. My grandmother loved music. She ____________________________ play the piano very well.
9. A girl fell into the river, but fortunately we ____________________________ pull her out.
10. I had forgotten to bring my camera, so I ____________________________ take any pictures.
Could (do) and could have (done)

We use **could** in a number of ways. Sometimes **could** is the past of **can** (see Unit 26):

- Listen. I **can hear** something. *(now)*
- I listened. I **could hear** something. *(past)*

But **could** is not only used in this way. We also use **could** to talk about possible actions now or in the future (especially to make suggestions). For example:

- A: What shall we do tonight?
  - B: We **could go** to the cinema.

- A: When you go to Paris next month, you **could stay** with Sarah.
  - B: Yes, I suppose I **could**.

**Can** is also possible in these sentences ('We **can go to the cinema**.' etc.). **Could** is less sure than **can**.

We also use **could** *(not can)* for actions that are not realistic. For example:

- I’m so tired, I **could sleep** for a week. *(not I can sleep for a week)*

Compare **can** and **could**:

- I **can stay** with Sarah when I go to Paris. *(realistic)*
- Maybe I **could stay** with Sarah when I go to Paris. *(possible, but less sure)*
- This is a wonderful place. I **could stay** here for ever. *(unrealistic)*

We also use **could** *(not can)* to say that something (a situation or a happening) is possible now or in the future. The meaning is similar to **might** or **may** (see Unit 29):

- The story **could be** true, but I don’t think it is. *(not can be true)*
- I don’t know what time Lisa is coming. She **could get** here at any time.

Compare **can** and **could**:

- The weather **can** change very quickly in the mountains. *(in general)*
- The weather is nice now, but it **could change**. *(the weather now, not in general)*

We use **could have** *(done)* to talk about the past. Compare:

- I’m so tired, I **could sleep** for a week. *(now)*
  - I was so tired, I **could have slept** for a week. *(past)*
- The situation is bad, but it **could be worse**. *(now)*
  - The situation was bad, but it **could have been worse**. *(past)*

Something **could have** happened = it was possible but did not happen:

- Why did you stay at a hotel when you were in Paris? You **could have stayed** with Sarah. *(you didn’t stay with her)*
- David was lucky. He **could have hurt** himself when he fell, but he’s OK.

We use **couldn’t** to say that something would not be possible:

- I **couldn’t live** in a big city. I’d hate it. *(= it wouldn’t be possible for me)*
- Everything is fine right now. Things **couldn’t be** better.

For the past we use **couldn’t have** *(done)*:

- We had a really good holiday. It **couldn’t have been** better.
- The trip was cancelled last week. Paul **couldn’t have gone** anyway because he was ill. *(= it would not have been possible for him to go)*
Exercises

27.1 Answer the questions with a suggestion. Use could.

1. Where shall we go for our holidays? (to Scotland) We could go to Scotland.
2. What shall we have for dinner tonight? (fish) We could have fish.
3. When shall I phone Vicky? (now) You could phone Vicky now.
5. Where shall we hang this picture? (in the kitchen) We could hang this picture in the kitchen.

27.2 In some of these sentences, you need could (not can). Change the sentences where necessary.

1. The story can be true, but I don’t think it is. The story could be true, but I don’t think it is.
2. It’s a nice day. We can go for a walk. It’s a nice day. We could go for a walk. (OK. could go is also possible)
3. I’m so angry with him. I can kill him! I’m so angry with him. I could kill him!
4. If you’re hungry, we can have dinner now. If you’re hungry, we could have dinner now.
5. It’s so nice here. I can stay here all day, but unfortunately I have to go. It’s so nice here. I could stay here all day, but unfortunately I have to go.

27.3 Complete the sentences. Use could or could have + a suitable verb.

1. A: What shall we do this evening?  
   B: I don’t mind. We could go to the cinema.
2. A: I spent a very boring evening at home yesterday.  
   B: Why did you stay at home? You could have gone out with us.
3. A: Have you seen this job advertised in the paper?  
   B: What sort of job? Show me the advertisement.  
   A: Have you seen this job advertised in the paper?  
   B: What sort of job? Show me the advertisement.
4. A: How was your exam? Was it difficult?  
   B: It wasn’t so bad. It could have been worse.
5. A: I got very wet walking home in the rain last night.  
   B: Why did you walk? You could have taken a taxi.
6. A: Where shall we meet tomorrow?  
   B: Well, I could come to your house if you like.

27.4 Complete the sentences. Use couldn’t or couldn’t have + these verbs (in the correct form):

be  be  come  find  get  live  wear

1. I couldn’t live in a big city. I’d hate it.
2. We had a really good holiday. It couldn’t have been better.
3. I couldn’t wear that hat. I’d look silly and people would laugh at me.
4. We managed to find the restaurant you recommended, but we couldn’t have found it without the map that you drew for us.
5. Paul has to get up at 4 o’clock every morning. I don’t know how he does it. I couldn’t get up at that time every day.
6. The staff at the hotel were really nice when we stayed there last summer. They couldn’t have been more helpful.
7. A: I tried to phone you last week. We had a party and I wanted to invite you.  
   B: That was nice of you, but I couldn’t have done anyway. I was away all last week.

Additional exercises 16–18 (pages 311–13)
Study this example:

My house is very near the motorway. It must be very noisy.

You can use must to say that you believe something is certain:
- You’ve been travelling all day. You must be tired. (Travelling is tiring and you’ve been travelling all day, so you must be tired.)
- ‘Joe is a hard worker.’ ‘Joe? You must be joking. He doesn’t do anything.’
- Louise must get very bored in her job. She does the same thing every day.
- I’m sure Sally gave me her address. I must have it somewhere.

You can use can’t to say that you believe something is not possible:
- You’ve just had lunch. You can’t be hungry already. (People are not normally hungry just after eating a meal. You’ve just eaten, so you can’t be hungry.)
- They haven’t lived here for very long. They can’t know many people.

Study the structure:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I/you/he (etc.)</th>
<th>must</th>
<th>can’t</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>be (tired / hungry / at work etc.)</td>
<td>be (doing / going / joking etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>do / get / know / have etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For the past we use must have (done) and can’t have (done).

Study this example:

There’s nobody at home. They must have gone out.

Martin and Lucy are standing at the door of their friends’ house. They have rung the doorbell twice, but nobody has answered. Lucy says:

They must have gone out.

- ‘We used to live very near the motorway.’ ‘Did you? It must have been noisy.’
- ‘I’ve lost one of my gloves.’ ‘You must have dropped it somewhere.’
- Sarah hasn’t contacted me. She can’t have got my message.
- Tom walked into a wall. He can’t have been looking where he was going.

Study the structure:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I/you/he (etc.)</th>
<th>must</th>
<th>can’t</th>
<th>have</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>been (asleep / at work etc.)</td>
<td>been (doing / looking etc.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>gone / got / known etc.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can use couldn’t have instead of can’t have:
- Sarah couldn’t have got my message.
- Tom couldn’t have been looking where he was going.
28.1 Put in must or can't.
1 You've been travelling all day. You _must_ be tired.
2 That restaurant _must_ be very good. It's always full of people.
3 That restaurant _must_ be very good. It's always empty.
4 I'm sure I gave you the key. You _must_ have it. Have you looked in your bag?
5 I often see that woman walking along this street. She _must_ live near here.
6 It rained every day during their holiday, so they _must_ have had a very nice time.
7 Congratulations on passing your exam. You _must_ be very pleased.
8 You got here very quickly. You _must_ have walked very fast.
9 Bill and Sue always stay at luxury hotels, so they _must_ be short of money.

28.2 Complete each sentence with a verb (one or two words).
1 I've lost one of my gloves. I _must_ have dropped _it somewhere.
2 Their house is very near the motorway. It _must_ be very noisy.
3 Sarah knows a lot about films. She _must_ go to the cinema a lot.
4 I left my bike outside the house last night and now it's gone. Somebody _must_ have taken it.
5 'How old is Ted?' 'He's older than me. He _must_ be at least 40.'
6 I didn't hear the phone ring. I _must_ be asleep.
7 A: You're going on holiday soon. You _must_ be looking forward to it.
   B: Yes, it will be really good to get away.
8 The police have closed the road, so we have to go a different way. There _must_ be an accident.
9 I'm sure you know this song. You _must_ have heard it before.
10 There is a man walking behind us. He has been walking behind us for the last 20 minutes. He _must_ be our landlord.

28.3 Read the situations and use the words in brackets to write sentences with must have and can't have.
1 We went to their house and rang the doorbell, but nobody answered. (they / go out)
   They _must_ have gone out.
2 Sarah hasn't contacted me. (she / get / my message)
   She can't have got my message.
3 The jacket you bought is very good quality. (it / very expensive)
4 I haven't seen our neighbours for ages. (they / go away)
5 I can't find my umbrella. (I / leave / it in the restaurant last night)
6 Amy was in a very difficult situation when she lost her job. (it / easy for her)
7 There was a man standing outside the cafe. (he / wait / for somebody)
8 Rachel did the opposite of what I asked her to do. (she / understand / what I said)
9 When I got back to my car, the door was unlocked. (I / forget / to lock it)
10 I was woken up in the night by the noise next door. (my neighbours / have / a party)
11 The light was red, but the car didn't stop. (the driver / see / the red light)
Study this example situation:

You are looking for Ben. Nobody is sure where he is, but you get some suggestions.

```
Where's Ben?
```

```
He _may_ be in his office. (= perhaps he is in his office)

He _might_ be having lunch. (= perhaps he is having lunch)

Ask Ann. She _might_ know. (= perhaps she knows)
```

We use **may** or **might** to say that something is possible. Usually you can use **may** or **might**, so you can say:

- It _may_ be true. or It _might_ be true. (= perhaps it is true)
- She _might_ know. or She _may_ know.

The negative forms are **may not** and **might not** (or **mighthn't**):

- It _may not_ be true. (= perhaps it isn't true)
- She _might not_ work here any more. (= perhaps she doesn't work here)

Study the structure:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I/you/he (etc.)</th>
<th>may</th>
<th>might</th>
<th>be (true / in his office etc.)</th>
<th>be (doing / working / having etc.)</th>
<th>know / work / want etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

For the past we use **may have (done)** or **might have (done)**:

- a: I wonder why Kate didn't answer her phone.
  - b: She _may have_ been asleep. (= perhaps she was asleep)
- a: I can't find my phone anywhere.
  - b: You _might have_ left it at work. (= perhaps you left it at work)
- a: Why wasn't Amy at the meeting yesterday?
  - b: She _might not have_ known about it. (= perhaps she didn't know)
- a: I wonder why David was in such a bad mood yesterday.
  - b: He _may not have been_ feeling well. (= perhaps he wasn't feeling well)

Study the structure:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I/you/he (etc.)</th>
<th>may</th>
<th>might</th>
<th>have (asleep / at home etc.)</th>
<th>have (doing / working / feeling etc.)</th>
<th>have known / had / wanted / left etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Could** is similar to **may** and **might**:

- It's a strange story, but it _could_ be true. (= it is possible that it's true)
- You _could have_ left your phone at work. (= it's possible that you left it there)

But **couldn't** (*negative*) is different from **may not** and **might not**. Compare:

- a: Sarah _couldn't have_ got my message. Otherwise she would have replied.
  (= it is not possible that she got my message)
- b: I wonder why Sarah hasn't replied to my message. I suppose she _might not have_ got it.
  (= it's possible that she didn't get it – so perhaps she did, perhaps she didn't)
Exercises

29.1 Write these sentences in a different way using **might**.
1. Perhaps Helen is in her office. _She might be in her office._
2. Perhaps Helen is busy.
3. Perhaps she is working.
4. Perhaps she wants to be alone.
5. Perhaps she was ill yesterday.
6. Perhaps she went home early.
7. Perhaps she had to go home early.
8. Perhaps she was working yesterday.

In sentences 9–11 use **might not**.
9. Perhaps she doesn’t want to see me.
10. Perhaps she isn’t working today.
11. Perhaps she wasn’t feeling well yesterday.

29.2 Complete each sentence with a verb in the correct form.
1. ‘Where’s Ben?’ ‘I’m not sure. He might be having lunch.’
2. ‘Who is that man with Anna?’ ‘I’m not sure. It might be her brother.’
3. a: Who was the man we saw with Anna yesterday? 
   b: I’m not sure. It may have been her brother.
4. a: What are those people doing by the side of the road? 
   b: I don’t know. I suppose they might be looking for a bus.
5. ‘Is Sarah here?’ ‘I can’t see her. She may not have arrived yet.’

29.3 Read the situation and make sentences from the words in brackets. Use **might**.
1. I can’t find Jeff anywhere. I wonder where he is.
   a: (he / go / shopping) _He might have gone shopping._
   b: (he / play / tennis) _He might be playing tennis._
2. I’m looking for Sophie. Do you know where she is?
   a: (she / watch / TV)
   b: (she / go / out)
3. I can’t find my umbrella. Have you seen it?
   a: (it / be / in the car)
   b: (you / leave / in the restaurant)
4. Why didn’t Dan answer the doorbell? I’m sure he was at home at the time.
   a: (he / go / to bed early)
   b: (he / not / hear / the doorbell)
   c: (he / be / in the shower)

29.4 Complete the sentences using **might not have ... or couldn’t have ...**.
1. a: Do you think Sarah got the message I sent her? 
   b: No, she would have replied. _She couldn’t have got it._
2. a: I was surprised Amy wasn’t at the meeting. Perhaps she didn’t know about it.
   b: That’s possible. _She might not have known about it._
3. a: I wonder why they haven’t replied to the email I sent. Do you think they received it? 
   b: Maybe not. They...
4. a: I wonder how the fire started. Was it an accident? 
   b: No, the police say it
5. a: Mike says he needs to see you. He tried to find you yesterday.
   b: Well, he...
6. a: The man you spoke to – are you sure he was American? 
   b: No, I’m not sure. He...

→ Additional exercises 16–18 (pages 311–13)
We use *may* and *might* to talk about possible actions or happenings in the future:

- I haven’t decided yet where to go on holiday. I *may* go to Ireland. (= perhaps I will go there)
- Take an umbrella with you. It *might* rain later. (= perhaps it will rain)
- The bus isn’t always on time. We *might* have to wait a few minutes. (= perhaps we will have to wait)

The negative forms are *may not* and *might not* (*mightn’t*):

- Amy *may not* go out tonight. She isn’t feeling well. (= perhaps she will not go out)
- There *might not be* enough time to discuss everything at the meeting. (= perhaps there will not be enough time)

Compare *will* and *may/might*:

- I’ll be late this evening. (for sure)
- I *may/might* be late this evening. (possible)

Usually you can use *may* or *might*. So you can say:

- I *may* go to Ireland. or I *might* go to Ireland.
- Jane *might* be able to help you. or Jane *may* be able to help you.

But we use only *might* (*not may*) when the situation is *not real*:

- If they paid me better, I *might* work harder. (not I *may* work)

The situation here is not real because they do *not* pay me well, so I’m not going to work harder.

There is a continuous form: *may/might be -ing*. Compare this with *will be -ing*:

- Don’t phone at 8.30. I’ll be watching the football on television.
- Don’t phone at 8.30. I *might be watching* (or I *may be watching*) the football on TV. (= perhaps I’ll be watching it)

We also use *may/might be -ing* for possible plans. Compare:

- I’m *going* to Ireland in July. (for sure)
- I *might be going* (or I *may be going*) to Ireland soon. (possible)

But you can also say ‘I *might go / I may go* …’ with little difference in meaning.

**Might as well**

Helen and Clare have just missed the bus. The buses run every hour.

What shall we do? Shall we walk?

We *might as well*. It’s a nice day and I don’t want to wait here for an hour.

We *might as well* do something = We should do it because there is no better alternative. There is no reason not to do it.

*May as well* is also possible.

- A: What time are you going out?
  - B: Well, I’m ready, so I *might as well* go now.
- Buses are so expensive these days, you *might as well* get a taxi. (= taxis are as good, no more expensive)
**Exercises**

**30.1** Write sentences with might.

1. Where are you going for your holidays? (to Ireland???)
   I haven't decided yet. I **might** go to Ireland.

2. What sort of car are you going to buy? (a Honda???)
   I'm not sure yet. I **might** get a Honda.

3. When is Tom coming to see us? (on Saturday???)
   He hasn’t said yet. He **might** come on Saturday.

4. Where are you going to hang that picture? (in the dining room???)
   I haven’t made up my mind yet. I **might** hang it in the dining room.

5. What is Tanya going to do when she leaves school? (go to university???)
   She’s still thinking about it. She **might** go to university.

**30.2** Complete the sentences using might + the following:

- bite
- break
- need
- rain
- slip
- wake

1. Take an umbrella with you when you go out. It **might** rain later.
2. Don't make too much noise. You **might** wake the baby.
3. Be careful of that dog. It **might** bite you.
4. Don’t throw that letter away. We **might** need it later.
5. Be careful. The footpath is very icy. You **might** slip.
6. Don’t let the children play in this room. They **might** break something.

**30.3** Complete the sentences. Use might be able to or might have to + one of the following:

- fix
- help
- leave
- meet
- sell
- work

1. Tell me about your problem. I **might** be able to help you.
2. I'm not free this evening, but I **might** be able to help you tomorrow.
3. I don’t know if I’ll be free on Sunday. I **might** fix it.
4. I can come to the meeting, but I **might** have to work before the end.
5. I’m short of money. I want to keep my car, but I **might** have to sell it.
6. A: There’s something wrong with my bike.
   B: Let me have a look. I **might** be able to fix it.

**30.4** Write sentences with might not.

1. I’m not sure that Liz will come to the party.
   Liz **might not** come to the party.

2. I’m not sure that I’ll go out this evening.
   I **might not** go out.

3. I’m not sure that we’ll be able to get tickets for the game.
   We **might not** be able to get tickets.

4. I’m not sure that Sam will be able to go out with us tonight.
   Sam **might not** be able to go out.

**30.5** Read the situations and make sentences with might as well.

1. You and a friend have just missed the bus. The buses run every hour.
   You say: We’ll have to wait an hour for the next bus. We **might as well** walk.

2. You’ve been invited to a party. You’re not very excited about it, but you decide to go.
   You say: I’m not doing anything else, so I **might as well** go to the party.

3. You’ve just painted your kitchen. You still have a lot of paint, so why not paint the bathroom too?
   You say: We **might as well** paint the bathroom too. There’s plenty of paint left.

4. You and a friend are at home. You’re bored. There’s a film on TV starting in a few minutes.
   You say: **We** **might as well** stay in and watch the film. There’s nothing else to do.
Have to and must

I have to do something = it is necessary to do it, I am obliged to do it:
- You can't turn right here. You have to turn left.
- I have to wear glasses for reading.
- Robert can’t come out with us this evening. He has to work late.
- Last week Tina broke her arm and had to go to hospital.
- I haven’t had to go to the doctor for ages.

We use do/does/did in questions and negative sentences (for the present and past simple):
- What do I have to do to get a new driving licence? (not What have I to do?)
- Karen doesn’t have to work Saturdays. (not Karen hasn’t to)
- Why did you have to leave early?

You can say I’ll have to …, I’m going to have to … and I might / I may have to …:
- They can’t fix my computer, so I’ll have to buy a new one. or I’m going to have to buy a new one.
- Tom might have to work late tomorrow. or Tom may have to work ...
 (= it’s possible that he will have to)

Must is similar to have to:
- It’s later than I thought. I must go. or I have to go.

You can use must or have to to give your own opinion (for example, to say what you think is necessary, or to recommend someone to do something):
- I haven’t spoken to Sue for ages. I must phone her. / I have to phone her.
  (= I say this is necessary)
- Mark is a really nice person. You must meet him. / You have to meet him.
  (I recommend this)

We use have to (not usually must) to say what someone is obliged to do. The speaker is not giving his/her own opinion:
- I have to work from 8.30 to 5.30 every day. (= a fact, not an opinion)
- Jane has to travel a lot for her work.

But must is used in written rules and instructions:
- Applications for the job must be received by 18 May.
- (exam instruction) Answer all the questions. You must write your answers in ink.

You cannot use must to talk about the past:
- We didn’t have much time. We had to hurry. (not we must hurry)

Mustn’t and don’t have to are completely different:

You mustn’t do something = it is necessary that you do not do it (so don’t do it):
- You must keep this a secret. You mustn’t tell anyone. (= don’t tell anyone)
- I promised I would be on time. I mustn’t be late. (= I must be on time)

You don’t have to do something = you don’t need to do it (but you can if you want):
- You don’t have to tell Tom what happened. I can tell him myself.
- I don’t have to be at the meeting, but I think I’ll go anyway.

You can use have got to instead of have to. So you can say:
- I’ve got to work tomorrow. or I have to work tomorrow.
- When has Helen got to go? or When does Helen have to go?
Exercises

31.1 Complete the sentences using have to / has to / had to.
1. Bill starts work at 5 a.m. He has to get up at four. (he / get up)
2. ‘I broke my arm last week.’ ‘Did you have to go to hospital?’ (you / go)
3. There was a lot of noise from the street. We had to close the window. (we / close)
4. Karen can’t stay for the whole meeting. She has to leave early. (she / leave)
5. How old are you? How old do you have to be to drive in your country? (you / be)
6. I don’t have much time. I have to go soon. (I / go)
7. How is Paul enjoying his new job? He is enjoying it a lot. (he / travel)
8. ‘I’m afraid I can’t stay long.’ ‘What time do you have to leave?’ (you / go)
9. ‘The bus was late again.’ ‘How long have you had to wait?’ (you / wait)
10. There was nobody to help me. I had to do everything by myself. (I / do)

31.2 Complete the sentences using have to + the verbs in the list. Some sentences are positive (I have to ... etc.) and some are negative (I don’t have to ... etc.):

ask do drive get up go make make pay show

1. I’m not working tomorrow, so I don’t have to get up early.
2. Steve didn’t know how to turn off the computer, so I had to show him.
3. Excuse me a moment — I have to make a phone call. I won’t be long.
4. I’m not too busy. I have a few things to do, but I don’t have to do them now.
5. I couldn’t find the street I wanted. I had to ask somebody for directions.
6. The car park is free. You don’t have to pay to park your car there.
7. A man was injured in the accident, but he didn’t have to go to hospital because it wasn’t serious.
8. Jane has a senior position in the company. She has to make important decisions.
9. When Patrick starts his new job next month, he has to drive 50 miles to work every day.

31.3 In some of these sentences, must is wrong or unnatural. Correct the sentences where necessary.

1. It’s later than I thought. I must go. OK (have to is also correct)
2. I must work every day from 8.30 to 5.30.
3. You must come and see us again soon.
4. Tom can’t meet us tomorrow. He must work.
5. I must work late yesterday evening.
6. I must get up early tomorrow. I have a lot to do.
7. Julia wears glasses. She must wear glasses since she was very young.

31.4 Complete the sentences with mustn’t or don’t/doesn’t have to.

1. I don’t want anyone to know about our plan. You mustn’t tell anyone.
2. Richard doesn’t have to wear a suit to work, but he usually does.
3. I can sleep late tomorrow morning because I don’t have to go to work.
4. Whatever you do, you mustn’t touch that switch. It’s very dangerous.
5. There’s a lift in the building, so we mustn’t climb the stairs.
6. You mustn’t forget what I told you. It’s very important.
7. Silvia doesn’t have to get up early, but she usually does.
8. Don’t make so much noise. We mustn’t wake the children.
9. I mustn’t eat too much. I’m supposed to be on a diet.
10. You mustn’t be a good player to enjoy a game of tennis.
Must, mustn’t, needn’t

Must and mustn’t

You **must** do something = it is necessary that you do it:
- Don’t tell anybody what I said. You **must** keep it a secret.
- We haven’t got much time. We **must** hurry.

You **mustn’t** do something = it is necessary that you **not** do it (so don’t do it):
- You **must** keep it a secret. You **mustn’t** tell anyone. (= don’t tell anyone)
- We **must** be very quiet. We **mustn’t** make any noise.

Needn’t and don’t need to

You **needn’t** do something = it’s not necessary to do it (but you can if you like):
- We’ve got plenty of time. We **needn’t** hurry. (= it is not necessary to hurry)
- Joe can stay here. He **needn’t** come with us. (= it is not necessary for him to come)

You can also use **don’t/doesn’t need to**:
- We **don’t** need to hurry.

Remember that we say **don’t need to do** / **doesn’t need to do**, but **needn’t do** (without to).

Needn’t have (done)

Study this example situation:

![Illustration](image)

Paul and Sue decided to go to a restaurant. But the restaurant was almost empty. They reserved a table. So they **needn’t have reserved** a table.

They **needn’t have reserved** a table. = They reserved a table, but this was not necessary.

Compare **needn’t** (do) and **needn’t have** (done):
- Everything will be OK. You **needn’t worry**. (it is not necessary)
- Everything was OK. You **needn’t have worried**. (you worried, but it was not necessary)

Needn’t have (done) and **didn’t need to** (do)

He **needn’t have done** something = he did it, but now we know that it was not necessary:
- Why did he get up at 5 o’clock? He **needn’t have got** up so early. He could have stayed in bed longer.

He **didn’t need to** do something = it was not necessary to do it. It doesn’t matter whether he did it or not:
- He **didn’t need to** get up early, so he didn’t.
- He **didn’t need to** get up early, but it was a beautiful morning, so he did.

He **didn’t have to** ... is also possible in these examples.
Exercises

32.1 Which is correct?

1 We haven’t got much time. We must / mustn’t hurry. (must is correct)
2 We’ve got plenty of time. We mustn’t / don’t need to hurry.
3 I have to talk to Gary. I must / mustn’t remember to call him.
4 I have to talk to Gary. I mustn’t / needn’t forget to call him.
5 There’s plenty of time for you to make up your mind. You mustn’t / don’t need to decide now.
6 We needn’t / mustn’t wash these tomatoes. They’ve already been washed.
7 This is a valuable book. You must / needn’t take good care of it and you mustn’t / don’t need to lose it.
8 a: What sort of house do you want to buy? Something big?
   b: Well, it mustn’t / needn’t be big – that’s not so important. But it must / mustn’t have a nice garden – that’s essential.

32.2 Complete the sentences. Use needn’t + one of these verbs:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Ask</th>
<th>Come</th>
<th>Explain</th>
<th>Leave</th>
<th>Walk</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1 We’ve got plenty of time. We needn’t leave yet.
2 I can manage the shopping alone. You needn’t come with me.
3 We needn’t walk all the way home. We can get a taxi.
4 Just help yourself if you’d like more to eat. You needn’t fill your plate first.
5 I understand the situation perfectly. You needn’t explain further.

32.3 Write two sentences for each situation. Use needn’t have in the first sentence and could have in the second (as in the example). For could have, see Unit 27.

1 Why did you rush? Why didn’t you take your time?
   You needn’t have rushed. You could have taken your time.

2 Why did you walk home? Why didn’t you take a taxi?

3 Why did you stay at a hotel? Why didn’t you stay with us?

4 Why did she phone me in the middle of the night? Why didn’t she wait until the morning?

5 Why did you shout at me? Why weren’t you more patient?

6 Why did you leave without saying anything? Why didn’t you say goodbye to me?

32.4 Correct the sentences where necessary.

1 We have plenty of time. We don’t need hurry. We don’t need to hurry.
2 You must keep it a secret. You mustn’t tell anybody else. OK.
3 I’ll be all right. You needn’t to worry about me.
4 You mustn’t wait for me. You go on and I’ll join you later.
5 You don’t need to keep these emails. You can delete them.
6 I needn’t have gone out, so I stayed at home.
7 I needn’t have bought eggs. We had some already.
You should do something = it is a good thing to do or the right thing to do. You can use should to
give advice or to give an opinion:
  □ You look tired. You should go to bed.
  □ The government should do more to improve education.
  □ ‘Should we invite Stephanie to the party?’ ‘Yes, I think we should.’

We often use should with I think / I don’t think / Do you think ... ?:
  □ I think the government should do more to improve education.
  □ I don’t think you should work so hard.
  □ ‘Do you think I should apply for this job?’ ‘Yes, I think you should.’

You shouldn’t do something = it isn’t a good thing to do:
  □ You shouldn’t believe everything you read in the newspapers.

Should is not as strong as must or have to:
  □ You should apologise. (= it would be a good thing to do)
  □ You must apologise. / You have to apologise. (= you have no alternative)

You can use should when something is not right or what you expect:
  □ Where’s Tina? She should be here by now. (= she isn’t here yet, and this is not normal)
  □ The price on this packet is wrong. It should be £2.50, not £3.50.
  □ That man on the motorbike should be wearing a helmet.

We also use should to say that we expect something to happen:
  □ Helen has been studying hard for the exam, so she should pass. (= I expect her to pass)
  □ There are plenty of hotels in the town. It shouldn’t be hard to find a place to stay. (= I don’t expect it to be hard)

You should have done something = you didn’t do it, but it would have been the right thing to do:
  □ You missed a great party last night. You should have come. Why didn’t you? (= you didn’t come, but it would have been good to come)
  □ I wonder why they’re so late. They should have got here long ago.

You shouldn’t have done something = you did it, but it was the wrong thing to do:
  □ I’m feeling sick. I shouldn’t have eaten so much. (= I ate too much)
  □ She shouldn’t have been listening to our conversation. It was private. (= she was listening)

Compare should (do) and should have (done):
  □ You look tired. You should go to bed now.
  □ You went to bed very late last night. You should have gone to bed earlier.

Ought to ...

You can use ought to instead of should in the sentences on this page. We say ‘ought to do’ (with to):
  □ Do you think I ought to apply for this job? (= Do you think I should apply ... ?)
  □ Jack ought not to go to bed so late. (= Jack shouldn’t go ...)
  □ It was a great party last night. You ought to have come.
  □ Helen has been studying hard for the exam, so she ought to pass.
For each situation, write a sentence with should or shouldn’t + one of the following:
- go away for a few days
- go to bed so late
- look for another job
- put some pictures on the walls
- take a photo
- use her car so much

1. Anna needs a change. She should go away for a few days.
2. Your salary is very low. You should look for another job.
3. Jack always finds it hard to get up. He should put some pictures on the walls.
4. What a beautiful view! You should take a photo.
5. Sue drives everywhere. She never walks. She shouldn’t use her car so much.
6. Dan’s room isn’t very interesting. He should go away for a few days.

Read the situations and write sentences with I think / I don’t think ... should ....

1. Joe and Catherine are planning to get married. You think it’s a bad idea. I don’t think they should get married.
2. Jane has a bad cold, but plans to go out tonight. You don’t think this is a good idea. You say to her: I don’t think she should go out.
3. Peter needs a job. He’s just seen an advert for a job which you think would be ideal for him, but he’s not sure whether to apply or not. You say to him: I think he should apply.
4. The government wants to increase taxes, but you don’t think this is a good idea. You say to them: I don’t think they should increase taxes.

Complete the sentences with should (have) + the verb in brackets.

1. Helen should pass the exam. She’s been studying very hard. (pass)
2. You missed a great party last night. You should have come. (come)
3. We don’t see you enough. You should come and see us more often. (come)
4. I’m in a difficult position. What do you think I should do now? (do)
5. I’m sorry that I didn’t take your advice. I should have done what you said. (do)
6. We lost the game yesterday, but we should have won. We were the better team. (win)
7. Tanya has a tennis match against Jane tomorrow. Jane should win – she’s much better than Tanya. (win)
8. ‘Is Joe here yet?’ ‘Not yet, but he should be here soon.’ (be)
9. We went the wrong way and got lost. We should have turned right, not left. (turn)

Read the situations and write sentences with should/shoudn’t. Some of the sentences are past and some are present.

1. I’m feeling sick. I ate too much. I shouldn’t have eaten so much.
2. That man on the motorbike isn’t wearing a helmet. That’s dangerous. He should be wearing a helmet.
3. When we got to the restaurant, there were no free tables. We hadn’t reserved one. We shouldn’t have gone there.
4. The notice says that the shop is open every day from 8.30. It is 9 o’clock now, but the shop isn’t open yet. The notice should have said it is open.
5. The speed limit is 30 miles an hour, but Kate is doing 50. She shouldn’t be doing 50 miles an hour.
6. Laura told me her address, but I didn’t write it down. Now I can’t remember the house number. I should have written it down.
7. I was driving behind another car. Suddenly, the driver in front stopped without warning and I drove into the back of his car. It wasn’t my fault. The driver in front should have stopped.
8. I walked into a wall. I was looking behind me. I wasn’t looking where I was going.
You can use **should** after:

- **insist**
- **recommend**
- **suggest**
- **demand**
- **propose**

- **I insisted** that he **should** apologise.
- Doctors **recommend** that everyone **should** eat plenty of fruit.
- **What do you suggest** we **should** do?
- **Many people are demanding** that something **should be done** about the problem.

**also**

- **It’s important/vital/necessary/essential** that … **should** … :
  - **It’s essential** that everyone **should** be here on time.

You can also leave out **should** in the sentences in section A. So you can say:

- **It’s essential** that everyone **be** here on time. (= … that everyone **should** be here)
- **I insisted** that he **apologise**. (= … that he **should** apologise)
- **What do you suggest** we **do**?
- **Many people are demanding** that something **be done** about the problem.

This form (be/do/apologise etc.) is called the **subjunctive**. It is the same as the **infinitive** (without to).

You can also use normal present and past tenses:

- **It’s essential** that everyone **is** here on time.
- **I insisted** that he **apologised**.

After **suggest**, you cannot use **to** … (‘to do / to buy’ etc.). You can say:

- **What do you suggest** we **should** do?
- or **What do you suggest** we **do**? (but not What do you suggest us to do?)

  - Jane won the lottery.
  - **I suggested** that she **should** buy a car with the money she’d won.
  - **I suggested** that she **buy** a car.
  - or **I suggested** that she **bought** a car. (but not I suggested her to buy)

You can also use **-ing** after **suggest** (What do you suggest **doing**?). See Unit 53.

You can use **should** after a number of adjectives, especially:

- **strange**
- **odd**
- **funny**
- **typical**
- **natural**
- **interesting**
- **surprised**
- **typical**

- **It’s strange** that he **should** be late. He’s usually on time.
- **I was surprised** that he **should** say such a thing.

You can say ‘**If something should** happen …’. For example:

- **We have no jobs at present, but if the situation should change,** we will contact you.

You can also begin with **should** (Should something happen …):

- **Should the situation change,** we will contact you.

This means the same as ‘**If the situation changes,** …’. With **should**, the speaker feels that the possibility is smaller.

You can use **I should** … / **I shouldn’t** … to give somebody advice. For example:

- ‘**Shall I leave now?**’ ‘No, I **should wait** a bit.’

Here, **I should wait** = I would wait if I were you, I advise you to wait.

More examples:

- ‘**I’m going out now. Is it cold out?**’ ‘Yes, I **should wear** a coat.’
- **I shouldn’t stay** up too late. You have to be up early tomorrow.
Exercises

34.1 Write a sentence (beginning in the way shown) that means the same as the first sentence.

1. 'I think it would be a good idea to see a specialist,' the doctor said to me.
   The doctor recommended that I should see a specialist.

2. 'You really must stay a little longer,' she said to me.
   She insisted that I stay a little longer.

3. 'Why don’t you visit the museum after lunch?' I said to them.
   I suggested that they visit the museum after lunch.

4. 'You must pay the rent by Friday,' the landlord said to us.
   The landlord demanded that we pay the rent by Friday.

5. 'Why don’t we go away for a few days?' Jack said to me.
   Jack suggested that we go away for a few days.

34.2 Are these sentences right or wrong?

1. a. Tom suggested that I should look for another job. OK
   b. Tom suggested that I look for another job. Wrong
   c. Tom suggested that I looked for another job. Wrong
   d. Tom suggested me to look for another job. Wrong

2. a. Where do you suggest I go for my holiday? Correct
   b. Where do you suggest me to go for my holiday? Wrong
   c. Where do you suggest I should go for my holiday? Correct

34.3 Complete the sentences using should + the following:

ask be leave listen say worry

1. It's strange that he should be late. He's usually on time.
2. It's funny that you should say the same thing. I was going to say the same thing.
3. It's only natural that parents should worry about their children.
4. Isn't it typical of Joe that he should leave without saying goodbye to anybody?
5. I was surprised that they should ask me for advice. What advice could I give them?
6. I'm going to give you all some essential information, so it's important that everybody should listen very carefully.

34.4 Use the words in brackets to complete these sentences. Use If ... should ...

1. We have no jobs at present. (the situation / change)
   If the situation should change, we will contact you.

2. I've hung the washing out to dry on the balcony. (it / rain)
   If it should rain, can you bring the washing in, please?

3. I think everything will be OK. (there / be / any problems)
   If there should be any problems, I'm sure we'll be able to solve them.

4. I don't want anyone to know where I'm going. (anyone / ask)
   If anyone should ask, just say that you don't know.

Write sentences 3 and 4 again, this time beginning with Should.

1. Should ____________________________, I'm sure we'll be able to solve them.
2. ____________________________, just say that you don't know.

34.5 (Section F) Complete the sentences using I should + the following:

get keep phone wait

1. 'Shall I leave now?' 'No, I should wait a bit.'
2. 'Shall I throw these things away?' 'No, keep them. You may need them.'
3. 'Shall I go and see Paul?' 'Yes, but get him first.'
4. 'Is it worth getting this TV repaired?' 'No, wait a new one.'
Had better (I'd better / you'd better etc.)

I’d better do something = it is advisable to do it. If I don’t do it, there will be a problem or a danger:
- I have to meet Amy in ten minutes. I’d better go now or I’ll be late.
- ‘Shall I take an umbrella?’ ‘Yes, you’d better. It might rain.’
- We’d better stop for petrol soon. The tank is almost empty.

The negative is I’d better not (= I had better not):
- ‘The jacket looks good on you. Are you going to buy it?’ ‘I’d better not. It’s too expensive.’
- You don’t look very well. You’d better not go out tonight.

Remember that:

The form is ‘had better’ (usually ‘I’d better / you’d better’ etc. in spoken English).
- I’d better phone Chris, hadn’t I?

Had is normally past, but the meaning of had better is present or future, not past.
- I’d better go to the bank now / tomorrow.

We say ‘I’d better do’ (not to do):
- It might rain. We’d better take an umbrella. (not We’d better to take)

Had better and should

Had better is similar to should, but not exactly the same. We use had better only for a specific situation, not for things in general. You can use should in all types of situations to give an opinion or give advice:
- It’s late. You’d better go. / You should go. (a specific situation)
- You’re always at home. You should go out more often. (in general – not ‘had better go’)

Also, with had better, there is always a danger or a problem if you don’t follow the advice.

Should means only ‘it is a good thing to do’. Compare:
- It’s a great film. You should go and see it. (but no problem if you don’t)
- The film starts at 8.30. You’d better go now or you’ll be late.

It’s time ...

You can say it’s time (for somebody) to …:
- It’s time to go home. / It’s time for us to go home.

But you can also say:
- It’s late. It’s time we went home.

When we use it’s time + past (we went / I did / they were etc.), the meaning is present, not past:
- It’s time they were here. Why are they so late? (not It’s time they are here)

It’s time somebody did something = they should have already done it or started it. We often use this structure to criticise or to complain:
- This situation can’t continue. It’s time you did something about it.
- He’s very selfish. It’s time he realised that he isn’t the most important person in the world.

You can also say It’s about time … … This makes the criticism stronger:
- Jack is a great talker. But it’s about time he did something instead of just talking.
Exercises

35.1 Read the situations and write sentences with **had better or had better not**. Use the words in brackets.

1. You’re going out for a walk with Tom. It looks as if it might rain. You say to Tom:
   (an umbrella) We’d better take an umbrella.

2. Oliver has just cut himself. It’s a bad cut. You say to him:
   (a plaster)

3. You and Kate plan to go to a restaurant this evening. It’s a popular restaurant. You say to Kate:
   (reserve) We...

4. Rebecca doesn’t look very well this morning – not well enough to go to work. You say to her:
   (work)

5. You received your phone bill four weeks ago, but you haven’t paid it yet. If you don’t pay soon, you could be in trouble. You say to yourself:
   (pay)

6. You want to ask your boss something, but he’s very busy and you know he doesn’t like to be disturbed. You say to a colleague:
   (disturb)

35.2 Put in **had better** where suitable. If **had better** is not suitable, use **should**.

1. I have an appointment in ten minutes. I’d better go now or I’ll be late.

2. It’s a great film. You should go and see it. You’ll really like it.

3. You better set your alarm. You’ll never wake up on time if you don’t.

4. When people are driving, they keep their eyes on the road.

5. I’m glad you came to see us. You better come more often.

6. She’ll be upset if we don’t invite her to the party, so we better invite her.

7. These biscuits are delicious. You better try one.

8. I think everybody better learn a foreign language.

35.3 Complete the sentences. Sometimes you need only one word, sometimes two.

1. a. I have a toothache. I’d better go to the dentist.
   b. John is expecting you to phone him. You better phone him now.
   c. ‘Shall I leave the window open?’ ‘No, you’d better not.’
   d. We’d better leave as soon as possible, we?

2. a. It’s time the government did something about the problem.
   b. It’s time something about the problem.
   c. I think it’s about time you thought about other people instead of only thinking about yourself.

35.4 Read the situations and write sentences with **It’s time (somebody did something)**.

1. You think the oil in the car needs to be changed. It hasn’t been changed for a long time.
   **It’s time we changed the oil in the car.**

2. You haven’t had a holiday for a very long time. You need one now.
   **It’s time I.**

3. You’re sitting on a train waiting for it to leave the station. It’s already five minutes late.

4. You enjoy having parties. You haven’t had one for a long time.

5. The company you work for has been badly managed for a long time. You think some changes should be made.

6. Andrew has been doing the same job for the last ten years. He should try something else.
Would

We use **would** (‘d) / **wouldn’t** when we imagine a situation or action (= we think of something that is not real):

- It **would be** nice to buy a new car, but we can’t afford it.
- I’d **love** to live by the sea.
- A: Shall I tell Chris what happened?  
  B: No, I **wouldn’t say** anything.  
  (= I wouldn’t say anything in your situation)

We use **would have** (done) when we imagine situations or actions in the past (= things that didn’t happen):

- They helped us a lot. I don’t know what we’d **have done**  
  (= we would have done) without their help.
- I didn’t tell Sam what happened. He **wouldn’t have been** pleased.

Compare **would** (do) and **would have** (done):

- I **would call** Lisa, but I don’t have her number.  
  (now)
- I **would have called** Lisa, but I didn’t have her number.  
  (past)
- I’m not going to invite them to the party. They **wouldn’t come** anyway.
  I didn’t invite them to the party. They **wouldn’t have come** anyway.

We often use **would** in sentences with **if** (see Units 38–40):

- I **would call** Lisa if I had her number.
- I **would have called** Lisa if I’d had her number.

Compare **will** (‘ll) and **would** (‘d):  

- I’ll **stay** a little longer. I’ve got plenty of time.
- I’d **stay** a little longer, but I really have to go now.  
  (so I can’t stay longer)
- I’ll **call** Lisa. I have her number.
- I’d **call** Lisa, but I don’t have her number.  
  (so I can’t call her)

Sometimes **would/wouldn’t** is the past of **will/won’t**. Compare:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Past</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>TOM:</strong> I’ll <strong>call</strong> you on Sunday.</td>
<td>Tom said he’d <strong>call</strong> me on Sunday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>AMY:</strong> I promise I <strong>won’t be</strong> late.</td>
<td>Amy promised that she <strong>wouldn’t be</strong> late.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LISA:</strong> Damn! The car <strong>won’t start</strong>.</td>
<td>Lisa was annoyed because her car <strong>wouldn’t start</strong>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Somebody **wouldn’t do** something = he/she refused to do it:

- I tried to warn him, but he **wouldn’t listen** to me.  
  (= he refused to listen)
- The car **wouldn’t start**.  
  (= it ‘refused’ to start)

You can also use **would** to talk about things that happened regularly in the past:

- When we were children, we lived by the sea. In summer, if the weather was fine, we **would** all get up early and go for a swim.  
  (= we did this regularly)
- Whenever Richard was angry, he **would** walk out of the room.

With this meaning, **would** is similar to **used to** (see Unit 18):

- Whenever Richard was angry, he **used to walk** out of the room.
Exercises

36.1 Write sentences about yourself. Imagine things you would like or wouldn’t like.
1 (a place you’d love to live) I’d love to live by the sea.
2 (a job you wouldn’t like to do)
3 (something you would love to do)
4 (something that would be nice to have)
5 (a place you’d like to go to)

36.2 Complete the sentences using would + the following verbs (in the correct form):
be be do do enjoy enjoy have pass stop

1 They helped us a lot. I don’t know what we would have done without their help.
2 You should go and see the film. You could have enjoyed it.
3 It’s a pity you couldn’t come to the party last night. You would have enjoyed it.
4 Shall I apply for the job or not? What would you expect in my position?
5 I was in a hurry when I saw you. Otherwise I wouldn’t have done to talk.
6 We took a taxi home last night, but got stuck in the traffic. It wouldn’t be quicker to walk.
7 Why don’t you go and see Clare? She is very pleased to see you.
8 Why didn’t you do the exam? I’m sure you wouldn’t have done it.
9 In an ideal world, everybody would have enough to eat.

36.3 Each sentence on the right follows a sentence on the left. Which follows which?

1 I’d like to go to Australia one day.
2 I wouldn’t like to live on a busy road.
3 I’m sorry the trip was cancelled.
4 I’m looking forward to going out tonight.
5 I’m glad we didn’t go out in the rain.
6 I’m not looking forward to the trip.

1 a It wouldn’t have been very nice.
2 b It would have been fun.
3 c It would be nice.
4 d It won’t be much fun.
5 e It wouldn’t be very nice.
6 f It will be fun.

36.4 Write sentences using promised + would/wouldn’t.
1 I wonder why Laura is late. She promised she wouldn’t be late.
2 I wonder why Steve hasn’t called me. He promised
3 Why did you tell Jane what I said? You
4 I’m surprised they didn’t wait for us. They

36.5 Complete the sentences. Use wouldn’t + a suitable verb.
1 I tried to warn him, but he wouldn’t listen to me.
2 I asked Amanda what had happened, but she
3 Paul was very angry about what I’d said and
4 Martina insisted on carrying all her luggage. She

36.6 These sentences are about things that often happened in the past. Complete the sentences using would + these verbs:

forget help shake share walk
1 Whenever Richard was angry, he would walk out of the room.
2 We used to live next to a railway line. Every time a train went past, the house
3 Alan was a very kind man. He would always help you if you had a problem.
4 Katherine was always very generous. She didn’t have much, but she
what she had with everyone else.
5 You could never rely on Joe. It didn’t matter how many times you reminded him to do
something, he would always...
Can/Could/Would you ... ? etc. (Requests, offers, permission and invitations)

Asking people to do things (requests)
We use can or could to ask people to do things:
- Can you wait a moment, please?
- Could you wait a moment, please?
- Helen, can you do me a favour?
- Excuse me, could you tell me how to get to the airport?

Note that we say Do you think you could ... ? (not can):
- Do you think you could take me to the station?

We also use will and would to ask people to do things (but can/could are more usual):
- Helen, will you do me a favour?
- Would you please be quiet? I'm trying to concentrate.

Asking for things
To ask for something, we use Can I have ... ? / Could I have ... ? or Can I get ... ?:
- (in a shop) Can I have these postcards, please? or Can I get these postcards, please?
- (during a meal) Could I have the salt, please?

May I have ... ? is also possible:
- May I have these postcards, please?

Asking to do things
To ask to do something, we use can, could or may:
- (on the phone) Hello, can I speak to Steve, please?
- 'Could I use your phone?' 'Sure.'
- Do you think I could borrow your bike?
- 'May I come in?' 'Yes, please do.'

May is more formal than can or could.

To ask to do something, you can also say Do you mind if I ... ? or Is it all right / Is it OK if I ... ?:
- 'Do you mind if I use your phone?' 'Sure. Go ahead.'
- 'Is it all right if I come in?' 'Yes, of course.'

Offering to do things
To offer to do something, we use Can I ... ?:
- 'Can I get you a cup of coffee?' 'That would be nice.'
- 'Can I help you?' 'No, it's all right. I can manage.'

Offering and inviting
To offer or to invite, we use Would you like ... ? (not Do you like):
- 'Would you like a cup of coffee?' 'Yes, please.'
- 'Would you like to eat with us tonight?' 'I'd love to.'

I'd like ... is a polite way of saying what you want:
- (at a tourist information office) I'd like some information about hotels, please.
- (in a shop) I'd like to try on this jacket, please.
Exercises

37.1 Read the situations and write questions beginning Can ... or Could ... .
1 You’re carrying a lot of things. You can’t open the door yourself. There’s a man standing near the door. You say to him: Could you open the door, please?
2 You phone Kate’s office, but somebody else answers. Kate isn’t there. You want to leave a message for her. You say:.................................................................................................................................
3 You’re a tourist. You want to go to the station, but you don’t know how to get there. You ask at your hotel:

4 You are in a clothes shop. You see some trousers you like and you want to try them on. You say to the shop assistant:

5 You have a car. You have to go the same way as Steve, who is on foot. You offer him a lift. You say to him:

37.2 Read the situation and write a question using the word in brackets.
1 You want to borrow your friend’s bike. What do you say to him?
(think) Do you think I could borrow your bike?
2 You are staying at a friend’s house and you would like to make some coffee. What do you say?
(all right) Is it all right if I make some coffee?
3 You’ve filled in some forms in English. You want your friend to check them for you. What do you ask?
(think)
4 You want to leave work early. What do you ask your boss?
(mind)
5 The woman in the next room is playing music. It’s very loud. You want her to turn it down.
What do you say to her?
(think)
6 You’re on a train. The window is open and you’re feeling cold. You’d like to close it, but first you ask the woman next to you.
(OK)
7 You’re still on the train. The woman next to you has finished reading her paper, and you’d like to have a look at it. You ask her.
(think)

37.3 What would you say in these situations?
1 Paul has come to see you in your flat. You offer him something to eat.
YOU: Would you like something to eat?
PAUL: No, thank you. I’ve just eaten.
2 You need help to charge the battery in your camera. You ask Kate.
YOU: I don’t know how to charge the battery.
KATE: Sure. It’s easy. All you have to do is this.
3 You’re on a bus. You have a seat, but an elderly man is standing. You offer him your seat.
YOU: .................................................................................................................................
MAN: Oh, that’s very kind of you. Thank you very much.
4 You’re the passenger in a car. Your friend is driving very fast. You ask her to slow down.
YOU: You’re making me very nervous.
DRIVER: Oh, I’m sorry. I didn’t realise I was going so fast.
5 You’ve finished your meal in a restaurant and now you want the bill. You ask the waiter:
YOU: .................................................................................................................................
WAITER: Sure. I’ll get it for you now.
6 A friend of yours is interested in one of your books. You invite him to borrow it.
FRIEND: This looks very interesting.
YOU: Yes, it’s a good book.
Compare these examples:

1. **Lisa:** Shall we go by bus or by train?
   **Jess:** If we go by bus, it will be cheaper.

   For Jess, it is possible that they will go by bus, so she says:
   If we go by bus, it will be ...

2. Lisa and Jess decide to go by train.
   Later, Jess talks to Joe.
   **Joe:** How are you going to travel?
   **Jess:** We’re going by train. If we went by bus, it would be cheaper, but the train is quicker.

   Now Jess knows they are not going to travel by bus, so she says:
   If we went by bus, it would be ...

When we imagine something that will not happen, or we don’t expect that it will happen, we use if + past (if we went / if there was / if you found etc.). But the meaning is not past:

- What would you do if you won a lot of money?
  (we don’t really expect this to happen)
- If there was (or were) an election tomorrow, who would you vote for?

For if ... was/were, see Unit 39C.

Compare if I find and if I found:

- I think I left my watch at your house. If you find it, can you call me?
- If you found a wallet in the street, what would you do with it?

We do not normally use would in the if-part of the sentence:

- I’d be very scared if somebody pointed a gun at me. (not if somebody would point)
- If we went by bus, it would be cheaper. (not If we would go)

But you can use if ... would when you ask somebody to do something:

- (from a formal letter) I would be grateful if you would let me know your decision as soon as possible.

In the other part of the sentence (not the if-part) we use would (‘d) / wouldn’t:

- What would you do if you were bitten by a snake?
- I’m not going to bed yet. I’m not tired. If I went to bed now, I wouldn’t sleep.
- **Would you mind** if I used your phone?

Could and might are also possible:

- If I won a lot of money, I might buy a house. (= it is possible that I would buy a house)
- If it stopped raining, we could go out. (= we would be able to go out)
Exercises

38.1 What do you say in these situations?

1. Of course you don’t expect to win the lottery. Which do you say?
   a. If I win the lottery, I’ll buy a big house.
   b. If I won the lottery, I’d buy a big house. (b is correct)

2. You’re not going to sell your car because it’s old and not worth much. Which do you say?
   a. If I sell my car, I won’t get much money for it.
   b. If I sold my car, I wouldn’t get much money for it.

3. You often see Sarah. A friend of yours wants to contact her. Which do you say?
   a. If I see Sarah, I’ll tell her to call you.
   b. If I saw Sarah, I’d tell her to call you.

4. You don’t expect that there will be a fire in the building. Which do you say?
   a. What will you do if there is a fire in the building?
   b. What would you do if there was a fire in the building?

5. You’ve never lost your passport. You can only imagine it.
   a. I don’t know what I’ll do if I lose my passport.
   b. I don’t know what I’d do if I lost my passport.

6. Somebody stops you and asks the way to a bank. Which do you say?
   a. If you go right at the end of this street, you’ll see a bank on your left.
   b. If you went right at the end of this street, you’d see a bank on your left.

7. You’re in a lift. There is an emergency button. Nobody is going to press it. Which do you say?
   a. What will happen if somebody presses that button?
   b. What would happen if somebody pressed that button?

38.2 Put the verb into correct form.

1. I’d be very scared if somebody pointed (point) a gun at me.
2. I can’t afford to buy a car. If I bought (buy) a car, I’d have to borrow the money.
3. Don’t lend Amy your car. If she asked (ask) me, I wouldn’t lend her mine.
4. If the computer factory closed down, many people would lose (lose) their jobs.
5. I don’t think Gary and Emma will get married. I would be amazed if they did.
6. What would you do if you were (be) in a lift and it stopped (stop) between floors?
7. If somebody gave (give) me £10,000, I would have (have) a very long holiday.

38.3 Write sentences beginning If ... .

1. We’ve decided not to catch the 10.30 train. (arrive too early)
   If we caught the 10.30 train, we’d arrive too early.
2. Kevin is not going to do his driving test now. (fail)
   If he failed
3. We’ve decided not to stay at a hotel. (cost too much)
   If
4. Sally isn’t going to leave her job. (not / get another one)
5. We’ve decided not to invite Ben to the party. (have to invite his friends too)
6. I’m not going to tell him what happened. (not / believe me)

38.4 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

1. If I won a lot of money, I’d buy a house.
2. I’d be very angry if
3. If you bought a car,
4. I’d be surprised if
5. Would you mind if
Study this example situation:

Sarah wants to phone Paul, but she can’t do this because she doesn’t know his number. She says:

If I knew his number, I would phone him.

Sarah says: If I knew his number .... This tells us that she doesn’t know his number. She is imagining the situation. The real situation is that she doesn’t know his number.

When we imagine a situation like this, we use if + past (if I knew / if you were / if we didn’t etc.). But the meaning is present, not past:

- There are many things I’d like to do if I had more time. (but I don’t have time)
- If I didn’t want to go to the party, I wouldn’t go. (but I want to go)
- We wouldn’t have any money if we didn’t work. (but we work)
- If you were in my position, what would you do?
- It’s a pity he can’t drive. It would be useful if he could.

We use the past in the same way after wish (I wish I knew / I wish you were etc.). We use wish to say that we regret something, that something is not as we would like it to be:

- I wish I knew Paul’s phone number. (= I don’t know it and I regret this)
- Do you ever wish you could fly? (you can’t fly)
- It rains a lot here. I wish it didn’t rain so much.
- It’s very crowded here. I wish there weren’t so many people. (there are a lot of people)
- I wish I didn’t have to work tomorrow, but unfortunately I do.

If I were / if I was

After if and wish, you can use were instead of was (if I were / I wish it were etc.).

If I was / I wish it was are also possible. So you can say:

- If I were you, I wouldn’t buy that coat. or If I was you, ...
- I’d go for a walk if it weren’t so cold. or ... if it wasn’t so cold.
- I wish she were here. or I wish she was here.

We do not normally use would in the if-part of the sentence or after wish:

- If I were rich, I would travel a lot. (not if I would be rich)
- Who would you ask if you needed help? (not if you would need)
- I wish I had something to read. (not I wish I would have)

Sometimes wish ... would is possible: I wish you would listen. See Unit 41.

Could sometimes means 'would be able to' and sometimes 'was/were able to':

- She could get a better job if she could speak English. (she could get = she would be able to get)
- I wish I could help you. (I wish I could = I wish I was able)
Exercises

39.1 Put the verb into the correct form.
1 If I knew his number, I would phone him.
2 I wouldn't buy that coat if I were you.
3 I'd help you if I could, but I'm afraid I can't.
4 We don't need a car at present, but we would need a car if we lived in the country.
5 If we had the choice, we'd live in the country.
6 This soup isn't very good. It would taste better if it wasn't so salty.
7 I wouldn't mind living in England if the weather were better.
8 If I were you, I wouldn't wait.
9 You're always tired. If you didn't go to bed so late every night, you wouldn't be tired all the time.
10 I think there are too many cars. If there weren't so many cars, there wouldn't be so much pollution.

39.2 Write a sentence with if ... for each situation.
1 We don't see you very often because you live so far away.
   If you didn't live so far away, we'd see you more often.
2 It's a nice book but it's too expensive, so I'm not going to buy it.
   I'd buy it if it wasn't so expensive.
3 We don't go out very often – we can't afford it.
   We'd go out more often if we could.
4 I can't meet you tomorrow – I have to work late.
   If I didn't have to work, we could meet.
5 It would be nice to have lunch outside but it's raining, so we can't.
   We could have lunch outside if it weren't raining.
6 I don't want his advice, and that's why I'm not going to ask for it.

39.3 Write sentences beginning I wish ...
1 I don't know many people (and I'm lonely). I wish I knew more people.
2 I don't have a computer (and I need one). I wish I had a computer.
3 Helen isn't here (and I need to see her). I wish Helen were here.
4 It's cold (and I hate cold weather). I wish it were warmer.
5 I live in a big city (and I don't like it). I wish I lived in a small town.
6 I can't go to the party (and I'd like to). I wish I could go.
7 I have to get up early tomorrow (but I'd like to sleep late).

39.4 Write your own sentences beginning I wish ...
1 (somewhere you'd like to be now – on the beach, in New York, in bed etc.)
   I wish I were there.
2 (something you'd like to have – a motorbike, more friends, lots of money etc.)
   I wish I had...
3 (something you'd like to be able to do – sing, travel more, cook etc.)
   I wish I could...
4 (something you'd like to be – beautiful, strong, younger etc.)
   I wish I were...
If I had known …  I wish I had known …

Study this example situation:

Last month Gary was in hospital for a few days. Rachel didn’t know this, so she didn’t go to visit him. They met a few days ago.

Rachel said:

If I’d known you were in hospital, I would have gone to see you.

Rachel said: If I’d known (= If I had known) you were in hospital. This tells us that she didn’t know.

We use if + had (‘d) … to talk about the past (if I had known/been/done etc.):

- I didn’t see you when you passed me in the street. If I’d seen you, of course I would have said hello. (but I didn’t see you)
- I didn’t go out last night. I would have gone out if I hadn’t been so tired. (but I was tired)
- If he had been looking where he was going, he wouldn’t have walked into the wall. (but he wasn’t looking)
- The view was wonderful. If I’d had a camera with me, I would have taken some pictures. (but I didn’t have a camera)

Compare:

- I’m not hungry. If I was hungry, I would eat something. (now)
- I wasn’t hungry. If I had been hungry, I would have eaten something. (past)

Do not use would in the if-part of the sentence. We use would in the other part of the sentence:

- If I had seen you, I would have said hello. (not If I would have seen you)

Note that ‘d can be would or had:

- If I’d seen you, (I’d seen = I had seen)
- I’d have said hello. (I’d have said = I would have said)

We use had (done) in the same way after wish. I wish something had happened = I am sorry that it didn’t happen:

- I wish I’d known that Gary was ill. I would have gone to see him. (but I didn’t know)
- I feel sick. I wish I hadn’t eaten so much cake. (I ate too much cake)
- Do you wish you’d studied science instead of languages? (you didn’t study science)

Do not use would have … after wish:

- The weather was cold when we were on holiday. I wish it had been warmer. (not I wish it would have been)

Compare would (do) and would have (done):

- If I’d gone to the party last night, I would be tired now. (I am not tired now – present)
- If I’d gone to the party last night, I would have met lots of people. (I didn’t meet lots of people – past)

Compare would have, could have and might have:

- If the weather hadn’t been so bad, we would have gone out.
- we could have gone out. (= we would have been able to go out)
- we might have gone out. (= perhaps we would have gone out)
Exercises

40.1 Put the verb into the correct form.

1. I didn’t see you when you passed me in the street. If I’d seen (I/see) you, I would have said (I/say) hello.

2. Sam got to the station just in time to catch the train to the airport. If (he/miss) the train, (he/miss) his flight too.

3. I’m glad that you reminded me about Rachel’s birthday. (I/forget) if (you/not/remind) me.

4. I wanted to send you an email, but I didn’t have your email address. If (I/have) your address, (I/send) you an email.

5. a: How was your trip? Was it good?
   b: It was OK, but (we/enjoy) it more if the weather (be) better.

6. I took a taxi to the hotel, but the traffic was bad. (it/be) quicker if (I/walk).

7. I’m not tired. If (I/be) tired, I’d go home now.

8. I wasn’t tired last night. If (I/be) tired, I would have gone home earlier.

40.2 For each situation, write a sentence beginning with If.

1. I wasn’t hungry, so I didn’t eat anything. If I’d been hungry, I would have eaten something.

2. The accident happened because the road was icy. If the road (be) icy, the accident (happen).

3. I didn’t know that Joe had to get up early, so I didn’t wake him up. If I (know) that he had to get up early, I’d have woken him up.

4. Unfortunately I lost my phone, so I couldn’t call you. If (I/have) my phone, I would have called you.

5. Karen wasn’t injured in the crash because she was wearing a seat belt.

6. You didn’t have breakfast – that’s why you’re hungry now.

7. I didn’t get a taxi because I didn’t have enough money.

40.3 Imagine that you are in these situations. For each situation, write a sentence with I wish.

1. You’ve eaten too much and now you feel sick. 
   You say: I wish I hadn’t eaten so much.

2. There was a job advertised in the paper. You decided not to apply for it. Now you think that your decision was wrong.
   You say: I wish I

3. When you were younger, you never learned to play a musical instrument. Now you regret this.
   You say:

4. You’ve painted the gate red. Now you think that red was the wrong colour.
   You say:

5. You are walking in the country. You’d like to take some pictures, but you didn’t bring your camera.
   You say:

6. You have some unexpected guests. They didn’t phone you first to say they were coming. You are very busy and you are not prepared for them.
   You say (to yourself):
Wish

You can say 'I wish you luck / all the best / a happy birthday' etc.: 

- I wish you all the best in the future.
- I saw Mark before the exam and he wished me luck.

We say 'wish somebody something' (luck / a happy birthday etc.). But you cannot say 'I wish that something happens'. We use hope in this situation. For example:

- I'm sorry you're not well. I hope you feel better soon. (not I wish you feel)

Compare I wish and I hope:

- I wish you a pleasant stay here.
- I hope you have a pleasant stay here. (not I wish you have)

We also use wish to say that we regret something, that something is not as we would like it. When we use wish in this way, we use the past (knew/lived etc.), but the meaning is present:

- I wish I knew what to do about the problem. (I don't know and I regret this)
- I wish you didn't have to go so soon. (you have to go)
- Do you wish you lived near the sea? (you don't live near the sea)
- Jack's going on a trip to Mexico soon. I wish I was going too. (I'm not going)

To say that we regret something in the past, we use wish + had ... (had known/had said) etc.:

- I wish I'd known about the party. I would have gone if I'd known. (I didn't know)
- It was a stupid thing to say. I wish I hadn't said it. (I said it)

For more examples, see Units 39 and 40.

I wish I could (do something) = I regret that I cannot do it:

- I'm sorry I have to go. I wish I could stay longer. (but I can't)
- I've met that man before. I wish I could remember his name. (but I can't)

I wish I could have (done something) = I regret that I could not do it:

- I hear the party was great. I wish I could have gone. (but I couldn't go)

You can say 'I wish (somebody) would (do something)'. For example:

- I wish it would stop raining.
  It's been raining all day. Tanya doesn't like it. She says: I wish it would stop raining.
  
  Tanya would like the rain to stop, but this will probably not happen.

- I wish somebody would buy me a car.
  but I wish I had a car. (not I wish I would have)

We often use I wish ... would to complain about a situation:

- The phone has been ringing for five minutes. I wish somebody would answer it.
- I wish you'd do (= you would do) something instead of just sitting and doing nothing.

You can use I wish ... wouldn't ... to complain about things that people do repeatedly:

- I wish you wouldn't keep interrupting me. (= please don't interrupt me)

We use I wish ... would ... to say that we want something to happen. But we do not use I wish ... would ... to say how we would like things to be. Compare:

- I wish Sarah would come. (= I want her to come)
  but I wish Sarah was (or were) here now. (not I wish Sarah would be)
  
- I wish somebody would buy me a car.
  but I wish I had a car. (not I wish I would have)
Exercises

41.1 Put in wish(ed) or hope(d).
1 I wish you a pleasant stay here.
2 Enjoy your holiday. I hope you have a great time.
3 Goodbye. I hope you all the best.
4 We said goodbye to each other and hoped each other luck.
5 We're going to have a picnic tomorrow, so I hope the weather is nice.
6 I hope you luck in your new job. I hope it works out well for you.

41.2 What do you say in these situations? Write sentences with I wish ... would ....
1 It's raining. You want to go out, but not in the rain.
   You say: I wish it would stop raining.
2 You're waiting for Jane. She's late and you're getting impatient.
   You say to yourself: I wish ....
3 You're looking for a job – so far without success. Nobody will give you a job.
   You say: I wish somebody ....
4 You can hear a baby crying. It's been crying for a long time and you're trying to study.
   You say: ....
5 Brian has been wearing the same clothes for years. You think he needs some new clothes.
   You say to Brian:

   For the following situations, write sentences with I wish ... wouldn't ...
6 Your friend drives very fast. You don't like this.
   You say to your friend: I wish you
7 Joe leaves the door open all the time. This annoys you.
   You say to Joe:
8 A lot of people drop litter in the street. You don't like this.
   You say: I wish people ...

41.3 Are these sentences right or wrong? Correct them where necessary.
1 I wish Sarah would be here now. I wish Sarah were here now.
2 I wish you would listen to me. I wish you
3 I wish I would have more free time. I wish I have more free time.
4 I wish our flat would be a bit bigger. I wish our flat were a bit bigger.
5 I wish the weather would change. I wish the weather will change.
6 I wish you wouldn't complain all the time. I wish you wouldn't complain all the time.
7 I wish everything wouldn't be so expensive. I wish everything wasn't so expensive.

41.4 Put the verb into the correct form.
1 It was a stupid thing to say. I wish I hadn't said it. (I / not / say)
2 I'm fed up with this rain. I wish it would stop. (it / stop)
3 It's a difficult question. I wish I knew the answer. (I / know)
4 I should have listened to you. I wish I had taken your advice. (I / take)
5 You're lucky to be going away. I wish they were coming with you. (I / can / come)
6 I have no energy at the moment. I wish we weren't so tired. (I / not / be)
7 Aren't they ready yet? I wish they were. (they / hurry up)
8 It would be nice to stay here longer. I wish we weren't going now. (we / not / have)
9 When we were in London last year, we didn't have time to see all the things we wanted to see.
   I wish we could stay longer. (we / can / stay)
10 It's freezing today. I wish it wasn't so cold. I hate cold weather. (it / not / be)
11 Joe still doesn't know what he wants to do. I wish he could decide. (he / decide)
12 I really didn't enjoy the party. I wish we hadn't gone. (we / not / go)
Passive 1 (is done / was done)

Study this example:

This house **was built** in 1961.

**Was built** is passive.

Compare active and passive:

Somebody **built** this house in 1961. (active)

This house **was built** in 1961. (passive)

When we use an active verb, we say what the subject does:

- My grandfather was a builder. **He built** this house in 1961.
- It's a big company. **It employs** two hundred people.

When we use a passive verb, we say what happens to the subject:

- 'How old is this house?' **It was built** in 1961.
- Two hundred people are **employed** by the company.

When we use the passive, who or what causes the action is often unknown or unimportant:

- A lot of money **was stolen** in the robbery. (somebody stole it, but we don’t know who)
- **Is** this room **cleaned** every day? (does somebody clean it? – it’s not important who)

If we want to say who does or what causes the action, we use by:

- This house was built **by my grandfather**.
- Two hundred people are employed **by the company**.

The passive is be (is/was etc.) + past participle (done/cleaned/seen etc.):

- (be) done
- (be) cleaned
- (be) damaged
- (be) built
- (be) seen etc.

For irregular past participles (done/seen/known etc.), see Appendix 1.

Study the active and passive forms of the present simple and past simple:

**Present simple**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>clean(s) / see(s) etc.</td>
<td>am/is/are + cleaned/seen etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Somebody **cleaned** this room every day.

This room **is cleaned** every day.

**Past simple**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cleaned/saw etc.</td>
<td>was/were + cleaned/seen etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Somebody **cleaned** this room yesterday.

This room **was cleaned** yesterday.

- We **were woken** up by a loud noise during the night.
- 'Did you go to the party?' ‘No, I **wasn’t invited**.’
- How much money **was stolen** in the robbery?
Exercises

42.1 Complete the sentences using one of these verbs in the correct form, present or past:

- cause
- overtake
- show
- hold
- invite
- translate
- make
- surround
- write

1. Many accidents are caused by dangerous driving.
2. Cheese is made from milk.
3. The roof of the building was surrounded in a storm a few days ago.
4. You were invited to the wedding. Why didn’t you go?
5. A cinema is a place where films are shown.
6. In the United States, elections for president are held every four years.
7. Originally the book was written in Spanish, and a few years ago it was translated into English.
8. Although we were driving fast, we were overtaken by a lot of other cars.
9. You can’t see the house from the road. It is surrounded by trees.

42.2 Write questions using the passive. Some are present and some are past.

1. Ask about glass. (how / make?) How is glass made?
2. Ask about television. (when / invent?) When was television invented?
3. Ask about mountains. (how / form?) How do mountains form?
4. Ask about antibiotics. (when / discover?) When were antibiotics discovered?
5. Ask about silver. (what / use for?) What is silver used for?

42.3 Put the verb into the correct form, present simple or past simple, active or passive.

1. It’s a big factory. Five hundred people are employed there.
2. Did somebody clean this room yesterday?
3. Water covers most of the earth’s surface.
4. How much of the earth’s surface is covered by water?
5. The park gates are locked at 6.30 p.m. every evening.
6. The letter was sent a week ago and it arrived yesterday.
7. The boat hit a rock and sank quickly. Fortunately everybody was rescued.
8. Robert’s parents died when he was very young. He and his sister were brought up by their grandparents.
9. I was born in London, but I grew up in Canada.
10. While I was on holiday, my camera was stolen from my hotel room.
11. How do people learn languages? How are languages learned?
12. People warned us not to go out alone. Were you warned not to go out alone?

42.4 Rewrite these sentences. Instead of using somebody, they, people etc., write a passive sentence.

1. Somebody cleans the room every day. The room is cleaned every day.
2. They cancelled all flights because of fog. All flights were cancelled because of fog.
3. People don’t use this road much. This road isn’t used much by people.
4. Somebody accused me of stealing money. I was accused of stealing money.
5. How do people learn languages? How are languages learned?
6. People warned us not to go out alone. We were warned not to go out alone.
Passive 2 (be done / been done / being done)

Study the following active and passive forms:

**Infinitive**
- **Active**: (to) do/clean/see etc.
- **Passive**: (to) be + done/cleaned/seen etc.

Somebody will clean this room later. This room will be cleaned later.

- ☐ The situation is serious. Something must be done before it's too late.
- ☐ A mystery is something that can't be explained.
- ☐ The music was very loud and could be heard from a long way away.
- ☐ A new supermarket is going to be built next year.
- ☐ Please go away. I want to be left alone.

**Perfect infinitive**
- **Active**: (to) have + done/cleaned/seen etc.
- **Passive**: (to) have been + done/cleaned/seen etc.

Somebody should have cleaned the room. The room should have been cleaned.

- ☐ I should have received the letter by now. It might have been sent to the wrong address.
- ☐ If you had locked the car, it wouldn’t have been stolen.
- ☐ There were some problems at first, but they seem to have been solved.

**Present perfect**
- **Active**: have/has + done etc.
- **Passive**: have/has been + done etc.

The room looks nice. Somebody has cleaned it. The room looks nice. It has been cleaned.

- ☐ Have you heard? The trip has been cancelled.
- ☐ Have you ever been bitten by a dog?
- ☐ ‘Are you going to the party?’ ‘No, I haven’t been invited.’

**Past perfect**
- **Active**: had + done etc.
- **Passive**: had been + done etc.

The room looked nice. Somebody had cleaned it. The room looked nice. It had been cleaned.

- ☐ The vegetables didn’t taste good. They had been cooked too long.
- ☐ The car was three years old, but hadn’t been used very much.

**Present continuous**
- **Active**: am/is/are + (doing)
- **Passive**: am/is/are + being (done)

Somebody is cleaning the room at the moment. The room is being cleaned at the moment.

- ☐ There’s somebody walking behind us. I think we are being followed.
- ☐ (in a shop) ‘Can I help you?’ ‘No, thanks. I’m being served.’

**Past continuous**
- **Active**: was/were + (doing)
- **Passive**: was/were + being (done)

Somebody was cleaning the room when I arrived. The room was being cleaned when I arrived.

- ☐ There was somebody walking behind us. I think we were being followed.
### 43.1 What do these words mean? Use it can ... or it can’t ... . Use a dictionary if necessary.

If something is

1. washable, it can be washed.
2. unbreakable, it is.
3. edible, it.
4. unusable, it can’t.
5. invisible, it can’t.
6. portable, it can.

### 43.2 Complete these sentences with the following verbs (in the correct form):

- arrest
- carry
- cause
- do
- make
- repair
- send
- spend
- wake up

Sometimes you need have (might have, should have etc.).

1. The situation is serious. Something must be done before it’s too late.
2. I should have received the letter by now. It might have been sent to the wrong address.
3. A decision will not be made until the next meeting.
4. Do you think that more money should have been spent on education?
5. This road is in very bad condition. It should have been repaired a long time ago.
6. The injured man couldn’t walk and had to be carried.
7. I told the hotel receptionist I wanted to be sent to the airport at 6.30 the next morning.
8. If you hadn’t pushed the policeman, you wouldn’t have been arrested.
9. It’s not certain how the fire started, but it might have been caused by an electrical fault.

### 43.3 Rewrite these sentences. Instead of using somebody or they etc., write a passive sentence.

1. Somebody has cleaned the room.
   The room has been cleaned.

2. Somebody is using the computer right now.
   The computer is being used.

3. I didn’t realise that somebody was recording our conversation.
   I didn’t realise that we were being recorded.

4. When we got to the stadium, we found that they had cancelled the game.
   When we got to the stadium, we found that the game had been cancelled.

5. They are building a new ring road round the city.
   A new ring road is being built round the city.

### 43.4 Make sentences from the words in brackets. Sometimes the verb is active, sometimes passive.

1. There’s somebody behind us. (I think / we / follow) I think we’re being followed.
2. This room looks different. (you / paint / the walls?) Have you painted the walls?
3. My car has disappeared. (it / steal!) It has been stolen.
4. My umbrella has disappeared. (somebody / take) Somebody took it.
5. Sam gets a higher salary now. (he / promote) He has been promoted.
6. Ann can’t use her office this week. (it / redecorate) It has been redecorated.
7. There was a problem with the photocopier yesterday, but now it’s OK.
   (it / work) It has been repaired again.
8. When I went into the room, I saw that the table and chairs were not in the same place.
   (the furniture / move) The furniture was moved.
9. A neighbour of mine disappeared six months ago. (he / not / see / since then)
   He hasn’t been seen since then.
10. I wonder how Jane is these days. (I / not / see / for ages)
    I haven’t seen her for ages.
11. A friend of mine was mugged on his way home a few nights ago. (you / ever / mug?)
I was offered ... / we were given ... etc.

Some verbs can have two objects. For example, give:
- Somebody gave the police the information. (= somebody gave the information to the police)

So it is possible to make two passive sentences:
- The police were given the information. or
- The information was given to the police.

Other verbs which can have two objects are:
- ask
- offer
- pay
- show
- teach
- tell

When we use these verbs in the passive, most often we begin with the person:
- I've been offered the job, but I don't think I'll accept it. (= they have offered me the job)
- You will be given plenty of time to decide. (= we will give you plenty of time)
- I didn't see the original document but I was shown a copy. (= somebody showed me.)
- Tim has an easy job - he's paid a lot of money to do very little. (= they pay him a lot)

I don't like being ...

The passive of doing/seeing etc. is being done / being seen etc. Compare:

active  I don’t like people telling me what to do.
passive I don’t like being told what to do.

- I remember being taken to the zoo when I was a child. (= I remember somebody taking me to the zoo)
- Steve hates being kept waiting. (= he hates people keeping him waiting)
- We managed to climb over the wall without being seen. (= without anybody seeing us)

I was born ...

We say ‘I was born ...’ (not I am born):
- I was born in Chicago.
- Where were you born? (not Where are you born?)

but
- How many babies are born every day?

Get

You can use get instead of be in the passive:
- There was a fight at the party, but nobody got hurt. (= nobody was hurt)
- I don’t get invited to many parties. (= I'm not invited)
- I’m surprised Liz didn’t get offered the job. (= Liz wasn’t offered the job)

We use get only when things happen. For example, you cannot use get in these sentences:
- Jessica is liked by everybody. (not gets liked – this is not a ‘happening’)
- Peter was a mystery man. Very little was known about him. (not got known)

We use get mainly in informal spoken English. You can use be in all situations.

We also use get in the following expressions (which are not passive in meaning):
- get married, get divorced
- get lost (= not know where you are)
- get dressed (= put on your clothes)
- get changed (= change your clothes)
Exercises

44.1 Write these sentences in another way, beginning in the way shown.
1 They didn’t give me the information I needed.
   I wasn’t given the information I needed.
2 They asked me some difficult questions at the interview.
   I
3 Amy’s colleagues gave her a present when she retired.
   Amy
4 Nobody told me about the meeting.
   I wasn’t
5 How much will they pay you for your work?
   How much will you
6 I think they should have offered Tom the job.
   I think Tom
7 Has anybody shown you what to do?
   Have you

44.2 Complete the sentences using being + the following verbs (in the correct form):
give invite keep knock down stick treat

1 Steve hates being kept waiting.
2 We went to the party without
3 I like giving presents and I also like them.
4 It’s a busy road and I don’t like crossing it. I’m afraid of
5 I’m an adult. I don’t like like a child.
6 You can’t do anything about in a traffic jam.

44.3 When were they born? Choose five of these people and write a sentence for each.
(Two of them were born in the same year.)
Ludwig van Beethoven Mahatma Gandhi Elvis Presley 1452 1869 1935
Walt Disney Michael Jackson William Shakespeare 1564 1901 1958
Galileo Martin Luther King Leonardo da Vinci 1770 1929

1 Walt Disney was born in 1901.
2
3
4
5
6
7 And you? I

44.4 Complete the sentences using get/got + the following verbs (in the correct form):
ask damage hurt pay steal sting stop use

1 There was a fight at the party, but nobody got hurt.
2 Alex by a bee while he was sitting in the garden.
3 These tennis courts don’t very often. Not many people want to play.
4 I used to have a bicycle, but it a few months ago.
5 Rachel works hard but doesn’t very much.
6 Last night I by the police as I was driving home. One of the lights on my car wasn’t working.
7 Please pack these things very carefully. I don’t want them to.
8 People often want to know what my job is. I that question a lot.
It is said that ... He is said to ...

He is supposed to ...

Study this example situation:

George is very old. Nobody knows exactly how old he is, but:

*It is said that* he is 108 years old.

*or*  *He is said to be* 108 years old.

Both these sentences mean: 'People say that he is 108 years old.'

You can use these structures with a number of other verbs, especially:

- alleged
- believed
- considered
- expected
- known
- reported
- thought
- understood

Compare the two structures:

- Cathy loves running.
  *It is said that* she runs ten miles a day.
  *or*  *She is said to run* ten miles a day.

- The police are looking for a missing boy.
  *It is believed that* the boy is wearing a white sweater and blue jeans.
  *or*  *The boy is believed to be* wearing a white sweater and blue jeans.

- The strike started three weeks ago.
  *It is expected that* the strike will end soon.
  *or*  *The strike is expected to end* soon.

- A friend of mine has been arrested.
  *It is alleged that* he hit a policeman.
  *or*  *He is alleged to have hit* a policeman.

- The two houses belong to the same family.
  *It is said that* there is a secret tunnel between them.
  *or*  *There is said to be* a secret tunnel between them.

These structures are often used in news reports. For example, in a report about an accident:

- *It is reported that* two people were injured in the explosion.
  *or*  *Two people are reported to have been injured* in the explosion.

(Be) supposed to

Sometimes *(it is)* supposed to ... = *(it is)* said to ...

- I want to see that film. *It's supposed to be* good. (= it is said to be good)
- Fireworks are supposed to have been invented in China. Is it true?

But sometimes supposed to has a different meaning. We use supposed to to say what is intended, arranged or expected. Often this is different from the real situation:

- The plan is supposed to be a secret, but everybody seems to know about it.
  (= the plan is intended to be a secret)
- What are you doing at work? You're supposed to be on holiday.
  (= you arranged to be on holiday)
- Our guests were supposed to come at 7.30, but they were late.
- Jane was supposed to phone me last night, but she didn’t.
- I’d better hurry. I’m supposed to be meeting Chris in ten minutes.

You’re not supposed to do something = it is not allowed or advisable:

- You’re not supposed to park your car here. It’s private parking only.
- Jeff is much better after his illness, but he’s still not supposed to do any heavy work.
Exercises

45.1 Write these sentences in another way, beginning as shown. Use the underlined word each time.

1. It is expected that the strike will end soon. The strike is expected to end soon.
2. It is expected that the weather will be good tomorrow. The weather is
3. It is believed that the thieves got in through a window in the roof. The thieves
4. It is reported that many people are homeless after the floods. Many people
5. It is thought that the prisoner escaped by climbing over a wall. The prisoner
6. It is alleged that the man was driving at 110 miles an hour. The man
7. It is reported that the building has been badly damaged by the fire. The building
8. a. It is said that the company is losing a lot of money. The company
     b. It is believed that the company lost a lot of money last year. The company
     c. It is expected that the company will make a loss this year. The company

45.2 There are a lot of rumours about Alan. Here are some of the things people say about him:
1. Alan speaks ten languages.
2. He knows a lot of famous people.
3. He is very rich.
4. He has twelve children.
5. He was an actor when he was younger.

Nobody is sure whether these things are true. Write sentences about Alan using supposed to.

1. Alan is supposed to speak ten languages.
2. He
3. ..............................................................................................................................................
4. ..............................................................................................................................................
5. ..............................................................................................................................................

45.3 Complete the sentences using supposed to be + the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>on a diet</th>
<th>a flower</th>
<th>my friend</th>
<th>a joke</th>
<th>a secret</th>
<th>working</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
1. How is it that everybody seems to know about the plan? It is supposed to be a secret.
2. You shouldn’t criticise me all the time. You
3. I shouldn’t be eating this cake really. I
4. I’m sorry for what I said. I was trying to be funny. It
5. What’s this drawing? Is it a tree? Or maybe it
6. You shouldn’t be reading the paper now. You

45.4 Write sentences with supposed to + the following verbs:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>block</th>
<th>depart</th>
<th>park</th>
<th>phone</th>
<th>start</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Use the negative (not supposed to) where necessary.

1. You’re not supposed to park here. It’s private parking only.
2. We work at 8.15, but we rarely do anything before 8.30.
3. Oh, I Helen last night, but I completely forgot.
4. This door is a fire exit. You it.
5. My flight at 11.30, but it was an hour late.

Additional exercises 22–24 (pages 314–15)
Have something done

Study this example situation:

The roof of Lisa’s house was damaged in a storm. So she called a builder, and yesterday a man came and repaired it.

Lisa had the roof repaired yesterday.

This means: Lisa arranged for somebody else to repair the roof. She didn’t repair it herself.

We use have something done to say that we arrange for somebody else to do something for us. Compare:

* Lisa repaired the roof. (= she repaired it herself)
* Lisa had the roof repaired. (= she arranged for somebody else to repair it)

* ‘Did you make those curtains yourself?’ ‘Yes, I enjoy making things.’
* ‘Did you have those curtains made?’ ‘No, I made them myself.’

Be careful with word order. The past participle (repaired/cut etc.) is after the object:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>have</th>
<th>object</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lisa had</td>
<td>the roof</td>
<td>repaired yesterday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Your hair looks nice. Have you had it?</td>
<td>Your hair</td>
<td>cut?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Our neighbour has just had a garage built. We are having the house painted this week.</td>
<td>Your car</td>
<td>serviced?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How often do you have your car serviced? I don’t like having my picture taken.</td>
<td>your car</td>
<td>cleaned.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I think you should have that coat cleaned.</td>
<td>that coat</td>
<td>taken.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Get something done

You can also say ‘get something done’ instead of ‘have something done’:

* When are you going to get the roof repaired? (= have the roof repaired)
* I think you should get your hair cut really short.

Sometimes have something done has a different meaning. For example:

* Paul and Karen had their bags stolen while they were travelling.

This does not mean that they arranged for somebody to steal their bags. ‘They had their bags stolen’ means only: ‘Their bags were stolen’.

With this meaning, we use have something done to say that something happens to somebody or their belongings. Often what happens is not nice:

* Gary had his nose broken in a fight. (= his nose was broken)
* Have you ever had your bike stolen?
Exercises

46.1 Tick (√) the correct sentence, (a) or (b), for each picture.

1 SARAH
(a) Sarah is cutting her hair.
(b) Sarah is having her hair cut.

2 BILL
(a) Bill is cutting his hair.
(b) Bill is having his hair cut.

3 JOHN
(a) John is cleaning his hair.
(b) John is having his shoes cleaned.

4 SUE
(a) Sue is taking a picture.
(b) Sue is having her picture taken.

46.2 Put the words in the correct order.
1 had / a few weeks ago / the house / we / painted
   We had the house painted a few weeks ago.
2 serviced / her car / Sarah / once a year / has
   Sarah has her car serviced once a year.
3 twelve pounds / have / cleaned / it / my suit / cost / to
   My suit cost twelve pounds to clean.
4 my eyes / I / two years ago / had / tested / the last time / was
   I had my eyes tested two years ago.
5 had / in the kitchen / fitted / some new cupboards / we've
   We've had some new cupboards fitted in the kitchen.
6 as soon as possible / need / translated / we / to get / this document
   We need this document translated as soon as possible.

46.3 Write sentences in the way shown.
1 Lisa didn’t repair the roof herself. She had it repaired.
2 I didn’t cut my hair myself. I had it cut.
3 We didn’t clean the carpets ourselves. We had them cleaned.
4 John didn’t build that wall himself. We had it built.
5 I didn’t deliver the flowers myself. We had it delivered.

46.4 Use the words in brackets to complete the sentences. Use the structure have something done.
1 We’re having the house painted (we / the house / paint) this week.
2 I lost my key. I’ll have to have another key made.
3 When was the last time (you / your hair / cut)?
4 (you / a newspaper / deliver) to your house every day, or do you go out and buy one?
5 A: What’s happening in your garden?
   B: Oh, (we / a garage / build).
6 A: (you / the washing machine / fix)?
   B: Not yet. There’s someone coming to look at it next week.
7 If you want to wear earrings, why don’t you (you / your ears / pierce)?

Now use ‘have something done’ with its second meaning (see Section D).
8 Gary was in a fight last night. He had his nose broken (he / his nose / break).
9 Did I tell you about Jane? (she / her credit cards / steal).
10 Security was very strict at the airport. (we all / our bags / search).
Reported speech 1 (He said that …)

Study this example situation:

You want to tell somebody what Paul said. There are two ways of doing this:

You can repeat Paul’s words (direct speech):
Paul said ‘I’m feeling ill.’

Or you can use reported speech:
Paul said that he was feeling ill.

Compare:

direct Paul said ‘I’m feeling ill.’
reported Paul said that he was feeling ill.

In writing we use these quotation marks to show direct speech.

When we use reported speech, the main verb of the sentence is usually past (Paul said that … / I told her that … etc.). The rest of the sentence is usually past too:

- Paul said that he was feeling ill.
- I told Lisa that I didn’t have any money.

You can leave out that. So you can say:
- Paul said he was feeling ill.
- Paul said he was feeling ill.

In general, the present form in direct speech changes to the past form in reported speech:
- am/is → was
do/does → did
- will → would
- are → were
- have/has → had
- can → could
- want/like/know/go etc. → wanted/liked/knew/went etc.

Compare direct speech and reported speech:

You met Anna. Here are some of the things she said in direct speech:

- My parents are fine.
- I’m going to learn to drive.
- I want to buy a car.
- John has a new job.
- I can’t come to the party on Friday.
- I don’t have much free time.
- I’m going away for a few days.
- I’ll phone you when I get back.

Later you tell somebody what Anna said. You use reported speech:

- Anna said that her parents were fine.
- She said that she was going to learn to drive.
- She said that she wanted to buy a car.
- She said that John had a new job.
- She said that she couldn’t come to the party on Friday.
- She said she didn’t have much free time.
- She said that she was going away for a few days and would phone me when she got back.

The past simple (did/saw/knew etc.) can usually stay the same in reported speech, or you can change it to the past perfect (had done / had seen / had known etc.):

- direct Paul said ‘I woke up feeling ill, so I didn’t go to work.’
- reported Paul said (that) he woke up feeling ill, so he didn’t go to work.

Paul said (that) he had woken up feeling ill, so he hadn’t gone to work.
Exercises

471 Yesterday you met a friend of yours, Steve. You hadn’t seen him for a long time. Here are some of the things Steve said to you:

1. I’m living in London.
2. My father isn’t very well.
3. Rachel and Mark are getting married next month.
4. My sister has had a baby.
5. I don’t know what Joe is doing.
6. I saw Helen at a party in June and she seemed fine.
7. I haven’t seen Amy recently.
8. I’m not enjoying my job very much.
9. You can come and stay at my place if you’re ever in London.
10. My car was stolen a few days ago.
11. I want to go on holiday, but I can’t afford it.
12. I’ll tell Chris I saw you.

Later that day you tell another friend what Steve said. Use reported speech.

1. Steve said that he was living in London.
2. He said that ........................................................ .............................
3. He ........................................................................................................
4. .............................................................................................................
5. ..........................................................................................
6. ............
7. ..........................................................................................
8. ............
9. ..........
10. ........
11. ........
12. ........

Somebody says something to you which is not what you expected. Use your own ideas to complete your answers.

1. a: It’s quite a long way from the hotel to the station.
   b: Is it? The man on the reception desk said .......... ...........
2. a: Sue is coming to the party tonight.
   b: Is she? I saw her a few days ago and she said she .......... ........
3. a: Sarah gets on fine with Paul.
   b: Does she? Last week you said .......... ............ each other.
4. a: Joe knows lots of people.
   b: That’s not what he told me. He said .......... ............ anyone.
5. a: Jane will be here next week.
   b: Oh, really? When I spoke to her, she said .......... ............ away.
6. a: I’m going out tonight.
   b: Are you? I thought you said .......... ............ home.
7. a: John speaks French quite well.
   b: Does he? He told me .......... ............ any other languages.
8. a: I haven’t seen Ben recently.
   b: That’s strange. He told me .......... ............ last weekend.
Reported speech 2

It is not always necessary to change the verb in reported speech. If the situation is still the same, you do not need to change the verb to the past. For example:

- **direct** Paul said ‘My new job is boring.’
- **reported** Paul said that his new job is boring.
  (The situation is still the same. His job is still boring now.)

- **direct** Helen said ‘I want to go to Canada next year.’
- **reported** Helen told me that she wants to go to Canada next year.
  (Helen still wants to go to Canada next year.)

You can also change the verb to the past:

- Paul said that his new job was boring.
- Helen told me that she wanted to go to Canada next year.

But if the situation has changed or finished, you must use a past verb:

- Paul left the room suddenly. He said he had to go.
  (not has to go)

You need to use a past form when there is a difference between what was said and what is really true. For example:

You met Sonia a few days ago.

She said: **Joe is in hospital.**

Later that day you meet Joe in the street. You say:

Hi, Joe. I didn’t expect to see you. Sonia said you were in hospital.

(not ‘Sonia said you are in hospital’, because clearly he is not)

Say and tell

If you say who somebody is talking to, use tell:

- Sonia told me that you were in hospital. (not Sonia said me)
- What did you tell the police? (not say the police)

Otherwise use say:

- Sonia said that you were in hospital. (not Sonia told that …)
- What did you say?

But you can ‘say something to somebody’:

- Ann said goodbye to me and left. (not Ann said me goodbye)
- What did you say to the police?

Tell/ask somebody to do something

We also use the infinitive (to do / to be etc.) in reported speech, especially with tell and ask (for orders and requests):

- direct ‘Drink plenty of water,’ the doctor said to me.
- reported The doctor told me to drink plenty of water.
- direct ‘Don’t be late,’ I said to Joe.
- reported I told Joe not to be late.
- direct ‘Can you help me, please,’ Jackie said to me.
- reported Jackie asked me to help her.

You can also say ‘Somebody said (not) to do something’:

- Paul said not to worry about him. (but not Paul said me)
Exercises

48.1 Here are some things that Sarah said to you:

I've never been to the United States.
I don't have any brothers or sisters.
I can't drive.
I don't like fish.
Jane has a very well-paid job.
I'm working tomorrow evening.
Jane is a friend of mine.
Dave is lazy.

But later Sarah says something different to you. What do you say?

Sarah

1. Dave works very hard.
2. Let's have fish for dinner.
3. I'm going to buy a car.
4. Jane is always short of money.
6. I think New York is a great place.
7. Let's go out tomorrow evening.
8. I've never spoken to Jane.

You

But you said he was lazy.

48.2 Complete the sentences with say or tell (in the correct form). Use only one word each time.

1. Ann said goodbye to me and left.
2. Tell us about your holiday. Did you have a nice time?
3. Don't just stand there! Say something!
4. I wonder where Sue is. She said she would be here at 8 o'clock.
5. Dan said me that he was bored with his job.
6. The doctor that I should rest for at least a week.
7. Don't tell anybody what I said. It's a secret just between us.
8. 'Did she you what happened?' 'No, she didn't tell me anything to me.'
9. Gary couldn't help me. He asked me to ask Chris.
10. Gary couldn't help me. He asked me to ask Chris.

48.3 The following sentences are direct speech:

Don't wait for me if I'm late.
Mind your own business.
Don't worry, Sue.
Please slow down!
Can you open your bag, please?
Could you get me a paper?
Hurry up!
Will you marry me?
Do you think you could give me a hand, Tom?

Now choose one of these to complete each of the sentences below. Use reported speech.

1. Will was taking a long time to get ready, so I told him to hurry up.
2. Sarah was driving too fast, so I asked
3. Sue was nervous about the situation. I told
4. I couldn't move the piano alone, so I
5. The security guard looked at me suspiciously and
6. Tom was going to the shop, so I
7. The man started asking me personal questions, so I
8. John was in love with Marianne, so he
9. I didn't want to delay Helen, so I
In questions we usually put the subject after the first verb:

subject + verb  
verb + subject

| Tom will  | will Tom? |
| you have  | have you? |
| the house | was the house? |

Remember that the subject comes after the first verb:

| Is Katherine working today? (not Is working Katherine) |

In **present simple** questions, we use **do/does**:

| you live | do you live? |
| the film starts | does the film start? |

In **past simple** questions, we use **did**:

| you sold | did you sell? |
| the train stopped | did the train stop? |

But do not use **do/does/did** if **who/what** etc. is the subject of the sentence. Compare:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>who object</th>
<th>who subject</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Emma phoned somebody. somebody phoned Emma.</td>
<td>Who did Emma phone? Who phoned Emma?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In these examples, **who/what** etc. is the subject:

| Who wants something to eat? (not Who does want) |
| What happened to you last night? (not What did happen) |
| How many people came to the meeting? (not did come) |
| Which bus goes to the centre? (not does go) |

Note the position of prepositions in questions beginning **Who/What/Which/Where ... ?**:

| Who do you want to speak to? |
| Which job has Tina applied for? |
| What was the weather like yesterday? |
| Where are you from? |

You can use **preposition + whom** in formal style:

| To whom do you wish to speak? |

Isn’t it ... ? / Didn’t you ... ? etc. (negative questions)

We use negative questions especially to show surprise:

| Didn’t you hear the doorbell? I rang it three times. |
| ‘Haven’t we met before?’ ‘Yes, I think we have.’ |

Note the meaning of **yes** and **no** in answers to negative questions:

| Don’t you want to go? |
| Why don’t we eat out tonight? (not Why don’t we eat) |
| Why wasn’t Emma at work yesterday? (not Why Emma wasn’t) |

| Yes. (= Yes, I want to go) |
| No. (= No, I don’t want to go) |

Note the word order in negative questions beginning **Why ... ?**:

| Why don’t we eat out tonight? (not Why don’t we eat) |
| Why wasn’t Emma at work yesterday? (not Why Emma wasn’t) |
Exercises

49.1 Ask Joe questions. (Look at his answers before you write the questions.)

1 (where / live?) Where do you live?  
   In Manchester.
2 (born there?) .............................................................................................................
   No, I was born in London.
3 (married?) .............................................................................................................
   Yes.
4 (how long / married?) .............................................................................................................
   17 years.
5 (children?) .............................................................................................................
   Yes, two boys.
6 (how old / they?) .............................................................................................................
   12 and 15.
7 (what / do?) .............................................................................................................
   I'm a journalist.
8 (what / wife / do?) .............................................................................................................
   She's a doctor.

49.2 Make questions with who or what.

1 Somebody hit me. Who hit you?
   I hit somebody. Who did you hit?
2 (who / hit / them / you?) .............................................................................................................
   This book belongs to somebody. Who
   I fell over something. Who
   Something fell off the shelf. Who
   I'm worried about something. Who
3 (who / is / made / cheese) .............................................................................................................
   Diane said something. What
   This word means something. What
4 (why / Sue / working / isn't / today) .............................................................................................................
   I borrowed the money from somebody. What
   Somebody lives in that house. What
5 (what time / coming / your friends / are) .............................................................................................................
   Something happened. What
   Somebody paid the bill. Who
6 (when / was / built / this house) .............................................................................................................
   I'm worried about something. What
   Why? (this machine / doesn't / work)
7 (how / the accident / did / happen) .............................................................................................................
   I borrowed the money from somebody. Why
   Why? (the accident / didn't / happen)
8 (why / you / to the party / didn't / come) .............................................................................................................
   This word means something. Why
   What
9 (why / was / cancelled / the trip) .............................................................................................................
   I fell over something. Why
   Who
10 (where / your mother / was / born) .............................................................................................................
   Why? (the accident / didn't / happen)
   What
11 (how / Sue / working / isn't / today) .............................................................................................................
   Why? (this machine / doesn't / work)
12 (why / she / not / come / out with us?) .............................................................................................................
   This book belongs to somebody. Why
   Why? (she / not / come / out with us?)

49.3 Put the words in brackets in the correct order. All the sentences are questions.

1 (when / was / built / this house) When was this house built?
2 (how / cheese / is / made)
3 (when / invented / the computer / was)
4 (why / Sue / working / isn’t / today)
5 (what time / coming / your friends / are)
6 (why / was / cancelled / the trip)
7 (where / your mother / was / born)
8 (why / you / to the party / didn’t / come)
9 (how / the accident / did / happen)
10 (why / this machine / doesn’t / work)

49.4 Write negative questions from the words in brackets. In each situation you are surprised.

1 A: We won’t see Lisa this evening.
   B: Why not? (she / not / come / out with us?) Isn’t she coming out with us?
2 A: I hope we don’t meet Luke tonight.
   B: Why? (you / not / like / him?)
3 A: Don’t go and see that film.
   B: Why not? (it / not / good?)
4 A: I’ll have to borrow some money.
   B: Why? (you / not / have / any?)
Questions 2 (Do you know where ... ? / He asked me where ...)

Do you know where ... ? / I don’t know why ... / Could you tell me what ... ? etc.

We say: Where has Tom gone?

but Do you know where Tom has gone? (not Do you know where has Tom gone?)

When the question (Where has Tom gone?) is part of a longer sentence (Do you know ... ? / I don’t know ... / Can you tell me ... ? etc.), the word order changes. We say:

- What time is it?
- Who are those people?
- Where can I find Louise?
- How much will it cost?

but Do you know what time it is?

We don’t say: Do you know where has Tom gone?

Be careful with do/does/did questions. We say:

- What time does the film start?
- What do you mean?
- Why did she leave early?

but Do you know what time the film starts?

Please explain what you mean.

I wonder why she left early.

Use if or whether where there is no other question word (what, why etc.):

- Did anybody see you?

but Do you know if anybody saw you?

or ... whether anybody saw you?

He asked me where ... (reported questions)

The same changes in word order happen in reported questions. Compare:

- direct The police officer said to us ‘Where are you going?’
- reported The police officer asked us where we were going.
- direct Clare said ‘What time do the banks close?’
- reported Clare wanted to know what time the banks closed.

In reported speech the verb usually changes to the past (were, closed etc.). See Unit 47.

Study these examples. You had an interview for a job and these were some of the questions the interviewer asked you:

- Are you willing to travel?
- Why did you apply for the job?
- What do you do in your spare time?
- Can you speak any other languages?
- How long have you been working in your present job?
- Do you have a driving licence?

Later you tell a friend what the interviewer asked you. You use reported speech:

- She asked if (or whether) I was willing to travel.
- She wanted to know what I did in my spare time.
- She asked how long I had been working in my present job.
- She asked why I had applied for the job. (or ... why I applied)
- She wanted to know if (or whether) I could speak any other languages.
- She asked if (or whether) I had a driving licence.

Reported speech ⇒ Units 47–48
Exercises

50.1 Which is right? Tick (✓) the correct alternative.

1 a Do you know what time the film starts? ✓ 
   b Do you know what time does the film start?
   c Do you know what time starts the film?

2 a Why Amy does get up so early every day?
   b Why Amy gets up so early every day?
   c Why does Amy get up so early every day?

3 a I want to know what this word means.
   b I want to know what does this word mean.
   c I want to know what means this word.

4 a I can't remember where did I park the car.
   b I can't remember where I parked the car.
   c I can't remember where I did park the car.

5 a Why you didn't phone me yesterday?
   b Why didn't you phone me yesterday?
   c Why you not phoned me yesterday?

6 a Do you know where does Helen work?
   b Do you know where Helen does work?
   c Do you know where Helen works?

7 a How much it costs to park here?
   b How much does it cost to park here?
   c How much it does cost to park here?

8 a Tell me what you want.
   b Tell me what you do want.
   c Tell me what do you want.

50.2 Put the words in the correct order.

1 (don't / Tom / where / know / gone / has) I don't know where Tom has gone.

2 (is / to the airport / far / it) How don't know where Tom has gone.

3 (wonder / is / how / old / Tom) I don't know where Tom has gone.

4 (Lisa / on holiday / going / is) When don't know where Tom has gone.

5 (tell / the post office / you / me / is / where) Could?

6 (in the accident / injured / anyone / don’t / whether / know / was)

7 (what / tomorrow / know / time / will / arrive / you / you)

8 (what / tomorrow / know / time / will / arrive / you / you)

50.3 You have been away for a while and have just come back to your home town. You meet Tony, a friend of yours. He asks you a lot of questions:

1 How are you?

2 Where have you been?

3 How long have you been back?

4 What are you doing now?

5 Why did you come back?

6 Where are you living?

7 Are you glad to be back?

8 Do you have any plans to go away again?

9 Can you help me find a job?

Now you tell another friend what Tony asked you. Use reported speech.

1 He asked me how I was.

2 He asked me

3 He

4

5

6

7

8

9

Additional exercise 25 (page 316)
Auxiliary verbs (have/do/can etc.)
I think so / I hope so etc.

In each of these sentences there is an auxiliary verb and a main verb:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>have</th>
<th>lost</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>She</td>
<td>can’t</td>
<td>come</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The hotel</td>
<td>was</td>
<td>built</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where</td>
<td>do you</td>
<td>live?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In these examples have/can’t/was/do are auxiliary (= helping) verbs.

You can use an auxiliary verb when you don’t want to repeat something:

- ‘Have you locked the door?’ ‘Yes, I have.’ (= I have locked the door)
- Gary wasn’t working, but Laura was. (= Laura was working)
- Jessica could lend me the money, but she won’t. (= she won’t lend me the money)

Use do/does/did for the present and past simple:

- ‘Do you like onions?’ ‘Yes, I do.’ (= I like onions)
- ‘Does Simon live in London?’ ‘He did, but he doesn’t any more.’

You can use auxiliary verbs to deny what somebody says (= say it is not true):

- ‘You’re sitting in my place.’ ‘No, I’m not.’ (= I’m not sitting in your place)
- ‘You didn’t lock the door before you left.’ ‘Yes, I did.’ (= I locked the door)

We use have you? / isn’t she? / do they? etc. to show interest in what somebody has said, or to show surprise:

- ‘I’ve just seen Stephen.’ ‘Oh, have you? How is he?’
- ‘Lisa isn’t very well today.’ ‘Oh, isn’t she? What’s wrong with her?’
- ‘It rained every day during our holiday.’ ‘Did it? What a shame!’
- ‘James and Tanya are getting married.’ ‘Are they? Really?’

We use auxiliary verbs with so and neither:

- ‘I’m tired.’ ‘So am I.’ (= I’m tired too)
- ‘I never read newspapers.’ ‘Neither do I.’ (= I never read newspapers either)
- Sarah hasn’t got a car and neither has Mark.

Note the word order after so and neither (verb before subject):

- I passed the exam and so did Paul. (not so Paul did)

Instead of neither, you can use nor. You can also use not ... either:

- ‘I don’t know.’ ‘Neither do I.’ or ‘Nor do I.’ or ‘I don’t either.’

I think so / I hope so etc.

After some verbs we use so when we don’t want to repeat something:

- ‘Are those people Korean?’ ‘I think so.’ (= I think they are Korean)
- ‘Will you be at home this evening?’ ‘I expect so.’ (= I expect I’ll be at home …)
- ‘Do you think Kate has been invited to the party?’ ‘I suppose so.’

In the same way we say: I hope so, I guess so and I’m afraid so.

The usual negative forms are:

- I think so / I expect so → I don’t think so / I don’t expect so
- I hope so / I’m afraid so / I guess so → I hope not / I’m afraid not / I guess not
- I suppose so → I don’t suppose so or I suppose not

- ‘Is that woman American?’ ‘I think so. / I don’t think so.’
- ‘Do you think it will rain?’ ‘I hope so. / I hope not.’ (not I don’t hope so)
Exercises

51.1 Complete each sentence with an auxiliary verb (do/was/could etc.). Sometimes the verb must be negative (don’t/wasn’t etc.).

1. I wasn’t tired, but my friends were.
2. I like hot weather, but Ann...
3. ‘Is Andy here?’ ‘He was five minutes ago, but I think he’s gone home now.’
4. Liz said she might call me later this evening, but I don’t think she...
5. ‘Are you and Chris coming to the party?’ ‘I was, but Chris...
6. I don’t know whether to apply for the job or not. Do you think I...
7. ‘Please don’t tell anybody what I said.’ ‘Don’t worry. I...
8. ‘You never listen to me.’ ‘Yes, I...
9. I thought it was going to rain, but it...
10. ‘Please help me.’ ‘I’m sorry. I...

51.2 You never agree with Sue. Answer in the way shown.

1. I’m hungry. Are you? I’m not.
2. I’m not tired. Aren’t you? I am.
3. I like football. You
4. I didn’t enjoy the film. I’ve never been to Australia.
5. I thought the exam was easy. You

51.3 You are talking to Tina. If you’re in the same position as Tina, reply with So... or Neither..., as in the first example. Otherwise, ask questions as in the second example.

1. I’m tired. So am I.
2. I work hard. Do you? What do you do?
3. I watched television last night. I won’t be at home tomorrow.
4. I like reading. I read a lot.
5. I’d like to live somewhere else. I can’t go out tonight.

51.4 In these conversations, you are B. Read the information in brackets and then answer with I think so, I hope not etc.

1. (You don’t like rain.)
   a: Is it going to rain? b: (hope) I hope not.
2. (You need more money quickly.)
   a: Do you think you’ll get a pay rise soon? b: (hope)
3. (You think Katherine will probably get the job that she applied for.)
   a: Do you think Katherine will get the job? b: (expect)
4. (You’re not sure whether Amy is married – probably not.)
   a: Is Amy married? b: (think)
5. (You are the receptionist at a hotel. The hotel is full.)
   a: Have you got a room for tonight? b: (afraid)
6. (You’re at a party. You have to leave early.)
   a: Do you have to leave already? b: (afraid)
7. (Ann normally works every day, Monday to Friday. Tomorrow is Wednesday.)
   a: Is Ann working tomorrow? b: (suppose)
8. (You are going to a party. You can’t stand John.)
   a: Do you think John will be at the party? b: (hope)
9. (You’re not sure what time the concert is – probably 7.30.)
   a: Is the concert at 7.30? b: (think)
Question tags (do you? isn’t it? etc.)

Study these examples:

You haven’t seen Lisa today, have you?

No, I haven’t.

It was a good film, wasn’t it?

Yes, it was great.

Have you? and wasn’t it? are question tags (= mini-questions that we often put on the end of a sentence in spoken English). In question tags, we use an auxiliary verb (have/was/will etc.).

We use do/does/did for the present and past simple (see Unit 51):

- ‘Karen plays the piano, doesn’t she?’ ‘Well, yes, but not very well.’
- ‘You didn’t lock the door, did you?’ ‘No, I forgot.’

Normally we use a negative question tag after a positive sentence:

- Kate will be here soon, won’t she?
- There was a lot of traffic, wasn’t there?
- Joe should pass the exam, shouldn’t he?

... and a positive question tag after a negative sentence:

- Kate won’t be late, will she?
- They don’t like us, do they?
- You haven’t eaten yet, have you?

Notice the meaning of yes and no in answer to a negative sentence:

- You’re not going out today, are you? Yes. (= Yes, I am going out)
- You’re not going out today, are you? No. (= No, I am not going out)

The meaning of a question tag depends on how you say it. If your voice goes down, you are not really asking a question; you are only inviting the Listener to agree with you:

- ‘It’s a nice day, isn’t it?’ ‘Yes, beautiful.’
- ‘Paul doesn’t look well today, does he?’ ‘No, he looks very tired.’
- ‘Lisa’s very funny. She’s got a great sense of humour, hasn’t she?’ ‘Yes, she has.’

But if the voice goes up, it is a real question:

- ‘You haven’t seen Lisa today, have you?’ ‘No, I haven’t.’
- (= Have you by chance seen Lisa today?)

You can use a negative sentence + positive tag to ask for things or information, or to ask somebody to do something. The voice goes up at the end of the tag in sentences like these:

- ‘You haven’t got a pen, have you?’ ‘Yes, here you are.’
- ‘You couldn’t do me a favour, could you?’ ‘It depends what it is.’
- ‘You don’t know where Karen is, do you?’ ‘Sorry, I have no idea.’

After Let’s ..., the question tag is shall we:

- Let’s go for a walk, shall we? (the voice goes up)

After Don’t ..., the question tag is will you:

- Don’t be late, will you? (the voice goes down)

After I’m ..., the negative question tag is aren’t I (= am I not):

- I’m right, aren’t I? ‘Yes, you are.’

Auxiliary verbs (have/do/can etc.) → Unit 51
### Exercises

#### 52.1 Put a question tag on the end of these sentences.

1. **Kate won’t be late, will she?** No, she’s never late.
2. **You’re tired, aren’t you?** Yes, a little.
3. **You travel a lot, don’t you?** Yes, I love travelling.
4. **You weren’t listening, were you?** Yes, I was!
5. **Sarah doesn’t know Ann, does she?** No, they’ve never met.
6. **Jack’s on holiday, isn’t he?** Yes, he’s in Australia.
7. **Kate’s been to China before, hasn’t she?** Yes, two or three times.
8. **You can speak German, can’t you?** Yes, but not fluently.
9. **They won’t mind if I take a photo, will they?** No, of course they won’t.
10. **There are a lot of people here, aren’t there?** Yes, more than I expected.
11. **Let’s go out tonight, shall we?** Yes, that would be great.
12. **This isn’t very interesting, is it?** No, not really.
13. **I’m too impatient, am I?** Yes, you are sometimes.
14. **You wouldn’t tell anyone, would you?** No, of course not.
15. **Ann has lived here a long time, hasn’t she?** Yes, 20 years.
16. **I shouldn’t have lost my temper, should I?** No, but that’s all right.
17. **He’d never met her before, would he?** No, that was the first time.
18. **Don’t drop that vase, will you?** Don’t worry. I won’t.

#### 52.2 Read the situation and write a sentence with a question tag. In each situation you are asking your friend to agree with you.

1. **You look out of the window. The sky is blue and the sun is shining.** What do you say to your friend? (beautiful day) *It’s a beautiful day, isn’t it?*
2. **You’re with a friend outside a restaurant.** You’re looking at the prices, which are very high. What do you say? (expensive) *It’s expensive, isn’t it?*
3. **You and a colleague have just finished a training course.** You really enjoyed it. What do you say to your colleague? (great) *The course was great, wasn’t it?*
4. **Your friend’s hair is much shorter than when you last met.** What do you say to her/him? (have / your hair / cut) *You’ve had your hair cut, haven’t you?*
5. **You and a friend are listening to a woman singing.** You like her voice very much. What do you say to your friend? (a good voice) *She has a good voice, doesn’t she?*
6. **You are trying on a jacket in a shop.** You look in the mirror and you don’t like what you see. What do you say to your friend? (not / look / very good) *It doesn’t look very good, does it?*
7. **You and a friend are walking over a small wooden bridge.** The bridge is very old and some parts are broken. What do you say? (not / very safe) *This bridge isn’t very safe, is it?*

#### 52.3 In these situations you are asking for information, asking people to do things etc.

1. **You need a pen.** Perhaps Jane has got one. Ask her.*Jane, haven’t you got a pen? Have you?*
2. **You have to move a heavy table.** You want Joe to give you a hand with it. Ask him.*Joe, you need a hand with that table, don’t you?*
3. **You’re looking for Sarah.** Perhaps Kate knows where she is. Ask her.*Kate, do you know where Sarah is?*
4. **You need a bicycle pump.** Perhaps Helen has got one. Ask her.*Helen, have you got a bicycle pump?*
5. **Ann has a car and you need a lift to the station.** Perhaps she’ll take you. Ask her.*Ann, would you take me to the station?*
6. **You’re looking for your keys.** Perhaps Robert has seen them. Ask him.*Robert, have you seen my keys?*
Verb + -ing (enjoy doing / stop doing etc.)

Look at these examples:

- I enjoy reading. (not I enjoy to read)
- Would you mind closing the door? (not mind to close)
- Chris suggested going to the cinema. (not suggested to go)

After enjoy, mind and suggest, we use -ing (not to ...).

Some more verbs that are followed by -ing:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>stop</th>
<th>postpone</th>
<th>admit</th>
<th>avoid</th>
<th>imagine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>consider</td>
<td>deny</td>
<td>risk</td>
<td>fancy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Suddenly everybody stopped talking. There was silence.
- I'll do the shopping when I've finished cleaning the flat.
- He tried to avoid answering my question.
- I don't fancy going out this evening. (= I'm not enthusiastic about it)
- Have you ever considered going to live in another country?
- They said they were innocent. They denied doing anything wrong.

The negative form is not -ing:

- When I'm on holiday, I enjoy not having to get up early.

We also use -ing after:

- give up (= stop)
- put off (= postpone)
- go on or carry on (= continue)
- keep or keep on (= do something continuously or repeatedly)

- I've given up reading newspapers. I think it's a waste of time.
- Catherine doesn't want to retire. She wants to go on working. (or ... to carry on working.)
- You keep interrupting when I'm talking! or You keep on interrupting ...

With some verbs you can use the structure verb + somebody + -ing:

- I can't imagine George riding a motorbike.
- You can't stop me doing what I want.
- Did you really say that? I don't remember you saying that.
- 'Sorry to keep you waiting so long.' 'That's all right.'

Note the passive form (being done/seen/kept etc.):

- I don't mind being kept waiting. (= I don't mind people keeping me ...)

When you are talking about finished actions, you can say having done/stolen/said etc.:

- They admitted having stolen the money.

But it is not necessary to use having (done). You can also say:

- They admitted stealing the money.
- I now regret saying (or having said) what I said.

After some of the verbs on this page (especially admit/deny/suggest) you can also use that ...

- They denied that they had stolen the money. (or They denied stealing ...)
- Chris suggested that we went to the cinema. (or Sam suggested going ...)

Would you mind closing the door?
Exercises

53.1 Complete the sentences for each situation using -ing.

1. What shall we do? We could go to the zoo.
2. Do you want to play tennis? No, not really.
3. You were driving too fast. You’re right. Sorry!
4. Let’s go swimming. Good idea!
5. You broke the DVD player. No, I didn’t!
6. Can you wait a few minutes? Sure, no problem.

53.2 Complete each sentence with one of the following verbs (in the correct form):

answer apply be forget listen live
lose make pay read try use

1. He tried to avoid answering my question.
2. Could you please stop applying so much noise?
3. I enjoy listening to music.
4. I considered applying for the job, but in the end I decided against it.
5. Have you finished reading the newspaper yet?
6. We need to change our routine. We can’t go on like this.
7. I don’t mind you applying to my phone, but please ask me first.
8. My memory is getting worse. I keep losing things.
9. I’ve put off reading this bill so many times. I really must do it today.
10. What a stupid thing to do! Can you imagine anybody forgetting so stupid?
11. I’ve given up trying to lose weight – it’s impossible.
12. If you gamble, you risk losing your money.

53.3 Complete the sentences so that they mean the same as the first sentence.

1. I can do what I want and you can’t stop me.
   You can’t stop me doing what I want.
2. It’s not a good idea to travel during the rush hour.
   It’s better to avoid going during the rush hour.
3. Shall we paint the kitchen next weekend instead of this weekend?
   Shall we postpone doing it until next weekend?
4. Could you turn the music down, please?
   Would you mind stopping it, please?
5. Please don’t interrupt all the time.
   Would you mind not interrupting all the time?

53.4 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences. Use -ing.

1. She’s a very interesting person. I always enjoy talking to her.
2. I’m not feeling very well. I don’t fancy going.
3. I’m afraid there aren’t any chairs. I hope you don’t mind.
4. It was a beautiful day, so I suggested going.
5. It was very funny. I couldn’t stop laughing.
6. My car isn’t very reliable. It keeps breaking down.
Verb + to ... (decide to ... / forget to ... etc.)

After these verbs you can use to ... (infinitive):
- It was late, so we decided to take a taxi home.
- Simon was in a difficult situation, so I agreed to help him.
- How old were you when you learnt to drive? (or learnt how to drive)
- I waved to Karen, but failed to attract her attention.

The negative is not to ...
- We decided not to go out because of the weather.
- I promised not to be late.

After some verbs to ... is not possible. For example, enjoy/think/suggest:
- I enjoy reading. (not enjoy to read)
- Andy suggested meeting for coffee. (not suggested to meet)
- Are you thinking of buying a car? (not thinking to buy)

For verb + -ing, see Unit 53. For verb + preposition + -ing, see Unit 62.

After dare you can use the infinitive with or without to:
- I wouldn't dare to tell him. or I wouldn't dare tell him.

But after dare not (or daren't), you must use the infinitive without to:
- I daren't tell him what happened. (not I daren't to tell him)

We also use to ... after:

**seem**  **appear**  **tend**  **pretend**  **claim**

For example:
- They seem to have plenty of money.
- I like Dan, but I think he tends to talk too much.
- Ann pretended not to see me when she passed me in the street.

There is also a continuous infinitive (to be doing) and a perfect infinitive (to have done):
- I pretended to be reading the paper. (= I pretended that I was reading)
- You seem to have lost weight. (= it seems that you have lost weight)
- Joe seems to be enjoying his new job. (= it seems that he is enjoying it)

After some verbs you can use a question word (what/whether/how etc.) + to ....
We use this structure especially after:

**ask**  **decide**  **know**  **remember**  **forget**  **explain**  **learn**  **understand**  **wonder**

We asked how to get to the station.
Have you decided where to go for your holidays?
I don't know whether to apply for the job or not.
Do you understand what to do?

Also
show/tell/ask/advice/teach somebody what/how/where to do something:
- Can somebody show me how to use this camera?
- Ask Jack. He'll tell you what to do.
Exercises

54.1 Complete the sentences for these situations.

1. Shall we get married? Yes, let's.
2. Please help me. OK.
3. Can I carry your bag for you? No, thanks. I can manage.
4. Let's meet at 8 o'clock. OK, fine.
5. What's your name? I'm not going to tell you.
6. Please don't tell anyone. I won't. I promise.

54.2 Complete each sentence with a suitable verb.

1. Don't forget to lock the door when you go out.
2. There was a lot of traffic, but we managed to get to the airport in time.
3. We couldn't afford to live in London. It's too expensive.
4. We've got new computer software in our office. I haven't learnt it yet.
5. Mark doesn't know what happened. I decided not to tell him.
6. We were all afraid to speak. Nobody dared to say anything.

54.3 Put the verb into the correct form, to ... or -ing. (See Unit 53 for verbs + -ing.)

1. When I'm tired, I enjoy watching television. It's relaxing. (watch)
2. I've decided to look for another job. I need a change. (look)
3. Let's get a taxi. I don't fancy walking home. (walk)
4. I'm not in a hurry, I don't mind waiting. (wait)
5. Tina ran in a marathon last week, but she failed to finish. (finish)
6. I wish that dog would stop barking. It's driving me crazy. (bark)
7. Our neighbour threatened to call the police if we didn't stop the noise. (call)
8. We were hungry, so I suggested having dinner early. (have)
9. Hurry up! I don't want to risk missing the train. (miss)
10. They didn't know I was listening to them. I pretended to be asleep. (be)

54.4 Make a new sentence using the verb in brackets.

1. You've lost weight. (seem) You seem to have lost weight.
2. Tom is worried about something. (appear) Tom appears worried.
3. You know a lot of people. (seem) You seem to know a lot of people.
4. My English is getting better. (seem) It seems you are improving your English.
5. That car has broken down. (appear) That car appears to have broken down.
7. They have solved the problem. (claim) They claim to have solved the problem.

54.5 Complete each sentence using what/how/where/whether + these verbs:

- do
- get
- go
- put
- ride
- use

1. Do you know how to get to John's house?
2. Would you know what to do if there was a fire in the building?
3. You'll never forget how to ride a bicycle once you've learnt.
4. I've been invited to the party, but I haven't decided whether to go or not.
5. My room is very untidy. I've got so many things and I don't know where to put them.
6. I have some clothes to wash. Can you show me how to use the washing machine?
Verb (+ object) + to … (I want you to … etc.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>want</th>
<th>ask</th>
<th>help</th>
<th>expect</th>
<th>beg</th>
<th>mean (= intend)</th>
<th>would like</th>
<th>would prefer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

These verbs are followed by to … (infinitive). The structure can be:

- verb + to ...
- verb + object + to …

- We expected to be late.
- We expected Dan to be late.
- Would you like to go now?
- Would you like me to go now?
- He doesn’t want to know.
- He doesn’t want anybody to know.

Do not say ‘want that’:
- Do you want me to come with you? (not Do you want that I come)

After help you can use the infinitive with or without to. So you can say:
- Can you help me to move this table? or Can you help me move this table?

want ask help would like
expect beg mean (= intend) would prefer

**tell**
**remind**
**force**
**encourage**
**teach**
**enable**
**order**
**warn**
**invite**
**persuade**
**get (= persuade)**

These verbs have the structure verb + object + to … :
- Can you remind me to call Sam tomorrow?
- Who taught you to drive?
- I didn’t move the piano by myself. I got somebody to help me.
- Joe said the switch was dangerous and warned me not to touch it.

In the next example, the verb is passive (I was warned / we were told etc.):
- I was warned not to touch the switch.

You cannot use **suggest** with the structure verb + object + to … :
- Jane suggested that I ask your advice. (not Jane suggested me to ask)

After **advise** and **allow**, two structures are possible. Compare:

- verb + -ing (without an object)
- verb + object + to …

- I wouldn’t advise staying in that hotel.
- They don’t allow parking in front of the building.

Study these examples with (be) allowed (passive):
- Parking isn’t allowed in front of the building.
- You aren’t allowed to park in front of the building.

**Make** and **let**

These verbs have the structure verb + object + infinitive (without to):
- I made him promise that he wouldn’t tell anybody what happened. (not to promise)
- Hot weather makes me feel tired. (= causes me to feel tired)
- Her parents wouldn’t let her go out alone. (= wouldn’t allow her to go out)
- Let me carry your bag for you.

We say ‘**make somebody do**’ (not to do), but in the passive we say ‘**made to do**’ (with to):
- We were made to wait for two hours. (= They made us wait …)
Exercises

55.1 Complete the questions. Use do you want me to ... ? or would you like me to ... ? with these verbs (+ any other necessary words):

- come - lend - repeat - show - shut - wait

1. Do you want to go alone, or do you want me to come with you?
2. Do you have enough money, or do you want...
3. Shall I leave the window open, or would you...
4. Do you know how to use the machine, or would...
5. Did you hear what I said, or do...
6. Can I go now, or do...

55.2 Complete the sentences for these situations.

1. Meet me at the station. OK.
   She told him to meet her at the station.
2. Why don't you come and stay with us? That would be nice.
   They invited him.
3. Don't forget to call Joe. No, I won't forget.
   He reminded her.
4. Be careful. Don't worry. I will.
   She warned.
5. Can you give me a hand? Sure.
   He asked.

55.3 Complete each second sentence so that the meaning is similar to the first sentence.

1. My father said I could use his car. My father allowed me to use his car.
2. I was surprised that it rained. I didn't expect...
3. Don't stop him doing what he wants. Let...
4. Tim looks older when he wears glasses. Tim's glasses make...
5. I think you should know the truth. I want...
6. At first I didn't want to apply for the job, but Sarah persuaded me. Sarah persuaded...
7. My lawyer said I shouldn't say anything to the police. My lawyer advised...
8. I was told that I shouldn't believe everything he says. I was warned...
9. If you've got a car, you are able to get around more easily. Having a car enables...

55.4 Put the verb into the correct form: infinitive (do/make/eat etc.), to + infinitive, or -ing.

1. They don't allow people to park in front of the building. (park)
2. I've never been to Hong Kong, but I'd like to go there. (go)
3. I'm in a difficult position. What do you advise me to do? (do)
4. The film was very sad. It made me cry. (cry)
5. Lisa's parents always encouraged her to study hard at school. (study)
6. If you want to get a cheap flight, I'd advise you to book early. (book)
7. Sarah wouldn't let me borrow her car. She doesn't trust me. (borrow)
8. If you enter a country with a tourist visa, you are normally not allowed to work there. (work)
9. 'I don't think Alex likes me.' 'What makes you think that?' (think)
Some verbs are followed by -ing and some are followed by to ...

Verbs usually followed by -ing:
- admit
- fancy
- postpone
- avoid
- consider
- deny
- enjoy
- finish
- imagine
- keep (on)
- mind
- postpone
- risk
- suggest
- stop

Verbs usually followed by to ...
- afford
- agree
- arrange
- decide
- deserve
- enjoy
- fail
- forget
- hope
- learn
- manage
- offer
- plan
- promise
- refuse
- suggest
- threaten

For examples, see Unit 53. For examples, see Unit 54.

Some verbs can be followed by -ing or to ... with a difference of meaning:

**remember**

I remember doing something = I did it and now I remember this.
You remember doing something after you have done it.

- I know I locked the door. I clearly remember locking it.
  (= I locked it, and now I remember this)
- He could remember driving along the road just before the accident, but he couldn’t remember the accident itself.

**regret**

I regret doing something = I did it and now I regret it.
You regret doing something before you do it.

- I regret locking the door, but I forgot to shut the windows.
  (= I regretted locking it and so I locked it)
- I must remember to pay the electricity bill. (= I must not forget to pay it)

**go on**

Go on doing something = continue with the same thing:
We need to change. We can’t go on living like this.

Go on to do something = do or say something new:
After discussing the economy, the president then went on to talk about foreign policy.

The following verbs can be followed by -ing or to ... with no difference of meaning:
begin start continue intend bother

So you can say:
- It started raining, or It started to rain.
- Andy intends buying a house, or Andy intends to buy ...
- Don’t bother locking the door, or Don’t bother to lock ...

But normally we do not use -ing after -ing:
- It’s starting to rain. (not It’s starting raining)
56.1 Put the verb into the correct form, -ing or to ... .

1. They denied stealing the money. (steal)
2. I don't enjoy driving very much. (drive)
3. I can't afford going out tonight. I don't have enough money. (go)
4. Has it stopped raining yet? (rain)
5. We were unlucky to lose the game. We deserved winning. (win)
6. Why do you keep asking me questions? Can't you leave me alone? (ask)
7. Please stop answering me questions! (ask)
8. I refuse answering any more questions. (answer)
9. The driver of one of the cars admitted causing the accident. (cause)
10. Mark needed our help, and we promised doing what we could. (do)
11. I don't mind being alone, but it's better to be with other people. (be)
12. The wall was quite high, but I managed climbing over it. (climb)
13. 'Does Sarah know about the meeting?' 'No, I forgot telling her.' (tell)
14. I've enjoyed talking to you. I hope seeing you again soon. (talk, see)

56.2 Tom can remember some things about his childhood, but he can't remember others. Complete the sentences.

1. He was in hospital when he was a small child. He can still remember this.  
   He can remember being in hospital when he was a small child.
2. He went to Paris with his parents when he was eight. He remembers this.  
   He remembers going to Paris with his parents when he was eight.
3. He cried on his first day at school. He doesn't remember this.  
   He doesn't remember crying on his first day at school.
4. Once he fell into the river. He can remember this.  
   He remembers falling into the river.
5. He said he wanted to be a doctor. He can't remember this.  
   He can't remember saying he wanted to be a doctor.
6. Once he was bitten by a dog. He doesn't remember this.  
   He doesn't remember being bitten by a dog.

56.3 Complete each sentence with a verb in the correct form, -ing or to ... . Sometimes either form is possible.

1. a. Please remember to lock the door when you go out.
   b. A: You lent me some money a few months ago.
      b: Did I? Are you sure? I don't remember lending you any money.
   c. A: Did you remember sending your sister?
      b: Oh no, I completely forgot. I'll phone her tomorrow.
   d. When you see Steve, remember saying hello to him from me.
   e. Someone must have taken my bag. I clearly remember seeing it by the window and now it has gone.
2. a. I believe that what I said was right. I don't regret saying it.
   b. I knew they were in trouble, but I regret not helping them.
   c. It started to get cold, and he regretted not wearing his coat.
3. a. Ben joined the company nine years ago. He became assistant manager after two years, and a few years later he went on becoming manager of the company.
   b. I can't go on going here any more. I want a different job.
   c. When I came into the room, Lisa was reading a newspaper. She looked up and said hello, and then went on reading her newspaper.
4. a. If the company continues spending money, the factory may be closed.
   b. Julia has been ill, but now she's beginning feeling better.
   c. The baby started crying in the middle of the night.
Verb + -ing or to ... 2 (try/need/help)

Try to ... and try -ing

Try to do = attempt to do, make an effort to do:
- I was very tired. I tried to keep my eyes open, but I couldn’t.
- Please try to be quiet when you come home. Everyone will be asleep.

Try also means ‘do something as an experiment or test’. For example:
- These cakes are delicious. You should try one.
  (= you should have one to see if you like it)
- We couldn’t find anywhere to stay. We tried every hotel in the town, but they were all full.
  (= we went to every hotel to see if they had a room)

If try (with this meaning) is followed by a verb, we say try -ing:
- A: The photocopier doesn’t seem to be working.
  B: Try pressing the green button.
  (= press the green button – perhaps this will help to solve the problem)

Compare:
- I tried to move the table, but it was too heavy. (so I couldn’t move it)
- I didn’t like the way the furniture was arranged, so I tried moving the table to the other side of the room. But it didn’t look right, so I moved it back again.

Need to ... and need -ing

I need to do something = it is necessary for me to do it:
- I need to get more exercise.
- He needs to work harder if he wants to make progress.
- I don’t need to come to the meeting, do I?

Something needs doing = it needs to be done:
- My phone needs charging.
  (= it needs to be charged)
- Do you think this jacket needs cleaning?
  (= ... needs to be cleaned)
- It’s a difficult problem. It needs thinking about very carefully. (= it needs to be thought about)

Help and can’t help

You can say help to do or help do (with or without to):
- Everybody helped to clean up after the party. or Everybody helped clean up ...
- Can you help me to move this table? or Can you help me move ...

I can’t help doing something = I can’t stop myself doing it:
- I don’t like him, but he has a lot of problems. I can’t help feeling sorry for him.
- She tried to be serious, but she couldn’t help laughing.
  (= she couldn’t stop herself laughing)
- I’m sorry I’m so nervous. I can’t help it.
  (= I can’t help being nervous)
Exercises

57.1 Make suggestions. Use try + one of the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Suggestions</th>
<th>Phone his office</th>
<th>Restart it</th>
<th>Change the batteries</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Turn it the other way</td>
<td>Take an aspirin</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. The radio isn’t working. Have you tried changing the batteries?
2. I can’t open the door. The key won’t turn. Try...
3. The computer isn’t working properly. Have you tried...
4. Fred isn’t answering his phone. What shall I do? You could...
5. I’ve got a terrible headache. I wish it would go.

57.2 For each picture, write a sentence with need(s) + one of the following verbs:

clean cut empty paint tighten

1. This jacket is dirty. It needs cleaning.
2. The room isn’t very nice. It...
3. The grass is very long. It...
4. The screws are loose. It...
5. The bin is full. It...

57.3 Put the verb into the correct form.

1. a. I was very tired. I tried to keep my eyes open, but I couldn’t.
   b. I rang the doorbell, but there was no answer. Then I tried to knock on the door, but there was still no answer.
   c. We tried to put the fire out but without success. We had to call the fire brigade.
   d. Sue needed to borrow some money. She tried to ask Gary, but he was short of money too.
   e. I tried to reach the shelf, but I wasn’t tall enough.
   f. Please leave me alone. I’m trying to concentrate.

2. a. I need a change. I need to go away for a while.
   b. My grandmother isn’t able to look after herself any more. She needs looking after.
   c. The windows are dirty. They need to be cleaned.
   d. Your hair is getting very long. It needs to be cut.
   e. You don’t need to iron that shirt. It doesn’t need ironing.

3. a. They were talking very loudly. I couldn’t help overhearing what they said.
   b. Can you help me to get the dinner ready?
   c. He looks so funny. Whenever I see him, I can’t help smiling.
   d. The fine weather helped to make it a really nice holiday.
Like / love / hate

When you talk about repeated actions, you can use -ing or to ... after these verbs.
So you can say:
- Do you like getting up early? or Do you like to get up early?
- Stephanie hates flying. or Stephanie hates to fly.
- I love meeting people. or I love to meet people.
- I don’t like being kept waiting. or ... like to be kept waiting.
- I don’t like friends calling me at work. or ... friends to call me at work.

but

1. We use -ing (not to ...) when we talk about a situation that already exists (or existed).
   - Paul lives in Berlin now. He likes living there. (He likes living in Berlin = He lives there and he likes it)
   - Do you like being a student? (You are a student – do you like it?)
   - The office I worked in was horrible. I hated working there. (I worked there and I hated it)

2. There is sometimes a difference between I like to do and I like doing:
   - I like doing something = I do it and I enjoy it:
     - I like cleaning the kitchen. (= I enjoy it.)
   - I like to do something = I think it is a good thing to do, but I don’t necessarily enjoy it:
     - It’s not my favourite job, but I like to clean the kitchen as often as possible.
   - Note that enjoy and mind are always followed by -ing (not to ...):
     - I enjoy cleaning the kitchen. (not I enjoy to clean)
     - I don’t mind cleaning the kitchen. (not I don’t mind to clean)

Would like / would love / would hate / would prefer

Would like / would love etc. are usually followed by to ... :
- I’d like (= I would like) to go away for a few days.
- Would you like to come to dinner on Friday?
- I wouldn’t like to go on holiday alone.
- I’d love to meet your family.
- Would you prefer to have dinner now or later?

Compare I like and I would like (I’d like):
- I like playing tennis. / I like to play tennis. (= I like it in general)
- I’d like to play tennis today. (= I want to play today)

Would mind is always followed by -ing (not to ...):
- Would you mind closing the door, please?

I would like to have done something = I regret now that I didn’t or couldn’t do it:
- It’s a shame we didn’t see Anna when we were in London. I would like to have seen her again.
- We’d like to have gone away, but we were too busy at home.

You can use the same structure after would love / would hate / would prefer:
- Poor David! I would hate to have been in his position.
- I’d love to have gone to the party, but it was impossible.
Exercises

58.1 Write sentences about yourself. Say whether you like or don’t like these activities. Choose one of these verbs for each sentence:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>like / don't like</th>
<th>love</th>
<th>hate</th>
<th>enjoy</th>
<th>don't mind</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(fly)</td>
<td>I don’t like flying.</td>
<td>or</td>
<td>I don’t like to fly.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(play cards)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(be alone)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(go to museums)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(cook)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

58.2 Make sentences from the words in brackets. Use -ing or to ... . Sometimes either form is possible.
1. Paul lives in Berlin now. It’s nice. He likes it.
   (he / like / live / there) He likes living there.
2. Jane is a biology teacher. She likes her job.
   (she / like / teach / biology) She likes teaching biology.
3. Joe always has his camera with him and takes a lot of pictures.
   (he / like / take / pictures) He likes taking pictures.
4. I used to work in a supermarket. I didn’t like it much.
   (I / not / like / work / there) I didn’t like working there.
5. Rachel is studying medicine. She likes it.
   (she / like / study / medicine) She likes studying medicine.
6. Dan is famous, but he doesn’t like it.
   (he / not / like / be / famous) He doesn’t like being famous.
7. Jennifer is a very careful person. She doesn’t take many risks.
   (she / not / like / take / risks) She doesn’t like taking risks.
8. I don’t like surprises.
   (I / like / know / things / in advance) I don’t like surprises in advance.

58.3 Complete each sentence with a verb in the correct form, -ing or to ... . In one sentence either form is possible.
1. It’s good to visit other places – I enjoy travelling.
2. ‘Would you like to sit down?’ ‘No, thanks. I’ll stand.’
3. I’m not quite ready yet. Would you mind waiting a little longer?
4. When I was a child, I hated going to bed early.
5. When I have to catch a train, I’m always worried that I’ll miss it. So I like being at the station in plenty of time.
6. I enjoy being busy. I don’t like it when there’s nothing to do.
7. I would love you to your wedding, but I’m afraid it isn’t possible.
8. I don’t like being in this part of town. I want to move somewhere else.
9. Do you have a minute? I’d like you to tell me about something.
10. If there’s bad news and good news, I like having the bad news first.

58.4 Write sentences using would ... to have (done). Use the verbs in brackets.
1. It’s a shame I couldn’t go to the party. (like) I would have liked to go to the party.
2. It’s a shame I didn’t see the programme. (like)
3. I’m glad I didn’t lose my watch. (hate)
4. It’s too bad I didn’t meet your parents. (love)
5. I’m glad I wasn’t alone. (not / like)
6. It’s a shame I couldn’t travel by train. (prefer)
Prefer and would rather

A Prefer to do and prefer doing

You can use 'prefer to (do)' or 'prefer -ing' to say what you prefer in general:

- I don't like cities. I prefer to live in the country. or I prefer living in the country.

Study the differences in structure after prefer. We say:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>prefer something to something else.</th>
<th>prefer doing something to doing something else.</th>
<th>prefer to do something to something else, rather than (do) something else.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I prefer this coat to the coat you were wearing yesterday.</td>
<td>I prefer driving to travelling by train.</td>
<td>but I prefer to drive rather than travel by train.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>but Sarah prefers to live in the country rather than (live) in a city.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Would prefer (I'd prefer ...)

We use would prefer to say what somebody wants in a specific situation (not in general):

- 'Would you prefer tea or coffee?' 'Coffee, please.'

We say 'would prefer to do something' (not usually would prefer doing):

- 'Shall we go by train?' 'I'd prefer to drive.' (not I'd prefer driving)
- I'd prefer to stay at home tonight rather than go to the cinema.

Would rather (I'd rather ...)

Would rather (do) = would prefer (to do). We use would rather + infinitive (without to).

Compare:

- 'Shall we go by train?' I'd rather drive.' (not to drive)
- 'Would you rather have tea or coffee?' Coffee, please.'

The negative is 'I'd rather not (do something)'.

- I'm tired. I'd rather not go out this evening, if you don't mind.
- 'Do you want to go out this evening? I'd rather not.'

We say 'would rather do something than do something else':

- I'd rather stay at home tonight than go to the cinema.

I'd rather somebody did something

We say 'I'd rather you did something' (not I'd rather you do). For example:

- 'Who's going to drive, you or me?' I'd rather you drove.' (= I would prefer this)
- 'Jack says he'll repair your bike tomorrow, OK?' I'd rather he did it today.'
- Are you going to tell Anna what happened, or would you rather I told her?

In this structure we use the past (drove, did etc.), but the meaning is present not past.

Compare:

- I'd rather make dinner now.
  I'd rather you made dinner now. (not I'd rather you make)

I'd rather you didn't (do something) = I'd prefer you not to do it:

- I'd rather you didn't tell anyone what I said.
- 'Are you going to tell Anna what happened?' 'No. I'd rather she didn't know.'
- 'Shall I tell Anna what happened?' 'I'd rather you didn't.'

Would prefer → Unit 58B Prefer (one thing) to (another) → Unit 136D
Exercises

59.1 Which do you prefer? Write sentences using ‘I prefer (something) to (something else)’. Put the verb into the correct form where necessary.

1 (drive / travel by train)
   I prefer driving to travelling by train.
2 (basketball / football)
   I prefer
3 (go to the cinema / watch DVDs at home)
   I would rather go to the cinema than watch DVDs at home.
4 (be very busy / have nothing to do)
   I prefer

Now rewrite sentences 3 and 4 using the structure ‘I prefer to (do something)’.

5 (1) I prefer to drive rather than travel by train.
6 (3) I prefer to

59.2 Complete the sentences. Sometimes you need one word, sometimes more.

A

Shall we walk home?
Do you want to eat now?
Would you like to watch TV?
Do you want to go to a restaurant?
Let’s leave now.
What about a game of tennis?
I think we should decide now.
Would you like to sit down?
Do you want me to come with you?

B

I’d rather get a taxi.
I’d prefer to wait till later.
I’d rather listen to some music.
I’d rather at home.
I’d rather wait a few minutes.
I’d prefer for a swim.
I’d rather think about it for a while.
I’d rather to stand.
I’d rather alone.

Now use the same ideas to complete these sentences using than and rather than.

10 I’d rather get a taxi than walk home.
11 I’d prefer for a swim
12 I’d rather at home
13 I’d prefer about it for a while
14 I’d rather some music

59.3 Complete the sentences using would you rather I …

1 Are you going to make dinner or would you rather I made it?
2 Are you going to tell Anna what happened or would you rather?
3 Are you going to do the shopping or?
4 Are you going to phone Tanya or?

59.4 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

1 ‘Shall I tell Anna what happened?’ ‘No, I’d rather she didn’t know.’
2 Do you want me to go now or would you rather I here?
3 Do you want to go out this evening or would you rather at home?
4 This is a private matter. I’d rather you tell anybody else.
5 I don’t want to make a decision without Jack and Sue. I’d rather they here.
6 A: Do you mind if I put some music on?
   B: I’d rather you I’m trying to study.
Preposition (in/for/about etc.) + -ing

If a preposition (in/for/about etc.) is followed by a verb, the verb ends in -ing:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>preposition</th>
<th>verb (-ing)</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>in</td>
<td>working</td>
<td>for us?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at</td>
<td>learning</td>
<td>languages.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with</td>
<td>studying</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of</td>
<td>having</td>
<td>a car?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for</td>
<td>inviting</td>
<td>me to your party.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>about</td>
<td>meeting</td>
<td>for lunch tomorrow?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instead of</td>
<td>sitting</td>
<td>at home all the time?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in spite of</td>
<td>feeling</td>
<td>ill.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can also say 'instead of somebody doing something', 'fed up with people doing something' etc.:

- I'm fed up with people telling me what to do.

Note the use of the following prepositions + -ing:

**before -ing and after -ing:**
- Before going out, I phoned Sarah. (not Before to go out)
- What did you do after finishing school?

You can also say 'Before I went out …' and ‘… after you finished school’.

**by -ing** (to say how something happens):
- The burglars got into the house by breaking a window and climbing in.
- You can improve your English by reading more.
- She made herself ill by not eating properly.
- Many accidents are caused by people driving too fast.

**without -ing:**
- We ran ten kilometres without stopping.
- It was a stupid thing to say. I said it without thinking.
- She needs to work without people disturbing her. (or … without being disturbed.)
- I have enough problems of my own without having to worry about yours.

**To -ing** (look forward to doing something etc.)

To is often part of the **infinitive** (to do / to see etc.):
- We decided to travel by train.
- Would you like to meet for lunch tomorrow?

But **to** is also a **preposition** (like in/for/about/with etc.). For example:
- We went from Paris to Geneva.
- I prefer tea to coffee.
- Are you looking forward to the weekend?

If a preposition is followed by a verb, the verb ends in -ing:
- I’m fed up with travelling by train.
- How about going away this weekend?

So, when **to** is a preposition and it is followed by a verb, you must say **to -ing**:
- I prefer driving to travelling by train. (not to travel)
- Are you looking forward to going on holiday? (not looking forward to go)
Exercises

60.1 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first.

1 Why is it useful to have a car?
   What are the advantages of [having a car]?

2 I don’t intend to apply for the job.
   I have no intention of [applying for the job].

3 Helen has a good memory for names.
   Helen is good at [remembering names].

4 You probably won’t win the lottery. You have little chance.
   You have little chance of [winning the lottery].

5 Did you get into trouble because you were late?
   Did you get into trouble for [being late]?

6 We didn’t eat at home. We went to a restaurant instead.
   Instead of [eating at home], we went to a restaurant.

7 We got into the exhibition. We didn’t have to queue.
   We got into the exhibition without [having to queue].

8 You probably won’t win the lottery. You have little chance.
   You have little chance of [winning the lottery].

60.2 Complete the sentences using by -ing. Use the following (with the verb in the correct form):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>borrow too much money</th>
<th>break a window</th>
<th>drive too fast</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>put some pictures on the walls</td>
<td>stand on a chair</td>
<td>turn a key</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 The burglars got into the house by [breaking a window].
2 I was able to reach the top shelf by [standing on a chair].
3 You start the engine of a car by [turning a key].
4 Kevin got himself into financial trouble by [borrowing too much money].
5 You can put people’s lives in danger by [breaking a window].
6 We made the room look nicer by [putting some pictures on the walls].

60.3 Complete the sentences with a suitable word. Use only one word each time.

1 We ran ten kilometres without [stopping].
2 He left the hotel without [paying] his bill.
3 It’s a nice morning. How about [going] for a walk?
4 We were able to translate the letter into English without [using] a dictionary.
5 Before [going] to bed, I like to have a hot drink.
6 It was a long trip. I was very tired after [travelling] on a train for 36 hours.
7 I was annoyed because the decision was made without [consulting] me.
8 After [working] the same job for ten years, I felt I needed a change.
9 We got lost because we went straight on instead of [turning] left.
10 I like these pictures you took. You’re good at [taking] pictures.

60.4 For each situation, write a sentence with I’m (not) looking forward to.

1 You are going on holiday next week. How do you feel?
   I’m looking forward to [going on holiday].

2 Kate is a good friend of yours and she is coming to visit you soon. So you will see her again soon. How do you feel? I’m ...

3 You are going to the dentist tomorrow. You don’t enjoy going to the dentist. How do you feel? I’m not ...

4 Rachel hates school, but she’s leaving next summer. How does she feel? ...

5 You’ve arranged to play tennis tomorrow. You haven’t played for a while and you like tennis a lot. How do you feel?
Be/get used to something (I’m used to …)

Study this example situation:

Lisa is American, but she lives in Britain. When she first drove a car in Britain, she found it very difficult because she had to drive on the left, not on the right. Driving on the left was strange and difficult for her because:

- She wasn’t used to it.
- She wasn’t used to driving on the left.

But after a lot of practice, driving on the left became less strange. So:
- She got used to driving on the left.

Now it’s no problem for Lisa:
- She is used to driving on the left.

I’m used to something = it is not new or strange for me:

- Paul lives alone. He doesn’t mind this because he has lived alone for 15 years. It is not strange for him. He is used to it. He is used to living alone.
- I bought some new shoes. They felt a bit strange at first because I wasn’t used to them.
- Our new apartment is on a very busy street. I expect we’ll get used to the noise, but at the moment it’s very disturbing.
- Helen has a new job. She has to get up much earlier now than before – at 6.30. She finds this difficult because she isn’t used to getting up so early.
- Katherine’s husband is often away from home. She doesn’t mind this. She is used to him being away.

After be/get used you cannot use the infinitive (to do / to drive etc.). We say:
- She is used to driving on the left. (not She is used to drive)

When we say ‘I am used to something’, to is a preposition, not a part of the infinitive.

So we say:
- We’re not used to the noise. / We’re not used to it.
- Paul is used to living alone. (not Paul is used to live)
- Lisa had to get used to driving on the left. (not get used to drive)

Do not confuse I am used to doing and I used to do:

I am used to (doing) something = it isn’t strange or new for me:
- I am used to the weather in this country.
- I am used to driving on the left because I’ve lived in Britain a long time.

I used to do something = I did it regularly in the past but no longer do it. You can use this only for the past, not for the present. (See Unit 18.)

The structure is ‘I used to do’ (not I am used to do):
- I used to drive to work every day, but these days I usually go by bike.
- We used to live just outside the town, but now we live near the centre.
Exercises

61.1 Look again at the situation in Section A on the opposite page ('Lisa is American ...'). The following situations are similar. Complete the sentences using used to.

1. Jack has to drive two hours to his work every morning. Many years ago, when he first had to do this, it was difficult for him. But now it's OK.

   When Jack started working in this job, he wasn’t ........................................................ driving two hours to work every morning, but after some time he .................................................. it.

   Now it's no problem for him. He ........................................................ two hours every morning.

2. Julia is a nurse. A year ago she started working nights. At first she found it hard and didn’t like it.

   She ........................................................ nights and it took her a few months to ........................................................ it. Now, after a year, it's OK for her.

   She ........................................................ nights.

61.2 What do you say in these situations? Use I'm (not) used to ...

1. You live alone. You don’t mind this. You have always lived alone.

   Friend: Do you get lonely sometimes?

   You: No, I used to living alone.

2. You sleep on the floor. You don’t mind this. You have always slept on the floor.

   Friend: Wouldn’t you prefer to sleep in a bed?

   You: No, I

3. You have to work long hours in your job. This is not a problem for you. You have always worked long hours.

   Friend: You have to work very long hours in your job, don’t you?

   You: Yes, but I don’t mind that. I

4. You usually go to bed early. Last night you went to bed very late (for you) and as a result you are very tired this morning.

   Friend: You look tired this morning.

   You: Yes, ..........................................................................................................................

61.3 Read the situations and complete the sentences using get/got used to.

1. Some friends of yours have just moved into an apartment on a busy street. It is very noisy.

   They’ll have to ........................................................ to the noise.

2. The children at school got a new teacher. She was different from the teacher before her, but this wasn’t a problem for the children. They soon .........................................................

3. Sue moved from a big house to a much smaller one. She found it strange at first. She had to ........................................................ in a much smaller house.

4. Some people you know from Britain are going to live in your country. What will they have to get used to?

   They’ll have to .........................................................

61.4 Complete the sentences using only one word each time (see Section C).

1. Lisa had to get used to ........................................................ on the left.

2. Dan used to ........................................................ a lot of coffee. Now he prefers tea.

3. I feel very full after that meal. I’m not used to ........................................................ so much.

4. I wouldn’t like to share an office. I’m used to ........................................................ my own office.

5. I used to ........................................................ a car, but I sold it a few months ago.

6. When we were children, we used to ........................................................ swimming very often.

7. There used to ........................................................ a school here, but it was knocked down a few years ago.

8. I’m the boss here! I’m not used to ........................................................ told what to do.

9. We used to ........................................................ in a village. We moved to London a few years ago and had to get used to ........................................................ in a big city.

→ Additional exercises 26–28 (pages 317–19)
Many verbs have the structure verb + preposition (in/for/about etc.) + object. For example:

- We talked about the problem.
- You must apologise for what you said.

If the object is another verb, it ends in -ing:

- We talked about going to South America.
- You must apologise for not telling the truth.

Some more verbs with this structure:

- approve (of)
- decide (against)
- dream (of)
- feel (like)
- insist (on)
- look forward (to)
- succeed (in)
- think (of/about)

You can also say 'approve of somebody doing something', 'look forward to somebody doing something' etc:

- I don't approve of people killing animals for fun.
- We are all looking forward to Andy coming home.

The following verbs can have the structure verb + object + preposition + -ing:

- They accused us of telling lies.
- We all congratulated Lisa on winning the first prize.
- What prevented you from coming to see us?
- The rain didn't stop them from enjoying our holiday.
- Nobody suspected the general of being a spy.
- I forgot to thank them for keeping them waiting.

You can say 'stop somebody doing' or 'stop somebody from doing':

- You can't stop me doing what I want. or You can't stop me from doing what I want.

The following examples are with not -ing:

- They accused us of not telling the truth.
- Excuse me for not replying to your email until now.

Some of these verbs are often used in the passive. For example:

- We were accused of telling lies.
- The general was suspected of being a spy.

Note that we say 'apologise to somebody for ...':

- I apologised to them for keeping them waiting. (not I apologised them)
Exercises

62.1 Complete each sentence using only one word.
1. Our neighbours apologised for making so much noise.
2. I feel lazy. I don’t feel like any work.
3. I wanted to go out alone, but Joe insisted on going with me.
4. Where are you thinking of going on your holiday this year?
5. We have decided against buying a car because we can’t really afford it.
6. It’s good Dan and Amy are coming to stay with us. I’m looking forward to seeing them again.
7. Some parents don’t approve of their children watching a lot of TV.
8. It took us a long time, but we finally succeeded in solving the problem.
9. I’ve always dreamed of living in a small house by the sea.

62.2 Complete each sentence using a preposition + one of the following verbs (in the correct form):

be cause do eat escape go
interrupt invite tell use walk wear

1. Do you feel like going out this evening?
2. The driver of the other car accused me of causing the accident.
3. There’s a fence around the lawn to stop people from walking on the grass.
4. Excuse me interrupting you, but may I ask you something?
5. The man who has been arrested is suspected of using a false passport.
6. I’m fed up with my job. I’m thinking about doing something else.
7. The guards weren’t able to prevent the prisoner from escaping.
8. I didn’t want to hear the story, but Dan insisted on telling me.
9. I’m getting hungry. I’m really looking forward to eating something.
10. I think you should apologise to Sue for being so rude to her.
11. I’m sorry I can’t come to your party, but thank you very much for inviting me.
12. The police stopped the car because they suspected the driver of not wearing a seat belt.

62.3 Complete the sentences on the right.

1. You thanked me for helping him.
   It was nice of you to help me. Thanks very much.

2. Tom insisted on taking you to the station. I insist.
   I’ll take you to the station. I insist.

3. Dan congratulated me on getting married.
   I hear you got married. Congratulations!

4. Jenny thanked you for coming to see me.
   It was nice of you to come to see me. Thank you.

5. Kate apologised for not phoning earlier.
   I’m sorry I didn’t phone earlier.

6. Jane accused you of being selfish.
   You’re selfish.
Expressions + -ing

When these expressions are followed by a verb, the verb ends in -ing:

It’s no use / It’s no good ...
- There’s nothing you can do about the situation, so it’s no use worrying about it.
- It’s no good trying to persuade me. You won’t succeed.

There’s no point in ...
- There’s no point in having a car if you never use it.
- There was no point in waiting any longer, so we left.

But we usually say ‘the point of doing something’:
- What’s the point of doing something?

It’s (not) worth ...
- I live only a short walk from here, so it’s not worth taking a taxi.
- Our flight was very early in the morning, so it wasn’t worth going to bed.

You can say that a film is worth seeing, a book is worth reading etc.:
- What was the film like? Was it worth seeing?
- Thieves broke into the house, but didn’t take anything. There was nothing worth stealing.

Have trouble -ing, have difficulty -ing etc.

Have trouble / difficulty / a problem doing something:
- I had no trouble finding a place to stay. (not trouble to find)
- Did you have any difficulty getting a visa?
- People sometimes have problems reading my writing.

Spend time / waste time / be busy

spend/waste (time) doing something:
- He spent hours trying to repair the clock.
- I waste a lot of time doing nothing.

(be) busy doing something:
- She said she couldn’t see me. She was too busy doing other things.

Go swimming / go fishing etc.

We use go -ing for a number of activities (especially sports).
For example, you can say:
- How often do you go swimming?
- I’d like to go skiing.
- When was the last time you went shopping?
- I’ve never been sailing. (For gone and been, see Unit 7D.)
Exercises

63.1 Make sentences beginning There’s no point ...

1. Why have a car if you never use it?
   There’s no point in having a car if you never use it.

2. Why work if you don’t need money?

3. Don’t try to study if you feel tired.

4. Why hurry if you’ve got plenty of time?

63.2 Complete the sentences on the right.

1. Shall we get a taxi home?
   No, it isn’t far. It’s not worth getting a taxi.

2. If you need help, why don’t you ask David?
   It’s no use asking David. He won’t be able to do anything.

3. I don’t really want to go out tonight.
   Well, stay at home! There’s no point if you don’t want to.

4. Shall I phone Lisa now?
   No, it’s no good now. She won’t be at home.

5. Are you going to complain about what happened?
   No, it’s not worth. Nobody will do anything about it.

6. Do you want to keep these old clothes?
   No, let’s throw them away. They’re not worth

63.3 Complete the sentences.

1. I managed to get a visa, but it was difficult.
   I had difficulty getting a visa.

2. I find it hard to remember people’s names.
   I have a problem.

3. Lucy managed to get a job. It wasn’t a problem.
   She had no trouble.

4. It won’t be difficult to get a ticket for the game.
   You won’t have any problem.

5. Do you find it difficult to understand him?
   Do you have difficulty?

63.4 Complete the sentences. Use only one word each time.

1. I waste a lot of time doing nothing.

2. Every morning I spend about an hour the newspaper.

3. ‘What’s Karen doing?’ ‘She’s going away tomorrow, so she’s busy.’

4. I think you waste too much time TV.

5. There’s a beautiful view from that hill. It’s worth to the top.

6. Just stay calm. There’s no point in angry.

63.5 Complete these sentences with the following (with the verb in the correct form):

- go riding
- go sailing
- go shopping
- go skiing
- go swimming

1. Ben lives by the sea and he’s got a boat, so he often goes sailing.

2. It was a very hot day, so we in the lake.

3. There’s plenty of snow in the mountains, so we’ll be able to.

4. Helen has got two horses. She regularly.

5. ‘Where’s Dan?’ ‘He’s . There were a few things he needed to buy.’
Study these examples:
- I phoned the restaurant to reserve a table.
- What do you need to make bread?
- We shouted to warn everybody of the danger.
- This letter is to confirm the decisions we made at our meeting last week.
- The president has a team of bodyguards to protect him.

In these examples to ... (to reserve ... / to make ... etc.) tells us the purpose of something: why somebody does something, has something, needs something etc., or why something exists.

We say ‘a place to park’, ‘something to eat’, ‘work to do’ etc.:
- It’s difficult to find a place to park in the centre. (= a place where you can park)
- Would you like something to eat? (= something that you can eat)
- Do you have much work to do? (= work that you must do)
- I get lonely if there’s nobody to talk to.
- I need something to open this bottle with.

Also money/time/chance/opportunity/energy/courage (etc.) to do something:
- They gave us money to buy food.
- Do you have much opportunity to practise your English?
- I need a few days to think about your proposal.

Compare for ... and to ...:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>for + noun</th>
<th>to + verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>We stopped for petrol.</td>
<td>We stopped to get petrol.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I had to run for the bus.</td>
<td>I had to run to catch the bus.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can say ‘for somebody to do something’:
- There weren’t any chairs for us to sit on, so we sat on the floor.

You can use for -ing or to ... to talk about the general purpose of something, or what it is generally used for:
- I use this brush for washing the dishes. or ... to wash the dishes.

But we do not use for -ing to say why somebody does something:
- I went into the kitchen to wash the dishes. (not for washing)

You can use What ... for? to ask about purpose:
- What is this switch for?
- What did you do that for?

So that

We use so that (not to ...) especially when the purpose is negative (so that ... won’t/wouldn’t):
- I hurried so that I wouldn’t be late. (= because I didn’t want to be late)
- Eat something now so that you won’t (or don’t) get hungry later.

with can and could (so that ... can/could):
- She’s learning English so that she can study in Canada.
- We moved to London so that we could see our friends more often.

You can leave out that. So you can say:
- I hurried so that I wouldn’t be late. or I hurried so I wouldn’t be late.
### Exercises

#### 64.1 Choose from Box A and Box B to make a new sentence with to ... .

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. I shouted</td>
<td>I want to keep warm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. I opened the box</td>
<td>I want to go to Canada</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. I'm saving money</td>
<td>I wanted to report the accident</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. I need a knife</td>
<td>I wanted to warn people of the danger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. I'm wearing two sweaters</td>
<td>I want to chop these onions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. I phoned the police</td>
<td>I wanted to see what was in it</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. I shouted to warn people of the danger.
2. I opened the box
3. I
4. I
5. I
6. I

---

#### 64.2 Complete these sentences using to + a suitable verb.

1. The president has a team of bodyguards to protect him.
2. I didn’t have enough time to read the newspaper today.
3. I came home by taxi. I didn’t have the energy to do this job.
4. ‘Would you like something to drink?’ ‘Yes, please. A cup of coffee.’
5. We need a bag to put these things in.
6. There will be a meeting next week to solve the problem.
7. Do you need a visa to go to the United States?
8. I saw Helen at the party, but we didn’t have a chance to talk to each other.
9. I need some new clothes. I don’t have anything nice to wear.
10. They’ve just passed their exams. They’re having a party.
11. I can’t do all this work alone. I need somebody to help me.

---

#### 64.3 Put in to or for.

1. We stopped for petrol.
2. You need a lot of experience for this job.
3. You need a lot of experience to do this job.
4. We’ll need more time to make a decision.
5. I went to the dentist for a check-up.
6. I had to put on my glasses to read the paper.
7. Do you have to wear glasses for reading?
8. I wish we had a garden for the children to play in.

---

#### 64.4 Make one sentence from two, using so that.

1. I hurried. I didn’t want to be late. I hurried so that I wouldn’t be late.
2. I wore warm clothes. I didn’t want to be cold. I wore warm clothes
3. I gave Dan my phone number. I wanted him to be able to contact me. I gave Dan my phone number
4. We whispered. We didn’t want anybody else to hear our conversation. We whispered so that nobody
5. Please arrive early. We want to be able to start the meeting on time. Please arrive early
6. We made a list of things to do. We didn’t want to forget anything. We made a list of things to do
7. I slowed down. I wanted the car behind me to be able to overtake. I slowed down
Adjective + to ...

Difficult to understand etc.

Compare sentences (a) and (b):

- (a) It is difficult to understand him.
- (b) He is difficult to understand.

Sentences (a) and (b) have the same meaning. Note that we say:
- He is difficult to understand. (not He is difficult to understand him.)

You can use the same structures with:
- easy nice safe cheap exciting impossible
- hard good dangerous expensive interesting

- Do you think it is safe (for us) to drink this water? Do you think this water is safe (for us) to drink? (not to drink it)
- The questions in the exam were very difficult. It was impossible to answer them.
- The questions in the exam were very difficult. They were impossible to answer. (not to answer them)
- Nicola has lots of interesting ideas. It's interesting to talk to her.
- Nicola is interesting to talk to. (not to talk to her.)

You can also use this structure with adjective + noun:
- This is a difficult question (for me) to answer. (not to answer it)

Nice of (you) to ...

You can say 'It's nice of somebody to do something':
- It was nice of you to take me to the airport. Thank you very much.

You can use many other adjectives in this way. For example:
- kind (in)considerate generous mean careless silly stupid unfair
- It's silly of Ruth to give up her job when she needs the money.
- I think it was unfair of him to criticise me.

Sorry to ... / surprised to ... etc.

You can use adjective + to ... to say how somebody reacts to something:
- I'm sorry to hear that your mother isn't well.

You can use many other adjectives in this way. For example:
- glad pleased relieved surprised amazed sad disappointed
- Was Julia surprised to see you?
- It was a long and tiring journey. We were glad to get home.

The first / the next (etc.) + to ...

You can use to ... after the first/second/third etc., and also after the last / the next / the only ... :
- If I have any more news, you will be the first (person) to know.
- The next train to arrive at platform 4 will be the 10.50 to Liverpool.
- Everybody was late except me. I was the only one to arrive on time.

You can say that something is sure/certain/likely/bound to happen:
- Carla is a very good student. She's bound to pass the exam. (= she is sure to pass)
- I'm likely to get home late tonight. (= I will probably get home late)
Exercises

(Section A) Write these sentences in another way, beginning as shown.

1. It's difficult to understand him. He is difficult to understand.
2. It's easy to use this machine. This machine is easy to use.
3. It was very difficult to open the window. The window was very difficult to open.
4. It's impossible to translate some words. Some words are impossible to translate.
5. It's expensive to maintain a car. A car is expensive to maintain.
6. It's not safe to stand on that chair. That chair is not safe to stand on.

(Section A) Complete the second sentence. Use the adjective in brackets and to ... as in the example.

1. I couldn’t answer the question. (difficult) It was a difficult question to answer.
2. Everybody makes that mistake. (easy) It’s an easy mistake to make.
3. I like living in this place. (nice) It’s a nice place to live.
4. We enjoyed watching the game. (good) It was a good game to watch.

(Section B) Make a new sentence beginning It... . Use one of these adjectives each time:

- careless
- inconsiderate
- kind
- nice

1. Sue has offered to help me. It’s kind of Sue to offer to help me.
2. You make the same mistake again and again. It’s careless of you to make the same mistake.
3. Dan and Jenny invited me to stay with them. It’s kind of Dan and Jenny to invite me.
4. The neighbours make so much noise. It’s inconsiderate of the neighbours to make so much noise.

(Section C) Use the following words to complete these sentences:

I / sorry / hear
I / glad / hear
pleased / meet
we / surprised / see

1. I’m sorry to hear that your mother isn’t well. I hope she gets better soon.
2. I got your message. I’m glad that you’re keeping well.
3. We were surprised to see Paula at the party last night. We didn’t expect her to come.
4. ‘Tom, this is Chris.’ ‘Hi Chris. How are you.’

(Section D) Complete the second sentence using the words in brackets + to ... .

1. Nobody spoke before me. (the first) I was the first person to speak.
2. Everybody else arrived before Paul. (the last) Paul was the last to arrive.
3. Emily passed the exam. All the other students failed. (the only) Emily was the only one to pass.
4. I complained to the restaurant manager about the service. Another customer had already complained. (the second) I was the second customer to complain.
5. Neil Armstrong walked on the moon in 1969. Nobody had done this before him. (the first) Neil Armstrong was the first person to walk on the moon.

(Section E) Complete these sentences using the words in brackets and a suitable verb.

1. Carla is a very good student. She is bound to pass the exam. (bound)
2. I’m not surprised you’re tired. After such a long journey you must be tired. (bound)
3. Andy has a very bad memory. He isn’t sure what you tell him. (sure)
4. I don’t think you need to take an umbrella. It isn’t likely to rain. (not likely)
5. The holidays begin this weekend. There is likely to be a lot of traffic on the roads. (likely)
To ... (afraid to do) and preposition + -ing (afraid of -ing)

**Afraid to (do) and afraid of (do)ing**

I am afraid to do something = I don’t want to do it because it is dangerous or the result could be bad.

We use afraid to do for things we do intentionally; we can choose to do them or not:
- This part of town is dangerous. People are afraid to walk here at night. (= they don’t want to walk here because it is dangerous – so they don’t)
- James was afraid to tell his parents what had happened. (= he didn’t want to tell them because he knew they would be angry or worried)

I am afraid of something happening = it is possible that something bad will happen (for example, an accident).

We do not use afraid of -ing for things we do intentionally:
- The path was icy, so we walked very carefully. We were afraid of falling. (= it was possible that we would fall – not we were afraid to fall)
- I don’t like dogs. I’m always afraid of being bitten. (not afraid to be bitten)

So, you are afraid to do something because you are afraid of something happening as a result:
- I was afraid to go near the dog because I was afraid of being bitten.

**Interested in (do)ing and interested to (do)**

I’m interested in doing something = I’m thinking of doing it, I would like to do it:
- Let me know if you’re interested in joining the club. (not to join)
- I tried to sell my car, but nobody was interested in buying it. (not to buy)

We use interested to ... to say how somebody reacts to what they hear/see/read/learn/know/find. For example, ‘I was interested to hear it’ = I heard it and it was interesting for me:
- I was interested to hear that Tanya left her job.
- Ask Mike for his opinion. I would be interested to know what he thinks. (= it would be interesting for me to know it)

This structure is the same as surprised to ... / glad to ... etc. (see Unit 65C):
- I was surprised to hear that Tanya left her job.

**Sorry to (do) and sorry for/about (do)ing**

We use sorry to ... to say we regret something that happens (see Unit 65C):
- I was sorry to hear that Nicky lost her job. (= I was sorry when I heard that …)
- I’ve enjoyed my stay here. I’ll be sorry to leave.

We also say sorry to … to apologise at the time we do something:
- I’m sorry to phone you so late, but I need to ask you something.

You can use sorry for or sorry about (doing something) to apologise for something you did before:
- I’m sorry for (or about) shouting at you yesterday. (not sorry to shout)

You can also say:
- I’m sorry I shouted at you yesterday.

We say:
I want to (do) / I’d like to (do) but I’m thinking of (do)ing / I dream of (do)ing
I failed to (do) but I succeeded in (do)ing
I allowed them to (do) but I prevented them from (do)ing
I stopped them from (do)ing

For examples, see Units 54–55 and 62.
Use the words in brackets to write sentences. Use afraid to ... or afraid of -ing.

1. The streets are unsafe at night.
   (a lot of people / afraid / go / out)   A lot of people are afraid to go out.
2. We walked very carefully along the icy path.
   (we / afraid / fall)   We were afraid of falling.
3. I don’t usually carry my passport with me.
   (I / afraid / lose / it)   
4. I thought she would be angry if I told her what had happened.
   (I / afraid / tell / her)
5. We rushed to the station.
   (we / afraid / miss / our train)
6. In the middle of the film there was an especially horrifying scene.
   (we / afraid / look)
7. The vase was very valuable, so I held it carefully.
   (I / afraid / drop / it)
8. I thought the food on my plate didn’t look fresh.
   a (I / afraid / eat / it)   
   b (I / afraid / get / sick)

Complete the sentences using in ... or to .... Use these verbs:
- buy
- get
- know
- look
- read
- start

1. I’m trying to sell my car, but nobody is interested in buying it.
2. Julia is interested in starting her own business.
3. I was interested in your article in the newspaper last week. It was very well written.
4. Ben wants to stay single. He’s not interested in getting married.
5. I heard from Mark recently. You’ll be interested in that he’s now working in Paris.
6. I don’t enjoy sightseeing. I’m not interested in looking at old buildings.

Complete each sentence using sorry for/about ... or sorry to .... Use the verb in brackets.

1. I’m sorry to hear you so late, but I need to ask you something. (phone)
2. I was sorry to hear that you didn’t get the job you applied for. (hear)
3. I’m sorry for all those bad things about you. I didn’t mean them. (say)
4. I’m sorry to disturb you, but do you have a pen I could borrow? (disturb)
5. I’m sorry to lose the book you lent me. I’ll buy you another one. (lose)

Complete each sentence using the verb in brackets.

1. a. We wanted to leave the building. (leave)
   b. We weren’t allowed to leave the building. (leave)
   c. We were prevented from leaving the building. (leave)
2. a. Peter failed to solve the problem. (solve)
   b. Chris succeeded in solving the problem. (solve)
3. a. I’m thinking of going away next week. (go)
   b. I’m hoping to go away next week. (go)
   c. I’d like to go away next week. (go)
   d. I’m looking forward to going away next week. (go)
4. a. Helen wanted me to buy lunch. (buy)
   b. Helen insisted I buy lunch. (buy)
   c. Helen promised to buy me lunch. (buy)
   d. Helen wouldn’t dream of buying me lunch. (buy)
See somebody do and see somebody doing

A

Study this example situation:

Tom got into his car and drove away. You saw this.

You can say:

- I saw Tom get into his car and drive away.

In this structure we use get/drive/do etc.
(not to get / to drive / to do).

Somebody did something + I saw this

I saw somebody do something

But after a passive (‘he was seen’ etc.), we use to:

- He was seen to get in the car.

B

Study this example situation:

Yesterday you saw Kate. She was waiting for a bus.

You can say:

- I saw Kate waiting for a bus.

In this structure we use -ing (waiting/doing etc.):

Somebody was doing something + I saw this

I saw somebody doing something

C

Study the difference in meaning between the two structures:

I saw him do something = he did something (past simple) and I saw this. I saw the complete action from beginning to end:

- He fell off the wall. I saw this. → I saw him fall off the wall.
- The accident happened. Did you see it? → Did you see the accident happen?

I saw him doing something = he was doing something (past continuous) and I saw this. I saw him when he was in the middle of doing it. This does not mean that I saw the complete action:

- He was walking along the street. I saw him walking along the street. I saw this when I drove past in my car.

Sometimes the difference is not important and you can use either form:

- I’ve never seen her dance. or I’ve never seen her dancing.

D

We use these structures with see and hear, and a number of other verbs:

- I didn’t hear you come in. (you came in – I didn’t hear this)
- Lisa suddenly felt somebody touch her on the shoulder.
- Did you notice anyone go out?
- I could hear it raining. (it was raining – I could hear it)
- A man was seen running away a short time after the break-in.
- Listen to the birds singing!
- Can you smell something burning?
- We looked everywhere for Paul, and finally we found him sitting under a tree in the garden and eating an apple.
Exercises

67.1 Complete the answers to the questions.

1. Did anybody go out? ______________________________
2. Has Sarah arrived yet? ______________________________
3. How do you know I took the money? ______________________________
4. Did the doorbell ring? ______________________________
5. Can Tom play the piano? ______________________________
6. Did I lock the door when I went out? ______________________________
7. How did the woman fall? ______________________________

I don’t think so. I didn’t see anybody go out.
Yes, I think I heard her...
I know because I saw you...
I don’t think so. I didn’t hear...
I’ve never heard...
Yes, I saw...
I don’t know. I didn’t see...

67.2 In each of these situations you and a friend saw, heard or smelt something. Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

1. We saw Kate waiting for a bus.
2. We saw David and Helen.
3. We saw ______________________________ in a restaurant.
4. We heard ______________________________.
5. We could ______________________________.
6. ______________________________.

67.3 Complete these sentences. Use the following verbs (in the correct form):

climb, come, crawl, cry, explode, ride, run, say, sing, slam, sleep, tell

1. Listen to the birds ______________________________!
2. I didn’t hear you ______________________________ in.
3. We listened to the old man ______________________________ his story from beginning to end.
4. Listen! Can you hear a baby ______________________________?
5. I looked out of the window and saw Dan ______________________________ his bike along the road.
7. We watched two men ______________________________ across the garden and ______________________________ through an open window into the house.
8. Everybody heard the bomb ______________________________. It was a tremendous noise.
9. Oh! I can feel something ______________________________ up my leg! It must be an insect.
10. I heard somebody ______________________________ the door in the middle of the night. It woke me up.
11. When we got home, we found a cat ______________________________ on the kitchen table.
-ing clauses  (Feeling tired, I went to bed early.)

Study these situations:

Joe was playing football. He hurt his knee.

You can say:

- Joe hurt his knee playing football.

You were feeling tired. So you went to bed early.

You can say:

- Feeling tired, I went to bed early.

'Playing football' and 'feeling tired' are -ing clauses.

If the -ing clause is at the beginning of the sentence (as in the second example), we write a comma (,) after it.

When two things happen at the same time, you can use an -ing clause:

- Kate is in the kitchen making coffee. (= she is in the kitchen and she is making coffee)
- A man ran out of the house shouting. (= he ran out of the house and he was shouting)
- Do something! Don’t just stand there doing nothing!

We also use -ing when one action happens during another action. We use -ing for the longer action:

- Joe hurt his knee playing football. (= while he was playing)
- Did you cut yourself shaving? (= while you were shaving)

You can also use -ing after while or when:

- Joe hurt his knee while playing football.
- Be careful when crossing the road. (= when you are crossing)

When one action happens before another action, we use having (done) for the first action:

- Having found a hotel, we looked for somewhere to have dinner.
- Having finished her work, she went home.

You can also say after -ing:

- After finishing her work, she went home.

If one short action follows another short action, you can use the simple -ing form (doing instead of having done) for the first action:

- Taking a key out of his pocket, he opened the door.

These structures are used more in written English than in spoken English.

You can use an -ing clause to explain something, or to say why somebody does something.

The -ing clause usually comes at the beginning of the sentence:

- Feeling tired, I went to bed early. (= because I felt tired)
- Being unemployed, he doesn’t have much money. (= because he is unemployed)
- Not having a car, she finds it difficult to get around. (= because she doesn’t have a car)

Use having (done) for something that happened before something else:

- Having already seen the film twice, I didn’t want to see it again. (= because I had already seen it twice)

These structures are used more in written English than in spoken English.
Exercises

68.1 Choose from Box A and Box B to make sentences. Use an -ing clause.

A
1. Kate was in the kitchen.
2. Amy was sitting in an armchair.
3. Sue opened the door carefully.
4. Sarah went out.
5. Lisa was in London for two years.
6. Anna walked around the town.

B
1. She was trying not to make a noise.
2. She looked at the sights and took pictures.
3. She said she would be back in an hour.
4. She was reading a book.
5. She was making coffee.
6. She worked in a bookshop.

68.2 Make one sentence from two using an -ing clause.

1. Joe was playing football. He hurt his knee.
   Joe was playing football. He hurt his knee.
2. I was watching TV. I fell asleep.
3. A friend of mine slipped and fell. He was getting off a bus.
   A friend of mine was getting off a bus.
4. I was walking home in the rain. I got very wet.
5. Laura was driving to work yesterday. She had an accident.
6. Two people were overcome by smoke. They were trying to put out the fire.

68.3 Make sentences beginning Having ... . Put the words in the correct order.

1. (went / she / work / her / home / finished)
   Having finished her work, she went home.
2. (tickets / the theatre / bought / into / our / went / we)
   Having bought our tickets, we went into the theatre.
3. (journey / their / had / they / lunch / continued)
   Having had lunch, they continued their journey.
4. (the / coffee / shopping / I / a cup / went / done / for / of)
   Having done the shopping, I went for a cup of coffee.

68.4 Make one sentence from two. Begin with -ing or Not -ing (like the examples in Section D).

Sometimes you need to begin with Having (done something).

1. I felt tired. So I went to bed early.
   Feeling tired, I went to bed early.
2. I thought they might be hungry. So I offered them something to eat.
   I thought they might be hungry. So I offered them something to eat.
3. Robert is a vegetarian. So he doesn't eat any kind of meat.
   Robert is a vegetarian. So he doesn't eat any kind of meat.
4. I didn't know his email address. So I wasn't able to contact him.
   Not knowing his email address, I wasn't able to contact him.
5. Sarah has travelled a lot. So she knows a lot about other countries.
   Sarah has travelled a lot. So she knows a lot about other countries.
6. I wasn't able to speak the local language. So I had trouble communicating.
   I wasn't able to speak the local language. So I had trouble communicating.
7. We had spent nearly all our money. So we couldn’t afford to stay at a hotel.
   Having spent nearly all our money, we couldn’t afford to stay at a hotel.
A noun can be **countable** or **uncountable**:

**Countable**
- I eat a banana every day.
- I like bananas.

Banana is a countable noun.

A countable noun can be singular (banana) or plural (bananas).

We can use numbers with countable nouns. So we can say ‘one banana’, ‘two bananas’ etc.

Examples of nouns usually countable:
- Kate was singing a song.
- There’s a nice beach here.
- Do you have a ten-pound note?
- It wasn’t your fault. It was an accident.
- There are no batteries in the radio.
- We don’t have enough cups.

**Uncountable**
- I eat rice every day.
- I like rice.

Rice is an uncountable noun.

An uncountable noun has only one form (rice).

We cannot use numbers with uncountable nouns. We cannot say ‘one rice’, ‘two rices’ etc.

Examples of nouns usually uncountable:
- Kate was listening to (some) music.
- There’s sand in my shoes.
- Do you have any money?
- It wasn’t your fault. It was bad luck.
- There is no electricity in this house.
- We don’t have enough water.

You can use a/an with singular countable nouns:
- a beach
- a student
- an umbrella

You cannot use singular countable nouns alone (without a/the/my etc.):
- I want a banana. (not I want banana)
- There’s been an accident. (not There’s been accident)

You can use plural countable nouns alone:
- I like bananas. (= bananas in general)
- Accidents can be prevented.

You cannot normally use a/an with uncountable nouns. We do not say ‘a sand’, ‘a music’, ‘a rice’.

But you can often use a ... of. For example:
- a bowl / a packet / a grain of rice

You can use uncountable nouns alone (without the/my/some etc.):
- I eat rice every day.
- There’s blood on your shirt.
- Can you hear music?

You can use some and any with plural countable nouns:
- We sang some songs.
- Did you buy any apples?

We use many and few with plural countable nouns:
- We didn’t take many pictures.
- I have a few things to do.

You can use some and any with uncountable nouns:
- We listened to some music.
- Did you buy any apple juice?

We use much and little with uncountable nouns:
- We didn’t do much shopping.
- I have a little work to do.
Some of these sentences need a/an. Correct the sentences where necessary.

1. Joe goes everywhere by bike. He hasn’t got car.  
   Correct: Joe goes everywhere by bike. He hasn’t got a car.

2. Helen was listening to music when I arrived.  
   Correct: Helen was listening to music when I arrived.

3. We went to very nice restaurant last weekend.  
   Correct: We went to a very nice restaurant last weekend.

4. I brush my teeth with toothpaste.  
   Correct: I use toothbrush to brush my teeth.

5. Can you tell me if there’s bank near here?  
   Correct: My brother works for insurance company in Frankfurt.

6. I don’t like violence.  
   Correct: Can you tell me if there’s bank near here?

7. Jane was wearing beautiful necklace.

Complete the sentences using the following words. Use a/an where necessary.

- accident- biscuit blood coat decision electricity
- interview key moment music question sugar

1. It wasn’t your fault. It was an accident.
2. Listen! Can you hear music?
3. I couldn’t get into the house because I didn’t have a key.
4. It’s very warm today. Why are you wearing a coat?
5. Do you take sugar in your coffee?
6. Are you hungry? Would you like a biscuit with your coffee?
7. Our lives would be very difficult without electricity.
8. ‘I had an interview for a job yesterday.’ ‘Did you? How did it go?’
9. The heart pumps blood through the body.
10. Excuse me, but can I ask you a question?
11. I’m not ready yet. Can you wait, please?
12. We can’t delay much longer. We have to make a decision soon.

Complete the sentences using the following words. Sometimes the word needs to be plural (-s), and sometimes you need to use a/an.

- air day friend joke language meat
- patience people picture queue space umbrella

1. I had my camera, but I didn’t take any pictures.
2. There are seven days in a week.
3. A vegetarian is a person who doesn’t eat meat.
4. Outside the cinema there was a queue of people waiting to see the film.
5. I’m not very good at telling jokes.
6. Last night I went out with some friends of mine.
7. There were very few people in town today. The streets were almost empty.
8. I’m going out for a walk. I need some fresh air.
9. Gary always wants things quickly. He doesn’t have much patience.
10. I think it’s going to rain. Do you have an umbrella I could borrow?
11. Do you speak any foreign languages?
12. Our flat is very small. We don’t have much space.
Many nouns can be used as countable or uncountable nouns, usually with a difference in meaning. Compare:

**Countable**
- Did you hear a noise just now? (= a specific noise)
- I bought a paper to read. (= a newspaper)
- There's a hair in my soup! (= one single hair)
- You can stay with us. There's a spare room. (= a room in a house)
- I had some interesting experiences while I was travelling. (= things that happened to me)
- Enjoy your trip. Have a good time!

**Uncountable**
- I can't work here. There's too much noise. (= noise in general)
- I need some paper to write on. (= material for writing on)
- You've got very long hair. (not hairs) (= all the hair on your head)
- You can't sit here. There isn't room. (= space)
- They offered me the job because I had a lot of experience. (not experiences)
- I can't wait. I don't have time.

**Coffee**/tea/juice/beer etc. (drinks) are normally uncountable:
- I don't like coffee very much.

But you can say a coffee (= a cup of coffee), two coffees (= two cups) etc.:
- Two coffees and an orange juice, please.

The following nouns are usually uncountable:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>accommodation</th>
<th>behaviour</th>
<th>damage</th>
<th>luck</th>
<th>permission</th>
<th>traffic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>advice</td>
<td>bread</td>
<td>chaos</td>
<td>luggage</td>
<td>progress</td>
<td>weather</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>baggage</td>
<td>information</td>
<td>news</td>
<td>scenery</td>
<td>work</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You cannot use a/an with these nouns:
- I'm going to buy some bread. or ... a loaf of bread. (not a bread)
- Enjoy your holiday! I hope you have good weather. (not a good weather)

These nouns are not usually plural (so we do not say 'breads', 'furnitures' etc.):
- Where are you going to put all your furniture? (not furnitures)
- Let me know if you need more information. (not informations)

**News** is uncountable, not plural:
- The news was very depressing. (not The news were)

**Travel** (noun) means 'travelling in general' (uncountable). We do not say 'a travel' to mean a trip or a journey:
- They spend a lot of money on travel.
- We had a very good trip/journey. (not a good travel)

Compare these countable and uncountable nouns:

**Countable**
- I'm looking for a job.
- What a beautiful view!
- It's a nice day today.
- We had a lot of bags and cases.
- These chairs are mine.
- That's a good suggestion.

**Uncountable**
- I'm looking for work. (not a work)
- What beautiful scenery!
- It's nice weather today.
- We had a lot of baggage/luggage.
- This furniture is mine.
- That's good advice.
Exercises

70.1 Which of the underlined parts of these sentences is correct?
1 'Did you hear -noise- / a noise just now?' 'No, I didn’t hear anything.' (a noise is correct)
2 a If you want to know the news, you can read paper / a paper.
   b I want to print some documents, but the printer is out of paper / papers.
3 a Light / A light comes from the sun.
   b I thought there was somebody in the house because there was light / a light on inside.
4 a I was in a hurry this morning. I didn’t have time / a time for breakfast.
   b ‘Did you have a good holiday?’ ‘Yes, we had wonderful time / a wonderful time.’
5 This is nice room / a nice room. Did you decorate it yourself?
6 Sue was very helpful. She gave us some very useful advice / advices.
7 Did you have nice weather / a nice weather when you were away?
8 We were very unfortunate. We had bad luck / a bad luck.
9 Is it difficult to find a work / job at the moment?
10 Our travel / journey from Paris to Moscow by train was very tiring.
11 When the fire alarm rang, there was total chaos / a total chaos.
12 I had to buy a bread / some bread because I wanted to make some sandwiches.
13 Bad news don’t / doesn’t make people happy.
14 Your hair is / Your hairs are too long. You should have it / them cut.
15 The damage / The damages caused by the storm will cost a lot to repair.

70.2 Complete the sentences using the following words. Use the plural (-s) where necessary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>advice</th>
<th>chair</th>
<th>experience</th>
<th>experience</th>
<th>furniture</th>
<th>hair</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>information</td>
<td>job</td>
<td>luggage</td>
<td>permission</td>
<td>progress</td>
<td>work</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 I didn’t have much luggage – just two small bags.
2 They’ll tell you all you want to know. They’ll give you plenty of information.
3 There is room for everybody to sit down. There are plenty of chairs.
4 We have no furniture, not even a bed or a table.
5 ‘What does Alan look like?’ ‘He’s got a long beard and very short hair.’
6 Carla’s English is better than it was. She’s made progress.
7 Mike is unemployed. He can’t get a job.
8 Mike is unemployed. He can’t get a job.
9 If you want to leave early, you have to ask for permission.
10 I didn’t know what to do. So I asked Chris for advice.
11 I don’t think Dan should get the job. He doesn’t have enough experience.
12 Nicola has done many interesting things. She could write a book about her experiences.

70.3 What do you say in these situations? Use a word from Section B (luggage, weather etc.) in each sentence.

1 Your friends have just arrived at the station. You can’t see any cases or bags.
   You ask them: Do you have any luggage?
2 You go into the tourist office. You want to know about places to see in the town.
   You say: I’d like some information.
3 You are a student. You want your teacher to advise you about which courses to do.
   You say: Can you give me advice?
4 You want to watch the news on TV, but you don’t know when it is on.
   You ask your friend: What time is it?
5 You are at the top of a mountain. You can see a very long way. It’s beautiful.
   You say: It is beautiful, isn’t it?
6 You look out of the window. The weather is horrible: cold, wet and windy.
   You say: What a terrible weather!
Countable nouns can be singular or plural:

| a dog | a child | the evening | this party | an umbrella |
dogs   | some children | the evenings | these parties | two umbrellas |

Before singular countable nouns you can use a/an:

- Bye! Have a nice evening.
- Do you need an umbrella?

You cannot use singular countable nouns alone (without a/the/my etc.):

- She never wears a hat.  (not She never wears hat)
- Be careful of the dog.  (not Be careful of dog)
- What a beautiful day!
- I've got a headache.

We use a/an … to say what kind of thing something is, or what kind of person somebody is:

- That's a nice table.

In the plural we use the noun alone (not some …):

- Those are nice chairs.  (not some nice chairs)

Compare singular and plural:

- A dog is an animal.
- I'm an optimist.
- Tom's father is a doctor.
- Are you a good driver?
- Jane is a really nice person.
- What a lovely dress!
- Dogs are animals.
- We're optimists.
- Most of my friends are students.
- Are they good students?
- Jane's parents are really nice people.
- What awful shoes!

We say that somebody has a long nose / a nice face / blue eyes / small hands etc.:

- Jack has a long nose.  (not the long nose)
- Jack has blue eyes.  (not the blue eyes)

Remember to use a/an when you say what somebody's job is:

- Sandra is a nurse.  (not Sandra is nurse)
- Would you like to be an English teacher?

You can use some with plural countable nouns. We use some in two ways.

1. Some = a number of / a few of / a pair of:
   - I've seen some good movies recently.  (not I've seen good movies)
   - Some friends of mine are coming to stay at the weekend.
   - I need some new sunglasses.  (= a new pair of sunglasses)

Do not use some when you are talking about things in general (see Unit 75):

- I love bananas.  (not some bananas)
- My aunt is a writer. She writes books.  (not some books)

2. Some = some but not all:
   - Some children learn very quickly.  (but not all children)
   - Tomorrow there will be rain in some places, but most of the country will be dry.
Exercises

71.1 What are these things? Use a dictionary if necessary.
1 an ant? It's an insect.
2 ants and bees? They're insects.
3 a cauliflower? It's a vegetable.
4 chess? It's a game.
5 a pigeon, an eagle and a crow? They're birds.
6 a skyscraper? It's a tall building.

7 Earth, Mars, Venus and Jupiter?
8 a tulip?
9 the Nile, the Rhine and the Mekong?
10 a violin, a trumpet and a flute?

Who were these people?
11 Beethoven? He was a composer.
12 Shakespeare?
13 Albert Einstein?
14 Washington, Lincoln and Kennedy?
15 Marilyn Monroe?
16 Michael Jackson and John Lennon?
17 Van Gogh, Renoir and Picasso?

71.2 Read about what these people do, and say what their jobs are. Choose from:

- chef
- interpreter
- journalist
- nurse
- plumber
- surgeon
- tour guide
- waiter

1 Sarah looks after patients in hospital. She's a nurse.
2 Gary works in a restaurant. He brings the food to the tables. He's a waiter.
3 Jane writes articles for a newspaper. She's a journalist.
4 Kevin works in a hospital. He operates on people. He's a surgeon.
5 Jonathan cooks in a restaurant. He's a chef.
6 Dave installs and repairs water pipes. He's a plumber.
7 Martina takes visitors round her city and tells them about it. She's a tour guide.
8 Lisa translates what people are saying from one language into another so that they can understand each other. She's an interpreter.

71.3 Put in a/an or some where necessary. If no word is necessary, leave the space empty.

1 I've seen some good films recently.
2 What's wrong with you? Have you got a headache?
3 I know a lot of people. Most of them are students.
4 When I was a child, I used to be very shy.
5 Would you like to be an actor?
6 Questions, questions, questions! You're always asking questions!
7 What a beautiful garden!
8 Some birds, for example the penguin, cannot fly.
9 Do you like staying in hotels?
10 I've been walking for three hours. I've got sore feet.
11 I don't feel very well this morning. I've got a sore throat.
12 Maria speaks English, but not very much.
13 It's a shame we don't have a camera. I'd like to take a picture of that house.
14 Those are some nice shoes. Where did you get them?
15 I'm going shopping. I want to buy some new shoes.
16 You need a visa to visit some countries, but not all of them.
17 Jane is a teacher. Her parents were teachers too.
18 I don't believe him. He's a liar. He's always telling lies.
Study this example:

I had a sandwich and an apple for lunch.

The sandwich wasn’t very good, but the apple was nice.

Joe says ‘a sandwich’, ‘an apple’ because this is the first time he talks about them.

Joe now says ‘the sandwich’, ‘the apple’ because Karen knows which sandwich and which apple he means – the sandwich and the apple that he had for lunch.

Joe says ‘a sandwich’, ‘an apple’ because this is the first time he talks about them.

Joe now says ‘the sandwich’, ‘the apple’ because Karen knows which sandwich and which apple he means – the sandwich and the apple that he had for lunch.

Compare a and the in these examples:

☐ A man and a woman were sitting opposite me. The man was American, but I think the woman was British.

☐ When we were on holiday, we stayed at a hotel. Sometimes we ate at the hotel and sometimes we went to a restaurant.

We use the when we are thinking of a specific thing. Compare a/an and the:

☐ Tim sat down on a chair. (perhaps one of many chairs in the room)

☐ Tim sat down on the chair nearest the door. (a specific chair)

☐ Paula is looking for a job. (not a specific job)

☐ Did Paula get the job she applied for? (a specific job)

☐ Do you have a car? (not a specific car)

☐ I cleaned the car yesterday. (= my car)

We use the when it is clear in the situation which thing or person we mean. For example, in a room we talk about the light / the floor / the ceiling / the door / the carpet etc.:

☐ Can you turn off the light, please? (= the light in this room)

☐ I took a taxi to the station. (= the station in that town)

☐ (in a shop) I’d like to speak to the manager, please. (= the manager of this shop)

In the same way, we say (go to) the bank / the post office:

☐ I have to go to the bank and then I’m going to the post office.

(The speaker is usually thinking of a specific bank or post office.)

We also say (go to) the doctor / the dentist:

☐ Clare isn’t very well. She’s gone to the doctor. (= her usual doctor)

☐ I don’t like going to the dentist.

Compare the and a:

☐ I have to go to the bank today.

☐ Is there a bank near here?

☐ I don’t like going to the dentist.

☐ My sister is a dentist.

We say ‘once a week / three times a day / £1.50 a kilo’ etc.:

☐ ‘How often do you go to the cinema?’ ‘About once a month.’

☐ ‘How much are those potatoes?’ ‘£1.50 a kilo.’

☐ Helen works eight hours a day, six days a week.
Exercises

72.1 Put in a/an or the.

1. This morning I bought a newspaper and a magazine. The newspaper is in my bag, but I can’t remember where I put the magazine.
2. I saw an accident this morning. The car crashed into a tree. The driver of the car wasn’t hurt, but the car was badly damaged.
3. There are two cars parked outside: the blue one and the grey one. The blue one belongs to my neighbours; I don’t know who the owner of the grey one is.
4. My friends live in an old house in a small village. There is a beautiful garden behind the house. I would like to have a garden like that.

72.2 Put in a/an or the.

1. a. This house is very nice. Has it got a garden?
   b. It’s a beautiful day. Let’s sit in the garden.
   c. I like living in this house, but it’s a shame that the garden is so small.
2. a. Can you recommend a good restaurant?
   b. We had dinner in a very nice restaurant.
   c. We had dinner in the best restaurant in town.
3. a. She has a French name, but in fact she’s English, not French.
   b. What’s the name of that man we met yesterday?
   c. We stayed at a very nice hotel – I can’t remember the name now.
4. a. There isn’t an airport near where I live. The nearest airport is 70 miles away.
   b. Our flight was delayed. We had to wait at the airport for three hours.
   c. Excuse me, please. Can you tell me how to get to the airport?
5. a. ‘Are you going away next week?’ ‘No, the week after next.’
   b. I’m going away for a week in September.
   c. Gary has a part-time job. He works three mornings a week.

72.3 Put in a/an or the where necessary.

1. Would you like apple? Would you like an apple?
2. How often do you go to dentist?
3. Could you close door, please?
4. I’m sorry. I didn’t mean to do that. It was mistake.
5. Excuse me, where is bus station, please?
6. I have problem. Can you help me?
7. I’m just going to post office. I won’t be long.
8. There were no chairs, so we sat on floor.
9. Have you finished with book I lent you?
10. My sister has just got job in bank in Zurich.
11. We live in small apartment in city centre.
12. There’s supermarket at end of street I live in.

72.4 Answer these questions about yourself. Where possible, use the structure in Section D (once a week / three times a day etc.).

1. How often do you go to the cinema? Three or four times a year.
2. How often do you go to the cinema?
3. How often do you go away on holiday?
4. What’s the usual speed limit in towns in your country?
5. How much sleep do you need?
6. How often do you go out in the evening?
7. How much television do you watch (on average)?
8. How much does it cost to rent a small car in your country?
We use the when there is only one of something:
- Have you ever crossed the equator? (there is only one equator)
- What's the longest river in Europe?
- Our apartment is on the tenth floor.
- Buenos Aires is the capital of Argentina.
- I'm going away at the end of this month.

We use the before same (the same):
- Your sweater is the same colour as mine.  
  (not is same colour)
- 'Are these keys the same?' 'No, they're different.'

We say:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>the sun</th>
<th>the moon</th>
<th>the earth</th>
<th>the world</th>
<th>the universe</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>the sky</td>
<td>the sea</td>
<td>the ground</td>
<td>the environment</td>
<td>the internet</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I love to look at the stars in the sky.  
  (not in sky)
- The internet has changed the way we live.
- We need to do more to protect the environment.  
  (= the natural world around us)
- The earth goes round the sun, and the moon goes round the earth.

We also use 'Earth' (without the) when we think of it as a planet in space (like Mars, Jupiter etc.).
- Which planet is nearest Earth?

We say space (without the) when we mean 'space in the universe'. Compare
- There are millions of stars in space.  
  (not in the space)
- I tried to park my car, but the space was too small.

We use a/an to say what kind of thing something is (see Unit 71B). Compare the and a:
- The sun is a star.  
  (= one of many stars)
- The hotel we stayed at was a very nice hotel.

We say: (go to) the cinema, the theatre.
- I go to the cinema a lot, but I haven't been to the theatre for ages.

When we say the cinema / the theatre, we do not necessarily mean a specific cinema or theatre.

We usually say the radio, but television/TV (without the). Compare:
- I listen to the radio a lot.  
  but  I watch television a lot.
- We heard it on the radio.  
  but  We watched it on TV.

The television / the TV = the television set:
- Can you turn off the television, please?

We do not normally use the with breakfast/lunch/dinner:
- What did you have for breakfast?
- We had lunch in a very nice restaurant.

But we use a/an if we say 'a big lunch', 'a wonderful dinner', 'an early breakfast' etc.:
- We had a very nice lunch.  
  (not We had very nice lunch)

We do not use the before noun + number. For example, we say:
- Our train leaves from Platform 5.  
  (not the Platform 5)
- (in a shop) Do you have these shoes in size 43?  
  (not the size 43)

In the same way, we say: Room 126 (in a hotel), page 29 (of a book), question 3 (in an exam), Gate 10 (at an airport) etc.
Exercises

73.1 Put in the or a where necessary. If no word is necessary, leave the space empty.

1 A: Our apartment is on ______ tenth floor.
   B: Is it? I hope there’s ______ lift.
2 A: Did you have ______ nice holiday?
   B: Yes, it was ______ best holiday I've ever had.
3 A: Where’s ______ nearest shop?
   B: There’s one at ______ end of this street.
4 A: It’s ______ lovely day, isn’t it?
   B: Yes, there isn’t ______ cloud in ______ sky.
5 A: I’ve got a problem with my computer. It isn’t connecting to ______ internet.
   B: That’s interesting. I’ve got ______ same problem with mine.
6 A: We spent all our money because we stayed at ______ most expensive hotel in town.
   B: Why didn’t you stay at ______ cheaper hotel?
7 A: Would you like to travel in ______ space?
   B: Yes, I’d love to go to ______ moon.
8 A: What’s ______ Jupiter? Is it ______ star?
   B: No, it’s ______ largest planet in ______ solar system.

73.2 Put in the where necessary. If you don’t need the, leave the space empty.

1 I haven’t been to ______ cinema for ages.
2 Sarah spends most of her free time watching ______ TV.
3 Do you ever listen to ______ radio?
4 ______ television was on, but nobody was watching it.
5 Have you had ______ dinner yet?
6 Lisa and I arrived at ______ same time.
7 What’s ______ capital city of Canada?
8 What do you want for ______ breakfast?
9 I lay down on ______ ground and looked up at ______ sky.

73.3 Put in the or a where necessary. (See Unit 72 for a and the if necessary.)

1 Sun is star. ______ sun is ______ star.
2 I’m fed up with doing same thing every day.
3 Room 25 is on second floor.
4 Moon goes round earth every 27 days.
5 It was very hot day. It was hottest day of year.
6 We had lunch in nice restaurant by sea.
7 What’s on at cinema this week?
8 I like to eat good breakfast before I go to work.
9 We missed our train because we were waiting on wrong platform.
10 Next train to London leaves from Platform 3.
11 You’ll find information you need at top of page 15.

73.4 Complete the sentences using the following. Use the where necessary.

breakfast  cinema  dinner  gate  Gate 21  question 8  sea

1 Are you going out this evening?’ ‘Yes, after ______ dinner ______.’
2 There was no wind, so ______ weather was very calm.
3 The test wasn’t too difficult, but I couldn’t answer ______
4 ‘I’m going to _______ tonight.’ ‘Are you? What film are you going to see?’
5 I didn’t have time for ______ this morning because I was in a hurry.
6 Oh, ______ is open. I must have forgotten to shut it.
7 (airport announcement) Flight AB123 to Rome is now boarding at ______.
Compare school and the school:

Ellie is ten years old. Every day she goes to school. She’s at school now. School starts at 9 and finishes at 3.

We say a child goes to school or is at school (as a student). We are not thinking of a specific school. We are thinking of school as a general idea – children learning in a classroom.

Today Ellie’s mother wants to speak to her daughter’s teacher. So she has gone to the school to see her. She’s at the school now. Ellie’s mother is not a student. She is not ‘at school’, she doesn’t ‘go to school’. If she wants to see Ellie’s teacher, she goes to the school (=Ellie’s teacher, a specific building).

We use prison (or jail), hospital, university, college and church in a similar way. We do not use the when we are thinking of the general idea of these places and what they are used for.

Compare:

- Ken’s brother is in prison for robbery. (He is a prisoner. We are not thinking of a specific prison.)
- Joe had an accident last week. He was taken to hospital. He’s still in hospital now. (as a patient)
- When I leave school, I plan to go to university / go to college. (as a student)
- Sally’s father goes to church every Sunday. (to take part in a religious service)
- Ken went to the prison to visit his brother. (He went as a visitor, not as a prisoner.)
- Jane has gone to the hospital to visit Joe. She’s at the hospital now. (as a visitor, not as a patient)
- I went to the university to meet Professor Thomas. (as a visitor, not as a student)
- Some workmen went to the church to repair the roof. (not for a religious service)

With most other places, you need the. For example, the station, the cinema, (see Units 72C and 73C).

We say go to bed / be in bed etc. (not the bed):
- I’m going to bed now. Goodnight.
- Do you ever have breakfast in bed?
- I sat down on the bed. (a specific piece of furniture)

but I’m going to bed now. Goodnight.

We say go to work / be at work / start work / finish work etc. (not the work):
- Chris didn’t go to work yesterday.
- What time do you usually finish work?

We say go home / come home / arrive home / get home / be at home etc. :
- It’s late. Let’s go home.
- Will you be at home tomorrow afternoon?

We say go to sea / be at sea (without the) when the meaning is ‘go/be on a voyage’:
- Keith works on ships. He’s at sea most of the time. 
- I’d like to live near the sea.
- It can be dangerous to swim in the sea.
Exercises

### 74.1 Complete each sentence using a preposition (to/at/in etc.) + one of these words:

bed  home  hospital  prison  school  university  work

1. Two people were injured in the accident and were taken **to hospital**.
2. In Britain, children from the age of five have to go **to school**.
3. Mark didn’t go out last night. He stayed **at home**.
4. There is a lot of traffic in the morning when everybody is going **to work**.
5. Kate’s mother has just had an operation. She is still **in hospital**.
6. When Sophie leaves school, she wants to study **economics**.
7. Ben never gets up before 9 o’clock. It’s 8:30 now, so he is still **in bed**.
8. If people commit crimes, they may be sent **to prison**.

### 74.2 Complete the sentences with **school** or **the school**.

1. Why aren’t your children at **school** today? Are they ill?
2. When he was younger, Tim hated **school**.
3. There were some parents waiting outside **the school** to meet their children.
4. **School** usually starts at 8:30 in the morning.
5. A: How do your children get to and from **school**? By bus?
   B: No, they walk. **School** isn’t very far.
6. What sort of job does Emily want to do when she leaves **school**?

### 74.3 Some of these sentences need the. Correct them where necessary.

1. **a** ‘How old is university?’ ‘About 200 years.’
   **b** In your country do many people go to university?
   **c** If you want to get a degree, you normally have to study **at university**.
   **d** This is a small town, but university is the biggest in the country.
2. **a** My brother has always been healthy. He’s never been in hospital.
   **b** When Ann was ill, I went to hospital to visit her. When I was there, I met Lisa who is a nurse at hospital.
   **c** A woman was injured in the accident and was taken to hospital.
3. **a** John’s mother is a regular churchgoer. She goes to church every Sunday.
   **b** John himself doesn’t go to church.
   **c** John went to church to take some pictures of the building.
4. **a** Why is she in prison? What did she do?
   **b** A few days ago firefighters were called to prison to put out a fire.
   **c** Do you think too many people are sent to prison?

### 74.4 Which is correct?

1. How did you **get home** / **get to home** after the party? (**get home** is correct)
2. I like to read **in bed** / **in the bed** before I go to sleep.
3. Shall we meet **after work** / **after the work** tomorrow evening?
4. I love swimming **in sea** / **in the sea**.
5. It’s nice to travel around, but there’s no place **like home** / **like the home**!
6. Sam likes to **go to bed** / **go to the bed** early, and get up early.
7. I didn’t sleep well in the hotel. **Bed** / **The bed** was uncomfortable.
8. How long did it take to cross the ocean? How long were you **at sea** / **at the sea**?
9. What time do you usually start **work** / **the work** in the morning?
When we are talking about things or people in general, we do not use the:

- I'm afraid of dogs. (not the dogs)  
  (dogs = dogs in general, not a specific group of dogs)
- **Doctors** are usually paid more than teachers.
- Do you know anybody who collects stamps?
- Crime is a problem in most big cities. (not The crime)
- Life has changed a lot in the last thirty years. (not The life)
- Do you like classical music / Chinese food / fast cars?
- My favourite sport is football/skiing/athletics.
- My favourite subject at school was history/physics/English.

We say 'most people / most books / most cars' etc. (not the most ...):

- Most shops accept credit cards. (not The most shops)

We use the when we mean specific things or people.

**Compare:**

- **In general (without the)**
  - Children learn from playing.  
    (= children in general)
  - I couldn’t live without music.
  - All cars have wheels.
  - Sugar isn’t very good for you.
  - English people drink a lot of tea.  
    (= English people in general)

- **Specific people or things (with the)**
  - We took the children to the zoo.  
    (= a specific group, perhaps the speaker’s children)
  - The film wasn’t very good, but I liked the music.  
    (= the music in the film)
  - All the cars in this car park belong to people who work here.
  - Can you pass the sugar, please?  
    (= the sugar on the table)
  - The English people I know drink a lot of tea.  
    (= only the English people I know, not English people in general)

The difference between 'something in general' and 'something specific' is not always very clear.

**Compare:**

- **In general (without the)**
  - I like working with people.  
    (= people in general)
  - I like working with people who say what they think.  
    (not all people, but 'people who say what they think' is still a general idea)
  - Do you like coffee?  
    (= coffee in general)
  - Do you like strong black coffee?  
    (not all coffee, but 'strong black coffee' is still a general idea)

- **Specific people or things (with the)**
  - I like the people I work with.  
    (= a specific group of people)
  - I didn’t like the coffee we had after dinner.  
    (= specific coffee)
Exercises

75.1 Choose four of these things and write whether you like them or not:

- bananas
- hot weather
- boxing
- maths
- cats
- opera
- crowds
- snow
- fast food
- supermarkets
- horror movies
- zoos

Begin each sentence with one of these:
I like ... / I don’t like ... I don’t mind ...
I love ... / I hate ... I’m interested in ... / I’m not interested in ...

1. I don’t like hot weather very much.
2. 
3. 
4. 
5. 

75.2 Complete the sentences using the following. Use the where necessary.

- basketball - (the) grass - (the) patience - (the) people
- (the) questions - (the) meat - (the) information - (the) hotels
- (the) history - (the) water - (the) spiders - (the) lies

1. My favourite sport is basketball.
2. The information we were given wasn’t correct.
3. Some people are afraid of spiders.
4. A vegetarian is somebody who doesn’t eat meat.
5. The test wasn’t very difficult. I answered all the questions without difficulty.
6. Do you know who live next door?
7. History is the study of the past.
8. It’s better to tell the truth. Telling lies usually causes problems.
9. We couldn’t find anywhere to stay in the town. The hotels were full.
10. The water in the pool didn’t look very clean, so we didn’t go for a swim.
11. Don’t sit on the grass. It’s wet after the rain.
12. You need patience to teach young children.

75.3 Choose the correct form, with or without the.

1. I’m afraid of dogs / the dogs. (dogs is correct)
2. Apples / The apples are good for you.
3. Look at apples / the apples on that tree! They’re very big.
5. I don’t drink tea / the tea. I don’t like it.
6. We had a very good meal. Vegetables / The vegetables were especially good.
7. Life / The life is strange sometimes. Some very strange things happen.
8. I enjoy holidays / the holidays by the sea.
9. How much money does the government spend on education / the education?
10. Who are people / the people in this picture?
11. What makes people / the people violent? What causes aggression / the aggression?
12. All books / All the books on the top shelf belong to me.
13. Don’t stay in that hotel. It’s very noisy and rooms / the rooms are very small.
14. A pacifist is somebody who is against war / the war.
15. First World War / The First World War lasted from 1914 until 1918.
16. I don’t like films / the films that don’t have happy endings.
17. Someone gave me a book about history / the history of modern art / the modern art.
18. Rob and Louise got married, but marriage / the marriage didn’t last very long.
19. Most people / The most people believe that marriage / the marriage and family life / the family life are the basis of society / the society.
Study these sentences:

- The giraffe is the tallest of all animals.
- The bicycle is an excellent means of transport.
- When was the telephone invented?
- The dollar is the currency of the United States.

In these examples, the ... does not mean one specific thing.
The giraffe = a specific type of animal, not a specific giraffe.
We use the in this way to talk about a type of animal, machine etc.

In the same way we use the for musical instruments:

- Can you play the guitar?
- The piano is my favourite instrument.

Compare a and the:

- I'd like to have a piano. but I can't play the piano.
- We saw a giraffe at the zoo. but The giraffe is my favourite animal.

Note that we use man (= human beings in general / the human race) without the:
- What do you know about the origins of man? (not the man)

The + adjective

We use the + adjective (without a noun) to talk about groups of people. For example:

- the young
- the old
- the elderly
- the rich
- the poor
- the homeless
- the sick
- the disabled
- the injured
- the dead
- the elderly
- the homeless
- the unemployed

The young = young people, the rich = rich people etc.
- Do you think the rich should pay higher taxes?
- We need to do more to help the homeless.

The young / the rich / the injured etc. are plural in meaning. For example, you cannot say 'a young' or 'the injured' for one person. You must say 'a young person', 'the injured woman' etc.

Note that we say 'the poor' (not the poors), 'the young' (not the youngs) etc.

The + nationality

You can use the + nationality adjectives that end in -ch or -sh (the French / the English / the Spanish etc.). The meaning is 'the people of that country':

- The French are famous for their food. (= the people of France)

The French / the English etc. are plural in meaning. We do not say 'a French / an English'.

You have to say a Frenchman / an Englishwoman etc.

We also use the + nationality words ending in -ese (the Chinese / the Sudanese / the Japanese etc.):

- The Chinese invented printing.

But these words can also be singular (a Chinese, a Japanese etc.).

Note also: a Swiss (singular) and the Swiss (= the people of Switzerland)

With other nationalities, the plural noun ends in -s. For example:

- an Italian → Italians  a Mexican → Mexicans  a Turk → Turks

With these words (Italians etc.), we do not normally use the to talk about the people in general (see Unit 75).
Exercises

76.1 Answer the questions. Choose the right answer from the box. Don’t forget the. Use a dictionary if necessary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Animals</th>
<th>Birds</th>
<th>Inventions</th>
<th>Currencies</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tiger</td>
<td>eagle</td>
<td>telephone</td>
<td>dollar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>elephant</td>
<td>penguin</td>
<td>wheel</td>
<td>peso</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rabbit</td>
<td>swan</td>
<td>telescope</td>
<td>euro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cheetah</td>
<td>owl</td>
<td>laser</td>
<td>rupee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>giraffe</td>
<td>parrot</td>
<td>helicopter</td>
<td>rouble</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kangaroo</td>
<td>pigeon</td>
<td>typewriter</td>
<td>yen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 a Which of the animals is tallest? the giraffe
b Which animal can run fastest?
c Which of these animals is found in Australia?
2 a Which of these birds has a long neck?
b Which of these birds cannot fly?
c Which bird flies at night?
3 a Which of these inventions is oldest?
b Which one is most recent?
c Which one was especially important for astronomy?
4 a What is the currency of India?
b What is the currency of Canada?
c And the currency of your country?

76.2 Put in the or a.

1 When was the telephone invented?
2 Can you play a musical instrument?
3 Jessica plays the violin in an orchestra.
4 There was a piano in the corner of the room.
5 Can you play the piano?
6 Our society is based on a family.
7 Martin comes from a large family.
8 The computer has changed the way we live.

76.3 Complete these sentences using the + the following:

injured poor rich sick unemployed young

1 The young have the future in their hands.
2 Ambulances arrived at the scene of the accident and took ___________________ to hospital.
3 Life is all right if you have a job, but things are not so easy for ___________________.
4 Helen has been a nurse all her life. She has spent her life caring for ___________________.
5 In England there is an old story about a man called Robin Hood. It is said that he robbed and gave the money to ___________________.

76.4 What do you call the people of these countries?

one person (a/an ...)
the people in general

1 Canada
2 Germany
3 France
4 Russia
5 China
6 Brazil
7 England
8 and your country

a Canadian
Canadians
Names with and without the

We do not use the with names of people (‘Helen’, ‘Helen Taylor’ etc.). In the same way, we do not use the with most names of places. For example:

- continents: Africa (not the Africa), Europe, South America
- countries, states etc.: France (not the France), Japan, Brazil, Texas
- islands: Sicily, Bermuda, Tasmania
- cities, towns etc.: Cairo, New York, Bangkok
- mountains: Everest, Etna, Kilimanjaro

But we use the in names with Republic, Kingdom, States etc.:

- the Czech Republic
- the Dominican Republic
- the United Kingdom (the UK)
- the United States of America (the USA)

Compare:

- Have you been to Canada or the United States?

When we use Mr/Mrs/Captain/Doctor etc. + a name, we do not use the. So we say:

- Mr Johnson / Doctor Johnson / Captain Johnson / President Johnson etc. (not the ...)
- Uncle Robert / Saint Catherine / Princess Maria etc. (not the ...)

Compare:

- We called the doctor. We called Doctor Johnson. (not the Doctor Johnson)

We use Mount (= mountain) and Lake before a name in the same way (without the):

- Mount Everest (not the ...)
- Mount Etna
- Lake Superior
- Lake Victoria

They live near the lake. They live near Lake Superior. (not the Lake Superior)

We use the with the names of oceans, seas, rivers and canals:

- the Atlantic (Ocean)
- the Red Sea
- the Indian Ocean
- the Mediterranean (Sea)
- the Amazon
- the Nile
- the Channel (between France and Britain)
- the Suez Canal

We use the with the names of deserts:

- the Sahara (Desert)
- the Gobi Desert

We use the with plural names of people and places:

- people: the Taylors (= the Taylor family), the Johnsons
- countries: the Netherlands, the Philippines, the United States
- groups of islands: the Canaries / the Canary Islands, the Bahamas
- mountain ranges: the Rocky Mountains / the Rockies, the Andes, the Alps

The highest mountain in the Andes is (Mount) Aconcagua.

We say:

- the north (of Brazil)  but northern Brazil (without the)
- the south-east (of Spain)  but south-eastern Spain

Compare:

- Sweden is in northern Europe; Spain is in the south.

Also the Middle East, the Far East

We also use north/south etc. (without the) in the names of some regions and countries:

- North America  South Africa

Note that on maps, the is not usually included in the name.
Exercises

77.1 Put in the where necessary. Leave the space empty if the sentence is already complete.

1. Who is ___ Doctor Johnson? (the sentence is complete without the)
2. I was ill, so I went to see ___ doctor.
3. The most powerful person in ___ United States is ___ president.
4. ___ President Kennedy was assassinated in 1963.
5. Do you know ___ Wilsons? They're a very nice couple.
6. I'm looking for ___ Professor Brown. Do you know where she is?

77.2 Some of these sentences are correct, but some need the (sometimes more than once). Correct the sentences where necessary.

1. Everest was first climbed in 1953. OK
2. Milan is in the north of Italy.
3. Africa is much larger than Europe.
4. Last year I visited Mexico and United States.
5. South of England is warmer than north.
6. Portugal is in western Europe.
7. France and Britain are separated by Channel.
8. James has travelled a lot in Middle East.
9. Chicago is on Lake Michigan.
10. Next year we're going skiing in Swiss Alps.
11. UK consists of Great Britain and Northern Ireland.
12. Seychelles are a group of islands in Indian Ocean.
13. The highest mountain in Africa is Kilimanjaro.
14. River Volga flows into Caspian Sea.

77.3 Here are some geography questions. Choose the right answer from one of the boxes and write the if necessary. You do not need all the names in the boxes. Use an atlas if necessary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>continents</th>
<th>countries</th>
<th>oceans and seas</th>
<th>mountains</th>
<th>rivers and canals</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Africa</td>
<td>Canada</td>
<td>Atlantic</td>
<td>Alps</td>
<td>Amazon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asia</td>
<td>Denmark</td>
<td>Indian Ocean</td>
<td>Andes</td>
<td>Rhine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australia</td>
<td>Indonesia</td>
<td>Pacific</td>
<td>Himalayas</td>
<td>Danube</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Europe</td>
<td>Sweden</td>
<td>Black Sea</td>
<td>Rockies</td>
<td>Thames</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>North America</td>
<td>Thailand</td>
<td>Mediterranean</td>
<td>Urals</td>
<td>Nile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South America</td>
<td>United States</td>
<td>Red Sea</td>
<td></td>
<td>Suez Canal</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. What do you have to cross to travel from Europe to America? the Atlantic
2. Where is Argentina?
3. Which is the longest river in Africa?
4. Of which country is Stockholm the capital?
5. Of which country is Washington the capital?
6. What is the name of the mountain range in the west of North America?
7. What is the name of the sea between Africa and Europe?
8. Which is the smallest continent in the world?
9. What is the name of the ocean between North America and Asia?
10. What is the name of the ocean between Africa and Australia?
11. Which river flows through London?
12. Which river flows through Vienna, Budapest and Belgrade?
13. Of which country is Bangkok the capital?
14. What joins the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans?
15. Which is the longest river in South America?
Names with and without the 2

Names without the

We do not use the with names of most city streets/roads/squares/parks etc.:

- Union Street (not the ...)
- Fifth Avenue
- Hyde Park
- Queens Road
- Broadway
- Times Square

Names of important public buildings and institutions (for example, airports, stations, universities) are often two words:

- Manchester Airport
- Harvard University

The first word is the name of a place (‘Manchester’) or a person (‘Harvard’). These names are usually without the. In the same way, we say:

- Victoria Station (not the ...)
- Canterbury Cathedral
- Edinburgh Castle
- Buckingham Palace
- Cambridge University
- Sydney Harbour

Compare:

- Buckingham Palace (not the ...)
- the Royal Palace

(‘Royal’ is an adjective – it is not a name like ‘Buckingham’)

Most other buildings have names with the. For example:

- hotels: the Sheraton Hotel, the Holiday Inn
- theatres/cinemas: the Palace Theatre, the Odeon (cinema)
- museums/galleries: the Guggenheim Museum, the National Gallery
- other buildings: the Empire State (Building), the White House, the Eiffel Tower

We often leave out the noun:

- the Sheraton (Hotel)
- the Palace (Theatre)
- the Guggenheim (Museum)

Some names are only the + noun, for example:

- the Acropolis
- the Kremlin
- the Pentagon

Names with of usually have the. For example:

- the Bank of England
- the Museum of Modern Art
- the Great Wall of China
- the Tower of London

Note that we say:

- the University of Cambridge
- but Cambridge University (without the)

Many shops, restaurants, hotels, banks etc. are named after people. These names end in -’s or -s. We do not use the with these names:

- McDonald’s (not the ...)
- Barclays (bank)
- Joe’s Diner (restaurant)
- Macy’s (department store)

Churches are often named after saints (St = Saint):

- St John’s Church (not the St Johns Church)
- St Patrick’s Cathedral

Most newspapers and many organisations have names with the:

- newspapers: the Washington Post, the Financial Times, the Sun
- organisations: the European Union, the BBC, the Red Cross

Names of companies, airlines etc. are usually without the:

- Fiat (not the Fiat)
- Sony
- Singapore Airlines
- Kodak
- IBM
- Yale University Press
Exercises

78.1 Use the map to answer the questions. Write the name of the place and the street it is in. Use the if necessary. (Remember that on maps we do not normally use the.)

1. Is there a cinema near here? Yes, the Odeon in Market Street.
2. Is there a supermarket near here? Yes, Turner's Supermarket.
4. Is there a church near here? Yes, St. Peter's Church.
5. Is there a museum near here? Yes, City Museum.
7. Is there a restaurant near here? Yes, Mario's Pizza.
8. Is there a park near here? Yes, at the end of Forest Avenue.

78.2 Where are the following? Use the where necessary.

- Acropolis
- Broadway
- Buckingham Palace
- Eiffel Tower
- Kremlin
- White House
- Gatwick Airport
- Times Square

1. Times Square is in New York.
2. is in Paris.
3. is in London.
4. is in Washington.
5. is in Moscow.
6. is in New York.
7. is in Athens.
8. is near London.

78.3 Choose the correct form, with or without the.

1. Have you ever been to British Museum / the British Museum? (the British Museum is correct)
2. The biggest park in New York is Central Park / the Central Park.
4. Imperial Hotel / The Imperial Hotel is in Baker Street / the Baker Street.
5. Dublin Airport / The Dublin Airport is situated about 12 kilometres from the city centre.
6. Jack is a student at Liverpool University / the Liverpool University.
7. If you’re looking for a department store, I would recommend Harrison’s / the Harrison’s.
8. If you’re looking for a hotel, I would recommend Park Plaza / the Park Plaza.
10. You should go to Science Museum / the Science Museum. It’s very interesting.
11. Andy works for IBM / the IBM now. He used to work for British Telecom / the British Telecom.
12. ‘Which cinema are you going to this evening?’ ‘Classic / The Classic.’
13. I’d like to go to China and see Great Wall / the Great Wall.
14. ‘Which newspaper do you want?’ ‘Times / The Times.’
16. ‘What’s that building?’ ‘It’s College of Art / the College of Art.’
Sometimes we use a plural noun for one thing that has two parts. For example:

- trousers (two legs)
- jeans/tights/shorts/pants
- pyjamas (top and bottom)
- glasses
- binoculars
- scissors

These words are plural, so they take a plural verb:
- My trousers are too long. (not my trousers is)

You can also use a pair of + these words:
- Those are nice jeans. or That's a nice pair of jeans. (not a nice jeans)
- I need some new glasses. or I need a new pair of glasses.

Some nouns end in -ics, but are not usually plural. For example:
- athletics
- economics
- electronics
- gymnastics
- maths (= mathematics)
- physics
- politics

Gymnastics is my favourite sport, (not Gymnastics are)

News is not plural (see Unit 70B):
- What time is the news on TV? (not are the news)

Some words ending in -s can be singular or plural. For example:
- means
- series
- species

Some singular nouns are often used with a plural verb. For example:
- audience
- committee
- company
- family
- firm
- government
- staff
- team

These nouns are all groups of people. We often think of them as a number of people (= they), not as one thing (= it). So we often use a plural verb:
- The government (= they) have decided to increase taxes.
- The staff at the company (= they) are not happy with their working conditions.

In the same way, we often use a plural verb after the name of a sports team or a company:
- Italy are playing Brazil next Sunday (in a football match).
- Shell have increased the price of petrol.

A singular verb (The government wants ... / Shell has ... etc.) is also possible.

We use a plural verb with police:
- The police are investigating the crime, but haven't arrested anyone yet. (not The police is ... hasn't)

Note that we say a police officer / a policeman / a policewoman (not a police).

We do not often use the plural of person (‘persons’). We normally use people (a plural word):
- He's a nice person. but They are nice people. (not nice persons)
- Many people don’t have enough to eat. (not Many people doesn’t)

We think of a sum of money, a period of time, a distance etc. as one thing. So we use a singular verb:
- Fifty thousand pounds (= it) was stolen in the robbery. (not were stolen)
- Three years (= it) is a long time to be without a job. (not Three years are)
- Two miles isn’t very far to walk.
Exercises

79.1 Complete each sentence using a word from Sections A or B. Sometimes you need a or some.

1. My eyesight isn’t very good. I need glasses.
2. A species is a group of animals or plants that have the same characteristics.
3. Footballers don’t wear trousers when they play. They wear _________.
4. The bicycle is _________.
5. The bicycle and the car are _________.
6. I want to cut this piece of material. I need _________.
7. A friend of mine is writing _________.
8. There are a lot of American TV _________.
9. While we were out walking, we saw many different _________.

79.2 In each example the words on the left are connected with an activity (for example, a sport or an academic subject). Write the name of the activity. The beginning of the word is given.

1. calculate algebra equation mathematics
2. government election minister p
3. finance trade employment e
4. running jumping throwing a
5. light heat gravity ph
6. exercises somersault parallel bars gy
7. processor silicon chip gigabyte el

79.3 Choose the correct form of the verb, singular or plural. In two sentences either the singular or plural verb is possible.

1. Gymnastics is / are my favourite sport. (is is correct)
2. The trousers you bought for me doesn’t / don’t fit me.
3. The police want / wants to interview two men about the robbery last week.
4. Physics was / were my best subject at school.
5. Can I borrow your scissors? Mine isn’t / aren’t sharp enough.
6. It’s a nice place to visit. The people is / are very friendly.
7. Fortunately the news wasn’t / weren’t as bad as we expected.
8. Where does / do your family live?
9. I can’t find my binoculars. Do you know where it is / they are?
10. Does / Do the police know how the accident happened?
11. Germany is / are playing Spain tomorrow night, but it’s not on TV.
12. Most people enjoy / enjoys music.

79.4 Most of these sentences are wrong. Correct them where necessary.

1. Three years are a long time to be without a job. Three years is a long time.
2. The government have decided to increase taxes. OK (has decided is also correct)
3. Susan was wearing a black jeans.
4. I don’t like hot weather. Thirty degrees is too hot for me.
5. I like Martin and Jane. They’re very nice persons.
6. Ten pounds aren’t enough. I need more money than that.
7. I’m going to buy a new pyjama.
8. The committee haven’t made a decision yet.
9. There was a police directing traffic in the street.
10. What is the police going to do?
11. This scissors isn’t very sharp.
12. Four days isn’t enough for a good holiday.
Noun + noun (a tennis ball / a headache)

You can use two nouns together (noun + noun) to mean one thing/person/idea etc. For example:

- a tennis ball
- income tax
- the city centre

The first noun is like an adjective. It tells us what kind of thing/person/idea etc. For example:

- a tennis ball = a ball used to play tennis
- a bus driver = the driver of a bus
- a road accident = an accident that happens on the road
- income tax = tax that you pay on your income
- the city centre = the centre of the city
- a Paris hotel = a hotel in Paris
- my life story = the story of my life

So you can say:

- a television camera
- a television programme
- a television studio
- a television producer

(These are all different things or people to do with television)

language problems
marriage problems
health problems
work problems

(These are all different kinds of problems)

Compare:

- garden vegetables (= vegetables that are grown in a garden)
- a vegetable garden (= a garden where vegetables are grown)

Sometimes the first word ends in -ing. Usually these are things we use for doing something:

- a frying pan (= a pan for frying)
- a washing machine
- a swimming pool

Sometimes there are more than two nouns together:

- I waited at the hotel reception desk.
- We watched the World Swimming Championships on television.
- If you want to play table tennis (= a game), you need a table tennis table (= a table).

When two nouns are together like this, sometimes we write them as one word and sometimes as two separate words. For example:

- a headache
toothpaste
a weekend
car park
a road sign

There are no clear rules for this. If you are not sure, write two words.

Note the difference between:

- a sugar bowl (maybe empty) and a bowl of sugar (= a bowl with sugar in it)
- a shopping bag (maybe empty) and a bag of shopping (= a bag full of shopping)

When we use noun + noun, the first noun is like an adjective. It is normally singular, but the meaning is often plural. For example: a bookshop is a shop where you can buy books, an apple tree is a tree that has apples.

In the same way we say:

- a three-hour journey (= a journey that takes three hours)
- a ten-pound note (not pounds)
- a four-week course (not weeks)
- a six-mile walk (not miles)
- two 14-year-old girls (not years)

Compare:

- It was a four-week course.
- The course lasted four weeks.
Exercises

80.1 What do we call these things and people?
1 A ticket for a concert is a concert ticket
2 Problems concerning health are health problems
3 An interview for a job is
4 Pictures taken on your holiday are your
5 Chocolate made with milk is
6 Somebody whose job is to inspect factories is
7 A horse that runs in races is
8 A race for horses is
9 Shoes for running are
10 A student studying at university is
11 The results of your exams are your
12 The carpet in the living room is
13 A scandal involving an oil company is
14 Workers at a car factory are
15 A scheme for the improvement of a road is
16 A department store in New York is
17 A course that lasts five days is
18 A question that has two parts is
19 A man who is thirty years old is

80.2 Answer the questions using two of the following words each time:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>accident</th>
<th>belt</th>
<th>birthday</th>
<th>card</th>
<th>credit</th>
<th>driver</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>editor</td>
<td>forecast</td>
<td>newspaper</td>
<td>shop</td>
<td>party</td>
<td>weather</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>room</td>
<td>seat</td>
<td>shop</td>
<td>truck</td>
<td>number</td>
<td>truck</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 This can be caused by bad driving. a road accident
2 You should wear this when you’re in a car. a belt
3 You can use this to pay for things instead of cash. a credit card
4 If you want to know if it’s going to rain, this is what you need. the forecast
5 This person is a top journalist. a newspaper editor
6 You might stop to look in this when you’re walking along a street. a shop
7 If you’re staying at a hotel, you need to remember this. your room
8 This is a way to celebrate getting older. a birthday party
9 This person transports things by road. a truck driver

80.3 Which is correct?
1 It’s quite a long book. There are 450 page / 450 pages. (450 pages is correct)
2 I didn’t have any change. I only had a twenty-pound / twenty pounds note.
3 I looked down and there were two ten-pound / ten pounds notes on the ground.
4 At work in the morning I usually have a 15-minute / 15 minutes break for coffee.
5 There are 60-minute / 60 minutes in an hour.
6 It’s only a two-hour / two hours flight from London to Madrid.
7 My office is on the tenth floor of a twelve-storey / twelve storeys building.
8 I work five-day / five days a week. Saturday and Sunday are free.
9 Five-star / Five stars hotels are the most expensive.
10 Sam’s daughter is six-year-old / six years old.
11 The oldest building in the city is the 500-year-old / 500 years old castle.
12 Do you use the twelve-hour / twelve hours clock or the 24-hour / 24 hours clock?
We use -'s (apostrophe + s) mostly for people or animals:
- Tom's computer isn't working. (not the computer of Tom)
- How old are Chris's children? (not the children of Chris)
- What's (= What is) your sister's name?
- What's Tom's sister's name?
- Be careful. Don't step on the cat's tail.

You can use -'s without a noun after it:
- This isn't my book. It's my sister's. (= my sister's book)

We use -'s with a noun (Tom/friend/teacher etc.). We do not use -'s with a long group of words. So we say:

**your friend's name**

but the name of the woman sitting by the door

Note that we say a woman's hat (= a hat for a woman), a boy's name (= a name for a boy), a bird's egg (= an egg laid by a bird) etc.

With a **singular** noun we use -'s:

- my sister's room (= her room – one sister)
- Mr Carter's house (= his house)

With a **plural** noun (sisters, friends etc.) we put an apostrophe ('s) at the end of the word:

- my sisters' room (= their room – two or more sisters)
- the Carters' house (= their house – Mr and Mrs Carter)

If a plural noun does not end in -s (for example men/women/children/people) we use -'

- the men's changing room

You can use -'s after more than one noun:

- Jack and Karen's wedding
- Mr and Mrs Carter's house

For things, ideas etc., we normally use of (... of the water / ... of the book etc.):

- the temperature of the water (not the water's temperature)
- the name of the book the owner of the restaurant

Sometimes the structure noun + noun is possible (see Unit 80):

- the water temperature the restaurant owner

We say the beginning/end/middle of ... / the top/bottom of ... / the front/back/side of ...:

- the beginning of the month (not the month's beginning)
- the top of the hill the back of the car

You can usually use -'s or of ... for an organisation (= a group of people). So you can say:

- the government's decision or the decision of the government
- the company's success or the success of the company

It is also possible to use -'s for places. So you can say:

- the city's streets
- the world's population
- Italy's prime minister

You can also use -'s with time words (yesterday / next week etc.):

- Do you still have yesterday's newspaper?
- Next week's meeting has been cancelled.

In the same way, you can say today's / tomorrow's / this evening's / Monday's etc.

We also use -'s (or -s' with plural words) with periods of time:

- I've got a week's holiday starting on Monday.
- Julia has got three weeks' holiday.
- I live near the station – it's only about ten minutes' walk.
Exercises

81.1 In some of these sentences, it would be more natural to use -'s or -'. Change the underlined parts where necessary.

1. Who is the owner of this restaurant? OK
2. How old are the children of Chris? Chris's children
3. Is this the umbrella of your friend?
4. Write your name at the top of the page.
5. I've never met the daughter of Charles.
6. Have you met the son of Helen and Dan?
7. We don't know the cause of the problem.
8. Do we still have the newspaper of last Monday?
9. I don't know the words of this song.
10. What is the cost of a new computer?
11. The friends of your children are here.
12. The garden of our neighbours is very nice.
13. I work on the ground floor of the building.
14. The hair of David is very long.
15. I couldn't go to the party of Katherine.
16. Do you know the number of the man I need to speak to?
17. Have you seen the car of the parents of Mike?
18. What's the meaning of this expression?
19. Do you agree with the economic policy of the government?

81.2 What is another way of saying these things? Use -'s or -s'.

1. a hat for a woman a woman's hat
2. a name for a boy
3. clothes for children
4. a school for girls
5. a nest for a bird
6. a magazine for women

81.3 Read each sentence and write a new sentence beginning with the underlined words.

1. The meeting tomorrow has been cancelled.
   Tomorrow's meeting has been cancelled.
2. The storm last week caused a lot of damage.
   Last
3. The only cinema in the town has closed down.
   The
4. The weather in Britain is very changeable.

81.4 Use the information given to complete the sentences.

1. If I leave my house at 9 o'clock and drive to the airport, I arrive at about 11.
   So it's about two hours' drive from my house to the airport. (drive)
2. If I leave my house at 8.40 and walk to the centre, I get there at 9 o'clock.
   So it's from my house to the centre. (walk)
3. I'm going on holiday on the 12th. I have to be back at work on the 26th.
   So I've got (holiday)
4. I went to sleep at 3 o'clock this morning and woke up an hour later. After that I couldn't sleep. So last night I only had (sleep)
Study this example:

Steve introduced himself to the other guests.

We use myself/yourself/himself etc. (reflexive pronouns) when the subject and object are the same:

Steve introduced himself

The reflexive pronouns are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>singular</th>
<th>myself</th>
<th>yourself (one person)</th>
<th>himself/herself/itself</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>plural</td>
<td>ourselves</td>
<td>yourselves (more than one person)</td>
<td>themselves</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I don't want you to pay for me. I'll pay for myself. (not I'll pay for me)
- Amy had a great holiday. She really enjoyed herself.
- Do you talk to yourself sometimes? (said to one person)
- If you want more to eat, help yourselves. (said to more than one person)

Compare:
- It's not our fault. You can't blame us.
- It's our own fault. We should blame ourselves.

We do not use myself etc. after feel/relax/concentrate/meet:
- I feel nervous. I can't relax.
- You must try and concentrate. (not concentrate yourself)
- What time shall we meet? (not meet ourselves, not meet us)

We normally use wash/shave/dress without myself etc.:
- He got up, washed, shaved and dressed. (not washed himself etc.)

You can also say get dressed (He got dressed).

Compare -selves and each other:
- Kate and Joe stood in front of the mirror and looked at themselves. (= Kate and Joe looked at Kate and Joe)
- Kate looked at Joe; Joe looked at Kate. They looked at each other.

You can use one another instead of each other:
- How long have you and Ben known each other? or ... known one another?
- Sue and Alice don't like each other. or ... don't like one another.
- Do you and Sarah live near each other? or ... near one another?

We also use myself/yourself etc. in another way. For example:
- 'Who repaired your bike for you?' 'I repaired it myself.'

I repaired it myself = I repaired it, not anybody else. Here, myself is used to emphasise 'I' (= it makes it stronger). Some more examples:
- I'm not going to do your work for you. You can do it yourself. (= you, not me)
- Let's paint the house ourselves. It will be much cheaper.
- The film itself wasn't very good, but I loved the music.
- I don't think Lisa will get the job. Lisa herself doesn't think so. (or Lisa doesn't think so herself.)
Exercises

82.1 Complete the sentences using **myself/yourslef etc. + these verbs (in the correct form):**
- blame
- burn
- enjoy
- express
- hurt
- introduce
- put

1. Steve introduced **himself** to the other guests at the party.
2. Ben fell down some steps, but fortunately he didn’t **hurt**.
3. It isn’t Sue’s fault. She really shouldn’t **blame**.
4. Please try and understand how I feel. **I** feel very sad in my position.
5. The children had a great time at the beach. They really **enjoyed**.
6. Be careful! That pan is very hot. Don’t **burn**.
7. Sometimes I can’t say exactly what I mean. I wish I could **express** better.

82.2 Put in **myself/yourslef/ourselves etc. or me/you/us etc.**

1. Amy had a great holiday. She enjoyed **herself**.
2. It’s not my fault. You can’t blame **me**.
3. What I did was really bad. I’m ashamed of **myself**.
4. We’ve got a problem. I hope you can help **us**.
5. ‘Can I take another biscuit?’ ‘Of course. Help **yourself**!’
6. You must meet Sarah. I’ll introduce **her** to her.
7. Don’t worry about us. We can take care of **ourselves**.
8. Don’t worry about the children. I’ll take care of **them**.
9. I gave them a key to our house so that they could let **themselves** in.

82.3 Complete these sentences. Use **myself/yourslef etc.** only where necessary. Use these verbs (in the correct form):
- concentrate
- defend
- dry
- feel
- meet
- relax
- shave

1. Martin decided to grow a beard because he was fed up with **shaving**.
2. I wasn’t very well yesterday, but I **feel** much better today.
3. I climbed out of the swimming pool and **dried** with a towel.
4. I tried to study, but I couldn’t **concentrate**.
5. If somebody attacks you, you need to be able to **defend**.
6. I’m going out with Chris this evening. We’re **meeting** at 7.30.
7. You’re always rushing around. Why don’t you sit down and **relax**?

82.4 Complete the sentences with **ourselves/themselves or each other**.

1. How long have you and Ben known **each other**?
2. If people work too hard, they can make **themselves** ill.
3. I need you and you need me. We need **ourselves**.
4. In Britain friends often give **each other** presents at Christmas.
5. Some people are very selfish. They only think of **themselves**.
6. Tracy and I don’t see **each other** very often these days.
7. We couldn’t get back into the house. We had locked **ourselves** out.
8. They’ve had an argument. They’re not speaking to **each other** at the moment.
9. We’d never met before, so we introduced **ourselves** to.

82.5 Complete the answers to the questions using **myself/yourslef/itself etc.**

1. Who repaired the bike for you? **Nobody. I repaired it myself.**
2. Who cuts Brian’s hair for him? **Nobody. He cuts himself.**
3. Do you want me to tell Amy about your idea? **No, I’ll tell her myself.**
4. Who told you that Linda was going away? **Linda told me.**
5. Can you phone John for me? **Why can’t you?**
A friend of mine / a friend of yours etc.

We say 'a friend of mine/your/his/hers/ours/their's'.

A friend of mine = one of my friends:
- I'm going to a wedding on Saturday. A friend of mine is getting married. (not a friend of me)
- We went on holiday with some friends of ours. (not some friends of us)
- Mike had an argument with a neighbour of his.
- It was a good idea of yours to go to the cinema.

In the same way we say 'a friend of my sister's / (a friend) of Tom's' etc.:
- That woman over there is a friend of my sister's. (= one of my sister's friends)
- It was a good idea of Tom's to go to the cinema.

My own ... / your own ... etc.

We use my/your/his/her/its/our/their before own:
- my own house  your own car  her own room
  (not an own house, an own car etc.)

My own ... / your own ... etc. = something that is only mine/yours, not shared or borrowed:
- I don't want to share a room with anybody. I want my own room.
- Vicky and Gary would like to have their own house.
- It's a shame that the apartment hasn't got its own parking space.
- It's my own fault that I've got no money. I buy too many things I don't need.
- Why do you want to borrow my car? Why don't you use your own? (= your own car)

You can also say 'a room of my own', 'a house of your own', 'problems of his own' etc.:
- I'd like to have a room of my own.
- He won't be able to help you with your problems. He has too many problems of his own.

We also use own to say that we do something ourselves instead of somebody else doing it for us.
For example:
- Brian usually cuts his own hair. (= he cuts it himself; he doesn't go to a barber)
- I'd like to have a garden so that I could grow my own vegetables. (= grow them myself instead of buying them from shops)

On my own / by myself

On my own and by myself both mean 'alone'. We say:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{on} & \quad \text{my / your} \\
\text{his / her / its} & \quad \text{own} \\
\text{our / their} & \quad \text{by} \\
& \quad \text{myself / yourself (singular)} \\
& \quad \text{himself / herself / itself} \\
& \quad \text{ourselves / yourselves (plural)} \\
& \quad \text{themselves}
\end{align*}
\]

- I like living on my own / by myself.
- 'Did you go on holiday on your own / by yourself?' 'No, with a friend.'
- Jack was sitting on his own / by himself in a corner of the cafe.
- Learner drivers are not allowed to drive on their own / by themselves.
Exercises

83.1 Write new sentences with the same meaning. Change the underlined words and use the structure in Section A (a friend of mine etc.).

1 I am meeting one of my friends tonight. I'm meeting a friend of mine tonight.
2 We met one of your relatives. We met a...
3 Jason borrowed one of my books. Jason...
4 Lisa invited some of her friends to her flat. Lisa...
5 We had dinner with one of our neighbours.
6 I went on holiday with two of my friends.
7 Is that man one of your friends?
8 I met one of lane's friends at the party.
9 It's always been one of my ambitions to travel round the world.

83.2 Complete the sentences using my own / our own etc. + the following:

bedroom  business  opinions  private beach  words

1 I share a kitchen and bathroom, but I have my own bedroom
2 Gary doesn't think the same as me. He's got
3 Julia is fed up with working for other people. She wants to start
4 In the test we had to read a story, and then write it in
5 We stayed at a luxury hotel by the sea. The hotel had

83.3 Complete the sentences using my own / your own etc.

1 Why do you want to borrow my car? Why don't you use your own car?
2 How can you blame me? It's not my fault. It's
3 She's always using my ideas. Why can't she use?
4 Please don't worry about my problems. You've got
5 I can't make his decisions for him. He must make

83.4 Complete the sentences using my own / your own etc. Use the following verbs:

bake  clean  cut  make  write

1 Brian never goes to a barber. He cuts his own hair
2 Helen doesn't often buy clothes. She usually
3 We don't often buy bread. We usually
4 I'm not going to clean your shoes. You can
5 Paul and Joe are singers. They sing songs written by other people, but they also

83.5 Complete the sentences using my own / myself etc.

1 Did you go on holiday on your own?
2 I'm glad I live with other people. I wouldn't like to live on
3 The box was too heavy for me to lift by
4 'Who was Tom with when you saw him?' 'Nobody. He was by
5 Very young children should not go swimming by
6 I don't think she knows many people. When I see her, she is always by
7 I don't like strawberries with cream. I like them on
8 Do you like working with other people or do you prefer working by
9 We had no help decorating the flat. We did it completely on
10 I went out with Sally because she didn't want to go out on
Study this example:

There's a new restaurant in Hill Street.

Yes, I know. I've heard it's very good.

We use there ... when we talk about something for the first time, to say that it exists:
- There's a new restaurant in Hill Street. (not A new restaurant is in Hill Street)
- I'm sorry I'm late. There was a lot of traffic. (not It was a lot of traffic)
- Things are more expensive now. There has been a big rise in the cost of living.

It = a specific thing, place, fact, situation etc. (but see also section C):
- We went to the new restaurant. It's very good. (It = the restaurant)
- I wasn't expecting them to come. It was a complete surprise. (It = that they came)

Compare there and it:
- I don't like this town. There's nothing to do here. It's a boring place.

There also means 'to/at/in that place':
- When we got to the party, there were already a lot of people there (= at the party).

You can say there will be / there must be / there might be / there used to be etc.:
- Will you be busy tomorrow? Will there be much to do?
- 'Is there a flight to Rome tonight?' 'There might be. I'll check the website.'
- If people drove more carefully, there wouldn't be so many accidents.

Also there must have been, there should have been etc.:
- I could hear music coming from the house. There must have been somebody at home.

Compare there and it:
- They live on a busy road. There must be a lot of noise from the traffic.
- They live on a busy road. It must be very noisy.
- There used to be a cinema here, but it closed a few years ago.
- That building is now a supermarket. It used to be a cinema.

You can also say there is sure / bound (= sure) / likely to be ... . Compare there and it:
- There's sure to be a flight to Rome tonight, (or There's bound to be ...)
- There's a flight to Rome tonight, but it's sure to be full. (It = the flight)

We also use it in sentences like this:
- It's dangerous to walk in the road.

We do not usually say 'To walk in the road is dangerous'. Normally we begin with It ... .

Some more examples:
- It didn't take us long to get here.
- It's a shame (that) you can't come to the party.
- Let's go. It's not worth waiting any longer.

We also use it to talk about distance, time and weather:
- How far is it from here to the airport?
- What day is it today?
- It's a long time since we saw you last.
- It was windy yesterday. (but There was a cold wind.)
1. The journey took a long time. There was a lot of traffic.
2. What’s this restaurant like? Is it good?
3. Something wrong with the computer. Can you check it for me?
4. I wanted to visit the museum, but there wasn’t enough time.
5. ‘What’s that building? A hotel?’ ‘No, a theatre.’
6. How do we get across the river? A bridge?
7. A few days ago a big storm, which caused a lot of damage.
8. I can’t find my phone. It’s in my bag – I just looked.
9. It’s often cold here, but there isn’t much snow.
10. ‘How was your trip?’ ‘It was a disaster. Everything went wrong.’
11. Anything on television, so I turned it off.
12. ‘... a bookshop near here?’ ‘Yes, one in Hudson Street.’
13. When we got to the cinema, a queue outside. A very long queue, so we decided not to wait.
14. I couldn’t see anything. It was completely dark.
15. Difficult to get a job right now. There must be a lot of unemployment.

1. The roads were busy yesterday. There was a lot of traffic.
2. This soup is very salty. There is in the soup.
3. The box was empty. There was nothing in the box.
4. The film is very violent. There would be
5. The shopping mall was crowded. There were lots of people.
6. I like this town – it’s lively.

1. If people drove more carefully, there would be fewer accidents.
2. ‘Do we have any eggs?’ ‘I’m not sure. There is some in the fridge.’
3. I think everything will be OK. I don’t think there are any problems.
4. Look at the sky. There is a storm.
5. ‘Is there a school in the village?’ ‘Not now. There was one, but it closed.’
6. People drive too fast on this road. I think there should be a speed limit.
7. If people weren’t aggressive, there wouldn’t be any wars.

1. They live on a busy road. It must be a lot of noise.
2. It’s a long way from my house to the nearest shop.
3. After the lecture it will be an opportunity to ask questions.
4. I like where I live, but it would be nicer to live by the sea.
5. Why was she so unfriendly? It must have been a reason.
6. It’s three years since I last went to the theatre.
7. Where can we park the car?
   a: Don’t worry. There is a car park somewhere.
8. It was Ken’s birthday yesterday. We had a party.
9. The situation is still the same. It has not changed.
10. It used to be a church here, but it was knocked down.
11. I was told that it would be somebody to meet me at the station, but there wasn’t anybody.
12. I don’t know who’ll win, but there is sure to be a good game.
In general we use **some** (also somebody/someone/something) in positive sentences and **any** (also anybody etc.) in negative sentences:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>some</th>
<th>any</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>We bought some flowers.</td>
<td>We didn’t buy any flowers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He’s busy. He’s got some work to do.</td>
<td>He’s lazy. He never does any work.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There’s somebody at the door.</td>
<td>There isn’t anybody at the door.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I want something to eat.</td>
<td>I don’t want anything to eat.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We use **any** in the following sentences because the meaning is negative:

- She went out without any money. (she didn’t take any money with her)
- He refused to eat anything. (he didn’t eat anything)
- It’s a very easy exam. Hardly anybody fails. (= almost nobody fails)

We use both **some** and **any** in questions. We use some/somebody/something to talk about a person or thing that we know exists, or we think exists:

- Are you waiting for somebody? (I think you are waiting for somebody)

We use **some** in questions when we offer or ask for things:

- Would you like something to eat? (there is something to eat)
- Can I have some sugar, please? (there is probably some sugar I can have)

But in most questions, we use **any**. We do not know if the thing or person exists:

- ‘Do you have any luggage?’ ‘No, I don’t.’
- I can’t find my bag. Has anybody seen it?

We often use **any** after if:

- If anyone has any questions, I’ll be pleased to answer them.
- Let me know if you need anything.

The following sentences have the idea of if:

- I’m sorry for any trouble I’ve caused. (= if I have caused any trouble)
- Anyone who wants to do the exam should tell me by Friday. (= if there is anyone)

We also use **any** with the meaning ‘it doesn’t matter which’:

- You can take any bus. They all go to the centre. (= it doesn’t matter which bus you take)
- ‘Sing a song.’ ‘Which song shall I sing?’ ‘Any song, I don’t mind.’ (= it doesn’t matter which song)
- Come and see me any time you want.

We use anybody/anyone/anything/anywhere in the same way:

- We forgot to lock the door. Anybody could have come in.
- ‘Let’s go out somewhere.’ ‘Where shall we go?’ ‘Anywhere. I just want to go out.’

Compare **something** and **anything**:

- A: I’m hungry. I want something to eat.
- B: What would you like?
- A: I don’t mind. Anything. (= it doesn’t matter what)

**Somebody/someone/anybody/anyone** are singular words:

- Someone is here to see you.

But we use **they/them/their** after these words:

- Someone has forgotten their umbrella. (= his or her umbrella)
- If anybody wants to leave early, they can. (= he or she can)
Exercises

85.1 Put in some or any.
1 We didn’t buy any flowers.
2 Tonight I’m going out with some friends of mine.
3 a: Have you seen any good movies recently?
   b: No, I haven’t been to the cinema for ages.
4 I didn’t have any money, so I had to borrow some.
5 Can I have some milk in my coffee, please?
6 We wanted to buy some grapes, but they didn’t have any in the shop.
7 He did everything himself - without any help.
8 You can use this card to withdraw some money at any cash machine.
9 I’d like some information about places of interest in the town.
10 With the special tourist train ticket, you can travel on any train you like.
11 Those apples look nice. Shall we buy any?

85.2 Complete the sentences with some- or any- + -body/-thing/-where.
1 I was too surprised to say anything.
2 There’s somebody at the door. Can you go and see who it is?
3 Does anybody mind if I open the window?
4 I wasn’t feeling hungry, so I didn’t eat anything.
5 You must be hungry. Why don’t I get you something to eat?
6 Quick, let’s go! There’s somebody coming and I don’t want anybody to see us.
7 Sarah was upset about something and refused to talk to anybody.
8 This machine is very easy to use. Anybody can learn to use it very quickly.
9 There was hardly anywhere on the beach. It was almost deserted.
10 ‘Do you live anywhere near Joe?’ ‘No, he lives in another part of town.’
11 ‘Where shall we go on holiday?’ ‘Let’s go somewhere warm and sunny.’
12 They stay at home all the time. They never seem to go anywhere.
13 I’m going to a meeting now. If anybody needs me, tell them I’ll be back at 11.30.
14 Why are you looking under the bed? Have you lost anything?
15 This is a no-parking area. Anybody who parks here will have to pay a fine.
16 Jonathan stood up and left the room without saying anything.
17 ‘Can I ask you anything?’ ‘Sure. What do you want to ask?’
18 Sue is very secretive. She never tells anybody anything.

85.3 Complete the sentences. Use any (+ noun) or anybody/anything/anywhere.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Which bus do I have to catch?</td>
<td>Any bus. They all go to the centre.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Which day shall I come?</td>
<td>I don’t mind.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What do you want to eat?</td>
<td>I don’t mind. Whatever you have.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where shall I sit?</td>
<td>It’s up to you. You can sit anywhere you like.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What sort of job are you looking for?</td>
<td>It doesn’t matter. Leave a message if I don’t answer and I’ll get back to you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What time shall I call you tomorrow?</td>
<td>I don’t mind.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Who shall I invite to the party?</td>
<td>I don’t mind.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Which newspaper shall I buy?</td>
<td>See what they have in the shop.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
No and none

We use no + noun. No = not a or not any:
- We had to walk home because there was no bus. (= there wasn't a bus)
- Sue will have no trouble finding a job. (= Sue won't have any trouble ...)
- There were no shops open. (= There weren't any shops open.)

You can use no + noun at the beginning of a sentence:
- No reason was given for the change of plan.

We use none without a noun:
- 'How much money do you have?' 'None.' (= no money)
- All the tickets have been sold. There are none left. (= no tickets left)

Or we use none of ...:
- This money is all yours. None of it is mine.

Compare none and any:
- 'How much luggage do you have?' 'None.' / 'I don't have any.'

After none of + plural (none of the students, none of them etc.) the verb can be singular or plural. A plural verb is more usual:
- None of the shops were (or was) open.

Nothing nobody/no-one nowhere

You can use these words at the beginning of a sentence or alone (as answers to questions):
- 'What's going to happen?' 'Nobody (or No-one) knows.'
- 'What happened?' 'Nothing.'
- 'Where are you going?' 'Nowhere. I'm staying here.'

You can also use these words after a verb, especially after be and have:
- The house is empty. There's nobody living there.
- We had nothing to eat.

Nothing/nobody etc. = not + anything/anybody etc.:
- I said nothing. = I didn't say anything.
- Jane told nobody about her plans. = Jane didn't tell anybody about her plans.
- They have nowhere to live. = They don't have anywhere to live.

With nothing/nobody etc., do not use a negative verb (isn't, didn't etc.):
- I said nothing. (not I didn't say nothing)

After nobody/no-one you can use they/them/their (see also Unit 85E):
- Nobody is perfect, are they? (= is he or she perfect)
- No-one did what I asked them to do. (= him or her)
- Nobody in the class did their homework. (= his or her homework)

Sometimes any/anything/anybody etc. means 'it doesn't matter which/what/who' (see Unit 85D).

Compare no- and any:-
- There was no bus, so we walked home.
- You can take any bus. They all go to the centre. (= it doesn't matter which)
- 'What do you want to eat?' 'Nothing. I'm not hungry.'
- I'm so hungry. I could eat anything. (= it doesn't matter what)
- The exam was extremely difficult. Nobody passed. (= everybody failed)
  The exam was very easy. Anybody could have passed. (= it doesn't matter who)
Exercises

86.1 Complete these sentences with no, none or any.
1. It was a public holiday, so there were __no__ shops open.
2. I haven’t got __any__ money. Can you lend me some?
3. We had to walk home because there were __none__ taxis.
4. We had to walk home because there weren’t __any__ taxis.
5. ‘How many eggs have we got?’ ‘____________. Do you want me to get some?’
6. We took a few pictures, but __none__ of them were very good.
7. ‘Did you take lots of pictures?’ ‘No, I didn’t take __any__’.
8. What a stupid thing to do! __Any__ intelligent person would do such a thing.
9. There’s nowhere to cross the river. There’s __none__ bridge.
10. I haven’t read __any__ of the books you lent me.
11. We cancelled the party because __none__ of the people we invited were able to come.
12. ‘Do you know when Chris will be back?’ ‘I’m sorry. I have __no__ idea.’

86.2 Answer these questions using none/nobody/nothing/nowhere.

1. What did you do? __Nothing__.
2. Who were you talking to? __No Tate__.
3. How much sugar do you want? __None__.
4. Where are you going? __No__.
5. How many emails did you get? __None__.
6. How much did you pay? __None__.

Now answer the same questions using complete sentences with any/anybody/anything/anywhere.

7. (1) __I didn’t do anything__.
8. (2) __I did nothing__.
9. (3) __I did nothing__.
10. (4) __I did anything__.
11. (5) __I did anything__.
12. (6) __I did anything__.

86.3 Complete these sentences with no- or any- + -body/-thing/-where.

1. I don’t want __anything__ to drink. I’m not thirsty.
2. The bus was completely empty. There was __nothing__ on it.
3. ‘Where did you go for your holidays?’ ‘____________. I stayed at home.’
4. I went to the shops, but I didn’t buy __anybody__.
5. ‘What did you buy?’ ‘____________. I couldn’t find __anything__ I wanted.’
6. The town is still the same as it was years ago. __Nothing__ has changed.
7. Have you seen my watch? I can’t find it __nowhere__.
8. There was complete silence in the room. __Nothing__ said __nowhere__.

86.4 Choose the right word.

1. She didn’t tell __nobody / anybody__ about her plans. (anybody is correct)
2. The accident looked bad, but fortunately __nobody / anybody__ was badly injured.
3. I looked out of the window, but I couldn’t see __no-one / anyone__.
4. My job is very easy. __Nobody / Anybody__ could do it.
5. ‘What’s in that box?’ ‘Nothing / Anything. It’s empty.’
6. The situation is uncertain. __Nothing / Anything__ could happen.
7. I don’t know __nothing / anything__ about economics.
8. I’ll try and answer __no / any__ questions you ask me.
9. ‘Who were you talking to just now?’ ‘No-one / Anyone. I wasn’t talking to __no-one / anyone__.’
We use **much** and **little** with *uncountable* nouns:
- much time  much luck  little energy  little money

We use **many** and **few** with *plural* nouns:
- many friends  many people  few cars  few countries

We use **a lot of** / **lots of** / **plenty of** with both *uncountable* and *plural* nouns:
- a lot of luck  lots of time  plenty of money  a lot of friends  lots of people  plenty of ideas

**Plenty** = more than enough:
- There’s no need to hurry. We’ve got plenty of time.

**Much** is unusual in positive sentences (especially in spoken English). Compare:
- We **didn’t** spend much money.
- **but**  We spent a lot of money.  *(not We spent much money)*

- **Do you see David much?**
- **but**  I see David a lot.  *(not I see David much)*

We use **many** and **a lot of** in all kinds of sentences:
- Many people drive too fast.  or  **A lot of** people drive too fast.
- **Do you know many people?**  or  Do you know **a lot of** people?
- There aren’t many tourists here.  or  There aren’t **a lot of** tourists here.

**Note that we say**
- many years / many weeks / many days *(not a lot of ...)*:
- We’ve lived here for **many years**.  *(not a lot of years)*

**Little** = not much, **few** = not many:
- Gary is very busy with his job. He has **little** time for other things.  *(= not much time, less time than he would like)*
- Vicky doesn’t like living in London. She has **few** friends there.  *(= not many, not as many as she would like)*

You can say **very little** and **very few**:
- Gary has **very little** time for other things.
- Vicky has **very few** friends in London.

**A little** = some, a small amount:
- Let’s go and have a coffee. **We have a little** time before the train leaves.  *(a little time = some time, enough time to have a coffee)*
- ‘Do you speak English?’  ‘**A little.**’  *(so we can talk a bit)*

**A few** = some, a small number:
- I enjoy my life here. I have **a few** friends and we meet quite often.  *(a few friends = not many but enough to have a good time)*
- ‘When was the last time you saw Clare?’  ‘**A few** days ago.’  *(= some days ago)*

**Compare little and a little, few and a few:**
- He spoke **little** English, so it was difficult to communicate with him.
- He spoke **a little** English, so we were able to communicate with him.
- She’s lucky. She has **few** problems.  *(= not many problems)*
- Things are not going so well for her. She has **a few** problems.  *(= some problems)*

You can say **only a little** and **only a few**:
- Hurry! We **only** have **a little** time.  *(not only little time)*
- The village was very small. There were **only a few** houses.  *(not only few houses)*
Exercises

87.1 In some of these sentences much is incorrect or unnatural. Change much to many or a lot (of) where necessary. Write ‘OK’ if the sentence is correct.

1. We didn’t spend much money. OK - a lot of tea
2. Sue drinks much tea. a lot of tea
3. Joe always puts much salt on his food.
4. We’ll have to hurry. We don’t have much time.
5. It cost much to repair the car.
6. Did it cost much to repair the car?
7. I don’t know much people in this town.
8. Mike travels much.
9. There wasn’t much traffic this morning.
10. You need much money to travel round the world.

87.2 Complete the sentences using plenty or plenty of + the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>hotels</th>
<th>money</th>
<th>room</th>
<th>time</th>
<th>to learn</th>
<th>to see</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. There’s no need to hurry. There’s plenty of time.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. He doesn’t have any financial problems. He has plenty of money.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Come and sit with us. There’s plenty of room.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. She knows a lot, but she still has to learn more.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. It’s an interesting town to visit. There’s plenty to see.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. I’m sure we’ll find somewhere to stay.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

87.3 Put in much/many/little/few (one word only).

1. She isn’t very popular. She has few friends.
2. Ann is very busy these days. She has little free time.
3. Did you take any pictures when you were on holiday?
4. I’m not very busy today. I don’t have much to do.
5. This is a very modern city. There are few old buildings.
6. The weather has been very dry recently. We’ve had little rain.
7. ‘Do you know Rome?’ ‘No, I haven’t been there for few years.’

87.4 Put in a (a few, a little) where necessary. Write ‘OK’ if the sentence is already complete.

1. She’s lucky. She has few problems. OK - a few problems
2. Things are not going so well for her. She has few problems.
3. Can you lend me few dollars?
4. There was little traffic, so the journey didn’t take very long.
5. I can’t give you a decision yet. I need little time to think.
6. It was a surprise that he won the match. Few people expected him to win.
7. I don’t know much Spanish – only few words.
8. I wonder how Sam is. I haven’t seen him for few months.

87.5 Put in little / a little / few / a few.

1. Gary is very busy with his job. He has little time for other things.
2. Listen carefully. I’m going to give you much advice.
3. Do you mind if I ask you few questions?
4. It’s not a very interesting place to visit, so few tourists come here.
5. I don’t think Amy would be a good teacher. She has little patience.
6. ‘Would you like milk in your coffee?’ ‘Yes, a little.’
7. This is a very boring place to live. There’s little to do.
8. ‘Have you ever been to Paris?’ ‘Yes, I’ve been there few times.’
All / all of  most / most of  no / none of etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>all</th>
<th>some</th>
<th>any</th>
<th>most</th>
<th>much/many</th>
<th>little/few</th>
<th>no</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

You can use the words in the box with a noun (some food / few books etc.):

- All cars have wheels.
- Some cars can go faster than others.
- (on a notice) NO CARS. (= no cars allowed)
- Many people drive too fast.
- I don’t go out very often. I’m at home most days.

You cannot say ‘all of cars’, ‘some of people’ etc. (see also Section B):

- Some people learn languages more easily than others. (not Some of people)

Note that we say most (not the most):

- Most tourists don’t visit this part of the town. (not The most tourists)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>all</th>
<th>some</th>
<th>any</th>
<th>most</th>
<th>much/many</th>
<th>little/few</th>
<th>half</th>
<th>none</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

You can use these words with of (some of / most of etc.).

We use

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>some of</th>
<th>the ...</th>
<th>my ...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>most of</td>
<td>this ...</td>
<td>these ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>none of</td>
<td>those ...</td>
<td>those ...</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

So you can say:

- some of the people, some of those people (but not some of people)
- most of my time, most of the time (but not most of time)
- Some of the people I work with are not very friendly.
- None of this money is mine.
- Have you read any of these books?
- I was sick yesterday. I spent most of the day in bed.

You don’t need of after all or half. So you can say:

- All my friends live in Los Angeles. or All of my friends ...
- Half this money is mine. or Half of this money ...

Compare:

- All flowers are beautiful. (= all flowers in general)
- All (of) the flowers in this garden are beautiful. (= a specific group of flowers)
- Most problems have a solution. (= most problems in general)
- We were able to solve most of the problems we had. (= a specific group of problems)

You can use all of / some of / none of etc. + it/us/you/them:

- ‘How many of these people do you know?’ ‘None of them. / A few of them.’
- Do any of you want to come to a party tonight?
- ‘Do you like this music?’ ‘Some of it. Not all of it.’

We say: all of us / all of you / half of it / half of them etc. You need of before it/us/you/them:

- All of us were late. (not all us)
- I haven’t finished the book yet. I’ve only read half of it. (not half it)

You can also use some/most etc. alone, without a noun:

- Some cars have four doors and some have two.
- A few of the shops were open, but most (of them) were closed.
- Half this money is mine, and half (of it) is yours. (not the half)
Exercises

88.1 Put in of where necessary. Leave the space empty if the sentence is already complete.

1 All cars have wheels. (the sentence is already complete)
2 None of this money is mine.
3 Some films are very violent.
4 Some the films I've seen recently have been very violent.
5 Joe never goes to museums. He says that all museums are boring.
6 I think some people watch too much TV.
7 ‘Do you want any these magazines?’ ‘No, I've finished with them.’
8 Kate has lived in London most her life.
9 Joe has lived in Chicago all his life.
10 Most days I get up before 7 o'clock.

88.2 Choose from the list and complete the sentences. Use of (some of / most of etc.) where necessary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>accidents</th>
<th>European countries</th>
<th>my dinner</th>
<th>the players</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>birds</td>
<td>her friends</td>
<td>my spare time</td>
<td>the population</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cars</td>
<td>her opinions</td>
<td>the buildings</td>
<td>these books</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 I haven’t read many of these books.
2 All cars have wheels.
3 I spend much gardening.
4 Many are caused by bad driving.
5 It’s a historic town. Many are over 400 years old.
6 When she got married, she kept it a secret. She didn’t tell any.
7 Not many people live in the north of the country. Most live in the south.
8 Not all can fly. For example, the penguin can’t fly.
9 Our team played badly and lost the game. None played well.
10 Emma and I have very different ideas. I don’t agree with many.
11 Sarah travels a lot in Europe. She has been to most.
12 I had no appetite. I could only eat half.

88.3 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

1 The building was damaged in the explosion. All the windows were broken.
2 We argue sometimes, but get on well most of the time.
3 I went to the cinema by myself. None wanted to come.
4 The test was difficult. I could only answer half.
5 Some of the photos you took at the wedding were very good.
6 ‘Did you spend all the money I gave you?’ ‘No, there’s still some left.’

88.4 Complete the sentences. Use:

all of / some of / none of + it/them/us (all of it / some of them etc.)

1 These books are all Jane’s. None of them belong to me.
2 How many of these books have you read?” ‘All of them.’
3 We all got wet in the rain because had an umbrella.
4 Some of this money is yours and is mine.
5 I asked some people for directions, but was able to help me.
6 She invented the whole story from beginning to end. was true.
7 Not all the tourists in the group were Spanish. were French.
8 I watched most of the film, but not.
Both / both of  neither / neither of  either / either of

We use both/neither/either for two things. You can use these words with a noun (both books, neither book etc.).

For example, you are going out to eat. There are two possible restaurants. You say:
- Both restaurants are very good.  (not The both restaurants)
- Neither restaurant is expensive.
- We can go to either restaurant. I don’t mind.
  (either = one or the other, it doesn’t matter which one)

You can also use both/neither/either alone, without a noun:
- I couldn’t decide which of the two shirts to buy. I liked both.  (or I liked both of them.)
- 'Is your friend British or American?’ ‘Neither. She's Australian.’
- ‘Do you want tea or coffee?’ ‘Either. I don’t mind.’

Both of ... / neither of ... / either of ...

We use both of / neither of / either of + the/these/my/Tom’s ... etc. So we say ‘both of the restaurants’, ‘both of those restaurants’ etc. (but not both of restaurants):
- Both of these restaurants are very good.
- Neither of the restaurants we went to was (or were) expensive.
- I haven’t been to either of those restaurants. (= I haven’t been to one or the other)

You don’t need of after both. So you can say:
- Both my parents are from Egypt.  or  Both of my parents ...

You can use both of / neither of / either of + us/you/them:
- (talking to two people) Can either of you speak Russian?
- I asked two people the way to the station, but neither of them could help me.

You must say ‘both of’ before us/you/them:
- Both of us were very tired.  (not Both us were ...)

After neither of ... a singular or a plural verb is possible:
- Neither of the children wants (or want) to go to bed.

You can say:

both ... and ...
- Both Chris and Paul were late.
- I was both tired and hungry when I arrived home.

neither ... nor ...
- Neither Chris nor Paul came to the party.
- There was an accident in the street where we live, but we neither saw nor heard anything.

either ... or ...
- I’m not sure where Maria’s from. She’s either Spanish or Italian.
- Either you apologise, or I’ll never speak to you again.

Compare either/neither/both (two things) and any/none/all (more than two):

- There are two good hotels here.
  You could stay at either of them.
- We tried two hotels.
  Neither of them had any rooms.
  Both of them were full.
- There are many good hotels here.
  You could stay at any of them.
- We tried a lot of hotels.
  None of them had any rooms.
  All of them were full.
Exercises

89.1 Complete the sentences with both/neither/either.
1 'Do you want tea or coffee?' 'Either ... I really don’t mind.'
2 ‘What day is it today – the 18th or the 19th?’ ‘... It’s the 20th.’
3 a: Where did you go on your trip – Korea or Japan?
   b: We went to A week in Korea and a week in Japan.
4 ‘Shall we sit in the corner or by the window?’ ‘... I don’t mind.’
5 ‘Where’s Lisa? Is she at work or at home?’ ‘... She’s away on holiday.’

89.2 Complete the sentences with both/neither/either. Use of where necessary.
1 Both ... parents are from London.
2 To get to the town centre, you can go along the footpath by the river or you can go along the road. You can go ... way.
3 I tried twice to phone Carl, but ... times he was out.
4 Tom’s parents is English. His father is Polish and his mother is Italian.
5 I saw an accident this morning. One car drove into the back of another. Fortunately ... driver was injured, but ... cars were badly damaged.
6 I’ve got two sisters and a brother. My brother is working, but ... sisters are still at school.

89.3 Complete the sentences with both/neither/either + of us / of them.
1 I asked two people the way to the station, but ... of them could help me.
2 I was invited to two parties last week, but I couldn’t go to ... 
3 There were two windows in the room. It was very warm, so I opened ... can play very well.
4 Sarah and I play tennis together regularly, but we’re not very good, ... can play very well.
5 I tried two bookshops for the book I wanted, but ... had it.

89.4 Write sentences with both ... and ... / neither ... nor ... / either ... or ... .
1 Chris was late. So was Pat. Both Chris and Pat were late.
2 He didn’t say hello, and he didn’t smile. He neither said hello nor smiled.
3 Joe is on holiday and so is Sam.
4 Joe doesn’t have a car. Sam doesn’t have one either.

5 Brian doesn’t watch TV and he doesn’t read newspapers.

6 It was a boring movie. It was long too.
   The movie ...
7 Is that man’s name Richard? Or is it Robert? It’s one of the two. That man’s name ...
8 I haven’t got time to go on holiday. And I don’t have the money. I have ...
9 We can leave today or we can leave tomorrow – whichever you prefer. We ...

89.5 Complete the sentences with neither/either/none/any.
1 We tried a lot of hotels, but ... of them had any rooms.
2 I took two books with me on holiday, but I didn’t read ... of them.
3 I took five books with me on holiday, but I didn’t read ... of them.
4 There are a few shops at the end of the street, but ... of them sells newspapers.
5 You can phone me at ... time during the evening. I’m always at home.
6 I can meet you next Monday or Friday. Would ... of those days suit you?
7 John and I couldn’t get into the house because ... of us had a key.
All, every and whole

All and everybody/everyone

We do not normally use all to mean everybody/everyone:
- Everybody had a great time at the party. (not All enjoyed)
But we say all of us / all of you / all of them:
- All of us had a great time at the party. (not Everybody of us)

All and everything

Sometimes you can use all or everything:
- I’ll do all I can to help. or I’ll do everything I can to help.
You can say ‘all I can’ / ‘all you need’ etc., but we do not normally use all alone:
- He thinks he knows everything. (not he knows all)
- Our holiday was a disaster. Everything went wrong. (not All went wrong)
But you can say all about:
- He knows all about computers.
We also use all (not everything) to mean ‘the only thing(s)’:
- All I’ve eaten today is a sandwich. (= the only thing I’ve eaten today)

Every / everybody / everyone / everything are singular words, so we use a singular verb:
- Every seat in the theatre was taken.
- Everybody has arrived. (not have arrived)
But we use they/them/their after everybody/everyone:
- Everybody said they enjoyed themselves. (= everybody enjoyed himself or herself)

Whole and all

Whole = complete, entire. Most often we use whole with singular nouns:
- Did you read the whole book? (= all the book, not just a part of it)
- Emily has lived her whole life in the same town.
- I was so hungry, I ate a whole packet of biscuits. (= a complete packet)
We use the/my/her etc. before whole. Compare whole and all:
- her whole life but all her life
We do not normally use whole with uncountable nouns. We say:
- I’ve spent all the money you gave me. (not the whole money)

Every/all/whole with time words

We use every to say how often something happens (every day / every Monday / every ten minutes / every three weeks etc.):
- When we were on holiday, we went to the beach every day. (not all days)
- The bus service is excellent. There’s a bus every ten minutes.
- We don’t see each other very often – about every six months.
All day / the whole day = the complete day from beginning to end:
- We spent all day / the whole day on the beach.
- Dan was very quiet. He didn’t say a word all evening / the whole evening.
Note that we say all day (not all the day), all week (not all the week) etc.
Compare all the time and every time:
- They never go out. They are at home all the time. (= always, continuously)
- Every time I see you, you look different. (= each time, on every occasion)
Exercises

90.1 Complete these sentences with all, everything or everybody/everyone.
1. It was a good party. _Everybody_ had a great time.
2. All I've eaten today is a sandwich.
3. _Everybody_ has their faults. Nobody is perfect.
4. Nothing has changed. _Nothing_ is the same as it was.
5. Kate told me _everything_ about her new job. It sounds quite interesting.
6. Can _everybody_ write their names on a piece of paper, please?
7. Why are you always thinking about money? Money isn't _everything_.
8. I didn't have much money with me. _Everything_ I had was ten pounds.
9. When the fire alarm rang, _everybody_ left the building immediately.
10. Sarah didn't say where she was going. _Nothing_ she said was that she was going away.
11. We have completely different opinions. I disagree with _everything_ she says.
12. We all did well in the exam. _Everyone_ in our class passed.
13. We all did well in the exam. _Everything_ of us passed.
14. Why are you so lazy? Why do you expect me to do _everything_ for you?

90.2 Write sentences with whole.
1. I read the book from beginning to end. _I read the whole book_.
2. Everyone in the team played well.
3. Paul opened a box of chocolates. When he finished eating, there were no chocolates left in the box. He ate _the whole box_.
4. The police came to the house. They were looking for something. They searched everywhere, every room. They _searched the whole house_.
5. Everyone in Ed and Jane's family plays tennis. Ed and Jane play, and so do all their children. The _whole family plays_.
6. Ann worked from early in the morning until late in the evening. _Ann worked the whole day_.
7. Jack and Lisa had a week's holiday by the sea. It rained from the beginning of the week to the end. It _rained the whole week_.

Now write sentences 6 and 7 again using all instead of whole.
8. _Ann worked all day_.
9. _It rained all the week_.

90.3 Complete these sentences using every with the following:
- five minutes
- ten minutes
- four hours
- six months
- four years

1. The bus service is very good. There's a bus _every ten minutes_.
2. Tom is ill. He has some medicine. He has to take it _every day_.
3. The Olympic Games take place _every four years_.
4. We live near a busy airport. A plane flies over our house _every ten minutes_.
5. Martin goes to the dentist for a check-up _every six months_.

90.4 Which is the correct alternative?
1. I've spent _the whole money / all the money you gave me_. (all the money is correct)
2. Sue works _every day / all days except Sunday_.
3. I'm tired. I've been working hard _all the day / all day_.
4. It was a terrible fire. _Whole building / The whole building_ was destroyed.
5. I've been trying to contact her, but _every time / all the time_ I phone there's no answer.
6. I don't like the weather here. It rains _every time / all the time_.
7. When I was on holiday, _all my luggage / my whole luggage_ was stolen.
Each and every are similar in meaning. Often it is possible to use each or every:

- **Each** (or **Every**) time (or Every time) I see you, you look different.
- There are computers in **each** classroom (or **every** classroom) in the school.

But each and every are not exactly the same. Study the difference:

We use each when we think of things separately, one by one.

- Study **each sentence** carefully. (= study the sentences one by one)

```
each = X + X + X + X
```

Each is more usual for a small number:

- There were four books on the table. **Each** book was a different colour.
- **Each** player has three cards.

We use every when we think of things as a group. The meaning is similar to all.

- **Every** sentence must have a verb. (= all sentences in general)

```
every = XXXXXX
```

Every is more usual for a large number:

- Kate loves reading. She has read **every** book in the library. (= all the books)
- I'd like to visit **every** country in the world. (= all the countries)

Each (but not every) can be used for two things:

- In football, **each team** has eleven players. (not every team)

We use every (not each) to say how often something happens:

- ‘How often do you use your car?’ **Every day.** (not Each day)
- There’s a bus **every ten minutes.** (not each ten minutes)

Compare the structures we use with each and every:

You can use each with a noun:

**each book**
**each student**

You can use each alone (without a noun):

- None of the rooms was the same. **Each** (= each room) was different.

Or you can use each one:

- **Each one** was different.

You can say each of (the ... / these ... / them etc.):

- Read each of these sentences carefully.
- **Each of** the books is a different colour.
- **Each of them** is a different colour.

You can use every with a noun:

**every book**
**every student**

You can’t use every alone, but you can say 

**every one**:

- A: Have you read all these books?  
- B: Yes, **every one.**

You can say every one of ... (but not ‘every of’):

- I’ve read every one of those books. (not every of those books)
- I’ve read every one of them.

You can also use each in the middle or at the end of a sentence. For example:

- The students were each given a book. (= Each student was given a book.)
- These oranges cost 40 pence each.

Everyone and every one

Everyone (one word) is only for people (= everybody).

Every one (two words) is for things or people, and is similar to each one (see Section B).

- **Everyone** enjoyed the party. (= Everybody ...)
- Sarah is invited to lots of parties and she goes to every one. (= to every party)

Each other ➔ Unit 82C  All and every ➔ Unit 90
Exercises

91.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with each or every.

1. Each player has three cards.
2. Kate has read every book in the library.
3. One side of a square is the same length.
4. Every seat in the theatre was taken.
5. There are six apartments in the building. One has a balcony.
6. There’s a train to London every hour.
7. She was wearing four rings – one on each finger.
8. Our football team is playing well. We’ve won every game this season.

91.2 Put in each or every.

1. There were four books on the table. Each book was a different colour.
2. The Olympic Games are held every four years.
3. Every parent worries about their children.
4. In a game of tennis there are two or four players. Each player has a racket.
5. Nicola plays volleyball on Thursday evening.
6. I understood most of what they said but not every word.
7. The book is divided into five parts and each of these has three sections.
8. I get paid every four weeks.
9. I called the office two or three times, but each time it was closed.
10. Car seat belts save lives. Everyone should wear one.
11. A friend of mine has three children. I always give everyone of them a present at Christmas.

91.3 Complete the sentences using each.

1. The price of one of those oranges is 30 pence. Those oranges are 30 pence each.
2. I had ten pounds and so did Sonia. Sonia and I... had.
3. One of those postcards cost 80 pence. Those postcards cost 80 pence each.
4. The hotel was expensive. I paid £150 and so did you. We paid £150 each.

91.4 Put in everyone (1 word) or every one (2 words).

1. Sarah is invited to a lot of parties and she goes to every one.
2. As soon as everyone had arrived, we began the meeting.
3. I asked her lots of questions and she answered everyone correctly.
4. Amy is very popular. Everyone likes her.
5. I dropped a tray of glasses. Unfortunately everyone broke.
Relative clauses 1: clauses with who/that/which

Look at this example sentence:

The woman who lives next door is a doctor.

A clause is a part of a sentence. A relative clause tells us which person or thing (or what kind of person or thing) the speaker means:

- The woman who lives next door ... ('who lives next door’ tells us which woman)
- People who live in the country ... ('who live in the country’ tells us what kind of people)

We use who in a relative clause when we are talking about people (not things):

- the woman – she lives next door – is a doctor
- The woman who lives next door is a doctor.
- we know a lot of people – they live in the country
- We know a lot of people who live in the country.

- An architect is someone who designs buildings.
- What was the name of the person who phoned?
- Anyone who wants to apply for the job must do so by Friday.

You can also use that (instead of who), but you can’t use which for people:

- The woman that lives next door is a doctor, (not the woman which)
- Sometimes you must use who (not that) for people – see Unit 95.

When we are talking about things, we use that or which (not who) in a relative clause:

- where is the cheese? – it was in the fridge
- Where is the cheese that was in the fridge?

- I don’t like stories that have unhappy endings. (or stories which have ...)
- Grace works for a company that makes furniture. (or a company which makes furniture)
- The machine that broke down is working again now. (or The machine which broke down)

That is more usual than which, but sometimes you must use which – see Unit 95.

Remember that in relative clauses we use who/that/which, not he/she/they/it.

Compare:

- ‘Who’s that woman?’ ‘She lives next door to me.’
  I’ve never spoken to the woman who lives next door. (not the woman she lives)
- Where is the cheese? It was in the fridge.
  Where is the cheese that was in the fridge? (not the cheese it was)

What = ‘the thing(s) that’. Compare what and that:

- What happened was my fault. (= the thing that happened)

  but

- Everything that happened was my fault. (not Everything what happened)
- The machine that broke down is now working again. (not The machine what broke down)
Exercises

**92.1**
In this exercise you have to explain what some words mean. Choose the right meaning from the box and then write a sentence with who. Use a dictionary if necessary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>he/she</th>
<th>steals from a shop</th>
<th>buys something from a shop</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>designs buildings</td>
<td>pays rent to live in a house or apartment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>doesn’t believe in God</td>
<td>breaks into a house to steal things</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>is not brave</td>
<td>expects the worst to happen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 (an architect) An architect is someone who designs buildings.
2 (a burglar) A burglar is someone
3 (a customer)
4 (a shoplifter)
5 (a coward)
6 (an atheist)
7 (a pessimist)
8 (a tenant)

**92.2**
Make one sentence from two. Use who/that/which.

1 A girl was injured in the accident. She is now in hospital. The girl who was injured in the accident is now in hospital.
2 A waitress served us. She was impolite and impatient. The
3 A building was destroyed in the fire. It has now been rebuilt. The
4 Some people were arrested. They have now been released. The
5 A bus goes to the airport. It runs every half hour. The

**92.3**
Complete the sentences. Choose from the box and make a relative clause.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>invented the telephone</th>
<th>makes furniture</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>runs away from home</td>
<td>gives you the meaning of words</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stole my wallet</td>
<td>can support life</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>were hanging on the wall</td>
<td>cannot be explained</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Helen works for a company that makes furniture.
2 The book is about a girl.
3 What happened to the pictures?
4 A mystery is something.
5 The police have arrested the man.
6 A dictionary is a book.
7 Alexander Bell was the man.
8 It seems that Earth is the only planet.

**92.4**
Are these sentences right or wrong? Correct them where necessary.

1 I don't like stories who have unhappy endings.
2 What was the name of the person who phoned?
3 Where's the nearest shop who sells bread?
4 The driver which caused the accident was fined £500.
5 Do you know the person that took these pictures?
6 We live in a world what is changing all the time.
7 Dan said some things about me that were not true.
8 What was the name of the horse it won the race?
Look at these example sentences from Unit 92:


- The woman who lives next door is a doctor. (or The woman that lives ...)
  
  The woman lives next door. who (= the woman) is the subject

- Where is the cheese that was in the fridge? (or the cheese which was ...)
  
  The cheese was in the fridge. that (= the cheese) is the subject

You must use who/that/which when it is the subject of the relative clause. So you cannot say ‘The woman lives next door is a doctor’ or ‘Where is the cheese was in the fridge?’.

Sometimes who/that/which is the object of the verb. For example:

- The woman who I wanted to see was away on holiday.
  
  I wanted to see the woman
  who (= the woman) is the object
  I is the subject

- Have you found the keys that you lost?
  
  You lost the keys.
  that (= the keys) is the object
  you is the subject.

When who/that/which is the object, you can leave it out. So you can say:

- The woman I wanted to see was away. or The woman who I wanted to see ...
- Have you found the keys you lost? or ... the keys that you lost?
- The dress Lisa bought doesn't fit her very well. or The dress that Lisa bought ...
- Is there anything I can do? or ... anything that I can do?

Note that we say:

- the keys you lost (not the keys you lost them)
- the dress Lisa bought (not the dress Lisa bought it)

Note the position of prepositions (in/to/for etc.) in relative clauses:

Tom is talking to a woman – do you know her?

Do you know the woman (who/that) Tom is talking to ?

I slept in a bed last night – it wasn’t very comfortable

The bed (that/which) I slept in last night wasn’t very comfortable.

Are these the books you were looking for? or ... the books that/which you were ...

The woman he fell in love with left him after a month. or The woman who/that he ...

The man I was sitting next to on the plane talked all the time. or

The man who/that I was sitting next to ...

Note that we say:

- the books you were looking for (not the books you were looking for them)

You cannot use what in sentences like these (see also Unit 92D):

- Everything (that) they said was true. (not Everything what they said)
- I gave her all the money (that) I had. (not all the money what I had)

What = the thing(s) that:

- Did you hear what they said? (= the things that they said)
93.1 In some of these sentences you need who or that. Correct the sentences where necessary.

1. The woman lives next door is a doctor.  
   The woman who lives next door is a doctor.  

2. Have you found the keys you lost?  
   OK.  

3. The people we met last night were very nice.  

4. The people work in the office are very nice.  

5. The people I work with are very nice.  

6. What have you done with the money I gave you?  

7. What happened to the money was on the table?  

8. What’s the worst film you’ve ever seen?  

9. What’s the best thing it has ever happened to you?  

93.2 What do you say in these situations? Complete each sentence with a relative clause.

1. Your friend lost some keys. You want to know if he has found them.  
   You say:  
   Have you found the keys you lost?  

2. A friend is wearing a dress. You like it. You tell her:  
   I like the dress.  

3. A friend is going to see a film. You want to know the name of the film.  
   You say:  
   What’s the name of the film?  

4. You wanted to visit a museum. It was shut when you got there. You tell a friend:  
   The museum was shut when we got there.  

5. You invited some people to your party. Some of them couldn’t come.  
   You tell someone:  
   Some of the people couldn’t come.  

6. Your friend had to do some work. You want to know if she has finished.  
   You say:  
   Have you finished the work?  

7. You rented a car. It broke down after a few miles.  
   You tell a friend:  
   The car broke down after a few miles.  

93.3 These sentences all have a relative clause with a preposition. Put the words in the correct order.

1. Did you find (looking / for / you / the books / were)?  
   Did you find the books you were looking for?  

2. We couldn’t go to (we / invited / to / were / the wedding).  
   We couldn’t go to the wedding we were invited to.  

3. What’s the name of (the hotel / about / me / told / you)?  
   What’s the name of the hotel about which you were told?  

4. Unfortunately I didn’t get (applied / I / the job / for).  
   Unfortunately I didn’t get the job I applied for.  

5. Did you enjoy (you / the concert / to / went)?  
   Did you enjoy the concert you went to?  

6. Gary is a good person to know. He’s (on / rely / can / somebody / you).  
   Gary is a good person to know. He’s the person I can rely on.  

7. Who was (the man / were / with / you) in the restaurant last night?  
   Who was the man with whom you were in the restaurant last night?  

93.4 Put in that or what where necessary. If the sentence is already complete, leave the space empty.

1. I gave her all the money I had. (all the money that I had is also correct)  

2. Did you hear what they said?  

3. They give their children everything they want.  

4. Tell me what you want and I’ll try to get it for you.  

5. Why do you blame me for everything that goes wrong?  

6. I won’t be able to do much, but I’ll do what I can.  

7. I won’t be able to do much, but I’ll do the best I can.  

8. I don’t agree with what you’ve just said.  

9. I don’t trust him. I don’t believe anything he says.
Relative clauses 3: whose/whom/where

Whose

We use whose in relative clauses instead of his/her/their:

we helped some people – their car had broken down

→ We helped some people whose car had broken down.

We use whose mostly for people:

☐ A widow is a woman whose husband is dead. (her husband is dead)
☐ What’s the name of the man whose car you borrowed? (you borrowed his car)
☐ I met someone whose brother I went to school with. (I went to school with his/her brother)

Compare who and whose:

☐ I met a man who knows you. (he knows you)
☐ I met a man whose sister knows you. (his sister knows you)

Whom

Whom is possible instead of who when it is the object of the verb in the relative clause (like the sentences in Unit 93B):

☐ George is a person whom I admire very much. (I admire him)

You can also use whom with a preposition (to whom / from whom / with whom etc.):

☐ I like the people with whom I work. (I work with them)

Whom is a formal word and we do not often use it in this way. We usually prefer who or that, or nothing (see Unit 93). So we usually say:

☐ ... a person who/that I admire a lot or ... a person I admire a lot
☐ ... the people who/that I work with or ... the people I work with

Where

You can use where in a relative clause to talk about a place:

the restaurant – we had lunch there – it was near the airport

→ The restaurant where we had lunch was near the airport.

☐ I recently went back to the town where I grew up.
  (or ... the town I grew up in or ... the town that I grew up in)
☐ I would like to live in a place where there is plenty of sunshine.

We say:

the day / the year / the time etc. | something happens or that something happens

☐ I can’t meet you on Friday. That’s the day (that) I’m going away.
☐ The last time (that) I saw Anna, she looked great.
☐ I haven’t seen Jack and Helen since the year (that) they got married.

We say:

the reason | something happens or that/why something happens

☐ The reason I’m phoning is to ask your advice.
  (or The reason that I’m phoning / The reason why I’m phoning)
94.1 You met these people at a party:

1. My mother writes detective stories.
2. My wife is an English teacher.
3. I own a restaurant.
4. My ambition is to climb Everest.
5. We've just got married.
6. My parents used to work in a circus.

The next day you tell a friend about these people. Complete the sentences using who or whose.

1. I met somebody whose mother writes detective stories.
2. I met a man
3. I met a woman
4. I met somebody
5. I met a couple
6. I met somebody

94.2 Read the situations and complete the sentences using where.

1. You grew up in a small town. You went back there recently. You tell someone this.
   I recently went back to the small town where I grew up
2. You're thirsty and you want a drink. You ask a friend where you can get some water.
   Is there a shop near here?
3. You work in a factory. The factory is going to close down next month. You tell a friend.
   The factory is going to close down next month.
4. Sue is staying at a hotel. You want to know the name of the hotel. You ask a friend.
   Do you know the name of the hotel?
5. You play football in a park on Sundays. You show a friend the park. You say:
   This is the park where I play football on Sundays.

94.3 Complete each sentence using who/whom/whose/where.

1. What's the name of the man whose car you borrowed?
2. A cemetery is a place where people are buried.
3. A pacifist is a person who believes that all wars are wrong.
4. An orphan is a child whose parents are dead.
5. What was the name of the person to whom you spoke on the phone?
6. The place where we spent our holidays was really beautiful.
7. This school is only for children whose first language is not English.
8. The woman with whom he fell in love left him after a month.

94.4 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences. They are like the examples in Sections D and E.

1. I can't meet you on Friday. That's the day I'm going away...
2. The reason I decided to leave was that the salary was too low.
3. I'll never forget the time...
4. Do you remember the day...
5. The reason is that they don't need one.
6. The reason was that...

Unit 94
Relative clauses 4: extra information clauses (1)

There are two types of relative clause. In these examples, the relative clauses are underlined.

Type 1
- The woman who lives next door is a doctor.
- Grace works for a company that makes furniture.
- We stayed at the hotel (that) you recommended.

In these examples, the relative clauses tell you which person or thing (or what kind of person or thing) the speaker means:
- ‘The woman who lives next door’ tells us which woman.
- ‘A company that makes furniture’ tells us what kind of company.
- ‘The hotel (that) you recommended’ tells us which hotel.

We do not use commas (,) with these clauses:
- We know a lot of people who live in London.

Type 2
- My brother Ben, who lives in Hong Kong, is an architect.
- Anna told me about her new job, which she’s enjoying a lot.
- We stayed at the Park Hotel, which a friend of ours recommended.

In these examples, the relative clauses do not tell you which person or thing the speaker means. We already know which thing or person is meant: ‘My brother Ben’, ‘Anna’s new job’ and ‘the Park Hotel’.

The relative clauses in these sentences give us extra information about the person or thing.

We use commas (,) with these clauses:
- My brother Ben, who lives in Hong Kong, is an architect.

In both types of relative clause we use who for people and which for things. But:

Type 1
- You can use that:
  - Do you know anyone who/that speaks French and Italian?
  - Grace works for a company which/that makes furniture.

- You can leave out who/which/that when it is the object (see Unit 93):
  - We stayed at the hotel (that/which) you recommended.
  - This morning I met somebody (who/that) I hadn’t seen for ages.

- We do not often use whom in this type of clause (see Unit 94B).

Type 2
- You cannot use that:
  - John, who (not that) speaks French and Italian, works as a tour guide.
  - Anna told me about her new job, which (not that) she’s enjoying a lot.

- You cannot leave out who or which:
  - We stayed at the Park Hotel, which a friend of ours recommended.
  - This morning I met Chris, who I hadn’t seen for ages.

- You can use whom for people (when it is the object):
  - This morning I met Chris, whom I hadn’t seen for ages.

- In both types of relative clause you can use whose and where:
  - We met some people whose car had broken down.
  - What’s the name of the place where you went on holiday?
  - Lisa, whose car had broken down, was in a very bad mood.
  - Kate has just been to Sweden, where her daughter lives.
Exercises

95.1 Make one sentence from two. Use the sentence in brackets to make a relative clause (Type 2). You will need to use who(m)/whose/which/where.

1. Catherine is very friendly. (She lives next door.)
   Catherine, who lives next door, is very friendly.

2. We stayed at the Park Hotel. (A friend of ours recommended it.)
   We stayed at the Park Hotel, which a friend of ours recommended.

3. We often go to visit our friends in Cambridge. (It is not far from London.)
   We often go to visit our friends in Cambridge, which is not far from London.

4. I went to see the doctor. (She told me I needed to change my diet.)
   I went to see the doctor, who told me I needed to change my diet.

5. Steven is one of my closest friends. (I have known him for a very long time.)
   Steven, who I have known for a very long time, is one of my closest friends.

6. Lisa is away from home a lot. (Her job involves a lot of travelling.)
   Lisa, whose job involves a lot of travelling, is away from home a lot.

7. The new stadium will be finished next month. (It can hold 90,000 people.)
   The new stadium, which can hold 90,000 people, will be finished next month.

8. Alaska is the largest state in the USA. (My brother lives there.)
   Alaska, which is the largest state in the USA, is where my brother lives.

9. Our teacher was very kind. (I have forgotten her name.)
   Our teacher, who I have forgotten her name, was very kind.

95.2 Read the information and complete each sentence. Use a relative clause of Type 1 or Type 2. Use commas where necessary.

1. There's a woman living next door to me. She's a doctor.
   The woman who lives next door to me is a doctor.

2. I've got a brother called Ben. He lives in Hong Kong. He's an architect.
   My brother Ben, who lives in Hong Kong, is an architect.

3. There was a strike at the factory. It began ten days ago. It is now over.
   The strike at the factory, which began ten days ago, is now over.

4. I was looking for a book this morning. I've found it now.
   I've found the book I was looking for this morning.

5. I've had my car for 15 years. It has never broken down.
   My car, which I've had for 15 years, has never broken down.

6. A job was advertised. A lot of people applied for it. Few of them had the necessary qualifications.
   Few of the people who applied for the job had the necessary qualifications.

7. Amy has a son. She showed me a picture of him. He's a police officer.
   Amy showed me a picture of her son, who is a police officer.

95.3 Some of these sentences are wrong. Correct them and put in commas where necessary. If the sentence is correct, write 'OK'.

1. Anna told me about her new job that she's enjoying very much.
   Anna told me about her new job, which she's enjoying very much.

2. My office that is on the second floor is very small.
   My office, which is on the second floor, is very small.

3. The office I'm using at the moment is very small.
   The office I'm using at the moment is very small.

4. Mark's father that used to be in the army now works for a TV company.
   Mark's father, who used to be in the army, now works for a TV company.

5. The doctor that examined me couldn't find anything wrong.
   The doctor that examined me couldn't find anything wrong.

6. The sun that is one of millions of stars in the universe provides us with heat and light.
   The sun, which is one of millions of stars in the universe, provides us with heat and light.
Relative clauses 5: extra information clauses (2)

**Prepositions + whom/which**

You can use a *preposition* before *whom* (for people) and *which* (for things). So you can say:

- to whom / with whom / about which / without which etc.

  - Mr Lee, to whom I spoke at the meeting, is very interested in our proposal.
  - Fortunately we had a good map, without which we would have got lost.

In informal English we often keep the preposition after the verb in the relative clause. When we do this, we normally use *who* (not *whom*) for people:

- This is my friend from Canada, who I was telling you about.
- Yesterday we visited the City Museum, which I'd never been to before.

**All of / most of etc. + whom/which**

Study these examples:

- Helen has three brothers. All of them are married. *(2 sentences)*
- Helen has three brothers, all of whom are married. *(1 sentence)*

- They asked me a lot of questions. I couldn’t answer most of them. *(2 sentences)*
- They asked me a lot of questions, most of which I couldn’t answer. *(1 sentence)*

In the same way you can say:

- none of / neither of / any of / either of
- some of / many of / much of / (a) few of
- both of / half of / each of / one of / two of etc.

  + whom (people)
  + which (things)

  - Martin tried on three jackets, none of which fitted him.
  - Two men, neither of whom I had seen before, came into the office.
  - They have three cars, two of which they rarely use.
  - Sue has a lot of friends, many of whom she was at school with.

You can also say *the cause of which* / *the name of which* etc.:

- The building was destroyed in a fire, the cause of which was never established.
- We stayed at a beautiful hotel, the name of which I can’t remember now.

**Which (not what)**

Study this example:

- Joe got the job. This surprised everybody. *(2 sentences)*
- Joe got the job, which surprised everybody. *(1 sentence)*

In this example, *which* = ‘the fact that he got the job’. You must use *which* (not *what*) in sentences like these:

- Sarah couldn’t meet us, which was a shame. *(not what was a shame)*
- The weather was good, which we hadn’t expected. *(not what we hadn’t expected)*

For *what*, see Units 92D and 93D.
Write the relative clauses in a more formal way using a preposition + whom/which.

1. Yesterday we visited the City Museum, which I'd never been to before.
   Yesterday we visited the City Museum, to which I'd never been before.

2. My brother showed us his new car, which he's very proud of.
   My brother showed us his new car, to which he's very proud.

3. This is a picture of our friends Chris and Sam, who we went on holiday with.
   This is a picture of our friends Chris and Sam, with whom we went on holiday.

4. The wedding, which only members of the family were invited to, took place on Friday.
   The wedding, to which only members of the family were invited, took place on Friday.

Use the information in the first sentence to complete the second sentence. Use all of / most of etc. or the ... of + whom/which.

1. All of Helen's brothers are married.
   Helen has three brothers, all of whom are married.

2. Most of the information we were given was useless.
   We were given a lot of information, most of which was useless.

3. None of the ten people who applied for the job was suitable.
   Ten people applied for the job, none of whom was suitable.

4. Kate hardly ever uses one of her computers.
   Kate has got two computers, one of which she hardly ever uses.

5. Mike won £100,000. He gave half of it to his parents.
   Mike won £100,000, half of which he gave to his parents.

6. Both of Julia's sisters are lawyers.
   Julia has two sisters, both of whom are lawyers.

7. Jane replied to neither of the emails I sent her.
   I sent Jane two emails, neither of which she replied to.

8. I went to a party - I knew only a few of the people there.
   There were a lot of people at the party, most of whom I knew only a few of.

9. The sides of the road we drove along were lined with trees.
   We drove along the road, the sides of which were lined with trees.

10. The aim of the company's new business plan is to save money.
    The company has a new business plan, the aim of which is to save money.

Join sentences from the boxes to make new sentences. Use which.

1. Laura couldn't come to the party.
   This was very kind of her.
   This means we can't go away tomorrow.
   This makes it difficult to contact her.
   This makes it difficult to sleep sometimes.
   This was a shame.
   This is good news.
   This meant we had to wait three hours at the airport.

2. Jane

3.

4.

5.

6.

7.
A clause is a part of a sentence. Some clauses begin with -ing or -ed. For example:

Do you know the woman talking to Tom? (the woman is talking to Tom)

The boy injured in the accident was taken to hospital.

We use -ing clauses to say what somebody (or something) is (or was) doing at a particular time:

- Do you know the woman talking to Tom? (the woman is talking to Tom)
- Police investigating the crime are looking for three men. (police are investigating the crime)
- Who were those people waiting outside? (they were waiting)
- I was woken up by a bell ringing. (a bell was ringing)

You can also use an -ing clause to say what happens all the time, not just at a particular time. For example:

- The road connecting the two villages is very narrow. (the road connects the two villages)
- I have a large room overlooking the garden. (the room overlooks the garden)
- Can you think of the name of a flower beginning with T? (the name begins with T)

-ed clauses have a passive meaning:

- The boy injured in the accident was taken to hospital. (he was injured in the accident)
- George showed me some pictures painted by his father. (they had been painted by his father)

Injured and invited are past participles. Note that many past participles are irregular and do not end in -ed (stolen/made/written etc.):

- The police never found the money stolen in the robbery.
- Most of the goods made in this factory are exported.

You can use left in this way, with the meaning 'not used, still there':

- We've eaten nearly all the chocolates. There are only a few left.

We often use -ing and -ed clauses after there is / there was etc.:

- There were some children swimming in the river.
- Is there anybody waiting?
- There was a big red car parked outside the house.
Exercises

97.1 Make one sentence from two. Complete the sentences with an -ing clause.

1 A bell was ringing. I was woken up by it.
   I was woken up by a bell ringing.

2 A man was sitting next to me on the plane. I didn't talk much to him.
   I didn't talk much to the man sitting next to me.

3 A taxi was taking us to the airport. It broke down.
   The taxi taking us to the airport broke down.

4 There's a path at the end of this street. The path leads to the river.
   At the end of the street there's a path leading to the river.

5 A factory has just opened in the town. It employs 500 people.
   A factory has just opened in the town.

6 The company sent me a brochure. It contained the information I needed.
   The company sent me a brochure containing the information I needed.

97.2 Make one sentence from two, beginning as shown. Each time make an -ed clause.

1 A boy was injured in the accident. He was taken to hospital.
   The boy injured in the accident was taken to hospital.

2 A gate was damaged in the storm. It has now been repaired.
   The gate damaged in the storm has now been repaired.

3 A number of suggestions were made at the meeting. Most of them were not very practical.
   Most of the suggestions made at the meeting weren't very practical.

4 Some paintings were stolen from the museum. They haven't been found yet.
   The paintings stolen from the museum haven't been found yet.

5 A man was arrested by the police. What's his name?
   What's the name of the man arrested by the police?

97.3 Complete the sentences using the following verbs in the correct form:

blow call invite live offer read ring sit study work

1 I was woken up by a bell ringing.

2 Some of the people invited to the party can't come.

3 Life must be very unpleasant for people living near busy airports.

4 A few days after the interview, I received an email offering me the job.

5 Somebody Jack phoned while you were out.

6 There was a tree blown down in the storm last night.

7 The waiting room was empty except for a young man sitting by the window reading a magazine.

8 Ian has a brother studying economics at university in Manchester.

97.4 Use the words in brackets to make sentences using There is / There was etc.

1 That house is empty. (nobody / live / in it) There's nobody living in it.

2 The accident wasn't serious. (nobody / injure) There was nobody injured.

3 I can hear footsteps. (somebody / come) There was somebody coming.

4 The train was full. (a lot of people / travel)

5 We were the only guests at the hotel. (nobody else / stay there)

6 The piece of paper was blank. (nothing / write / on it)

7 The college offers English courses in the evening. (a course / begin / next Monday)
Many adjectives end in -ing and -ed, for example: boring and bored. Study this example situation:

Jane has been doing the same job for a very long time. Every day she does exactly the same thing again and again. She doesn’t enjoy her job any more and would like to do something different.

Jane’s job is boring.

Jane is bored (with her job).

Somebody is bored if something (or somebody else) is boring. Or, if something is boring, it makes you bored. So:

- Jane is bored because her job is boring.
- Jane’s job is boring, so Jane is bored. (not Jane is boring)

If a person is boring, this means that they make other people bored:

- George always talks about the same things. He’s really boring.

Compare adjectives ending in -ing and -ed:

- My job is tiring.
- My job is depressing. (etc.)

In these examples, the -ing adjective tells you about the job.

In these examples, the -ed adjective tells you how somebody feels (about the job).

Compare these examples:

**interesting**

- Julia thinks politics is interesting.
- Did you meet anyone interesting at the party?

**surprising**

- It was surprising that he passed the exam.

**disappointing**

- The movie was disappointing. We expected it to be much better.

**shocking**

- The news was shocking.

**interested**

- Julia is interested in politics. (not interesting in politics)
- Are you interested in buying a car? I’m trying to sell mine.

**surprised**

- Everybody was surprised that he passed the exam.

**disappointed**

- We were disappointed with the movie. We expected it to be much better.

**shocked**

- I was shocked when I heard the news.
Exercises

98.1 Complete the sentences for each situation. Use the word in brackets + -ing or -ed.

1. The movie wasn't as good as we had expected. (disappoint...)
   a. The movie was disappointing.
   b. We were disappointed with the movie.

2. Donna teaches young children. It's a very hard job, but she enjoys it. (exhaust...)
   a. She enjoys her job, but it's often
   b. At the end of a day's work, she is often

3. It's been raining all day. I hate this weather. (depress...)
   a. This weather is
   b. This weather makes me
   c. It's silly to get because of the weather.

4. Clare is going to Mexico next month. She has never been there before. (excit...)
   a. It will be an experience for her.
   b. Going to new places is always
   c. She is really about going to Mexico.

98.2 Choose the correct word.

1. I was disappointing / disappointed with the film. I had expected it to be better. (disappointed is correct)
2. Are you interesting / interested in football?
3. The new project sounds exciting / excited. I'm looking forward to working on it.
4. It's embarrassing / embarrassed when you have to ask people for money.
5. Do you easily get embarrassing / embarrassed?
6. I had never expected to get the job. I was really amazing / amazed when I was offered it.
7. She has really learnt very fast. She has made amazing / amazed progress.
8. I didn't find the situation funny. I was not amusing / amused.
9. It was a really terrifying / terrified experience. Everybody was very shocking / shocked.
10. Why do you always look so boring / bored? Is your life really so boring / bored?
11. He's one of the most boring / bored people I've ever met. He never stops talking and he never says anything interesting / interested.

98.3 Complete each sentence using a word from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>amusing/amused</th>
<th>annoying/annoyed</th>
<th>boring/bored</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>confusing/confused</td>
<td>disgusting/disgusted</td>
<td>interesting/interested</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. He works very hard. It's not surprising that he's always tired.
2. I've got nothing to do. I'm
3. The teacher's explanation was . Most of the students didn't understand it.
4. The kitchen hadn't been cleaned for ages. It was really .
5. I don't visit art galleries very often. I'm not particularly in art.
6. There's no need to get just because I'm a few minutes late.
7. The lecture was . I fell asleep.
8. I've been working very hard all day and now I'm .
9. I'm starting a new job next week. I'm very about it.
10. Steve is good at telling funny stories. He can be very .
11. Helen is a very person. She knows a lot, she's travelled a lot and she's done lots of different things.
Adjectives: a nice new house, you look tired

Sometimes we use two or more adjectives together:

- My brother lives in a nice new house.
- In the kitchen there was a beautiful large round wooden table.

Adjectives like new/large/round/wooden are fact adjectives. They give us factual information about age, size, colour etc.

Adjectives like nice/beautiful are opinion adjectives. They tell us what somebody thinks of something or somebody.

Opinion adjectives usually go before fact adjectives.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>opinion</th>
<th>fact</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nice</td>
<td>summer holiday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interesting</td>
<td>man</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>delicious</td>
<td>vegetable soup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beautiful</td>
<td>table</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sometimes we use two or more fact adjectives together. Usually (but not always) we put fact adjectives in this order:

- how big?  
- how old?  
- what colour?  
- where from?  
- what is it made of?

NOUN

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a tall young man (1 → 2)</td>
<td>a large wooden table (1 → 5)</td>
<td>an old Russian song (2 → 4)</td>
<td>an old white cotton shirt (2 → 3 → 5)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>big blue eyes (1 → 3)</td>
<td>a small black plastic bag (1 → 3 → 5)</td>
<td>a long narrow street</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Adjectives of size and length (big/small/tall/short/long etc.) usually go before adjectives of shape and width (round/fat/thin/slim/wide etc.):

- a large round table
- a tall thin girl
- a long narrow street

When there are two or more colour adjectives, we use and:

- a black and white dress
- a red, white and green flag

This does not usually happen with other adjectives before a noun:

- a long black dress (not a long and black dress)

We use adjectives after be/get/become/seem:

- Be careful!
- I’m tired and I’m getting hungry.
- As the film went on, it became more and more boring.
- Your friend seems very nice.

We also use adjectives to say how somebody/something looks, feels, sounds, tastes or smells:

- You look tired. / I feel tired. / She sounds tired.
- The dinner smells good.
- This tea tastes a bit strange.

But to say how somebody does something you must use an adverb (see Units 100–101):

- Drive carefully! (not Drive careful)
- Susan plays the piano very well. (not plays ... very good)

We say ‘the first two days / the next few weeks / the last ten minutes’ etc.:

- I didn’t enjoy the first two days of the course. (not the two first days)
- They’ll be away for the next few weeks. (not the few next weeks)
99.1 Put the adjectives in brackets in the correct position.

1. a beautiful table (wooden / round)  a beautiful round wooden table
2. an unusual ring (gold)
3. an old house (beautiful)
4. black gloves (leather)
5. an American film (old)
6. a long face (thin)
7. big clouds (black)
8. a sunny day (lovely)
9. an ugly dress (yellow)
10. a wide avenue (long)
11. a lovely restaurant (little)
12. a red car (old / little)
13. a new sweater (green / nice)
14. a metal box (black / small)
15. a big cat (fat / black)
16. long hair (black / beautiful)
17. an old painting (interesting / French)
18. an enormous umbrella (red / yellow)

99.2 Complete each sentence with a verb (in the correct form) and an adjective from the boxes.

feel look seem awful fine interesting
smell sound taste nice upset wet

1. Helen seemed upset this morning. Do you know what was wrong?
2. I can't eat this. I've just tried it and it .......
3. I wasn't very well yesterday, but I today.
4. What beautiful flowers! They ..... too.
5. You .................................. Have you been out in the rain?
6. James was telling me about his new job. It ..... much better than his old job.

99.3 Put in the correct word.

1. This tea tastes a bit ___strange___ . (strange / strangely)
2. I always feel _______ when the sun is shining. (happy / happily)
3. The children were playing _______ in the garden. (happy / happily)
4. The man became _______ when the manager of the restaurant asked him to leave. (violent / violently)
5. You look ___________! Are you all right? (terrible / terribly)
6. There's no point in doing a job if you don't do it ___________. (proper / properly)
7. The soup tastes ___________. (good / well)
8. Hurry up! You're always so ______________. (slow / slowly)

99.4 Write the following in another way using the first ... / the next ... / the last ...

1. the first day and the second day of the course
2. next week and the week after
3. yesterday and the day before yesterday
4. the first week and the second week of May
5. tomorrow and a few days after that
6. questions 1, 2 and 3 in the exam
7. next year and the year after
8. the last day of our holiday and the two days before that
Adjectives and adverbs 1 (quick/quickly)

Look at these examples:
- Our holiday was too short – the time passed very quickly.
- Two people were seriously injured in the accident.

Quickly and seriously are adverbs. Many adverbs are formed from an adjective + -ly:

- adjective: quick  serious  careful  quiet  heavy  bad
- adverb: quickly  seriously  carefully  quietly  heavily  badly

For spelling, see Appendix 6.

Not all words ending in -ly are adverbs. Some adjectives end in -ly too, for example:
- friendly  lively  elderly  lonely  silly  lovely

Adjective or adverb?

Adjectives (quick/careful etc.) tell us about a noun (somebody or something). We use adjectives before nouns:

- Sam is a careful driver.
- We didn’t go out because of the heavy rain.

Adverbs (quickly/carefully etc.) tell us about a verb (how somebody does something or how something happens):

- Sam drove carefully along the narrow road.
- We didn’t go out because it was raining heavily.

Compare:

- She speaks perfect English.
- She speaks English perfectly.

We also use adjectives after some verbs, especially be, and also look/feel/sound etc.

Compare:

- Please be quiet.
- Please speak quietly.
- I was disappointed that my exam results were so bad.
- I was unhappy that I did so badly in the exam.
- Why do you always look so serious?
- Why do you never take me seriously?
- I feel happy.
- The children were playing happily.

We also use adverbs before adjectives and other adverbs. For example:

- reasonably cheap (adverb + adjective)
- terribly sorry (adverb + adjective)
- incredibly quickly (adverb + adverb)

- It’s a reasonably cheap restaurant and the food is extremely good.
- I’m terribly sorry. I didn’t mean to push you.
- Maria learns languages incredibly quickly.
- The exam was surprisingly easy.

You can also use an adverb before a past participle (injured/organised/written etc.):

- Two people were seriously injured in the accident.
- The meeting was badly organised.
1. Complete each sentence with an adverb. The first letters of the adverb are given.
   1. We didn’t go out because it was raining heavily.
   2. Our team lost the game because we played very badly.
   3. I didn’t have any problems finding a place to live. I found a flat quite easily.
   4. We had to wait for a long time, but we didn’t complain. We waited patiently.
   5. Nobody knew Steve was coming to see us. He arrived unexpectedly.
   6. Mike keeps fit by playing tennis regularly.
   7. I don’t speak French very well, but I can understand perfectly if people speak slowly and clearly.

2. Put in the correct word.
   1. Two people were seriously injured in the accident. (serious / seriously)
   2. The driver of the car had serious injuries. (serious / seriously)
   3. I think you behaved very selfishly. (selfish / selfishly)
   4. Tanya is terribly upset about losing her job. (terrible / terribly)
   5. There was a sudden change in the weather. (sudden / suddenly)
   6. Everybody at the carnival was colourfully dressed. (colourful / colourfully)
   7. Linda usually wears colourful clothes. (colourful / colourfully)
   8. Liz fell and hurt herself badly. (bad / badly)
   9. Joe says he didn’t do well at school because he was taught badly. (bad / badly)
   10. Don’t go up that ladder. It doesn’t look safe. (safe / safely)

3. Complete each sentence using a word from the box. Sometimes you need the adjective (careful etc.) and sometimes the adverb (carefully etc.).
   - careful(ly), complete(ly), continuous(ly), financial(ly), fluent(ly), happy/happily, nervous(ly), perfect(ly), quick(ly), special(ly)

   1. Our holiday was too short. The time passed very quickly.
   2. Steve doesn’t take risks when he’s driving. He’s always carefully.
   3. Sue works entirely. She never seems to stop.
   4. Rachel and Patrick are very happily married.
   5. Maria’s English is very fluently although she makes quite a lot of mistakes.
   6. I cooked this meal perfectly for you, so I hope you like it.
   7. Everything was very quiet. There was silence.
   8. I tried on the shoes and they fitted me perfectly.
   9. Do you usually feel nervous before exams?
   10. I’d like to buy a car, but it’s completely impossible for me at the moment.

4. Choose two words (one from each box) to complete each sentence.
   - absolutely, badly, completely, changed, cheap, damaged, reasonably, seriously, slightly, unnecessarily, unusually, enormous, ill, quiet, long, planned

   1. I thought the restaurant would be expensive, but it was reasonably cheap.
   2. Will’s mother is seriously in hospital.
   3. What a big house! It’s enormous.
   4. It wasn’t a serious accident. The car was only slightly damaged.
   5. The children are normally very lively, but they’re unusually today.
   6. When I returned home after 20 years, everything had changed completely.
   7. The movie was quiet. It could have been much shorter.
   8. A lot went wrong during our holiday because it was unusually long.
**Adjectives and adverbs 2**

**Good/well**

*Good* is an adjective. The adverb is *well*:
- Your English is good. *but* You speak English well.
- Susan is a good pianist. *but* Susan plays the piano well.

We use *well* (*not good*) with past participles (*dressed/known* etc.):
- well-dressed
- well-known
- well-educated
- well-paid

- Gary’s father is a well-known writer.

But *well* is also an adjective with the meaning ‘in good health’:
- ‘How are you today?’ *‘I’m very well, thanks.’*

**Fast/hard/late**

These words are both adjectives and adverbs:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Adverb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Darren is a very fast runner.</td>
<td>Darren can run very fast.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kate is a hard worker.</td>
<td>Kate works hard. (<em>not works hardly)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I was late.</td>
<td>I got up late this morning.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Lately** = recently:
- Have you seen Tom lately?

**Hardly**

*Hardly* = very little, almost not. Study these examples:
- Sarah wasn’t very friendly at the party. She hardly spoke to me. (= she spoke to me very little, almost not at all)
- We’ve only met once or twice. We hardly know each other.

*Hard* and *hardly* are different. Compare:
- He tried hard to find a job, but he had no luck. (= he tried a lot, with a lot of effort)
- I’m not surprised he didn’t find a job. He hardly tried. (= he tried very little)

I can hardly do something = it’s very difficult for me, almost impossible:
- Your writing is terrible. I can hardly read it. (= it is almost impossible to read it)
- My leg was hurting. I could hardly walk.

You can use *hardly + any/anybody/anything/anywhere*:

| A: How much money have we got? |
| B: Hardly any. (= very little, almost none) |
| These two cameras are very similar. There’s hardly any difference between them. |
| The exam results were very bad. Hardly anybody in our class passed. (= very few students passed) |

Note that you can say:
- She said hardly anything. *or* She hardly said anything.
- We’ve got hardly any money. *or* We’ve hardly got any money.

**Hardly ever** = almost never:
- I’m nearly always at home in the evenings. I hardly ever go out.

**Hardly** also means ‘certainly not’. For example:
- It’s hardly surprising that you’re tired. You haven’t slept for three days. (= it’s certainly not surprising)
- The situation is serious, but it’s hardly a crisis. (= it’s certainly not a crisis)
Exercises

101.1  Put in good or well.
1 I play tennis but I’m not very well.
2 Your exam results were very .........
3 You did ............. in your exams.
4 The weather was ............. while we were away.
5 I didn’t sleep ............. last night.
6 Lucy speaks German ............. . She’s ............. at languages.
7 Our new business isn’t doing very ............. at the moment.
8 I like your hat. It looks ............. on you.
9 I’ve met her a few times, but I don’t know her .............

101.2  Complete these sentences using well + the following words:
behaved dressed informed kept known paid written

1 The children were very good. They were well-behaved.
2 I’m surprised you haven’t heard of her. She is quite .............
3 Our neighbours’ garden is neat and tidy. It is very .............
4 I enjoyed the book you lent me. It’s a great story and it’s very .............
5 Tanya knows a lot about many things. She is very .............
6 Mark’s clothes are always smart. He is always .............
7 Jane has a lot of responsibility in her job, but she isn’t very .............

101.3  Are the underlined words right or wrong? Correct them where necessary.
1 I’m tired because I’ve been working hard. OK
2 I tried hard to remember her name, but I couldn’t.
3 This coat is practically unused. I’ve hardly worn it.
4 Don’t walk so fast! I can’t keep up with you.
5 I had plenty of time, so I was walking slow.

101.4  Complete the sentences. Use hardly + the following verbs (in the correct form):
change hear know recognise say sleep speak

1 Scott and Tracy have only met once before. They hardly know each other.
2 You’re speaking very quietly. I can hardly hear you.
3 I’m very tired this morning. I hardly slept last night.
4 We were so shocked when we heard the news, we couldn’t hardly say a word.
5 You look the same now as you looked 15 years ago. You’ve hardly changed at all.
6 I met David a few days ago. I hadn’t seen him for a long time and he looks very different now.
7 I hardly recognised him.

101.5  Complete these sentences with hardly + any/anybody/anything/anywhere/ever.
1 I’ll have to go shopping. There’s hardly anything to eat.
2 It was a very warm day and there was ............. wind.
3 ‘Do you know much about computers?’ ‘No, .............’
4 The hotel was almost empty. There was ............. staying there.
5 I listen to the radio a lot, but I hardly ever watch television.
6 Our new boss is not very popular. ............. likes her.
7 It was very crowded in the room. There was ............. to sit.
8 We used to be good friends, but we hardly ever see each other now.
9 It was nice driving this morning. There was ............. traffic.
10 I hate this town. There’s ............. to do and ............. to go.

→ Additional exercise 31 (page 320)
So and such

Compare so and such:

We use so + adjective/adverb:
- so stupid
- so quick
- so nice
- so quickly

- I didn’t like the book. The story was so stupid.
- I like Liz and Joe. They are so nice.

We use such + noun:
- such a story
- such people

We also use such + adjective + noun:
- such a stupid story
- such nice people

- I didn’t like the book. It was such a stupid story. (not a so stupid story)
- I like Liz and Joe. They are such nice people. (not so nice people)

We say such a ... (not a such):
- such a big dog (not a such big dog)

So and such make the meaning stronger:

- It’s a beautiful day, isn’t it? It’s so warm. (= really warm)
- It’s difficult to understand him because he talks so quietly.

You can use so ... that:
- The book was so good that I couldn’t put it down.
- I was so tired that I fell asleep in the armchair.

We usually leave out that:
- I was so tired I fell asleep.

We also use so and such with the meaning ‘like this’:

- Somebody told me the house was built 100 years ago. I didn’t realise it was so old. (= as old as it is)
- I’m tired because I got up at six. I don’t usually get up so early.
- I expected the weather to be cooler. I’m surprised it is so warm.
- I didn’t realise it was such an old house.
- You know it’s not true. How can you say such a thing?

Note the expression no such ...:
- You won’t find the word ‘blid’ in the dictionary. There’s no such word. (= this word does not exist)

Compare:

so long
- I haven’t seen her for so long I’ve forgotten what she looks like.

such a long time
- I haven’t seen her for such a long time. (not so long time)

so far
- I didn’t know it was so far.

such a long way
- I didn’t know it was such a long way.

so much, so many
- I’m sorry I’m late – there was so much traffic.

such a lot (of)
- I’m sorry I’m late – there was such a lot of traffic.
Exercises

102.1 Put in so, such or such a.
1. It's difficult to understand him because he speaks _______ quietly.
2. I like Liz and Joe. They're _______ nice people.
3. It was a great holiday. We had _______ good time.
4. I was surprised that he looked _______ well after his recent illness.
5. Everything is _______ expensive these days, isn't it?
6. The weather is beautiful, isn't it? I didn't expect it to be _______ nice day.
7. I think she works too hard. She looks _______ tired all the time.
8. He always looks good. He wears _______ nice clothes.
9. It was _______ boring movie that I fell asleep while I was watching it.
10. I couldn't believe the news. It was _______ shock.
11. I have to go. I didn't realise it was _______ late.
12. The food at the hotel was _______ awful. I've never eaten _______ awful food.
13. They've got _______ much money they don't know what to do with it.
14. I didn't realise you lived _______ long way from the city centre.
15. The party was really great. It was _______ shame you couldn't come.

102.2 Make one sentence from two. Use so or such.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a</th>
<th>b</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. She worked so hard she made herself ill.</td>
<td>You could hear it from miles away.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. It was such a beautiful day we decided to go to the beach.</td>
<td>You would think it was her native language.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. I was tired.</td>
<td>We spent the whole day indoors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. We had a good time on holiday.</td>
<td>She made herself ill.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. She speaks English well.</td>
<td>I couldn't keep my eyes open.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. I've got a lot to do.</td>
<td>I didn't eat anything else for the rest of the day.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. The music was loud.</td>
<td>We decided to go to the beach.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. I had a big breakfast.</td>
<td>I didn't know what to say.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. It was horrible weather.</td>
<td>I don't know where to begin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. I was surprised.</td>
<td>We didn't want to come home.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

102.3 Use your own ideas to complete these pairs of sentences.

1. a We enjoyed our holiday. It was so _______ relaxing.
   b We enjoyed our holiday. We had such _______ a good time.
2. a I like Catherine. She's so _______.
   b I like Catherine. She's such _______.
3. a I like New York. It's so _______.
   b I like New York. It's such _______.
4. a I wouldn't like to be a teacher. It's so _______.
   b I wouldn't like to be a teacher. It's such _______.
5. a It's great to see you again! I haven't seen you for so _______.
   b It's great to see you again! I haven't seen you for such _______.

205
**Enough** and **too**

**Enough** goes after adjectives and adverbs:
- I can't run very far. I'm not **fit enough**. (not enough fit)
- Let's go. We've waited **long enough**.
- I can let you know tomorrow. Is that **soon enough**?

Compare **too ... and not ... enough**:
- You never stop working. You work **too hard**. (= more than is necessary)
- You're lazy. You **don't work hard enough**. (= less than is necessary)

**Enough** normally goes before nouns:
- I can't run very far. I don't have **enough energy**. (not energy enough)
- Do we have **enough petrol**, or should we stop and get some?
- We've got **enough money**. We don't need any more.
- Some of us had to sit on the floor because there weren't **enough chairs**.

We also use **enough** alone (without a noun):
- We don't need to stop for petrol. We've got **enough**.

Compare **too much/many and enough**:
- There's **too much furniture** in this room. There's not **enough space**.
- There were **too many people** and not **enough chairs**.

We say **enough/too ... for somebody/something**:
- Does Joe have **enough experience** for the job?
- This bag isn't big enough **for all my clothes**.
- That shirt is too small **for you**. You need a larger size.

But we say **enough/too ... to do something**. For example:
- Does Joe have enough experience **to do the job**? (not for doing)
- We don't have enough money **to go on holiday right now**.
- She's not old enough **to have a driving licence**.
- She's too young **to have a driving licence**.
- Let's get a taxi. It's too far **to walk home from here**.

The following example has both for ... and to ...:
- The bridge is just wide enough **for two cars to pass each other**.

We say:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>The food was very hot. We couldn't eat it.</th>
<th>The food was so hot that we couldn't eat it.</th>
<th>The food was too hot to eat. (without it)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>and</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>but</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some more examples like this:
- These boxes are **too heavy to carry**. (not to carry them)
- The wallet was **too big to put** in my pocket. (not to put it)
- This chair isn't **strong enough to stand on**. (not to stand on it)
103.1 Complete the sentences using **enough + the following words:**

**big** - **choirs** - **cups** - **fit** - **milk** - **money** - **room** - **time** - **warm** - **well**

1. I can’t run very far. I’m not _fit enough_.
2. Some of us had to sit on the floor because there weren’t _enough chairs_.
3. I’d like to buy a car, but I don’t have _enough money_ at the moment.
4. Do you have _milk_ in your coffee or would you like some more?
5. Are you _tired_? Or shall I switch on the heating?
6. It’s only a small car. There isn’t _enough room_ for all of us.
7. Steve didn’t feel _well_ to go to work this morning.
8. I enjoyed my trip to Paris, but there wasn’t _enough time_ to do everything I wanted.
9. Try this jacket on and see if it’s _enough_ for you.
10. There weren’t _enough cups_ for everybody to have coffee at the same time.

103.2 Complete the answers to the questions. Use **too or enough** + the word(s) in brackets.

1. Does she have a driving licence? (old) No, she’s not old _enough_ to have a driving licence.
2. I need to talk to you about something. (busy) Well, I’m afraid I’m _too busy_ to you now.
3. Let’s go to the cinema. (late) No, it’s _too late_ to the cinema.
4. Why don’t we sit outside? (warm) It’s not _warm_ outside.
5. Would you like to be a politician? (shy) No, I’m _too shy_ a politician.
6. Would you like to be a teacher? (patience) No, I don’t have _enough patience_ a teacher.
7. Did you hear what he was saying? (far away) No, we were _too far away_ what he was saying.
8. Can he read a newspaper in English? (English) No, he doesn’t know _enough English_ a newspaper.

103.3 Make one sentence from two. Complete the new sentence using **too or enough**.

1. We couldn’t carry the boxes. They were too heavy.
   The boxes _were too heavy_ to carry.
2. I can’t drink this coffee. It’s too hot.
   This coffee _is too hot_.
3. Nobody could move the piano. It was too heavy.
   The piano _was too heavy_.
4. Don’t eat these apples. They’re not ripe enough.
   These apples _are not ripe enough_.
5. I can’t explain the situation. It is too complicated.
   The situation _is too complicated_.
6. We couldn’t climb over the wall. It was too high.
   The wall _was too high_.
7. Three people can’t sit on this sofa. It isn’t big enough.
   This sofa _is not big enough_.
8. You can’t see some things without a microscope. They are too small.
   Some _are too small_.
You can use quite/pretty/rather/fairly + adjectives or adverbs. So you can say:

- It's quite cold. It's pretty cold. It's rather cold. It's fairly cold.

**Quite/pretty/rather/fairly** = less than ‘very’ but more than ‘a little’.

**Quite and pretty** are similar in meaning:
- I'm surprised you haven’t heard of her. She’s quite famous / pretty famous. (= less than 'very famous', but more than 'a little famous')
- Anna lives quite near me, so we see each other pretty often.

Pretty is an informal word and is used mainly in spoken English.

**Quite** goes before a/an:
- We live in quite an old house. (not a quite old house)

Compare:
- Sarah has quite a good job.
- Sarah has a pretty good job.

You can also use quite (but not pretty) in the following ways:

**quite a/an + noun** (without an adjective):
- I didn’t expect to see them. It was quite a surprise. (= quite a big surprise)

**quite a lot (of ...):**
- There were quite a lot of people at the meeting.

**quite + verb, especially like and enjoy:**
- I quite like tennis, but it’s not my favourite sport.

**Rather** is similar to quite and pretty. We often use rather for negative ideas (things we think are not good):
- The weather isn’t so good. It’s rather cloudy.
- Paul is rather shy. He doesn’t talk very much.

**Quite and pretty** are also possible in these examples.

When we use rather for positive ideas (good/nice etc.), it means ‘unusually’ or ‘surprisingly’:
- These oranges are rather good. Where did you get them?

**Fairly** is weaker than quite/rather/pretty. For example, if something is fairly good, it is not very good and it could be better:
- My room is fairly big, but I’d prefer a bigger one.
- We see each other fairly often, but not as often as we used to.

**Quite also means ‘completely’**. For example:
- ‘Are you sure?’ ‘Yes, quite sure.’ (= completely sure)

**Quite** means ‘completely’ with a number of adjectives, especially:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>sure</th>
<th>right</th>
<th>true</th>
<th>clear</th>
<th>different</th>
<th>incredible</th>
<th>amazing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>certain</td>
<td>wrong</td>
<td>safe</td>
<td>obvious</td>
<td>unnecessary</td>
<td>extraordinary</td>
<td>impossible</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- She was quite different from what I expected. (= completely different)
- Everything they said was quite true. (= completely true)

We also use quite (= completely) with some verbs. For example:
- I quite agree with you. (= I completely agree)

**Not quite** = not completely:
- They haven’t quite finished eating yet.
- I don’t quite understand what you mean.
- ‘Are you ready yet?’ ‘Not quite.’ (= not completely)
Complete the sentences using quite + the following:

- famous
- good
- hungry
- late
- noisy
- often
- old
- surprised

1. I'm surprised you haven't heard of her. She's quite famous.
2. I'm _____________ Is there anything to eat?
3. 'How were the pictures you took?' 'Better than usual.'
4. I go to the cinema _____________ – maybe once a month.
5. We live near a very busy road, so it's often _____________.
6. I didn't expect Laura to contact me. I was _____________ when she phoned.
7. I went to bed _____________ last night, so I'm a bit tired this morning.
8. I don't know exactly when these houses were built, but they're _____________.

Put the words in the right order to complete the sentences.

1. The weather was better than we had expected. It was quite a nice day _____________________.
2. Tom likes to sing. He has _____________ voice _____________ a.
3. The bus stop wasn't very near the hotel. We had to walk _____________ way _____________ long).
4. It's not so warm today. There's _____________ wind _____________ cold _____________ pretty).
5. The journey took longer than I expected. There was _____________ traffic _____________ of _____________
6. I'm tired. I've had _____________ day _____________ busy).

Use your own ideas to complete these sentences. Use rather + adjective.

1. The weather isn't so good. It's rather cloudy.
2. I enjoyed the film, but it was _____________.
3. The hotel we stayed at wasn't very good. I was _____________
4. I think it's _____________ that Chris went away without telling anybody.
5. Lucy doesn't like having to wait. Sometimes she's _____________

What does quite mean in these sentences? Tick (✓) the right meaning.

1. It's quite cold. You'd better wear your coat.
   - more than a little, less than very (Section B)
   - completely (Section E)

   ✓

2. 'Are you sure?' 'Yes, quite sure.'

   ✓

3. Anna's English is quite good.

4. I couldn't believe it. It was quite incredible.

5. My bedroom is quite big.

6. I'm quite tired. I think I'll go to bed.

7. I quite agree with you.

Complete these sentences using quite + the following:

- different
- impossible
- right
- safe
- sure
- true
- unnecessary

1. I didn't believe her at first, but in fact what she said was _____________.
2. You won't fall. The ladder is _____________.
3. I'm afraid I can't do what you ask. It's _____________
4. I couldn't agree with you more. You are _____________
5. You can't compare the two things. They are _____________
6. You needn't have done that. It was _____________
7. I think I saw them go out, but I'm not _____________.
Comparison 1 (cheaper, more expensive etc.)

How shall we travel? Shall we drive or go by train?

Let’s drive. It’s cheaper.

Don’t go by train. It’s more expensive.

Cheaper and more expensive are comparative forms.

After comparatives you can use than (see Unit 107):

- It’s cheaper to drive than go by train.
- Going by train is more expensive than driving.

The comparative form is -er or more … .

We use -er for short words (one syllable):

- cheap → cheaper
- fast → faster
- large → larger
- thin → thinner

We also use -er for two-syllable words that end in -y (-y → ier):

- lucky → luckier
- easy → easier

We use more … for longer words (two syllables or more):

- more serious
- more often
- more expensive
- more comfortable

We also use more … for adverbs that end in -ly:

- more slowly
- more seriously
- more easily
- more quietly

For spelling, see Appendix 6.

Compare these examples:

- You’re older than me.
- The exam was quite easy – easier than I expected.
- Can you walk a bit faster?
- I’d like to have a bigger car.
- Last night I went to bed earlier than usual.
- You’re more patient than me.
- The exam was quite difficult – more difficult than I expected.
- Can you walk a bit more slowly?
- I’d like to have a more reliable car.
- I don’t play tennis much these days. I used to play more often.

A few adjectives and adverbs have irregular comparative forms:

- good/well → better
  - The garden looks better since you tidied it up.
  - I know him well – probably better than anybody else knows him.

- bad/badly → worse
  - ‘How’s your headache? Better?’ ‘No, it’s worse.’
  - He did very badly in the exam – worse than expected.

- far → further (or farther)
  - It’s a long walk from here to the park – further than I thought. (or farther than)

Further (but not farther) can also mean ‘more’ or ‘additional’:

- Let me know if you hear any further news. (= any more news)
Complete the sentences using a comparative form (older / more important etc.).

1. It's too noisy here. Can we go somewhere quieter?
2. This coffee is very weak. I like it more.
3. The hotel was surprisingly big. I expected it to be smaller.
4. The hotel was surprisingly cheap. I expected it to be more expensive.
5. The weather is too cold here. I'd like to live somewhere warmer.
6. My job is a bit boring sometimes. I'd like to do something more interesting.
7. It's a shame you live so far away. I wish you lived closer.
8. I was surprised how easy it was to get a job. I thought it would be harder.
9. Your work isn't very good. I'm sure you can do better.
10. Don't worry. The situation isn't so bad. It could be worse.
11. I was surprised we got here so quickly. I expected the trip to take longer.
12. You're talking very loudly. Can you speak more softly?
13. You hardly ever call me. Why don't you call me more often?
14. You're standing too near the camera. Can you move a bit further away?
15. You were a little depressed yesterday, but you look happier today.

Complete the sentences. Use the comparative forms of the words in the box. Use than where necessary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>big</th>
<th>interested</th>
<th>crowded</th>
<th>early</th>
<th>easily</th>
<th>high</th>
<th>important</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. I was feeling tired last night, so I went to bed earlier than usual.
2. I'd like to have a more reliable car. The one I have keeps breaking down.
3. Unfortunately her illness was worse than we thought at first.
4. You look thinner. Have you lost weight?
5. I want a more comfortable apartment. We don't have enough space here.
6. He doesn't study very hard. He's less interested in having a good time.
7. Health and happiness are more important than money.
8. The instructions were very complicated. They could have been easier.
9. There were a lot of people on the bus. It was crowded.
10. I like living in the country. It's quieter living in a town.
11. You'll find your way around the town easily if you have a good map.
12. In some parts of the country, prices are higher in others.

Read the situations and complete the sentences. Use a comparative form (-er or more ...).

1. Yesterday the temperature was six degrees. Today it's only three degrees.
   It's colder today than it was yesterday.
2. The journey takes four hours by car and five hours by train.
   It takes longer by car.
3. Dan and I went for a run. I ran ten kilometres. Dan stopped after eight kilometres.
   I ran more than Dan.
4. Chris and Joe both did badly in the test. Chris got 30%, but Joe only got 25%.
   Joe did worse than Chris in the test.
5. I expected my friends to arrive at about 4 o'clock. In fact they arrived at 2.30.
   My friends arrived earlier than I expected.
6. You can go by bus or by train. The buses run every 30 minutes. The trains run every hour.
   The buses run more frequently than the trains.
7. We were very busy in the office today. We're not usually so busy.
   We were busier in the office today.
Comparison 2 (much better / any better / better and better / the sooner the better)

Before comparatives you can use:

- much
- a lot
- far (= a lot)
- a bit
- a little
- slightly (= a little)

- Let’s go by car. It’s much cheaper. (or a lot cheaper)
- ‘How do you feel now?’ ‘Much better, thanks.’
- Don’t go by train. It’s a lot more expensive. (or much more expensive)
- Could you speak a bit more slowly? (or a little more slowly)
- This bag is slightly heavier than the other one.
- Her illness was far more serious than we thought at first. (or much more serious / a lot more serious)

You can use any and no + comparative (any longer / no bigger etc.):

- I’ve waited long enough. I’m not waiting any longer. (= not even a little longer)
- We expected their apartment to be very big, but it’s no bigger than ours. or ...
  ... it isn’t any bigger than ours. (= not even a little bigger)
- How do you feel now? Do you feel any better?
- This hotel is better than the other one, and it’s no more expensive.

Better and better / more and more etc.

We repeat comparatives (better and better etc.) to say that something changes continuously:

- Your English is improving. It’s getting better and better.
- The city has grown fast in recent years. It’s got bigger and bigger.
- As I listened to his story, I became more and more convinced that he was lying.
- These days more and more people are learning English.

The ... the ...

You can say the (sooner/bigger/more etc.) the better:

- ‘What time shall we leave?’ ‘The sooner the better.’ (= as soon as possible)
- A: What sort of box do you want? A big one?
  B: Yes, the bigger the better. (= as big as possible)
- When you’re travelling, the less luggage you have the better.

We also use the ... the ... to say that one thing depends on another thing:

- The warmer the weather, the better I feel. (= if the weather is warmer, I feel better)
- The sooner we leave, the earlier we will arrive.
- The younger you are, the easier it is to learn.
- The more expensive the hotel, the better the service.
- The more electricity you use, the higher your bill will be.
- The more I thought about the plan, the less I liked it.

Older and elder

The comparative of old is older:

- David looks older than he really is.

You can use elder (or older) when you talk about people in a family. You can say

(my/your etc.) elder sister/brother/daughter/son:

- My elder sister is a TV producer. (or My older sister ...)

We say ‘my elder sister’, but we do not say that ‘somebody is elder’:

- My sister is older than me. (not elder than me)
Exercises

**106.1** Use the words in brackets to complete the sentences. Use **much / a bit** etc. + **a comparative form. Use than where necessary.**

1. Her illness was **much** more serious than we thought at first. (much / serious)
2. This bag is too small. I need something **much bigger**. (much / big)
3. I liked the museum. It was **much more interesting** than I expected. (much / interesting)
4. It was very hot yesterday. Today it's **less hot**. (a bit / cool)
5. I'm afraid the problem is **far more complicated** than it seems. (far / complicated)
6. You're driving too fast. Can you drive **more slowly**? (a bit / slowly)
7. It's **far too expensive** to learn a language in a country where it is spoken. (a lot / easy)
8. I thought she was younger than me, but in fact she's **a lot older**. (slightly / old)

**106.2** Complete the sentences using **any/no** + **comparative**. Use than where necessary.

1. I've waited long enough. I'm not waiting any **longer**.
2. I'm sorry I'm a bit late, but I couldn't get here any **earlier**.
3. This shop isn't expensive. The prices are **no more expensive** elsewhere.
4. I need to stop for a rest. I can't walk any **farther**.
5. The traffic isn't particularly bad today. It's **not nearly as bad** as usual.

**106.3** Complete the sentences using the structure in Section C (**... and ...**).

1. It's getting **more and more difficult** to find a job. (difficult)
2. That hole in your sweater is getting **bigger**. (big)
3. My bags seemed to get **heavier** as I carried them. (heavy)
4. As I waited for my interview, I became **nervous**. (nervous)
5. As the day went on, the weather got **worse**. (bad)
6. Health care is becoming **more expensive**. (good)
7. Since Anna went to Canada, her English has got **better**. (good)
8. As the conversation went on, Paul became **more talkative**. (talkative)

**106.4** Complete the sentences using the structure in Section D (**the ... the ...**).

1. I like warm weather.
   The warmer the weather, **the better** I feel. (feel)
2. I didn't really like him when we first met.
   But the more I got to know him, **the more** I liked him. (like)
3. If you're in business, you want to make a profit.
   The more goods you sell, **the more profit** you make. (profit)
4. It's hard to concentrate when you're tired.
   The more tired you are, **the more** you think. (hard)
5. Kate had to wait a very long time.
   The longer she had to wait, **the more** she became impatient. (impatient / become)

**106.5** Use the words on the right to complete the sentences.

1. I like to travel light. The **less** luggage, the better.
2. The problem is getting **more** and more serious.
3. The more time I have, **the more** it makes me do things.
4. I'm walking as fast as I can. I can't walk **much** faster.
5. The higher your income, **the more** tax you have to pay.
6. I'm surprised Anna is only 25. I thought she was **older**.
7. Jane's **elder** sister is a nurse.
8. I was a little late. The journey took **far** longer than I expected.
9. We have a lot to discuss. We need to start the meeting **later** than 9:30.
10. Don't tell him anything. The **less** he knows, the **better**.
Comparison 3 (as ... as / than)

Study this example situation:

Sarah, Joe, and David are all very rich. Sarah has $20 million, Joe has $15 million, and David has $10 million. So:

- Joe is rich.
- He is richer than David.
- But he isn’t as rich as Sarah. (= Sarah is richer than he is)

Some more examples of not as ... (as):
- Jack isn’t as old as he looks. (= he looks older than he is)
- The town centre wasn’t as crowded as usual. (= it is usually more crowded)
- Lisa didn’t do as well in the exam as she had hoped. (= she had hoped to do better)
- The weather is better today. It’s not as cold. (= yesterday was colder than today)
- I don’t know as many people as you do. (= you know more people than me)
- ‘How much did it cost? Fifty pounds?’ ‘No, not as much as that.’ (= less than fifty pounds)

You can also say not so ... (as):
- It’s not warm, but it isn’t so cold as yesterday. (= it isn’t as cold as ...)

Less ... than is similar to not as ... as:
- I spent less money than you. (= I didn’t spend as much money as you)
- The city centre was less crowded than usual. (= it wasn’t as crowded as usual)
- I play tennis less than I used to. (= I don’t play as much as I used to)

We also use as ... as (but not so ... as) in positive sentences and in questions:
- I’m sorry I’m late. I got here as fast as I could.
- There’s plenty of food. You can have as much as you want.
- Let’s walk. It’s just as quick as taking the bus.
- Can you send me the information as soon as possible, please?

Also twice as ... as, three times as ... as etc.:
- Petrol is twice as expensive as it was a few years ago.
- Their house is about three times as big as ours.

We say the same as (not the same like):
- Laura’s salary is the same as mine. or Laura gets the same salary as me.
- David is the same age as James.
- Sarah hasn’t changed. She still looks the same as she did ten years ago.

Than me / than I am etc.

You can say:
- You’re taller than me. or You’re taller than I am.
- (not usually You’re taller than I)
- He’s not as clever as her. or He’s not as clever as she is.
- They have more money than us. or They have more money than we have.
- I can’t run as fast as him. or I can’t run as fast as he can.
Exercises

107.1 Complete the sentences using as ... as.
1 I'm tall, but you are taller. I'm not as tall as you.
2 My salary is high, but yours is higher. My salary isn't as high as yours.
3 You know a bit about cars, but I know more.
   You don't.
4 We are busy today, but we were busier yesterday.
   We aren't.
5 I still feel bad, but I felt a lot worse earlier.
   I don't.
6 Our neighbours have lived here for quite a long time, but we've lived here longer.
   Our neighbours haven't.
7 I was a little nervous before the interview, but usually I'm a lot more nervous.
   I wasn't.

107.2 Write a new sentence with the same meaning.
1 Jack is younger than he looks. Jack isn't as old as he looks.
2 I didn't spend as much money as you. You spent more money than me.
3 The station was nearer than I thought. The station wasn't as near as I thought.
4 The meal didn't cost as much as I expected. The meal cost less than I expected.
5 I go out less than I used to. You don't go out as much as you used to.
6 Karen's hair isn't as long as it used to be. Karen used to have longer hair.
7 I know them better than you do. You don't know them as well as I do.
8 There are fewer people at this meeting than at the last one.
   There aren't as many people at this meeting as at the last one.

107.3 Complete the sentences using as ... as + the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bad</th>
<th>comfortable</th>
<th>fast</th>
<th>hard</th>
<th>long</th>
<th>often</th>
<th>quietly</th>
<th>soon</th>
<th>well</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
1 I'm sorry I'm late. I got here as fast as I could.
2 It was a difficult question. I answered it as well as I could.
3 'How long can I stay with you?' 'You can stay as long as you like.'
4 I need the information quickly, so let me know as soon as possible.
5 I like to keep fit, so I go swimming as often as I can.
6 I didn't want to wake anybody, so I came in as quietly as I could.

In the following sentences use just as ... as.
7 I'm going to sleep on the floor. It's just as good as the bed.
8 You always say how tiring your job is, but I work just as hard as you.
9 At first I thought he was nice, but really he's just as bad as everybody else.

107.4 Write sentences using the same as.
1 David and James are both 22 years old. David is the same age as James.
2 You and I both have dark brown hair. Your hair is the same as mine.
3 I arrived at 10.25 and so did you. I arrived just as you did.
4 My birthday is 5 April. It's Tom's birthday too. My birthday is the same as Tom's.

107.5 Complete the sentences with than ... or as ... .
1 I can't reach as high as you. You are taller than me.
2 He doesn't know much. I know more than him.
3 I don't work particularly hard. Most people work as hard as I do.
4 We were very surprised. Nobody was more surprised than us.
5 She's not a very good player. I'm a better player than her.
6 They've been very lucky. I wish we were as lucky as they are.
Superlatives
(the longest / the most enjoyable etc.)

Study these examples:

What is the longest river in the world?
What was the most enjoyable holiday you’ve ever had?

Longest and most enjoyable are superlative forms.

The superlative form is -est or most . . . . In general, we use -est for short words and most . . . for longer words. The rules are the same as those for the comparative – see Unit 105.

long → longest hot → hottest easy → easiest hard → hardest
but most famous most boring most difficult most expensive

A few adjectives are irregular:
good → best bad → worst far → furthest/farthest

For spelling, see Appendix 6.

We normally use the before a superlative (the longest / the most famous etc.):

- Yesterday was the hottest day of the year.
- The movie was really boring. It’s the most boring movie I’ve ever seen.
- She is a really nice person – one of the nicest people I know.
- Why does he always come to see me at the worst possible time?

Compare superlative and comparative:

- This hotel is the cheapest in town. (superlative)
  It’s cheaper than all the others in town. (comparative)
- He’s the most patient person I’ve ever met.
  He’s much more patient than I am.

Oldest and eldest

The superlative of old is oldest:

- That church is the oldest building in the town. (not the eldest)

We use eldest (or oldest) when we are talking about people in a family:

- My eldest son is 13 years old. (or My oldest son)
- Are you the eldest in your family? (or the oldest)

After superlatives we normally use in with places:

- What’s the longest river in the world? (not of the world)
- We had a nice room. It was one of the best in the hotel. (not of the hotel)

We also use in for organisations and groups of people (a class / a company etc.):

- Who is the youngest student in the class? (not of the class)

For a period of time, we normally use of:

- Yesterday was the hottest day of the year.
- What was the happiest day of your life?

We often use the present perfect (I have done) after a superlative (see also Unit 8A):

- What’s the most important decision you’ve ever had to make?
- That was the best holiday I’ve had for a long time.
108.1 Complete the sentences. Use a superlative (-est or most ...) + a preposition (of or in).

1. It's a very good room. It's **the best room in** the hotel.
2. It's a very cheap restaurant. It's **the cheapest** in the town.
3. It was a very happy day. It was **the happiest** of my life.
4. She's a very intelligent student. She's **the most intelligent** in the class.
5. It's a very valuable painting. It's **the most valuable** in the gallery.
6. Spring is a very busy time for me. It's **the busiest** of the year.

In the following sentences use one of + a superlative + a preposition.

7. It's a very good room. It's **one of the best rooms in** the hotel.
8. He's a very rich man. He's **one of the richest** in Europe.
9. It's a very big castle. It's **one of the biggest** in the world.
10. She's a very good player. She's **one of the best** in the team.
11. It was a very bad experience. It was **one of the worst** of my life.
12. It's a very famous university. It's **one of the most famous** in the world.

108.2 Complete the sentences. Use a superlative (-est or most ...) or a comparative (-er or more ...).

1. We stayed at **the cheapest** hotel in the town. (cheap)
2. Our hotel was **cheaper** than all the others in the town. (cheap)
3. The United States is very large, but Canada is **larger**. (large)
4. What's **the largest** country in the world? (small)
5. I wasn't feeling well yesterday, but I feel a bit **better** today. (good)
6. It was an awful day. It was **the worst** day of my life. (bad)
7. What is **the most popular** sport in your country? (popular)
8. Everest is **the highest** mountain in the world. It is **higher** than any other mountain. (high)
9. This building is over 250 metres high, but it's not **taller** than the other buildings in the city. (tall)
10. I prefer this chair to the other one. It's **more comfortable**. (comfortable)
11. What's **the quickest** way to get to the station? (quick)
12. Which is **the fastest** - the bus or the train? (quick)
13. What's **the most expensive** thing you've ever bought? (expensive)
14. Sue and Kevin have got three daughters. **The oldest** is 14 years old. (old)

108.3 What do you say in these situations? Use a superlative + ever. Use the words in brackets (in the correct form).

1. You've just been to the cinema. The movie was extremely boring. You tell your friend:
   (boring / movie / see) **That's the most boring movie I've ever seen**.
2. Your friend has just told you a joke, which you think is very funny. You say:
   (funny / joke / hear) **That's the funniest joke I've ever heard**.
3. You're drinking coffee with a friend. It's really good coffee. You say:
   (good / coffee / taste) **This is the best coffee I've ever tasted**.
4. You are talking to a friend about Sarah. Sarah is very generous. You tell your friend about her:
   (generous / person / meet) **She's the most generous person I've ever met**.
5. You have just run ten kilometres. You've never run further than this. You say to your friend:
   (far / run) **That's the farthest I've ever run**.
6. You decided to give up your job. Now you think this was a bad mistake. You say to your friend:
   (bad / mistake / make) **I made the worst mistake I've ever made**.
7. Your friend meets a lot of people, some of them famous. You ask your friend:
   (famous / person / meet?) **Who's the most famous person you've ever met**?
Word order 1: verb + object; place and time

Verb + object

The verb and the object normally go together. We do not usually put other words between them:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb + object</th>
<th>very much.</th>
<th>not I like very much my job</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I like my job</td>
<td>very much.</td>
<td>not I like very much my job</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Did you see your friends yesterday?</td>
<td>very much.</td>
<td>not I like very much my job</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Helen never drinks coffee.</td>
<td>not I like very much my job</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Study these examples. The verb and the object go together each time:

- Do you eat meat every day? (not Do you eat every day meat?)
- Everybody enjoyed the party very much. (not enjoyed very much the party)
- Our guide spoke English fluently. (not spoke fluently English)
- I lost all my money and I also lost my passport. (not I lost also my passport)
- At the end of the street you'll see a supermarket on your left. (not see on your left a supermarket)

Place and time

Usually the verb and the place (where?) go together:

go home live in a city walk to work etc.

If the verb has an object, the place comes after the verb + object:

take somebody home meet a friend in the street

Time (when? / how often? / how long?) usually goes after place:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>place + time</th>
<th>every morning.</th>
<th>not every morning to work</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ben walks to work every morning.</td>
<td>every morning.</td>
<td>not every morning to work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sam has been in Canada since April.</td>
<td>every morning.</td>
<td>not every morning to work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We arrived at the airport early.</td>
<td>every morning.</td>
<td>not every morning to work</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Study these examples. Time goes after place:

- I'm going to Paris on Monday. (not I'm going on Monday to Paris)
- They have lived in the same house for a long time.
- Don’t be late. Make sure you’re here by 8 o’clock.
- Sarah gave me a lift home after the party.
- You really shouldn’t go to bed so late.

It is often possible to put time at the beginning of the sentence:

- On Monday I’m going to Paris.
- Every morning Ben walks to work.

Some time words (for example, always/never/usually) go with the verb in the middle of the sentence. See Unit 110.
Exercises

109.1 Is the word order right or wrong? Correct the sentences where necessary.
1 Everybody enjoyed the party very much.
2 Ben walks every morning to work.
3 Joe doesn’t like very much football.
4 I drink three or four cups of coffee every morning.
5 I ate quickly my breakfast and went out.
6 Are you going to invite to the party a lot of people?
7 I phoned Tom immediately after hearing the news.
8 Did you go late to bed last night?
9 Did you learn a lot of things at school today?
10 I met on my way home a friend of mine.

109.2 Put the parts of the sentence in the correct order.
1 (the party / very much / everybody enjoyed) Everybody enjoyed the party very much.
2 (we won / easily / the game)
3 (quietly / the door / I closed)
4 (Tanya / quite well / speaks / German)
5 (Sam / all the time / TV / watches)
6 (again / please don’t ask / that question)
7 (football / every weekend / does Kevin play?)
8 (some money / I borrowed / from a friend of mine)

109.3 Complete the sentences. Put the parts in the correct order.
1 (for a long time / have lived / in the same house) They have lived in the same house for a long time.
2 (to the supermarket / every Friday / go)
3 (home / did you come / so late) Why?
4 (her children / takes / every day / to school) Sarah
5 (been / recently / to the cinema) I haven’t.
6 (at the top of the page / your name / write) Please.
7 (her name / after a few minutes / remembered) I.
8 (around the town / all morning / walked) We.
9 (on Saturday night / didn’t see you / at the party) I.
10 (some interesting books / found / in the library) We.
11 (her umbrella / last night / in a restaurant / left) Laura.
12 (opposite the park / a new hotel / are building) They.
Word order 2: adverbs with the verb

Some adverbs (for example, always, also, probably) go with the verb in the middle of a sentence:
- Helen always drives to work.
- We were feeling very tired and we were also hungry.
- The concert will probably be cancelled.

If the verb is one word (drives/fell/cooked etc.), the adverb goes before the verb:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>adverb</th>
<th>verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Helen</td>
<td>always</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>almost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>cleans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Joe</td>
<td>never</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that these adverbs (always/often/also etc.) go before have to ... : 
- I always have to phone him. (not I have always to phone)

But adverbs go after am/is/are/was/were:
- We were feeling very tired and we were also hungry.
- Why are you always late? You're never on time.
- The traffic isn't usually as bad as it was this morning.

If the verb is two or more words (for example, can remember / doesn't eat / will be cancelled), the adverb usually goes after the first verb (can/doesn't/will etc.):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb 1</th>
<th>adverb</th>
<th>verb 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>can</td>
<td>remember her name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clare</td>
<td>doesn't</td>
<td>often eat meat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are you</td>
<td>definitely</td>
<td>going away next week?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The concert</td>
<td>will</td>
<td>probably be cancelled.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that probably goes before a negative (isn't/won't etc.). So we say:
- I probably won't see you. or I will probably not see you. (not I won't probably)

We also use all and both in these positions:
- We all felt ill after the meal. (not we felt all ill)
- My parents are both teachers. (not my parents both are teachers)
- Sarah and Jane have both applied for the job.
- We are all going out tonight.

Sometimes we use is/will/did etc. instead of repeating part of a sentence (see Unit 51):
- Tom says he isn’t clever, but I think he is. (= he is clever)

When we do this, we put always/never etc. before the verb:
- He always says he won’t be late, but he always is. (= he is always late)
- I’ve never done it and I never will. (= I will never do it)
Exercises

110.1 Are the underlined words in the right position or not? Correct the sentences where necessary.

1 Helen drives always to work. Helen always drives to work.
2 I cleaned the house and also cooked the dinner. OK
3 I have usually a shower in the morning.
4 We soon found the solution to the problem.
5 Steve gets hardly ever angry.
6 I did some shopping and I went also to the bank.
7 Jane has always to hurry in the morning.
8 I never have worked in a factory.
9 I never have enough time. I always am busy.

110.2 Rewrite the sentences to include the word in brackets.

1 Clare doesn't eat meat. (often) Clare doesn't often eat meat.
2 Katherine is very generous. (always)
3 I don't have to work on Saturdays. (usually)
4 Do you watch TV in the evenings? (always)
5 Martin is learning Spanish and he is learning Japanese. (also)
6 a We were on holiday in Spain. (all)
b We were staying at the same hotel. (all)
c We enjoyed ourselves. (all)
7 a The new hotel is very expensive. (probably)
b It costs a lot to stay there. (probably)
8 a I can help you. (probably)
b I can't help you. (probably)

110.3 Complete the sentences. Use the words in brackets in the correct order.

1 I can never remember (remember / I / never / can) her name.
2 (take / I / usually) sugar in coffee.
3 (am / usually / I) hungry when I get home from work.
4 Mark and Amy (both / were / born) in Manchester.
5 Lisa is a good pianist. (sing / she / also / can) very well.
6 Our cat (usually / sleeps) under the bed.
7 They live in the same building as me, but (never / I / have / spoken) to them.
8 This shop is always very busy. (have / you / always / to wait) a long time to be served.
9 My eyesight isn’t very good. (I / read / can / only) with glasses.
10 (all / were / we) tired, so (all / we / fell) asleep.
11 a: Are you tired?
b: Yes, (am / I / always) at this time of day.
12 (I / probably / leaving / will / be) early tomorrow.
13 I’m afraid (probably / I / be / won’t) able to come to the party.
14 Helen is away a lot. (is / hardly ever / she) at home.
15 (we / still / are / living) in the same place. We haven’t moved.
16 If we hadn’t taken the same train, (never / met / we / would / have) each other.
17 Tanya (says / always) that she'll phone me, but (does / she / never).
### Still

We use **still** to say that a situation or action is continuing. It hasn't changed or stopped:

- It’s 10 o’clock and Joe is **still** in bed.
- When I went to bed, Chris was **still** working.
- Do you **still** want to go away or have you changed your mind?

**Still** usually goes in the middle of the sentence with the verb (see Unit 110).

### Any more / any longer / no longer

We use **not ... any more** or **not ... any longer** to say that a situation has changed. **Any more** and **any longer** go at the end of a sentence:

- Lucy **doesn’t** work here **any more** (or **any longer**). She left last month.
  
- We used to be good friends, but we **aren’t** **any more** (or **any longer**).

You can also use **no longer**. **No longer** goes in the middle of the sentence:

- Lucy **no longer** works here.

Note that we do not normally use **no more** in this way:

- We are **no more** friends. (not We are no **more** friends.)

Compare **still** and **not ... any more**:

- Sally **still** works here, but Lucy **doesn’t** work here **any more**.

### Yet

**Yet** = until now. We use **yet** mainly in negative sentences (**He isn’t** here **yet**) and questions (**Is he** here **yet?**). **Yet** shows that the speaker is expecting something to happen.

**Yet** usually goes at the end of a sentence:

- It’s 10 o’clock and Joe **isn’t** here **yet**.
- **Have you** met your new neighbours **yet**?
- ‘Where are you going on holiday?’ ‘**We don’t** know **yet**.’

We often use **yet** with the **present perfect** (**Have you** met **yet**?). See Unit 7D.

Compare **yet** and **still**:

- Mike lost his job six months ago and is **still** unemployed.
  
- Mike lost his job six months ago and **hasn’t found** another job **yet**.

- **Is it** **still** raining?
  
- **Has it** **stopped** raining **yet**?

**Still** is also possible in **negative** sentences (before the negative):

- She said she would be here an hour ago and she **still hasn’t** come.

This is similar to ‘she hasn’t come **yet**’. But **still ... not** shows a stronger feeling of surprise or impatience.

Compare:

- I sent him an invitation last week. He **hasn’t replied** **yet**. (but I expect he will reply soon)
  
- I sent him an invitation weeks ago and he **still hasn’t replied**. (he should have replied before now)

### Already

We use **already** to say that something happened sooner than expected. **Already** usually goes in the middle of a sentence (see Unit 110):

- ‘What time is Sue leaving?’ ‘She has **already** left.’ (= sooner than you expected)
  
- Shall I tell Joe what happened or does he **already** know?
  
- I’ve just had lunch and I’m **already** hungry.
Exercises

111.1 Compare what Paul said a few years ago with what he says now. Some things are the same as before and some things have changed. Write sentences with still and any more.

Paul a few years ago
- I travel a lot.
- I work in a shop.
- I write poems.
- I want to be a teacher.
- I'm interested in politics.
- I'm single.
- I go fishing a lot.

Paul now
- I travel a lot.
- I work in a hospital.
- I gave up writing poems.
- I want to be a teacher.
- I'm not interested in politics.
- I'm single.
- I haven't been fishing for years.

1 (travel) He still travels a lot.
5 (politics) I travel a lot.

2 (shop) He doesn't work in a shop any more.
6 (single) I work in a hospital.

3 (poems) He I gave up writing poems.
7 (fishing) I gave up writing poems.

4 (teacher) I want to be a teacher.
8 (beard) I want to be a teacher.

Now write three sentences about Paul using no longer.
9 He no longer works in a shop.
10
11

111.2 For each sentence (with still) write a sentence with a similar meaning using not ... yet + one of the following verbs:

decide  find  finish  go  stop  take off  wake up

1 It's still raining. It hasn't stopped raining yet.
2 Gary is still here. He He
3 They're still repairing the road. They
4 The children are still asleep.
5 Is Ann still looking for a place to live?
6 I'm still wondering what to do.
7 The plane is still waiting on the runway.

111.3 Put in still, yet, already or any more in the underlined sentence (or part of the sentence). Study the examples carefully.

1 Mike lost his job a year ago and he is unemployed. He is still unemployed.
2 Shall I tell Joe what happened or does he know? Does he already know?
3 I'm hungry. Is dinner ready? Is dinner ready yet?
4 I was hungry earlier, but I'm not hungry. I'm not hungry any more.
5 Can we wait a few minutes? I don't want to go out.
6 Amy used to work at the airport, but she doesn't work there.
7 I used to live in Amsterdam. I have a lot of friends there.
8 'Shall I introduce you to Joe?' There's no need. We've met.
9 Do you live in the same place or have you moved?
10 Would you like to eat with us or have you eaten?
11 'Where's John?' 'He's not here. He'll be here soon.'
12 Tim said he'd be here at 8.30. It's 9 o'clock now and he isn't here.
13 Do you want to join the club or are you a member?
14 It happened a long time ago, but I can remember it very clearly.
15 I've put on weight. These trousers don't fit me.
16 'Have you finished with the paper?' 'No, I'm reading it.'

223
Study this example situation:

Tina loves watching television.

She has a TV in every room of the house, even the bathroom.

We use even to say that something is unusual or surprising. It is not usual to have a TV in the bathroom.

Some more examples:

- These pictures are really awful. Even I take better pictures than these. (and I’m certainly not a good photographer)
- He always wears a coat, even in hot weather.
- The print was very small. I couldn’t read it, even with glasses.
- Nobody would help her, not even her best friend.
  or Not even her best friend would help her.

You can use even with the verb in the middle of a sentence (see Unit 110):

- Sue has travelled all over the world. She has even been to the Antarctic. (It’s especially unusual to go to the Antarctic, so she must have travelled a lot.)
- They are very rich. They even have their own private jet.

Study these examples with even after a negative (not/can’t/don’t etc.):

- I can’t cook. I can’t even boil an egg. (and boiling an egg is very easy)
- They weren’t very friendly to us. They didn’t even say hello.
- Jessica is very fit. She’s just run five miles and she’s not even out of breath.

You can use even + comparative (cheaper / more expensive etc.):

- I got up very early, but Jack got up even earlier.
- I knew I didn’t have much money, but I’ve got even less than I thought.
- We were surprised to get an email from her. We were even more surprised when she came to see us a few days later.

Even though / even when / even if

We use even though / even when / even if + subject + verb:

- Even though she can’t drive, she bought a car.

You cannot use even in this way (+ subject + verb). We say:

- Even though she can’t drive, she bought a car. (not Even she can’t drive)
- I can’t reach the shelf even if I stand on a chair. (not even I stand)

Compare even if and if:

- We’re going to the beach tomorrow. It doesn’t matter what the weather is like. We’re going even if it’s raining.
- We want to go to the beach tomorrow, but we won’t go if it’s raining.
Exercises

112.1 Amy, Kate and Lisa are three friends who went on holiday together. Use the information given about them to complete the sentences using even or not even.

1. They stayed at a hotel. Everybody liked it, even Kate.
2. They arranged to meet. They all arrived on time.
3. They went to an art gallery. Nobody enjoyed it.
4. Yesterday they had to get up early. They all managed to do this.
5. They were together yesterday. They were all in a good mood.
6. None of them took any pictures.

112.2 Make sentences with even. Use the words in brackets.

1. Sue has been all over the world. (the Antarctic) She has even been to the Antarctic.
2. We painted the whole room. (the floor) We
3. Rachel has met lots of famous people. (the prime minister)
   She
4. You could hear the noise from a long way away. (from the next street)
   You

In the following sentences you have to use not ... even.

5. They didn’t say anything to us. (hello) They didn’t even say hello.
6. I can’t remember anything about her. (her name)
7. There isn’t anything to do in this town. (a cinema)
8. He didn’t tell anybody where he was going. (his wife)
9. I don’t know anyone in our street. (the people next door)

112.3 Complete the sentences using even + comparative.

1. It was very hot yesterday, but today it’s even hotter.
2. The church is 500 years old, but the house next to it is
3. That’s a very good idea, but I’ve got another one.
4. The first question was very difficult to answer. The second one was
5. I did very badly in the exam, but most of my friends did
6. Neither of us was hungry. I ate very little and my friend ate

112.4 Put in if, even, even if or even though.

1. Even though she can’t drive, she has bought a car.
2. The bus leaves in five minutes, but we can still catch it
3. The bus leaves in two minutes. We won’t catch it now
4. His Spanish isn’t very good, even after three years in Spain.
5. His Spanish isn’t very good, even though he lived in Spain for three years.
6. with the heating on, it was cold in the house.
7. I couldn’t sleep I was very tired.
8. I won’t forgive them for what they did, they apologise.
9. I hadn’t eaten anything for 24 hours, I wasn’t hungry.

Additional exercise 32 (page 321)
Although / though / even though
In spite of / despite

Study this example situation:

Last year Paul and Sarah had a holiday by the sea. It rained a lot, but they enjoyed it.

You can say:

**Although it rained** a lot, they enjoyed it.

(= It rained a lot, *but* they ...)
or

**In spite of**

**Despite** the rain, they enjoyed it.

---

After **although** we use a subject + verb:

- **Although it rained** a lot, we enjoyed our holiday.
- I didn’t get the job **although** I had the necessary qualifications.

Compare the meaning of **although** and **because**:

- We went out **although** it was raining heavily.
- We didn’t go out **because** it was raining heavily.

After **in spite of** or **despite**, we use a noun, a pronoun (this/that/what etc.) or -ing:

- **In spite of the rain**, we enjoyed our holiday.
- I didn’t get the job **in spite of having** the necessary qualifications.
- She wasn’t well, but **in spite of this** she continued working.
- **In spite of what** I said yesterday, I still love you.

**Despite** is the same as **in spite of**. We say **in spite of**, but **despite** (without of):

- She wasn’t well, but **despite this** she continued working. (not despite of this)

You can say **in spite of the fact** (that) ... and **despite the fact** (that) ... :

- I didn’t get the job **in spite of the fact** (that) I had the necessary qualifications.
- **Despite the fact** (that) I was really tired, I couldn’t sleep.

Compare **in spite of** and **because of**:

- We went out **in spite of** the rain. (or ... **despite** the rain.)
- We didn’t go out **because of** the rain.

Compare **although** and **in spite of** / **despite**:

- **Although the traffic was bad**, we arrived on time. (not In spite of the traffic was bad)
- **In spite of the traffic**, I couldn’t sleep. **although I was** very tired. (not despite I was tired)
- **Even though** I was very tired, I couldn’t sleep. (not Even I was very tired ...)

**Though** is the same as **although**:

- I didn’t get the job **though** I had the necessary qualifications.

In spoken English we often use **though** at the end of a sentence:

- The house isn’t so nice. I like the garden **though**. (= but I like the garden)
- I see them every day. I’ve never spoken to them **though**. (= but I’ve never spoken to them)

**Even though** (but not ‘even’ alone) is a stronger form of **although**:

- **Even though** I was really tired, I couldn’t sleep. (not Even I was really tired ...)

---

226

Even ➔ Unit 112
Exercises

113.1 Complete the sentences. Use although + a sentence from the box.

I didn’t speak the language well     he has a very important job.
I had never seen her before     we don’t like them very much.
it was quite cold     the heating was on.
I’d met her twice before     we’ve known each other a long time.

1 Although he has a very important job, he isn’t particularly well-paid.
2 I recognised her from a photograph.
3 She wasn’t wearing a coat.
4 We thought we’d better invite them to the party.
5 I managed to make myself understood.
6 the room wasn’t warm.
7 I didn’t recognise her.
8 We’re not very good friends.

113.2 Complete the sentences with although / in spite of / because / because of.

1 Although it rained a lot, we enjoyed our holiday.
2 a all our careful plans, a lot of things went wrong.
   b we’d planned everything carefully, a lot of things went wrong.
3 a I went home early I was feeling unwell.
   b I went to work the next day I was still feeling unwell.
4 a She only accepted the job the salary, which was very high.
   b She accepted the job the salary, which was rather low.
5 a I managed to get to sleep there was a lot of noise.
   b I couldn’t get to sleep the noise.

Use your own ideas to complete the following sentences:

6 a He passed the exam although
   b He passed the exam because
7 a I didn’t eat anything although
   b I didn’t eat anything in spite of

113.3 Make one sentence from two. Use the word(s) in brackets in your sentences.

1 I couldn’t sleep. I was very tired. (despite)
   I couldn’t sleep despite being very tired.
2 They have very little money. They are happy. (in spite of)
   In spite
3 My foot was injured. I managed to walk home. (although)
4 I enjoyed the film. The story was silly. (in spite of)
5 We live in the same street. We hardly ever see each other. (despite)
6 I got very wet in the rain. I was only out for five minutes. (even though)

113.4 Use the words in brackets to make a sentence with though at the end.

1 The house isn’t very nice. (like / garden) I like the garden though.
2 It’s warm today. (very windy)
3 We didn’t like the food. (ate)
4 Liz is very nice. (don’t like / husband) I
Study this example situation:

Your car should have a spare wheel because it is possible you will have a puncture.

Your car should have a spare wheel in case you have a puncture.

In case you have a puncture = because it is possible you will have a puncture.

Some more examples of in case:

- I’ll leave my mobile phone switched on in case Jane calls. (= because it is possible she will call)
- I’ll draw a map for you in case you have problems finding our house. (= because it is possible you will have problems)
- I’ll remind them about the meeting in case they’ve forgotten. (= because it is possible they have forgotten)

We use just in case for a smaller possibility:

- I don’t think it will rain, but I’ll take an umbrella just in case. (= just in case it rains)

Do not use will after in case. Use a present tense for the future (see Unit 25):

- I’ll leave my phone switched on in case Jane calls. (not in case Jane will call)

In case is not the same as if. We use in case to say why somebody does (or doesn’t do) something. You do something now in case something happens later.

Compare:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>in case</th>
<th>if</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>We’ll buy some more food in case Tom comes. (= Maybe Tom will come. We’ll buy some more food now, whether he comes or not; then we’ll already have the food if he comes.)</td>
<td>We’ll buy some more food if Tom comes. (= Maybe Tom will come. If he comes, we’ll buy some more food; if he doesn’t come, we won’t buy any more food.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’ll give you my phone number in case you need to contact me.</td>
<td>You can call me on this number if you need to contact me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You should insure your bike in case it is stolen.</td>
<td>You should inform the police if your bike is stolen.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can use in case + past to say why somebody did something:

- I left my phone switched on in case Jane called. (= because it was possible that Jane would call)
- I drew a map for Sarah in case she had problems finding the house.
- We rang the doorbell again in case they hadn’t heard it the first time.

In case of is not the same as in case. In case of ... = if there is ... (especially on notices etc.):

- In case of fire, please leave the building as quickly as possible. (= if there is a fire)
- In case of emergency, call this number. (= if there is an emergency)
114.1 Sophie is going for a long walk in the country. You think she should take:
- some chocolate
- a map
- an anorak
- a camera
- some water

You think she should take these things because:
- it’s possible she’ll get lost
- she might get hungry
- perhaps she’ll be thirsty
- maybe it will rain
- she might want to take some pictures

What do you say to Sophie? Write sentences with in case.
1. Take some chocolate in case you get hungry.
2. Take _________________________________.
3. _________________________________.
4. _________________________________.
5. _________________________________.

What do you say in these situations? Use in case.
1. It’s possible that Jane will need to contact you, so you agree to give her your phone number.
   You say: I’ll give you my phone number in case you need to contact me.

2. A friend of yours is going away for a long time. Maybe you won’t see her again before she goes, so you decide to say goodbye now.
   You say: I’ll say goodbye now.

3. You are shopping in a supermarket with a friend. You think you have everything you need, but maybe you forgot something. Your friend has the list. You ask her to check it.
   You say: Can you _________________________________.

4. You advise a friend about using a computer. You think he should back up (copy) his files because maybe there will be a problem with his computer (and he could lose all his data).
   You say: You should back up _________________.

Complete the sentences using in case.
1. There was a possibility that Jane would call. So I left my phone switched on.
   I left my phone switched on _________________.

2. I thought that I might forget the name of the book. So I wrote it down.
   I wrote down the name of the book _________________.

3. I thought my parents might be worried about me. So I phoned them.
   I phoned my parents _________________.

4. I sent an email to Lisa, but she didn’t reply. So I sent another email because maybe she didn’t get the first one.
   I sent her another email _________________.

5. I met some people when I was on holiday in France. They said they might come to London one day. I live in London, so I gave them my phone number.
   I gave them my phone number _________________.

Put in in case or if.
1. I’ll draw a map for you __________ you have problems finding our house.
2. You should tell the police __________ you have any information about the crime.
3. I hope you’ll come to Australia sometime. __________ you come, you must visit us.
4. This book belongs to Susan. Can you give it to her __________ you see her?

5. Write your name and phone number on your bag __________ you lose it.
6. Go to the lost property office __________ you lose your bag.
7. The burglar alarm will ring __________ somebody tries to break into the house.
8. You should lock your bike to something __________ somebody tries to steal it.
9. I was advised to get insurance __________ I needed medical treatment while I was abroad.
Unless

Study this example situation:

The club is for members only.
You can't go in unless you are a member.

This means:
You can't go in except if you are a member.
You can go in only if you are a member.

Unless = except if.

Some more examples of unless:

- I'll see you tomorrow unless I have to work late. (= except if I have to work late)
- There are no buses to the beach. Unless you have a car, it's difficult to get there. (= except if you have a car)
- 'Shall I tell Liz what happened?' 'Not unless she asks you.' (= only if she asks you)
- Sally hates to complain. She wouldn't complain about something unless it was really bad. (= except if it was really bad)
- We can take a taxi to the restaurant – unless you'd prefer to walk. (= except if you'd prefer to walk)

Instead of unless it is often possible to say if ... not:
- Unless we leave now, we'll be late. or If we don't leave now, we'll ...

As long as / provided / providing

as long as or so long as
provided (that) or providing (that)

All these expressions mean 'if' or 'on condition that'.

For example:

- You can borrow my car if you promise not to drive too fast. (= you can borrow my car, but you must promise not to drive too fast – this is a condition)
- Travelling by car is convenient if you have somewhere to park. (= but only if you have somewhere to park)
- Providing the room is clean, I don't mind which hotel we stay at. (= the room must be clean – otherwise I don't mind)

Unless / as long as etc. for the future

When you are talking about the future, do not use will after unless / as long as / so long as / provided / providing. Use a present tense (see Unit 25):

- I'm not going out unless it stops raining. (not unless it will stop)
- Providing the weather is good, we're going to have a picnic tomorrow. (not providing the weather will be good)
### 115.1 Write a new sentence with the same meaning. Use **unless** in your sentence.

1. You must try a bit harder or you won’t pass the exam.
   - You won’t pass the exam **unless** you try a bit harder.

2. Listen carefully or you won’t know what to do.
   - You won’t know what to do **unless** you listen carefully.

3. She must apologise to me or I’ll never speak to her again.

4. You have to speak very slowly or he won’t be able to understand you.

5. Business must improve soon or the company will have to close.

### 115.2 Write sentences with **unless**.

1. The club isn’t open to everyone. You’re allowed in only if you’re a member.
   - You aren’t allowed in the club **unless** you’re a member.

2. I don’t want to go to the party alone. I’m going only if you go too.
   - I’m not going **unless** you go too.

3. Don’t worry about the dog. It will attack you only if you move suddenly.
   - The dog will attack you **unless** you move suddenly.

4. Ben isn’t very talkative. He’ll speak to you only if you ask him something.
   - Ben will speak to you **unless** you ask him something.

5. Today is a public holiday. The doctor will see you only if it’s an emergency.
   - The doctor will see you **unless** it’s an emergency.

### 115.3 Which is correct?

1. You can borrow my car **unless / as long as** you promise not to drive too fast.
   - **as long as** is correct

2. I’m playing tennis tomorrow **unless / providing** it rains.

3. I’m playing tennis tomorrow **unless / providing** it doesn’t rain.

4. I don’t mind if you come home late **unless / as long as** you come in quietly.

5. I’m going now **unless / provided** you want me to stay.

6. I don’t watch TV **unless / as long as** I’ve got nothing else to do.

7. Children are allowed to use the swimming pool **unless / provided** they are with an adult.

8. **Unless / Provided** they are with an adult, children are not allowed to use the swimming pool.

9. We can sit here in the corner **unless / as long as** you’d rather sit over there by the window.

10. a: Our holiday cost a lot of money.
    b: Did it? Well, that doesn’t matter **unless / as long as** you enjoyed yourselves.

### 115.4 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

1. We’ll be late **unless / we get a taxi**.

2. I like hot weather **as long as**

3. It takes about 20 minutes to drive to the airport **provided**

4. I don’t mind walking home **as long as**

5. I like to walk to work in the morning **unless**

6. We can meet tomorrow **unless**

7. I can lend you the money **providing**

8. You won’t achieve anything **unless**
**As (As I walked along the street ... / As I was hungry ...)**

**As = at the same time as**

You can use *as* when two things happen at the same time:
- We all waved goodbye to Liz as she drove away.  
  *(We waved and she drove away at the same time)*
- As I walked along the street, I looked in the shop windows.  
- Can you turn off the light as you go out, please?

Or you can say that something happened *as you were doing* something else (in the middle of doing something else):
- Kate slipped as she was getting off the bus.
- We met Paul as we were leaving the hotel.

For the *past continuous* (*was getting / were going* etc.), see Unit 6.

You can also use *just as* (= exactly at that moment):
- Just as I sat down, the doorbell rang.
- I had to leave just as the conversation was getting interesting.

We also use *as* when two things happen together in a longer period of time:
- As the day went on, the weather got worse.
- I began to enjoy the job more as I got used to it.

**Compare as and when:**

We use *as* only if two things happen at the same time.
- As I drove home, I listened to music.  
  *(= at the same time)*

Use *when* (not *as*) if one thing happens after another.
- When I got home, I had something to eat.  
  *(not As I got home)*

**As = because**

As also means 'because':
- As I was hungry, I decided to find somewhere to eat.  
  *(= because I was hungry)*
- As we have plenty of time before our flight, let’s go and have a coffee.
- We watched TV all evening as we didn’t have anything better to do.
- As I don’t watch television any more, I gave my TV to a friend of mine.

You can also use *since* in this way:
- Since we have plenty of time, let’s go and have a coffee.

**Compare as (= because) and when:**

- I couldn’t contact David as he was on holiday.  
  *(= because he was on holiday)*

- As they lived near us, we used to see them quite often.  
  *(= because they lived near us)*

- David’s passport was stolen when he was on holiday.  
  *(= during the time he was away)*

- When they lived near us, we used to see them quite often.  
  *(= at the time they lived near us)*

**As ... as** — Unit 107  
**Like and as** — Unit 117  
**As if** — Unit 118
### Exercises

**116.1 (Section A) Use as to join sentences from the boxes.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>We all waved goodbye to Liz</td>
<td>we were driving along the road</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I listened</td>
<td>I was taking a hot dish out of the oven</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I burnt myself</td>
<td>she drove away</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The crowd cheered</td>
<td>she told me her story</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A dog ran out in front of the car</td>
<td>the two teams came onto the field</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **We all waved goodbye to Liz as she drove away.**

**116.2 (Section B) Join sentences from the boxes. Begin each sentence with as.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>was hungry</td>
<td>today is a public holiday</td>
<td>I need some advice</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>today is a public holiday</td>
<td>I didn't want to disturb anybody</td>
<td>I was very quiet</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I didn't want to disturb anybody</td>
<td>I don't know what to do</td>
<td>I decided to find somewhere to eat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I don't know what to do</td>
<td>none of us had a watch</td>
<td>we didn’t know what time it was</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>none of us had a watch</td>
<td>as</td>
<td>many of the shops are shut</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **As I was hungry, I decided to find somewhere to eat.**

**116.3 What does as mean in these sentences?**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>As they live near us, we see them quite often.</td>
<td>As</td>
<td>because</td>
<td>at the same</td>
<td>time as</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kate slipped as she was getting off the bus.</td>
<td>As</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I was tired, I went to bed early.</td>
<td>Un fortunately</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>As I was parking the car, I hit the car behind me.</td>
<td>As</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we climbed the hill, we got more and more tired.</td>
<td>As</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We decided to go out to eat as we had no food at home.</td>
<td>As</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>As we don’t use the car very often, we’ve decided to sell it.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**116.4 In some of these sentences, you need when (not as). Correct the sentences where necessary.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Julia got married as she was 22.</td>
<td>Julia got married when she was 22.</td>
<td>OK</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>As the day went on, the weather got worse.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He dropped the glass as he was taking it out of the cupboard.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I lost my phone as I was in London.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>As I left school, I didn’t know what to do.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The train slowed down as it approached the station.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I used to live near the sea as I was a child.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**116.5 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I saw you as</td>
<td>It started to rain just as</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>As I didn’t have enough money for a taxi,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Just as I took the picture,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Like and as

Like = 'similar to', 'the same as'. You cannot use as in this way:
- What a beautiful house! It's like a palace. (not as a palace)
- 'What does Sandra do?' 'She's a teacher, like me.' (not as me)
- Be careful! The floor has been polished. It's like walking on ice. (not as walking)
- It's raining again. I hate weather like this. (not as this)

In these sentences, like is a preposition. So it is followed by a noun (like a palace), a pronoun (like me / like this) or -ing (like walking).

You can also say '... like (somebody/something) doing something':
- 'What's that noise?' 'It sounds like a baby crying.'

Sometimes like = for example:
- I enjoy water sports, like surfing, scuba diving and water-skiing.
You can also use such as (= for example):
- I enjoy water sports, such as surfing, scuba diving and water-skiing.

As = in the same way as, or in the same condition as. We use as before subject + verb:
- I didn't move anything. I left everything as it was.
- You should have done it as I showed you.

We also use like in this way:
- I left everything like it was.

Compare as and like:
- You should have done it as I showed you. or ... like I showed you.
- You should have done it like this. (not as this)

Note that we say as usual / as always:
- You're late as usual.
- As always, Nick was the first to complain.

Sometimes as (+ subject + verb) has other meanings. For example, after do:
- You can do as you like. (= do what you like)
- They did as they promised. (= They did what they promised.)

We also say as you know / as I said / as she expected / as I thought etc.:
- As you know, it's Emma's birthday next week. (= you know this already)
- Andy failed his driving test, as he expected. (= he expected this before)

Like is not usual in these expressions, except with say (like I said):
- As I said yesterday, I'm sure we can solve the problem. or Like I said yesterday ...

As can also be a preposition, but the meaning is different from like.
Compare:
- As a taxi driver, I spend most of my working life in a car. (I am a taxi driver, that is my job)
- Everyone wants me to drive them to places. I'm like a taxi driver. (I'm not a taxi driver, but I'm like one)

As (preposition) = in the position of, in the form of etc.:
- Many years ago I worked as a photographer. (not like a photographer)
- Many words, for example 'work' and 'rain', can be used as verbs or nouns.
- London is fine as a place to visit, but I wouldn't like to live there.
- The news of the tragedy came as a great shock.
Exercises

**117.1** In some of these sentences, you need like (not as). Correct the sentences where necessary.

1. It's raining again. I hate weather as this. **weather like this**
2. Andy failed his driving test, as he expected. **OK**
3. Do you think Lisa looks as her mother? **Like**
4. Tim gets on my nerves. I can't stand people as him. **Like**
5. Why didn't you do it as I told you to do it? **Like**
6. Brian is a student, as most of his friends. **Like**
7. You never listen. Talking to you is as talking to the wall. **like**
8. As I said before, I'm thinking of changing my job. **OK**
9. Tom's idea seems a good one. Let's do as he suggests. **Like**
10. I'll phone you tomorrow as usual, OK? **Like**
11. Suddenly there was a terrible noise. It was as a bomb exploding. **Like**
12. She's a very good swimmer. She swims as a fish. **Like**

**117.2** Complete the sentences using like or as + the following:

- a beginner
- blocks of ice
- a palace
- a birthday present
- a child
- a theatre
- winter
- a tour guide

1. This house is beautiful. It's **like** a palace
2. My feet are really cold. They're **like**
3. I've been playing tennis for years, but I still play **as**
4. Marion once had a part-time job **as**
5. I wonder what that building is. It looks **as**
6. My brother gave me this watch a long time ago. **as**
7. It's very cold for the middle of summer. It's **as**
8. He's 22 years old, but he sometimes behaves **as**

**117.3** Put in like or as. Sometimes either word is possible.

1. We heard a noise **like** a baby crying.
2. Your English is very fluent. I wish I could speak **as** you.
3. Don't take my advice if you don't want to. You can do **as** you like.
4. You waste too much time doing things **as** sitting in cafes all day.
5. I wish I had a car **as** yours.
6. You don't need to change clothes. You can go out **as** you are.
7. My neighbour's house is full of interesting things. It's **as** a museum.
8. We saw Kevin last night. He was very cheerful, **as** always.
9. Sally has been working **as** a waitress for the last two months.
10. In several countries in Asia, **as** Japan, Indonesia and Thailand, traffic drives on the left.
11. You're different from the other people I know. I don't know anyone else **as** you.
12. We don't need all the bedrooms in the house, so we use one of them **as** a study.
13. The news that Sarah and Gary were getting married came **as** a complete surprise to me.
14. **as** her father, Catherine has a very good voice.
15. At the moment I've got a temporary job in a bookshop. It's not great, but it's **as** a temporary job.
16. **as** you can imagine, we were very tired after such a long journey.
17. This tea is awful. It tastes **as** water.
18. I think I prefer this room **as** it was, before we decorated it.
Like / as if / as though

You can use like to say how somebody or something looks/sounds/feels:
- That house looks like it’s going to fall down.
- Helen sounded like she had a cold, didn’t she?
- I’ve just got back from holiday, but I feel very tired. I don’t feel like I’ve had a holiday.

You can also use as if or as though in all these examples:
- That house looks as if it’s going to fall down.
- Helen sounded as if she had a cold, didn’t she?
- I don’t feel as though I’ve had a holiday.

Compare:
- You look tired. (look + adjective)
- You look like you haven’t slept. (look like + subject + verb)

As if and as though are more formal than like.

You can say it looks like ... / it sounds like ...:
- Sarah is very late, isn’t she? It looks like she isn’t coming.
- We took an umbrella because it looked like it was going to rain.
- The noise is very loud next door. It sounds like they’re having a party.

You can also use as if or as though:
- It looks as if she isn’t coming. or It looks as though she isn’t coming.
- It looked as if it was going to rain.
- It sounds as though they’re having a party.

You can use like / as if / as though with other verbs to say how somebody does something:
- He ran like he was running for his life.
- After the interruption, the speaker went on talking as if nothing had happened.
- When I told them my plan, they looked at me as though I was mad.

After as if (or as though), we sometimes use the past when we are talking about the present.
For example:
- I don’t like Tim. He talks as if he knew everything.

The meaning is not past in this sentence. We use the past (as if he knew) because the idea is not real: Tim does not know everything. We use the past in the same way in other sentences with if and wish (see Unit 39).
Like is not normally used in this way.

Some more examples:
- She’s always asking me to do things for her – as if I didn’t have enough to do already. (I do have enough to do)
- Gary’s only 40. Why do you talk about him as if he was an old man? (he isn’t an old man)

When you use the past in this way, you can use were instead of was:
- Why do you talk about him as if he were (or was) an old man?
- They treat me as if I were (or was) their own son. (I’m not their son)
Exercises

**118.1** What do you say in these situations? Use the words in brackets to make your sentence.

1. You meet Bill. He has a black eye and some plasters on his face. (look / like / be / a fight)
   You say to him: **You look like you've been in a fight.**

2. Claire comes into the room. She looks absolutely terrified. (look / like / see / a ghost)
   You say to her: **What's the matter? You**

3. Joe is on holiday. He's talking to you on the phone and sounds happy. (sound / as if / have / a good time)
   You say to him: **You**

4. You have just run one kilometre. You are absolutely exhausted. (feel / like / run / a marathon)
   You say to a friend: **I**

**118.2** Make sentences beginning **It looks like ... / It sounds like ...**

- you should see a doctor
- there's been an accident
- they're having an argument
- it's going to rain
- she isn't coming
- we'll have to walk

1. Sarah said she would be here an hour ago.
   You say: **It looks like she isn't coming.**

2. The sky is full of black clouds.
   You say: **It**

3. You hear two people shouting at each other next door.
   You say: **You**

4. You see an ambulance, some policemen and two damaged cars at the side of the road.
   You say: **You**

5. You and a friend have just missed the last bus home.
   You say: **You**

6. Dave isn't feeling well. He tells you all about it.
   You say: **You**

**118.3** Complete the sentences with **as if.** Choose from the box, putting the verbs in the correct form.

- she / enjoy / it
- I / go / be sick
- he / need / a good rest
- she / hurt / her leg
- he / not / eat / for a week
- she / not / want / come

1. Mark looks very tired. He looks as if he needs a good rest.

2. I don't think Paul was joking. He looked

3. What's the matter with Amanda? She's walking

4. Peter was extremely hungry and ate his dinner very quickly.
   He ate

5. Tanya had a bored expression on her face during the movie.
   She didn't look

6. I've just eaten too many chocolates. Now I don't feel well.
   I feel

7. I phoned Liz and invited her to the party, but she wasn't very enthusiastic about it.
   She sounded

8. I went into the office, but nobody spoke to me or looked at me.
   Everybody ignored me

**118.4** These sentences are like the ones in Section D. Complete each sentence using **as if.**

1. Andy is a terrible driver. He drives as if he were the only driver on the road.

2. I'm 20 years old, so please don't talk to me as if I were a child.

3. Steve has never met Nicola, but he talks about her as if she were his best friend.

4. It was a long time ago that we first met, but I remember it as if it were yesterday.
For, during and while

For and during

We use for + a period of time to say how long something goes on:
- for two hours
- for a week
- for ages

- We watched TV for two hours last night.
- Jess is going away for a week in September.
- Where have you been? I've been waiting for ages.
- Are you going away for the weekend?

We use during + noun to say when something happens (not how long):
- during the movie
- during our holiday
- during the night

- I fell asleep during the movie.
- We met some really nice people during our holiday.
- The ground is wet. It must have rained during the night.

With 'time words' (for example: the morning / the afternoon / the summer), you can usually say in or during:
- It must have rained in the night. or ... during the night.
- I'll phone you sometime during the afternoon. or ... in the afternoon.

You cannot use during to say how long something goes on:
- It rained for three days without stopping. (not during three days)

Compare during and for:
- I fell asleep during the movie. I was asleep for half an hour.

During and while

Compare:

We use during + noun:
- I fell asleep during the movie.
- We met a lot of interesting people during our holiday.
- Robert suddenly began to feel ill during the exam.

We use while + subject + verb:
- I fell asleep while I was watching TV.
- We met a lot of interesting people while we were on holiday.
- Robert suddenly began to feel ill while he was doing the exam.

Some more examples of while:
- We saw Clare while we were waiting for the bus.
- While you were out, there was a phone call for you.
- Alex read a book while I watched TV.

When you are talking about the future, use the present (not will) after while:
- I'm going to Singapore next week. I hope to see some friends of mine while I'm there. (not while I will be there)
- What are you going to do while you're waiting? (not while you'll be waiting)

See also Unit 25.
Exercises

119.1 Put in for or during.
1. It rained for three days without stopping.
2. I fell asleep during the movie.
3. I went to the theatre last night. I met Sue during the interval.
4. Martin hasn’t lived in Britain all his life. He lived in Brazil for four years.
5. Production at the factory was seriously affected during the strike.
6. I felt really ill last week. I could hardly eat anything for three days.
7. I waited for you during half an hour and decided that you weren’t coming.
8. Sarah was very angry with me. She didn’t speak to me for a week.
9. We usually go out at weekends, but we don’t go out during the week very often.
10. Jack started a new job a few weeks ago. Before that he was out of work for six months.
11. I need a break. I think I’ll go away for a few days.
12. The president gave a long speech. She spoke for two hours.
13. We were hungry when we arrived. We hadn’t had anything to eat during the journey.
14. We were hungry when we arrived. We hadn’t had anything to eat during the week.

119.2 Put in during or while.
1. We met a lot of interesting people while we were on holiday.
2. We met a lot of interesting people during our holiday.
3. I met Mike while I was shopping.
4. While I was on holiday, I didn’t read any newspapers or watch TV.
5. During our stay in Paris, we went to a lot of museums and galleries.
6. My phone rang while we were having dinner.
7. There was a lot of noise while we were eating. What was it?
8. I’d been away for many years. That time, many things had changed.
9. What did they say about me while I was out of the room?
10. I went out for dinner last night. Unfortunately I began to feel ill during the meal and had to go home.
11. Please don’t interrupt me while I’m speaking.
12. There were many interruptions during the president’s speech.
13. Can you hold my bag while I try on this jacket?
14. We were hungry when we arrived. We hadn’t had anything to eat while we were travelling.

119.3 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.
1. I fell asleep while I was watching TV.
2. I fell asleep during the movie.
3. Nobody came to see me while
4. Can you wait for me while
5. Most of the students looked bored during
6. I was asked a lot of questions during
7. Don’t open the car door while
8. The lights suddenly went out while
9. It started to rain during
10. It started to rain while
11. What are you going to do while

Additional exercise 33 (page 321)
By ... = not later than:

- I sent the documents to them today, so they should receive them by Monday. (= on or before Monday, not later than Monday)
- We’d better hurry. We have to be home by 5 o’clock. (= at or before 5 o’clock, not later than 5 o’clock)
- Where's Sarah? She should be here by now. (= now or before now – so she should have already arrived)

We use until (or till) to say how long a situation continues:

- ‘Shall we go now?’ ‘No, let’s wait until it stops raining.’ or ‘... till it stops raining.’
- I stayed in bed until half past ten. I didn’t get up until half past ten.

Compare until and by:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Something continues until a time in the future:</th>
<th>Something happens by a time in the future:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Joe will be away until Monday. (so he'll be back on Monday)</td>
<td>Joe will be back by Monday. (= he'll be back not later than Monday)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I'll be working until 11.30. (so I'll stop working at 11.30)</td>
<td>I'll have finished my work by 11.30. (= I'll finish my work not later than 11.30.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can say ‘by the time something happens’. Study these examples:

- It's too late to go to the bank now. By the time we get there, it will be closed. (= the bank will close between now and the time we get there)
- (from a postcard) Our holiday ends tomorrow. So by the time you receive this postcard, I'll be back home. (= I will arrive home between tomorrow and the time you receive this postcard)
- Hurry up! By the time we get to the cinema, the film will already have started.

You can say ‘by the time something happened’ (for the past):

- Karen’s car broke down on the way to the party last night. By the time she arrived, most of the other guests had left. (= it took her a long time to get to the party and most of the guests left during this time)
- I had a lot of work to do yesterday evening. I was very tired by the time I finished (= it took me a long time to do the work, and I became more and more tired during this time)
- We went to the cinema last night. It took us a long time to find somewhere to park the car. By the time we got to the cinema, the film had already started.

Also by then or by that time:

- Karen finally got to the party at midnight, but by then, most of the other guests had left. or ... but by that time, most of the other guests had left.
120.1 Complete the sentences with by.
1 We have to be home not later than 5 o’clock.
   We have to be home by 5 o’clock.
2 I have to be at the airport not later than 8.30.
   I have to be at the airport by 8.30.
3 Let me know not later than Saturday whether you can come to the party.
   Whether you can come to the party by Saturday.
4 Please make sure that you’re here not later than 2 o’clock.
   Please make sure that you’re here by 2 o’clock.
5 If we leave now, we should arrive not later than lunchtime.
   If we leave now, we should arrive by lunchtime.

120.2 Put in by or until.
1 Steve has gone away. He’ll be away until until Monday.
2 Sorry, but I must go. I have to be home ........ 5 o’clock.
3 I’ve been offered a job. I haven’t decided yet whether to accept it or not. I have to decide ..... Friday.
4 I think I’ll wait ................ Thursday before making a decision.
5 It’s too late to go shopping. The shops are open only .......... 5.30 today. They’ll be closed ........ now.
6 I need to pay the phone bill. It has to be paid tomorrow.
7 Don’t pay the bill today. Wait ........ tomorrow.
8 A: Have you finished redecorating your house?
   B: Not yet. We hope to finish .......... the end of the week.
9 A: I’m going out now. I’ll be back at about 10.30. Will you still be here?
   B: I don’t think so. I’ll probably have gone out ........ then.
10 I’m moving into my new flat next week. I’m staying with a friend ........ then.
11 I’ve got a lot of work to do. the time I finish, it will be time to go to bed.
12 If you want to take part in the competition, you have to apply .......... 3 April.

120.3 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences. Use by or until.
1 David is away at the moment. He’ll be away until Monday.
2 David is away at the moment. He’ll be back by Monday.
3 I’m just going out. I won’t be very long. Wait here.
4 I’m going out to buy a few things. It’s 4.30 now. I won’t be long. I’ll be back.
5 If you want to apply for the job, your application must be received.
6 Last night I watched TV.

120.4 Read the situations and complete the sentences using By the time .......
1 I was invited to a party, but I got there much later than I intended.
   By the time I got to the party ....... most of the other guests had left.
2 I intended to catch a train, but it took me longer than expected to get to the station.
   By the time I got to the station .......... my train had already left.
3 I wanted to go shopping after finishing my work. But I finished much later than expected.
   By the time I finished .......... it was too late to go shopping.
4 I saw two men who looked as if they were trying to steal a car. I called the police, but it was
   some time before they arrived.
   By the time the two men had disappeared ........
5 We climbed a mountain and it took us a very long time to get to the top. There wasn’t
   much time to enjoy the view.
   By the time we had to come down again. .......
Compare at, on and in:
- They arrived at 5 o'clock.
- They arrived on Friday.
- They arrived in October. / They arrived in 1998.

We use:

- **At** for the time of day:
  - at five o'clock
  - at 11.45
  - at midnight
  - at lunchtime
  - at sunset
  - etc.

- **On** for days and dates:
  - on Friday / on Fridays
  - on 16 May 2009
  - on Christmas Day
  - on my birthday

- **In** for longer periods (for example: months/years/seasons):
  - in October
  - in (the) winter
  - in 1998
  - in the 18th century
  - in the Middle Ages
  - in the past
  - in (the) future

We use **at** in these expressions:

- at night
- at the weekend / at weekends
- at Christmas
- at the moment / at present
- at the same time

We say:

- in the morning(s)
- in the afternoon(s)
- in the evening(s)

We do not use **at/on/in** before last/next/this/every:

- I'll see you next Friday. *(not on next Friday)*
- They got married last March.

In spoken English we often leave out **on** before days (Sunday/Monday etc.). So you can say:

- I'll see you on Friday. or I'll see you Friday.
- I don't work on Monday mornings. or I don't work Monday mornings.

In a few minutes / in six months etc.

- The train will be leaving in a few minutes. *(= a few minutes from now)*
- Andy has gone away. He'll be back in a week. *(= a week from now)*
- They'll be here in a moment. *(= a moment from now)*

You can also say: in six months' time, in a week's time etc.

- They're getting married in six months' time. or ... in six months.

We also use **in** ... to say how long it takes to do something:

- I learnt to drive in four weeks. *(= it took me four weeks to learn)*
Exercises

121.1 Put in at, on or in.

1 Mozart was born in Salzburg in 1756.
2 I've been invited to a wedding on 14 February.
3 Electricity prices are going up in October.
4 On weekends, we often go for long walks in the country.
5 I haven't seen Kate for a few days. I last saw her on Tuesday.
6 Jonathan is 63. He'll be retiring from his job in two years' time.
7 I'm busy right now, but I'll be with you at a moment.
8 My brother is an engineer, but he doesn't have a job at the moment.
9 There are usually a lot of parties about New Year's Eve.
10 I don't like driving at night.
11 My car is being repaired at the garage. It will be ready in two hours.
12 My phone and the doorbell rang at the same time.
13 Mary and David always go out for dinner on their wedding anniversary.
14 It was a short book and easy to read. I read it in a day.
15 At Saturday night I went to bed at midnight.
16 We travelled overnight and arrived at 5 o'clock the morning.
17 The course begins at 7 January and ends sometime in April.
18 I might not be at home at Tuesday morning, but I'll be there in the afternoon.

121.2 Complete the sentences. Use at, on or in + the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>the evening</th>
<th>about 20 minutes</th>
<th>the moment</th>
<th>1492</th>
<th>the same time</th>
<th>night</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Saturdays</td>
<td>21 July 1969</td>
<td>the Middle Ages</td>
<td>11 seconds</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Columbus made his first voyage from Europe to America in 1492.
2 If the sky is clear, you can see the stars.
3 After working hard during the day, I like to relax.
4 Neil Armstrong was the first man to walk on the moon.
5 It's difficult to listen if everyone is speaking.
6 Jazz became popular in the United States.
7 'Can I speak to Dan?' 'I'm afraid he's busy.'
8 Many of Europe's great cathedrals were built.
9 Ben is a very fast runner. He can run 100 metres.
10 Liz works from Monday to Friday. Sometimes she also works.

121.3 Which is correct: a, b, or both of them?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a</th>
<th>b</th>
<th>both</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
On time and in time

On time = punctual, not late. If something happens on time, it happens at the time that was planned:
- The 11.45 train left on time. (= it left at 11.45)
- I’ll meet you at 7.30. ‘OK, but please be on time.’ (= don’t be late, be there at 7.30)
- The conference was well-organised. Everything began and finished on time.

The opposite of on time is late:
- Be on time. Don’t be late.

In time (for something / to do something) = soon enough:
- Will you be home in time for dinner? (= soon enough for dinner)
- I’ve sent Tracey a birthday present. I hope it arrives in time (for her birthday).
  (= on or before her birthday)
- I’m in a hurry. I want to get home in time to see the game on TV.
  (= soon enough to see the game)

The opposite of in time is too late:
- I got home too late to see the game on TV.

You can say just in time (= almost too late):
- We got to the station just in time for our train.
- A child ran into the road in front of the car – I managed to stop just in time.

At the end and in the end

At the end (of something) = at the time when something ends. For example:
- at the end of the month
- at the end of January
- at the end of the game
- at the end of the film
- at the end of the course
- at the end of the concert

- I’m going away at the end of January / at the end of the month.
- At the end of the concert, everyone applauded.
- The players shook hands at the end of the game.

We do not say ‘in the end of ...’. So you cannot say ‘in the end of January’ or ‘in the end of the concert’.

The opposite of at the end (of ...) is at the beginning (of ...):
- I’m going away at the beginning of January. (not in the beginning)

In the end = finally.

We use in the end when we say what the final result of a situation was:
- We had a lot of problems with our car. We sold it in the end. (= finally we sold it)
- He got more and more angry. In the end he just walked out of the room.
- Alan couldn’t decide where to go for his holidays. He didn’t go anywhere in the end.
  (not at the end)

The opposite of in the end is usually at first:
- At first we didn’t get on very well, but in the end we became good friends.
Exercises

122.1 Complete the sentences with on time or in time.
1 The bus was late this morning, but it’s usually [on time].
2 The film was supposed to start at 8.30, but it didn’t begin [on time].
3 I like to get up [in time] to have a big breakfast before going to work.
4 We want to start the meeting [on time], so please don’t be late.
5 I’ve just washed this shirt. I want to wear it this evening, so I hope it will be dry.
6 The train service isn’t very good. The trains are rarely [on time].
7 I nearly missed my flight this morning. I got to the airport just [in time].
8 I almost forgot that it was Joe’s birthday. Fortunately I remembered [on time].
9 Why are you never [on time]? You always keep everybody waiting.

122.2 Read the situations and make sentences using just in time.
1 A child ran into the road in front of your car. You saw the child at the last moment.
   (manage / stop) I [just in time] managed to stop just in time.
2 You were walking home. Just after you got home, it started to rain very heavily.
   (get / home) I [just in time] got home just in time.
3 Tim was going to sit on the chair you had just painted. You said, ‘Don’t sit on that chair!’
   so he didn’t. (stop / him) I [just in time] stopped him.
4 You and a friend went to the cinema. You were late, and you thought you would miss the
   beginning of the film. But the film began just as you sat down in the cinema.
   (get / cinema / beginning / film) We [just in time] got to the cinema just in time.

122.3 Complete the sentences using at the end + the following:
   the course the game the interview the month the race
1 The players shook hands [at the end of the game].
2 I usually get paid [at the end of the month].
3 The students had a party [at the end of the year].
4 Two of the runners collapsed [at the end of the race].
5 To my surprise, I was offered the job [at the end of the interview].

122.4 Write sentences with In the end. Use the verb in brackets.
1 We had a lot of problems with our car. (sell) In the end we sold it.
2 Anna got more and more fed up with her job. (resign) In the end she resigned.
3 I tried to learn German, but I found it too difficult. (give up) In the end, I gave up.
4 We couldn’t decide whether to go to the party or not. (not / go) In the end, we decided not to go.

122.5 Put in at or in.
1 I’m going away [at] the end of the month.
2 It took me a long time to find a job. [in the end] the end I got a job in a hotel.
3 Are you going away [in] the beginning of August or [at] the end?
4 I couldn’t decide what to buy Laura for her birthday. I didn’t buy her anything [at] the end.
5 We waited ages for a taxi. We gave up [at] the end and walked home.
6 I’ll be moving to a new address [at] the end of September.
7 We had a few problems at first, but [in] the end everything was OK.
8 I’m going away [at] the end of this week.
9 A: I didn’t know what to do.
   B: Yes, you were in a difficult position. What did you do [at] the end?
In/at/on (position) 1

**In**
- in a room
- in a building
- in a box
- in a garden
- in a town/country
- in the city centre
- in a pool
- in the sea
- in a river

- There's no-one in the room / in the building / in the garden.
- What have you got in your hand / in your mouth?
- When we were in Italy, we spent a few days in Venice.
- I have a friend who lives in a small village in the mountains.
- There were some people swimming in the pool / in the sea / in the river.

**At**
- at the bus stop
- at the door
- at the roundabout
- at reception

- Who is that man standing at the bus stop / at the door / at the window?
- Turn left at the traffic lights / at the church / at the roundabout / at the junction.
- We have to get off the bus at the next stop.
- When you leave the hotel, please leave your key at reception. (= at the reception desk)

**On**
- on the ceiling
- on the door
- on the floor
- on the table
- on her nose
- on an island

- I sat on the floor / on the ground / on the grass / on the beach / on a chair.
- There's a dirty mark on the wall / on the ceiling / on your nose / on your shirt.
- Have you seen the notice on the notice board / on the door?
- You'll find details of TV programmes on page seven (of the newspaper).
- The hotel is on a small island in the middle of a lake.

**Compare in and at:**
- There were a lot of people in the shop. It was very crowded.
  Go along this road, then turn left at the shop.
- I'll meet you in the hotel lobby.
  I'll meet you at the entrance to the hotel.

**Compare in and on:**
- There is some water in the bottle.
  There is a label on the bottle.

**Compare at and on:**
- There is somebody at the door. Shall I go and see who it is?
  There is a notice on the door. It says ‘Do not disturb’.
Exercises

123.1 Answer the questions about the pictures. Use in, at or on with the words below the pictures.

1 Where's the label? On the bottle.
2 Where's the fly?
3 Where is the car waiting?
4 a Where's the notice?  
   b Where's the key?
5 Where are the shelves?
6 Where's the Eiffel Tower?
7 a Where's the man standing?  
   b Where's the bird?
8 Where are the children playing?

123.2 Complete the sentences. Use in, at or on + the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>the window</th>
<th>your coffee</th>
<th>the mountains</th>
<th>that tree</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>my guitar</td>
<td>the river</td>
<td>the island</td>
<td>the next petrol station</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Look at those people swimming in the river.
2 One of the strings is broken.
3 There's something wrong with the car. We'd better stop.
4 Would you like sugar?
5 The leaves are a beautiful colour.
6 Last year we had a wonderful skiing holiday.
7 There's nobody living. It's uninhabited.
8 He spends most of the day sitting and looking outside.

123.3 Complete the sentences with in, at or on.

1 There was a long queue of people at the bus stop.
2 Nicola was wearing a silver ring on her little finger.
3 There was an accident at the crossroads this morning.
4 I wasn’t sure whether I had come to the right office. There was no name on the door.
5 There are some beautiful trees in the park.
6 You’ll find the sports results in the back page of the newspaper.
7 I wouldn’t like an office job. I couldn’t spend the whole day sitting at a computer.
8 My brother lives in a small village in the south-west of England.
9 The man the police are looking for has a scar on his right cheek.
10 The headquarters of the company are in Milan.
11 I like that picture hanging on the wall in the kitchen.
12 If you come here by bus, get off at the stop after the traffic lights.

Additional exercise 34 (page 322)
We say that somebody/something is:

- in a line / in a row / in a queue
- in the sky / in the world
- in an office / in a department
- in a book / in a paper (= newspaper) / in a magazine / in a letter
- in bed
- in the country / in the countryside
- in a picture / in a photo / in a photograph

- When I go to the cinema, I like to sit in the front row.
- James isn’t up yet. He’s still in bed.
- It was a lovely day. There wasn’t a cloud in the sky.
- I’ve just started working in the sales department.
- Who is the woman in that photo?
- Have you seen this picture in today’s paper?

- In Britain we drive on the left. or ... on the left-hand side.
- Our apartment is on the second floor of the building.
- Here’s a shopping list. Don’t buy anything that’s not on the list.
- Have you ever worked on a farm?

- Budapest is on the (river) Danube.
- The town where you live – is it on the coast or inland?

- Also on the way:
  - We stopped to buy some things in a shop on the way home.

- at the top (of) / at the bottom (of) / at the end (of)
  - Write your name at the top of the page.
  - Jane’s house is at the other end of the street.

- at the top (of the page)

- in the front / in the back of a car
  - I was sitting in the back (of the car) when we crashed.

- at the back

- at the front / at the back of a building / theatre / group of people etc.
  - The garden is at the back of the house.
  - Let’s sit at the front (of the cinema).
  - We were at the back, so we couldn’t see very well.

- on the front / on the back of a letter / piece of paper etc.
  - I wrote the date on the back of the photo.

- in the corner of a room
  - The TV is in the corner of the room.

- at the corner or on the corner of a street
  - There is a small shop at/on the corner of the street.
Exercises

124.1 Answer the questions about the pictures. Use *in*, *at* or *on* with the words below the pictures.

1. Where does Sue work? In the sales department.
2. Sue lives in this building. Where's her flat exactly?
3. Where is the woman standing?
4. Where is the man standing?
5. Where's the cat?
6. Where's the dog?
7. Liz is in this group of people. Where is she?
8. Where's the post office?
9. Gary is at the cinema. Where is he sitting?
10. Where does Kate work?

124.2 Complete the sentences. Use *in*, *at* or *on* + the following:

- the west coast
- the world
- the back of the class
- the sky
- the way to work
- the front row
- the right
- the back of this card
- the way to work

1. It was a lovely day. There wasn’t a cloud in the sky.
2. In most countries people drive in most countries people drive.
3. What is the tallest building in the world?
4. I usually buy a newspaper in the morning.
5. San Francisco is in the west coast of the United States.
6. We went to the theatre last night. We had seats in the back of the row.
7. I couldn’t hear the teacher. She spoke quietly and I was sitting on the left of the seat.
8. I don’t have your address. Could you write it in the mail? 

124.3 Complete the sentences with in, at or on.

1. Write your name at the top of the page.
2. Is your sister in this photograph? I don’t recognise her.
3. I didn’t feel very well when I woke up, so I stayed in bed.
4. We normally use the front entrance to the building, but there’s another one in the back.
5. Is there anything interesting in the paper today?
6. There was a list of names, but my name wasn’t on the list.
7. At the end of the street, there is a path leading to the river.
8. I love to look up at the stars in the sky at night.
9. When I’m a passenger in a car, I prefer to sit in the front.
10. I live in a very small village. You probably won’t find it in your map.
11. Joe works in the furniture department of a large store.
12. Paris is on the river Seine.
13. I don’t like cities. I’d much prefer to live in the country.
14. My office is on the top floor. It’s in the left as you come out of the lift.
In hospital / at work etc.

We say that somebody is in hospital / in prison / in jail:
- Anna's mother is in hospital.

We say that somebody is at work / at school / at university / at college:
- I'll be at work until 5.30.
- Julia is studying chemistry at university.

We say that somebody is at home or is home (with or without at), but we say do something at home (with at):
- I'll be at home all evening. or I'll be home all evening.
- Shall we go to a restaurant or eat at home?

At a party / at a concert etc.

We say that somebody is at an event (at a party / at a conference etc.):
- Were there many people at the party / at the meeting / at the wedding?
- I saw Steve at a conference / at a concert on Saturday.

In and at for buildings

You can often use in or at with buildings. For example, you can eat in a restaurant or at a restaurant; you can buy something in a supermarket or at a supermarket. We usually say at when we say where an event takes place (for example: a concert, a film, a party, a meeting):
- We went to a concert at the National Concert Hall.
- The meeting took place at the company's head office in Frankfurt.
- There was a robbery at the supermarket.

We say at the station / at the airport:
- There's no need to meet me at the station. I can get a taxi.

We say at somebody's house:
- I was at Helen's house last night. or I was at Helen's last night.
Also at the doctor's / at the hairdresser's etc.

We use in when we are thinking about the building itself. Compare:
- We had dinner at the hotel.
  All the rooms in the hotel have air conditioning. (not at the hotel)
- I was at Helen's (house) last night.
  It's always cold in Helen's house. The heating doesn't work well. (not at Helen's house)

In and at for towns etc.

We normally use in with cities, towns and villages:
- The Louvre is a famous art museum in Paris. (not at Paris)
- Sam's parents live in a village in the south of France. (not at a village)

We use at when we think of the place as a point or station on a journey:
- Does this train stop at Oxford? (= at Oxford station)

On a bus / in a car etc.

We usually say on a bus / on a train / on a plane / on a ship but in a car / in a taxi:
- The bus was very full. There were too many people on it.
- Laura arrived in a taxi.

We say on a bike (= bicycle) / on a motorbike / on a horse:
- Jane passed me on her bike.
Exercises

125.1 Complete the sentences about the pictures. Use in, at or on with the words below the pictures.

1. You can hire a car _____________________________.
2. Dave is ____________________________________.
3. Karen is ____________________________________.
4. Martin is ____________________________________.
5. Judy is _____________________________________.
6. I saw Gary ____________________________________________________________________________.
7. We spent a few days ____________________________________________.
8. We went to a show ____________________________________________.

125.2 Complete the sentences. Use in, at or on + the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>the plane</th>
<th>hospital</th>
<th>a taxi</th>
<th>the station</th>
<th>the cinema</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tokyo</td>
<td>school</td>
<td>prison</td>
<td>the airport</td>
<td>the sports centre</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. My train arrives at 11.30. Can you meet me ____________________________? 
2. We walked to the restaurant, but we went home ____________________________.
3. I’d like to see a film. What’s on __________________________________________ this week?
4. Some people are ____________________________________ for crimes that they did not commit.
5. ‘What does your sister do? Does she have a job?’ ‘No, she’s still ____________________________________.’
6. I play basketball ____________________________________ on Friday evenings.
7. A friend of mine was injured in an accident a few days ago. She’s still ____________________________________.
8. Our flight was delayed. We had to wait ____________________________________ for four hours.
9. I enjoyed the flight, but the food ____________________________________ wasn’t very nice.
10. Vicky has gone to Japan. She’s living ____________________________________.

125.3 Complete these sentences with in, at or on.

1. We went to a concert ______________________ the National Concert Hall.
2. It was a very slow train. It stopped __________ every station.
3. My parents live __________ a small village about 50 miles from London.
4. I haven’t seen Kate for some time. I last saw her __________ David’s wedding.
5. We stayed __________ a very comfortable hotel when we were __________ Amsterdam.
6. There were about fifty rooms __________ the hotel.
7. I don’t know where my umbrella is. Perhaps I left it __________ the bus.
8. ‘Where were you on Monday evening?’ ‘I was __________ a friend’s house.’
9. There must be somebody __________ the house. The lights are on.
10. The exhibition __________ the Museum of Modern Art finishes on Saturday.
11. Shall we travel __________ your car or mine?
12. I didn’t expect you to be __________ home. I thought you’d be __________ work.
13. ‘Did you like the movie?’ ‘Yes, but it was too hot __________ the cinema.’
14. Paul lives __________ Birmingham. He’s a student __________ Birmingham University.

Additional exercise 34 (page 322)
**To/at/in/into**

We say *go/come/travel* (etc.) *to* a place or event. For example:

- go to China
- go back to Italy
- return to London
- welcome somebody to a place

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>go back to Italy</th>
<th>go to the bank</th>
<th>come to my house</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>go to bed</td>
<td>go to a concert</td>
<td>be taken to hospital</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go to a concert</td>
<td>go to the bank</td>
<td>be sent to prison</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- When are your friends *going back to Italy*?  *(not going back in Italy)*
- Three people were injured in the accident and *taken to hospital*.
- Welcome *to our country*!  *(not Welcome in)*

In the same way we say *a journey to / a trip to / a visit to / on my way to ...* etc.:

- Did you enjoy your *trip to Paris / your visit to the zoo*?

Compare *to* (for movement) and *in/at* (for position):

- They are *going to* France.  *but*  They *live in* France.
- Can you *come to* the party?  *but*  I’ll *see you at* the party.

We say *been to* a place or an event:

- I’ve *been to Italy* four times, but I’ve never *been to Rome*.
- Amanda has never *been to a football match* in her life.

**Get and arrive**

We say *get to* a place:

- What time did they *get to London / to work / to the hotel*?

But we say *arrive in ... or arrive at ...* *(not arrive to)*.

We say *arrive in* a town, city or country:

- They *arrived in London / in Spain* a week ago.

For other places (buildings etc.) or events, we say *arrive at*:

- When did they *arrive at the hotel / at the airport / at the party*?

**Home**

We say *go home / come home / get home / arrive home / on the way home* etc. *(no preposition)*.

We do not say ‘*to home*’:

- I’m tired. Let’s *go home* now.  *(not go to home)*
- I met Lisa on my *way home*.  *(not my way to home)*

**Into**

Go into, get into ... etc. = enter (a room / a building / a car etc.):

- I opened the door, *went into* the room and sat down.
- A bird *flew into* the kitchen through the window.
- Every month, my salary is *paid* directly *into* my bank account.

With some verbs (especially *go/get/put*) we often use *in* (instead of *into*):

- She *got in* the car and drove away.  *(or She *got into* the car ...)*
- I read the letter and *put it back in* the envelope.

The opposite of *into* is *out of*:

- She *got out of* the car and *went into* a shop.

We usually say ‘*get on/off* a bus / a train / a plane’ *(not usually into/out of)*:

- She *got on the bus* and I never saw her again.
126.1 Put in to/at/in/into where necessary. If no preposition is necessary, leave the space empty.

1 Three people were taken ______ hospital after the accident.
2 I met Kate on my way ______ home. (no preposition)
3 We left our luggage ______ the station and went to find something to eat.
4 Shall we take a taxi ______ the station or shall we walk?
5 I have to go ______ the bank today. What time does it open?
6 The Amazon flows ______ the Atlantic Ocean.
7 ‘Do you have your camera with you?’ ‘No, I left it ______ the car.’
8 Have you ever been ______ China?
9 I had lost my key, but I managed to climb ______ the house through a window.
10 We got stuck in a traffic jam on our way ______ the airport.
11 We had lunch ______ the airport while we were waiting for our plane.
12 Welcome ______ the hotel. We hope you enjoy your stay here.
13 We drove along the main road for about a kilometre and then turned ______ a narrow side street.
14 Did you enjoy your visit ______ the museum?
15 I’m tired. As soon as I get ______ home, I’m going ______ bed.
16 Marcel is French. He has just returned ______ France after two years ______ Brazil.
17 Carl was born ______ Chicago, but his family moved ______ New York when he was three. He still lives ______ New York.

126.2 Have you been to these places? If so, how many times? Choose three of the places and write a sentence using been to.

Athens Rome Australia Hong Kong Mexico Paris
Rome Singapore Sweden Tokyo the United States

1 (example answers) I’ve never been to Australia. I’ve been to Mexico once.
2 __________________________
3 __________________________
4 __________________________

126.3 Put in to/at/in where necessary. If no preposition is necessary, leave the space empty.

1 What time does this train get ______ London?
2 We arrived ______ Barcelona a few days ago.
3 What time did you get ______ home last night?
4 What time do you usually arrive ______ work in the morning?
5 When we got ______ the cinema, there was a long queue outside.
6 I arrived ______ home feeling very tired.

126.4 Write sentences using got + into / out of / on / off.

1 You were walking home. A friend passed you in her car. She saw you, stopped and offered you a lift. She opened the door. What did you do? I ______ into the car.
2 You were waiting for the bus. At last your bus came. The doors opened. What did you do then? I ______ the bus.
3 You drove home in your car. You stopped outside your house and parked the car. What did you do then?
4 You were travelling by train to Manchester. When the train got to Manchester, what did you do?
5 You needed a taxi. After a few minutes a taxi stopped for you. You opened the door. What did you do then?
6 You were travelling by air. At the end of your flight, your plane landed at the airport and stopped. The doors were opened, you took your bag and stood up. What did you do then?
**In/on/at (other uses)**

### In

in the rain / in the sun / in the shade / in the dark / in bad weather etc.
- We sat in the shade. It was too hot to sit in the sun.
- Don’t go out in the rain. Wait until it stops.

(write) in ink / in pen / in pencil
- When you do the exam, you’re not allowed to write in pencil.

Also (write) in words / in figures / in capital letters etc.
- Please write your name in capital letters.
- Write the story in your own words. (= don’t copy somebody else)

(be/fall) in love (with somebody)
- They’re very happy together. They’re in love.

in (my) opinion
- In my opinion, the movie wasn’t very good.

### On

on TV / on television / on the radio
- I didn’t watch the news on television, but I heard it on the radio.

on the phone
- I’ve never met her, but I’ve spoken to her on the phone a few times.

(be/go) on strike
- There are no trains today. The drivers are on strike.

(be/go) on a diet
- I’ve put on a lot of weight. I’ll have to go on a diet.

(be) on fire
- Look! That car is on fire.

on the whole (= in general)
- Sometimes I have problems at work, but on the whole I enjoy my job.

on purpose (= intentionally)
- I’m sorry. I didn’t mean to annoy you. I didn’t do it on purpose.

### On holiday / on a trip etc.

We say: (be/go) on holiday / on business / on a trip / on a tour / on a cruise etc.
- I’m going on holiday next week.
- Emma’s away on business at the moment.
- One day I’d like to go on a world tour.

You can also say ‘go to a place for a holiday / for my holiday(s)’:
- Steve has gone to France for a holiday.

### At the age of ... etc.

We say at the age of 16 / at 120 miles an hour / at 100 degrees etc.
- Tracy left school at 16. or ... at the age of 16.
- The train was travelling at 120 miles an hour.
- Water boils at 100 degrees Celsius.
Exercises

127.1 Complete the sentences using in + the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>capital letters</th>
<th>cold weather</th>
<th>love</th>
<th>my opinion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Don’t go out in the rain. Wait until it stops.
2. Matt likes to keep warm, so he doesn’t go out much in the cold weather.
3. I don’t agree with you and make a mistake, you can rub it out and correct it.
4. They fell in love almost immediately and were married in a few weeks.
5. Please write your address clearly, preferably in the shade.
6. It’s too hot in the sun. I’m going to sit in the shade.
7. Amanda thought the restaurant was OK, but in my opinion it wasn’t very good.

127.2 Complete the sentences using on + the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>business</th>
<th>a diet</th>
<th>fire</th>
<th>holiday</th>
<th>the phone</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>purpose</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Look! That car is on fire! Somebody call the fire brigade.
2. Workers at the factory have gone on strike for better pay and conditions.
3. Soon after we arrived, we were taken on a tour of the city.
4. I feel lazy this evening. Is there anything worth watching on TV?
5. I’m sorry. It was an accident. I didn’t do it.
6. Richard has put on a lot of weight recently. I think he should go on a diet.
7. Jane’s job involves a lot of travelling. She often has to go away on holiday.
8. A: I’m going on holiday next week.
   B: Where are you going? Somewhere nice?
9. A: Is Sarah here?
   B: Yes, but she’s on the phone at the moment. She won’t be long.
10. A: How was your exam?
    B: Well, there were some difficult questions, but in my opinion it was OK.

127.3 Complete the sentences with in, on or at.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>water boils</th>
<th>went</th>
<th>there was panic</th>
<th>died recently</th>
<th>can you turn the light on</th>
<th>don’t want to sit</th>
<th>didn’t go</th>
<th>hate driving</th>
<th>won’t be here next week</th>
<th>has developed</th>
<th>got married</th>
<th>heard an interesting programme</th>
<th>my opinion</th>
<th>travel round the sun</th>
<th>‘Did you enjoy your holiday?’ ‘Not every minute, but’</th>
<th>were damaged</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Water boils at 100 degrees Celsius.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. When I was 14, I went on a trip to France organised by my school.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. There was panic when people realised that the building was on fire.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Julia’s grandmother died recently on the age of 79.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Can you turn the light on, please? I don’t want to sit in the dark.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. We didn’t go on holiday last year. We stayed at home.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. I hate driving in fog. You can’t see anything.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. I won’t be here next week. I’ll be on holiday.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Technology has developed at great speed.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Alan got married at 17, which is rather young to get married.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. I heard an interesting programme on the radio this morning.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. In my opinion, violent films should not be shown on television.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. I wouldn’t like to go on a cruise. I think I’d get bored.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. I shouldn’t eat too much. I’m supposed to be on a diet.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. I wouldn’t like his job. He spends most of his time talking on the phone.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. The earth travels round the sun at 107,000 kilometres an hour.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. ‘Did you enjoy your holiday?’ ‘Not every minute, but for the whole, yes.’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. A lot of houses were damaged on the storm last week.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
We use **by** in many expressions to say how we do something. For example, you can:
- send something **by post**
- contact somebody **by phone** / **by email**
- do something **by hand**
- pay **by credit card** / **by cheque**

- Can I pay **by credit card**?
- You can contact me **by phone** or **by email**.

But we say **pay cash** or **pay in cash** (*not usually by cash*).

We also say that something happens **by mistake** / **by accident** / **by chance**:
- We hadn’t arranged to meet. We met **by chance**.
- But we say ‘do something **on purpose**’ (= you mean to do it):
- I didn’t do it **on purpose**. It was an accident.

Note that we say **by chance**, **by credit card** etc. (*not by the chance / by a credit card*). In these expressions we use **by + noun** without the or a.

In the same way we use **by** … to say how somebody travels:
- **by car** / **by train** / **by plane** / **by boat** / **by ship** / **by bus** / **by bike** etc.
- **by road** / **by rail** / **by air** / **by sea**
- Jess usually goes to work **by bus**.

But we say **on foot**:
- Did you come here **by car** or **on foot**?

You cannot use **by** if you say **my car** / **the train** / **a taxi** etc. We say:
- **by car** but **in my car** (*not by my car*)
- **by train** but **on the train** (*not by the train*)

We use **in** for cars and taxis:
- They didn’t come in **their car**. They came in **a taxi**.

We use **on** for bikes and public transport (buses, trains etc.):
- We travelled **on the 6.45 train**.

We say that ‘something is done **by somebody/something**’ (*passive*):
- Have you ever been bitten **by a dog**?
- The programme was watched **by millions of people**.

Compare **by** and **with**:
- The door must have been opened **with a key**. (*not by a key*)
  (= somebody used a key to open it)
- The door must have been opened **by somebody** with a key.

We say ‘a play **by Shakespeare**’ / ‘a painting **by Rembrandt**’ / ‘a novel **by Tolstoy**’ etc.:
- Have you read anything **by Ernest Hemingway**?

**By** also means ‘next to / beside’:
- Come and sit **by me**. (= next to me)
- ‘Where’s the light switch?’ ‘**By the door.**’

Note the following use of **by**:
- Clare’s salary has just gone up **from £2,500 a month to £2,750**. So it has increased **by £250** / **by ten per cent**.
- Carl and Mike had a race over 200 metres. Carl won **by about three metres**.

**new salary** £2,750
**increased by** £250
**old salary** £2,500

---

**Passive + by** → **Unit 42B**
**By + -ing** → **Unit 60B**
**By myself** → **Unit 83D**
**By (time)** → **Unit 120**
128.1 Complete the sentences using **by** + the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>canal</th>
<th>chance</th>
<th>credit card</th>
<th>hand</th>
<th>mistake</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. We hadn’t arranged to meet. We met **by chance**.
2. I didn’t intend to take your umbrella. I took it **by mistake**.
3. Don’t put the sweater in the washing machine. It has to be washed **by hand**.
4. I don’t need cash. I can pay the bill **by credit card**.
5. The town is not on the coast, but is connected to the sea **by canal**.

128.2 Put in **by**, **in** or **on**.

1. Jess usually goes to work **by** bus.
2. I saw Jane this morning. She was **in** the bus.
3. How did you get here? Did you come **by** train?
4. I decided not to go **on** car. I went **on** my bike instead.
5. I didn’t feel like walking home, so I came home **by** a taxi.
6. Sorry we’re late. We missed the bus, so we had to come **on** foot.
7. How long does it take to cross the Atlantic **on** ship?

128.3 All these sentences have a mistake. Correct them.

1. Did you come here by Kate’s car or yours? **in Kate’s car**
2. I don’t like travelling on bus. **on** bus.
3. These photographs were taken by a very good camera. **by** a very good camera.
4. I know this music is from Beethoven, but I can’t remember what it’s called. **by** Beethoven, but I can’t remember what it’s called.
5. I couldn’t pay by cash – I didn’t have any money on me. **by** cash.
6. We lost the game because of a mistake of one of our players. **by** a mistake of one of our players.

128.4 Write three sentences like the examples. Write about a song, a painting, a film, a book etc.

1. **War and Peace** is a book by Tolstoy.
2. **Romeo and Juliet** is a play by Shakespeare.
3. **The Da Vinci Code** is a novel by Dan Brown.

128.5 Put in **by**, **in**, **on** or **with**.

1. Have you ever been bitten **by** a dog?
2. The plane was badly damaged **by** lightning.
3. We managed to put the fire out **with** a fire extinguisher.
4. Who is that man standing **in** the window?
5. These photographs were taken **by** a friend of mine.
6. I don’t mind going **in** car, but I don’t want to go **in** your car.
7. There was a small table **on** the bed **with** a lamp and a clock **on** it.

128.6 Complete the sentences using **by**.

1. Clare’s salary was £2,500 a month. Now it is £2,750. **Her salary has increased by** £250.
2. My daily newspaper used to cost 80 pence. From today it costs 90. **The price has gone up**
3. There was an election. Helen won. She got 25 votes and James got 23. **Helen won**
4. I went to Kate’s house to see her, but she had gone out five minutes before I arrived. **I missed**
Noun + preposition  
(reason for, cause of etc.)

A  
Noun + for ...  
- a demand / a need FOR ...  
  - The company closed down because there wasn’t enough demand for its product.  
  - There’s no excuse for behaviour like that. There’s no need for it.  
- a reason FOR ...  
  - The train was late, but nobody knew the reason for the delay. (not reason of)

B  
Noun + of ...  
- an advantage / a disadvantage OF ...  
  - The advantage of living alone is that you can do what you like.  
  - but there is an advantage in (or to) doing something  
  -There are many advantages in living alone. or ... many advantages to living alone.  
- a cause OF ...  
  - The cause of the explosion is unknown.  
- a picture / a photo / a photograph / a map / a plan / a drawing (etc.) OF ...  
  - Rachel showed me some pictures of her family.  
  - I had a map of the town, so I was able to find my way around.

C  
Noun + in ...  
- an increase / a decrease / a rise / a fall IN (prices etc.)  
  - There has been an increase in the number of road accidents recently.  
  - Last year was a bad one for the company. There was a big fall in sales.

D  
Noun + to ...  
- damage TO ...  
  - The accident was my fault, so I had to pay for the damage to the other car.  
- an invitation TO ... (a party / a wedding etc.)  
  - Did you get an invitation to the party?  
- a solution TO (a problem) / a key TO (a door) / an answer TO (a question) / a reply TO (a letter) / a reaction TO ...  
  - I hope we find a solution to the problem. (not a solution of the problem)  
  - I was surprised at her reaction to my suggestion.  
- an attitude TO ... or an attitude TOWARDS ...  
  - His attitude to his job is very negative. or His attitude towards his job ...

E  
Noun + with ... / between ...  
- a relationship / a connection / contact WITH ...  
  - Do you have a good relationship with your parents?  
  - The police want to question a man in connection with the robbery.  
  - but a relationship / a connection / contact / a difference BETWEEN two things or people  
  - The police believe that there is no connection between the two crimes.  
  - There are some differences between British and American English.
### Exercises

**129.1** Complete the second sentence so that it has the same meaning as the first.

1. What caused the explosion? What was the cause of the explosion?
2. We’re trying to solve the problem.
   We’re trying to find a solution.
3. Sue gets on well with her brother.
   Sue has a good relationship with her brother.
4. The cost of living has gone up a lot.
   There has been a big increase in the cost of living.
5. I don’t know how to answer your question.
   I can’t think of an answer.
6. I don’t think that a new road is necessary.
   I don’t think there is any need for a new road.
7. I think that working at home has many advantages.
   I think that there are many advantages to working at home.
8. The number of people without jobs fell last month.
   Last month there was a fall in the number of people without jobs.
9. Nobody wants to buy shoes like these any more.
   There is no demand for shoes like these any more.
10. In what way is your job different from mine?
    What is the difference between our jobs?

### 129.2 Complete the sentences using these nouns + a preposition:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>cause</th>
<th>connection</th>
<th>contact</th>
<th>damage</th>
<th>reason</th>
<th>invitation</th>
<th>key</th>
<th>map</th>
<th>photographs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. On the wall there were some pictures and a map of the world.
2. Thank you for the invitation to your party next week.
3. Since she left home two years ago, Sophie has had little contact with her family.
4. I can’t open this door. Do you have a key to the other door?
5. The cause of the fire at the hotel last week is still unknown.
6. Did you get a reply to the email you sent to the company?
7. The two companies are completely independent. There is no connection between them.
8. Jane showed me some old photographs of the city as it looked 100 years ago.
9. Carol has decided to give up her job. I don’t know her reaction to doing this.
10. It wasn’t a bad accident. The damage to the car wasn’t serious.

### 129.3 Complete the sentences with the correct preposition.

1. There are some differences between British and American English.
2. Money isn’t the solution to every problem.
3. There has been an increase in the amount of traffic using this road.
4. The advantage of having a car is that you don’t have to rely on public transport.
5. There are many advantages of being able to speak a foreign language.
6. Everything can be explained. There’s a reason for everything.
7. When Paul left home, his attitude towards his parents seemed to change.
8. Ben and I used to be good friends, but I don’t have much contact with him now.
9. There has been a sharp rise in property prices in the past few years.
10. What was Sarah’s reaction to the news?
11. If I give you the camera, can you take a picture of me?
12. The company has rejected the workers’ demands for a rise in pay.
13. What was the answer to question 3 in the test?
14. The fact that Jane was offered a job has no connection to the fact that she is a friend of the managing director.
### Adjective + preposition 1

**It was nice of you to ...**

- **nice / kind / good / generous / polite / stupid / silly etc.** **OF somebody** (to do something)
  - Thank you. It was very **kind of you** to help me.
  - It is **stupid of me** to go out without a coat in such cold weather.

- **(be) nice / kind / good / generous / polite / rude / friendly / cruel etc.** **TO somebody**
  - They have always been very **nice to me**. (*not with me*)
  - Why were you so **unfriendly to Lucy**?

### Adjective + about / with

- **angry / annoyed / furious / upset**
  - **ABOUT something**
  - **WITH somebody FOR doing something**
  - There's no point in getting **angry about** things that don't matter.
  - Are you **annoyed with me** for being late?
  - Lisa is **upset about** not being invited to the party.

- **excited / worried / nervous / happy etc.** **ABOUT a situation**
  - Are you **nervous about** the exam?

- **pleased / satisfied / happy / delighted / disappointed** **WITH something you receive, or the result of something**
  - They were **delighted with the present I gave them**.
  - Were you **happy with your exam results**?

### Adjective + at / by / with / of

- **surprised / shocked / amazed / astonished / upset AT or BY something**
  - Everybody was **surprised AT or BY** the news.
  - I hope you weren't **shocked by (or at)** what I said.

- **impressed WITH or BY somebody/something**
  - I'm very **impressed with (or by)** her English. It's very good.

- **fed up / bored WITH something**
  - I don't enjoy my job any more. I'm **fed up with** it. / I'm **bored with** it.

- **tired / sick OF something**
  - Come on, let's go! I'm **tired of waiting**. / I'm **sick of waiting**.

### Sorry about / for

- **sorry ABOUT a situation or something that happened**
  - I'm **sorry about** the mess. I'll clear it up later.
  - Sorry about last night. (= Sorry about something that happened last night)

- **sorry FOR or ABOUT something you did**
  - Alex is very **sorry for** what he said. (or **sorry about** what he said)
  - I'm **sorry for** shouting at you yesterday. (or **sorry about** shouting)

  You can also say 'I'm sorry I (did something)'
  - I'm **sorry I shouted at** you yesterday.

- **feel / be sorry FOR somebody who is in a bad situation**
  - I feel **sorry for Matt**. He's had a lot of bad luck. (*not I feel sorry about Matt*)
130.1 Complete the sentences using nice of ..., kind of ... etc.

1. I went out in the cold without a coat. (silly) That was of you.

2. Tom offered to drive me to the airport. (nice) That was him.

3. I needed money and Sue gave me some. (generous) That wasn’t .

4. They didn’t invite us to their party. (not very nice) That wasn’t .

5. Can I help you with your luggage? (very kind) That wasn’t .

6. Kevin never says ‘thank you’. (not very polite) That wasn’t .

7. They’ve had an argument and now they refuse to speak to each other. (a bit childish)

130.2 Complete the sentences using these adjectives + a preposition:

amazed angry bored careless excited impressed kind nervous

1. Are you nervous about the exam?
2. Thank you for all you’ve done. You’ve been very impressed me.
3. What have I done wrong? Why are you angry me?
4. You must be very excited your trip next week. It sounds really great.
5. I wasn’t impressed the service in the restaurant. We had to wait ages before our food arrived.
6. Ben isn’t very happy at college. He says he’s bored the course he’s doing.
7. I’d never seen so many people before. I was amazed the crowds.
8. It was careless you to leave the door unlocked when you went out.

130.3 Put in the correct preposition.

1. They were delighted with the present I gave them.
2. It was nice you to come and see me when I was ill.
3. Why are you so rude people? Why can’t you be more polite?
4. We always have the same food every day. I’m fed up it.
5. We enjoyed our holiday, but we were a bit disappointed the hotel.
6. I can’t understand people who are cruel animals.
7. I was surprised the way he behaved. It was completely out of character.
8. I’ve been trying to learn Spanish, but I’m not very satisfied my progress.
9. Tanya doesn’t look very well. I’m worried her.
10. They told me they were sorry the situation, but there was nothing they could do.
11. I wouldn’t like to be in her position. I feel sorry her.
12. Are you still upset what I said to you yesterday?
13. Some people say Kate is unfriendly, but she’s always been very nice me.
14. I’m tired doing the same thing every day. I need a change.
15. The man we interviewed for the job was intelligent and we were impressed the way he answered our questions.
16. I’m sorry the smell of paint in this room. I’ve just finished redecorating it.
17. I was shocked what I saw. I’d never seen anything like it before.
18. Our neighbours were very angry the noise we made.
19. Our neighbours were furious us making so much noise.
20. I’m sorry what I did. I hope you’re not angry me.
Adjective + preposition 2

**Adjective + of (1)**

- afraid / frightened / terrified / scared OF...
  - 'Are you afraid of spiders?' ‘Yes, I’m terrified of them.’
- fond / proud / ashamed / jealous / envious OF...
  - Why are you always so jealous of other people?
- suspicious / critical / tolerant OF...
  - He didn’t trust me. He was suspicious of my motives.

**Adjective + of (2)**

- aware / conscious OF...
  - ‘Did you know he was married?’ ‘No, I wasn’t aware of that.’
- capable / incapable OF...
  - I’m sure you are capable of passing the examination.
- full / short OF...
  - Amy is a very active person. She’s always full of energy.
  - I’m short of money. Can you lend me some?
- typical OF...
  - He’s late again. It’s typical of him to keep everybody waiting.
- certain / sure OF or ABOUT...
  - I think she’s arriving this evening, but I’m not sure of that. or ... not sure about that.

**Adjective + at / to / from / in / on / with / for**

- good / bad / brilliant / better / hopeless etc. AT...
  - I’m not very good at repairing things. (not good in repairing things)
- married / engaged TO...
  - Louise is married to an American. (not married with)
  - but Louise is married with three children. (= she is married and has three children)
- similar TO...
  - Your writing is similar to mine.
- different FROM or different TO...
  - The film was different from what I’d expected. or ... different to what I’d expected.
- interested IN...
  - Are you interested in art?
- keen ON...
  - We stayed at home because Chris wasn’t very keen on going out.
- dependent ON... (but independent OF...)
  - I don’t want to be dependent on anybody.
- crowded WITH (people etc.)
  - The streets were crowded with tourists. (but ... full of tourists)
- famous FOR...
  - The Italian city of Florence is famous for its art treasures.
- responsible FOR...
  - Who was responsible for all that noise last night?
Complete the sentences using these adjectives + the correct preposition:

afraid capable different interested proud responsible similar sure

1. I think she’s arriving this evening, but I’m not sure of that.
2. Your camera is mine, but it isn’t exactly the same.
3. Don’t worry. I’ll look after you. There’s nothing to be afraid of.
4. I never watch the news on TV. I’m not interested in the news.
5. The editor is the person who is responsible for what appears in a newspaper.
6. Sarah is a keen gardener. She’s very proud of her garden and loves showing it to visitors.
7. I was surprised when I met Lisa for the first time. She was different from what I expected.
8. He could become world champion one day. He’s sure of it.

Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first.

1. There were lots of tourists in the streets. The streets were crowded with tourists.
2. There was a lot of furniture in the room. The room was full of furniture.
3. I don’t like sport very much. I’m not very keen on sport.
4. We don’t have enough time. We’re short of time.
5. I’m not a very good tennis player. I’m not very good at tennis.
6. Catherine’s husband is Russian. Catherine is married to a Russian.
8. My problem is not the same as yours. My problem is different from yours.

Put in the correct preposition.

1. Amy is always full of energy.
2. My home town is not a very interesting place. It’s not famous for anything.
3. Kate is very fond of her younger brother.
4. I don’t like going up ladders. I’m scared of heights.
6. ‘Our flight departs at 10.35.’ ‘Are you sure about that?’
7. I’m not ashamed of what I did. In fact I’m quite proud of it.
8. I wanted to go out for a meal, but nobody else was keen on the idea.
9. These days everybody is aware of the dangers of smoking.
10. The station platform was crowded with people waiting for the train.
11. Sue is much more successful than I am. Sometimes I feel a bit jealous of her.
12. Do you know anyone who might be interested in buying an old car?
13. We’ve got plenty to eat. The fridge is full of food.
14. She’s very honest. I don’t think she is capable of telling a lie.
15. Helen works hard and she’s extremely good at her job.
16. It’s typical of him to change his mind at the last minute.
17. Mark has no money of his own. He’s totally dependent on his parents.
18. We’re short of staff in our office at the moment. We need more people to do the work.

Write sentences about yourself. Are you good at these things or not? Use the following:

good pretty good not very good hopeless

1. (repairing things) I’m not very good at repairing things.
2. (telling jokes)
3. (maths)
4. (remembering names)
5. (sport)
Verb + to

talk / speak TO somebody (with is also possible but less usual)
  - Who was that man you were talking to?

listen TO ...
  - We spent the evening listening to music. (not listening music)
apologise TO somebody (for ...)
  - They apologised to me for what happened. (not They apologised me)
explain something TO somebody
  - Can you explain this word to me? (not explain me this word)
explain / describe (to somebody) what/how/why ...
  - I explained to them why I was worried. (not I explained them)
  - Let me describe to you what I saw. (not Let me describe you)

We do not use to with these verbs:

phone / call / email / text somebody
  - I called the airline to cancel my flight. (not called to the airline)

but write (a letter) to somebody

answer somebody/something
  - He refused to answer my question. (not answer to my question)

but reply to an email / a letter etc.

ask somebody
  - Can I ask you a question? (not ask to you)

thank somebody (for something)
  - He thanked me for helping him. (not He thanked to me)

Verb + at

look / stare / glance AT ... , have a look / take a look AT ...
  - Why are you looking at me like that?

laugh AT ...
  - I look stupid with this haircut. Everybody will laugh at me.

aim / point (something) AT ... , shoot / fire (a gun) AT ...
  - Don’t point that knife at me. It’s dangerous.
  - We saw someone with a gun shooting at birds, but he didn’t hit any.

Some verbs can be followed by at or to, with a difference in meaning. For example:

shout AT somebody (when you are angry)
  - He got very angry and started shouting at me.

shout TO somebody (so that they can hear you)
  - He shouted to me from the other side of the street.

throw something AT somebody/something (in order to hit them)
  - Somebody threw an egg at the minister.

throw something TO somebody (for somebody to catch)
  - Lisa shouted ‘Catch!’ and threw the keys to me from the window.
### Exercises

#### 132.1 Which is correct?

1. **a** Can you explain this word to me? ✓
   **b** Can you explain me this word?
2. **a** I got angry with Mark. Afterwards, I apologised to him.
   **b** I got angry with Mark. Afterwards I apologised him.
3. **a** Amy won’t be able to help you. There’s no point in asking to her.
   **b** Amy won’t be able to help you. There’s no point in asking her.
4. **a** I need somebody to explain me what I have to do.
   **b** I need somebody to explain to me what I have to do.
5. **a** They didn’t understand the system, so I explained it to them.
   **b** They didn’t understand the system, so I explained it them.
6. **a** I like to sit on the beach and listen to the sound of the sea.
   **b** I like to sit on the beach and listen the sound of the sea.
7. **a** I asked them to describe me exactly what happened.
   **b** I asked them to describe to me exactly what happened.
8. **a** We’d better phone the restaurant to reserve a table.
   **b** We’d better phone to the restaurant to reserve a table.
9. **a** It was a difficult question. I couldn’t answer to it.
   **b** It was a difficult question. I couldn’t answer it.
10. **a** I explained everybody the reasons for my decision.
    **b** I explained to everybody the reasons for my decision.
11. **a** I thanked everybody for all the help they had given me.
    **b** I thanked to everybody for all the help they had given me.
12. **a** My friend texted to me to let me know she was going to be late.
    **b** My friend texted me to let me know she was going to be late.

#### 132.2 Complete the sentences. Use these verbs + the correct preposition:

- explain
- laugh
- listen
- look
- point
- reply
- speak
- throw
- throw

1. I look stupid with this haircut. Everybody will **laugh** at me.
2. I don’t understand this. Can you **explain** it **to** me?
3. Sue and Kevin had an argument and now they’re refusing to **look** at each other.
4. Be careful with those scissors! Don’t **throw** them **at** me!
5. I’m not sure where we are. I’ll have to **look at** the map.
6. Please **point to** me! I’ve got something important to tell you.
7. Don’t **throw stones** **at** the birds! It’s cruel.
8. If you don’t want that sandwich, **throw it** **to** the birds. They’ll eat it.
9. I tried to contact Tina, but she didn’t **answer to** my emails.

#### 132.3 Put in **to** or **at**.

1. They apologised **to** me for what happened.
2. I glanced **at** my watch to see what time it was.
3. Please don’t shout **at** me! Try to calm down.
4. I saw Sue as I was cycling along the road. I shouted **to** her, but she didn’t hear me.
5. Don’t **listen** **to** what he says. He doesn’t know what he’s talking about.
6. What’s so funny? What are you **laughing** **to**?
7. Could I have a look **at** your magazine, please?
8. I’m lonely. I need somebody to **talk** **to**.
9. She was so angry she threw a book **at** the wall.
10. The woman sitting opposite me on the train kept staring **at** me.
11. Can I speak **to** you a moment? There’s something I want to ask you.
Verb + preposition 2  about/of/for/after

A Verb + about

- talk / read / know ABOUT …, tell somebody ABOUT ...
  - We talked about a lot of things at the meeting.
- have a discussion ABOUT something, but discuss something (no preposition)
  - We had a discussion about what we should do.
  - We discussed a lot of things at the meeting. (not discussed about)
- do something ABOUT something = do something to improve a bad situation
  - If you're worried about the problem, you should do something about it.

B Verb + for

- ask (somebody) FOR ...
  - I sent an email to the company asking them for more information about the job.
  - 'I asked him the way to …', 'She asked me my name' (no preposition)
- apply (TO a person, a company etc.) FOR a job etc.
  - I think you'd be good at this job. Why don't you apply for it?
- wait FOR ...
  - Don't wait for me. I'll join you later.
  - I'm not going out yet. I'm waiting for the rain to stop.
- search (a person / a place / a bag etc.) FOR ...
  - I've searched the house for my keys, but I still can't find them.
- leave (a place) FOR another place
  - I haven't seen her since she left (home) for the office this morning.
  - wait FOR ...

C Care about, care for and take care of

- care ABOUT somebody/something = think that somebody/something is important
  - He's very selfish. He doesn't care about other people.
- care FOR somebody/something
  - I don't care for very hot weather. (= I don't like ...)
  - Alan is 85 and lives alone. He needs somebody to care for him.
- take care OF ...
  - I'll take care of the travel arrangements. You don't need to do anything.

D Look for and look after

- look FOR ...
  - I've lost my keys. Can you help me to look for them?
- look AFTER ...
  - Alan is 85 and lives alone. He needs somebody to look after him. (not look for)
  - You can borrow this book, but you must promise to look after it.
Exercises

1. Put in the correct preposition. If no preposition is necessary, leave the space empty.

1. I’m not going out yet. I’m waiting ___ for ___ the rain to stop.
2. Don’t ask me ___ ___ money. I don’t have any.
3. I’ve applied ___ ___ a job at the factory. I don’t know if I’ll get it.
4. I’ve applied ___ ___ three colleges. I hope one of them accepts me.
5. I’ve searched everywhere ___ ___ Joe, but I haven’t been able to find him.
6. I don’t want to talk ___ ___ what happened last night. Let’s forget it.
7. I don’t want to discuss ___ ___ what happened last night. Let’s forget it.
8. We had an interesting discussion ___ ___ the problem, but we didn’t reach a decision.
9. We discussed ___ ___ the problem, but we didn’t reach a decision.
10. I sent her an email. Now I’m waiting ___ ___ her to reply.
11. Ken and Sonia are travelling in Italy. They’re in Rome right now, and tomorrow they leave ___ ___ Venice.
12. The roof of the house is in very bad condition. I think we ought to do something ___ ___ it.
13. We waited ___ ___ Steve for half an hour, but he never came.
14. Tomorrow morning I have to catch a plane. I’m leaving my house ___ ___ the airport at 7.30.

2. Put in the correct preposition after care. If no preposition is necessary, leave the space empty.

1. He’s very selfish. He doesn’t care ___ ___ other people.
2. Who’s going to take care ___ ___ you when you are old?
3. She doesn’t care ___ ___ the exam. She doesn’t care whether she passes or fails.
4. ‘Do you like this coat?’ ‘Not really. I don’t care ___ ___ the colour.’
5. Don’t worry about the shopping. I’ll take care ___ ___ that.
6. He gave up his job to care ___ ___ his elderly father.
7. I want to have a good holiday. I don’t care ___ ___ how much it costs.
8. I want to have a good holiday. I don’t care ___ ___ the cost.

3. Complete the sentences with look for or look after. Use the correct form of look (looks/looked/looking).

1. I looked ___ ___ my keys, but I couldn’t find them anywhere.
2. Kate is looking ___ ___ a job. I hope she finds one soon.
3. Who ___ ___ you when you were ill?
4. I’m looking ___ ___ Liz. I need to ask her something. Have you seen her?
5. The car park was full, so we had to ___ ___ somewhere else to park.
6. A babysitter is somebody who ___ ___ other people’s children.

4. Complete the sentences with these verbs (in the correct form) + a preposition:

apply ask do leave look search talk wait

1. Police are searching ___ ___ the man who escaped from prison.
2. Sarah wasn’t ready. We had to ___ ___ her.
3. I think Ben likes his job, but he doesn’t ___ ___ it much.
4. When I’d finished my meal, I ___ ___ the waiter ___ ___ the bill.
5. Cathy is unemployed. She has ___ ___ several jobs, but she hasn’t had any luck.
6. If something is wrong, why don’t you ___ ___ something ___ ___ it?
7. Helen’s car is very old, but it’s in excellent condition. She ___ ___ it very well.
8. Diane is from Boston, but now she lives in Paris. She ___ ___ Boston ___ ___ Paris when she was 19.
Verb + preposition 3  about and of

**hear ABOUT ... = be told about something**
- Did you hear about the fire at the hotel yesterday?

**hear OF ... = know that somebody/something exists**
- ‘Who is Tom Hart?’ ‘I have no idea. I’ve never heard of him.’ (not heard from him)

**hear FROM ... = be in contact with somebody**
- ‘Have you heard from Jane recently?’ ‘Yes, she called me a few days ago.’

**think ABOUT ... and think OF ...**

When you **think ABOUT** something, you consider it, you concentrate your mind on it:
- ‘I’ve thought about what you said and I’ve decided to take your advice.’

When you **think OF** something, the idea comes to your mind:
- ‘It was my idea. I thought of it first.’
- ‘I felt embarrassed. I couldn’t think of anything to say.’

We also use **think of** when we ask or give an opinion:
- ‘What did you think of the movie?’ ‘I didn’t think much of it.’

The difference is sometimes very small and you can use **of** or **about**:
- ‘My sister is thinking of (or about) going to Canada.’ (= she is considering it)

**dream ABOUT ...** (when you are asleep)
- ‘I dreamt about you last night.’

**dream OF or ABOUT** being something / doing something = **imagine**
- ‘Do you dream of (or about) being rich and famous?’

**I wouldn’t dream OF doing something** = **I would never do it**
- ‘Don’t tell anyone what I said.’ ‘No, I wouldn’t dream of it.’ (= I would never do it)

**complain (TO somebody) ABOUT ... = say that you are not satisfied**
- ‘We complained to the manager of the restaurant about the food.’

**complain OF a pain, an illness etc.** = **say that you have a pain etc.**
- ‘We called the doctor because George was complaining of a pain in his stomach.’

**remind somebody ABOUT ... = tell somebody not to forget**
- ‘I’m glad you reminded me about the meeting. I’d completely forgotten about it.’

**remind somebody OF ... = cause somebody to remember**
- ‘This house reminds me of the one I lived in when I was a child.’
- ‘Look at this photograph of Richard. Who does he remind you of?’

**warn somebody ABOUT** a person or thing which is bad, dangerous, unusual etc.
- ‘I knew he was a strange person. I had been warned about him.’
- ‘Vicky warned me about the traffic. She said it would be bad.’

**warn somebody ABOUT or OF a danger, something bad which might happen later**
- ‘Scientists have warned us about (or of) the effects of climate change.’
Exercises

13.4.1 Complete the sentences using hear or heard + a preposition (about/of/from).

1. I've never heard of Tom Hart. Who is he?
2. 'Did you hear about the accident last night?' 'Yes, Vicky told me.'
3. Jane used to call me quite often, but I haven't heard from her for a long time now.
4. A: Have you heard of a writer called William Hudson?
   B: No, I don't think so. What sort of writer is he?
5. Thanks for your email. It was good to hear from you.
6. 'Do you want to hear about our holiday?' 'Not now. Tell me later.'

13.4.2 Complete the sentences using think about or think of. Sometimes both about and of are possible. Use the correct form of think (think/thinking/thought).

1. You look serious. What are you thinking about?
2. I need time to make decisions. I like to think about all this carefully.
3. That's a good idea. Why didn't I think of that?
4. A: I've finished reading the book you lent me.
   B: What did you think of it? Did you think it was good?
5. We're going out to eat this evening. Would you like to come?
6. I don't really want to go out with Tom tonight. I'll have to think of an excuse.
7. When I was offered the job, I didn't accept immediately. I went away and thought about it for a while. In the end I decided to take the job.
8. I don't like this coffee. It's like water.
9. Katherine is homesick. She's always thinking of her family back home.
10. A: Do you think I should apply to do the course?
    B: I can't think of any reason why not.

13.4.3 Put in the correct preposition.

1. Did you hear about the fire at the hotel yesterday?
2. 'I had a strange dream last night.' 'Did you? What did you dream about?'
3. Our neighbours complained about the noise we made last night.
4. Kevin was complaining of aches and pains in his chest, so he went to the doctor.
5. I love this music. It reminds me of a warm day in spring.
6. He loves his job. He thinks about his work all the time, he dreams of it, he talks about it and I'm fed up with hearing about it.
7. 'We've got no money. What can we do?' 'Don't worry. I'll think of something.'
8. Jackie warned me about the water. She said it wasn't safe to drink.
9. We warned our children about the dangers of playing in the street.

13.4.4 Complete the sentences using these verbs (in the correct form) + a preposition:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Complain</th>
<th>Dream</th>
<th>Hear</th>
<th>Remind</th>
<th>Remind</th>
<th>Think</th>
<th>Think</th>
<th>Warn</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Complain</td>
<td>Dream</td>
<td>Hear</td>
<td>Remind</td>
<td>Remind</td>
<td>Think</td>
<td>Think</td>
<td>Warn</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. It was my idea. I thought of it first.
2. Ben is never satisfied. He's always complaining about something.
3. I can't make a decision yet. I need time to think about your proposal.
4. Before you go into the house, I must remind you of the dog. He's bitten people before, so be careful.
5. She's not a well-known singer. Not many people have heard of her.
6. A: You wouldn't go away without telling me, would you?
   B: Of course not. I wouldn't think of it.
7. I would have forgotten my appointment if Jane hadn't reminded me of it.
8. Do you see that man over there? Does he remind you of anybody you know?
Verb + preposition 4  of/for/from/on

Verb + of

accuse / suspect somebody OF ...
- Sue accused me of being selfish.
- Some students were suspected of cheating in the exam.

approve / disapprove OF ...
- His parents don’t approve of what he does, but they can’t stop him.

die OF or FROM an illness etc.
- ‘What did he die of?’ ‘A heart attack.’

consist OF ...
- We had an enormous meal. It consisted of seven courses.

Verb + for

pay (somebody) FOR ...
- I didn’t have enough money to pay for the meal. (not pay the meal)
- but pay a bill / a fine / a fee / tax / rent / a sum of money etc. (no preposition)
- I didn’t have enough money to pay the rent.

thank / forgive somebody FOR ...
- I’ll never forgive them for what they did.

apologise (TO somebody) FOR ...
- When I realised I was wrong, I apologised (to them) for my mistake.

blame somebody/something FOR ..., somebody is to blame FOR ...
- Everybody blamed me for the accident.
- Everybody said that I was to blame for the accident.

blame (a problem etc.) ON ...
- The accident wasn’t my fault. Don’t blame it on me.

Verb + from

suffer FROM an illness etc.
- There’s been an increase in the number of people suffering from heart disease.

protect somebody/something FROM
- Sun block protects the skin from the sun.

Verb + on

depend / rely ON ...
- ‘What time will you be home?’ ‘I don’t know. It depends on the traffic.’
- You can rely on Anna. She always keeps her promises.

You can use depend + when/where/how etc. with or without on:
- ‘Are you going to buy it?’ ‘It depends how much it is.’ (or It depends on how much)

live ON money/food
- Michael’s salary is very low. It isn’t enough to live on.

congratulate / compliment somebody ON ...
- I congratulated her on doing so well in her exams.
- The meal was really good. I complimented Mark on his cooking skills.
Exercises

135.1 Put in the correct preposition. If no preposition is necessary, leave the space empty.
1 Some students were suspected ___ of ___ cheating in the exam.
2 Are you going to apologise ___ what you did?
3 The apartment consists ___ three rooms, a kitchen and bathroom.
4 I was accused ___ lying, but I was telling the truth.
5 We finished our meal, paid ___ the bill, and left the restaurant.
6 The accident was my fault, so I had to pay ___ the repairs.
7 Some people are dying ___ hunger, while others eat too much.
8 I called Helen to thank her ___ the present she sent me.
9 The government is popular. Most people approve ___ what they're doing.
10 Do you blame the government ___ the economic situation?
11 When something goes wrong, you always blame it ___ other people.

135.2 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first.
1 Sue said that I was selfish.
   Sue accused me ___ being selfish
2 The misunderstanding was my fault, so I apologised.
   I apologised
3 Jane won the tournament, so I congratulated her.
   I congratulated
4 He has enemies, and he has a bodyguard to protect him.
   He has a bodyguard to protect
5 There are eleven players in a football team.
   A football team consists
6 Sandra eats only bread and eggs.
   Sandra lives
7 You can't say that your problems are my fault.
   You can't blame ___

135.3 Complete the sentences using these verbs (in the correct form) + a preposition:
   accuse  apologise  approve  congratulate  depend  live  pay  suffer

   1 His parents don't ___ approve ___ what he does, but they can't stop him.
   2 When you went to the theatre with Paul, who ___ the tickets?
   3 It's not pleasant when you are ___ something you didn't do.
   4 We hope to go to the beach tomorrow, but it ___ the weather.
   5 Things are cheap there. You can ___ very little money.
   6 You were rude to Lisa. I think you should ___ her.
   7 Alex ___ back pain. He spends too much time working at his desk.
   8 When I saw David, I ___ him ___ passing his driving test.

135.4 Put in the correct preposition. If no preposition is necessary, leave the space empty.
1 I'll never forgive them ___ what they did.
2 They wore warm clothes to protect themselves ___ the cold.
3 You know you can always rely ___ me if you need any help.
4 Sophie doesn't have enough money to pay ___ her college fees.
5 She's often unwell. She suffers ___ very bad headaches.
6 I don't know whether I'll go out tonight. It depends ___ how I feel.
7 She hasn't got a job. She depends ___ her parents for money.
8 My usual breakfast consists ___ fruit, cereal and coffee.
9 I complimented her ___ her English. She spoke really well.
Verb + in

believe IN ...
- Do you believe in God? (= Do you believe that God exists?)
- I believe in saying what I think. (= I believe it is right to say what I think)
but believe something (= believe it is true), believe somebody (= believe they are telling the truth)
- The story can't be true. I don't believe it. (not believe in it)
specialise IN ...
- Helen is a lawyer. She specialises in company law.
succeed IN ...
- I hope you succeed in finding the job you want.

Verb + into

break INTO ...
- Our house was broken into a few days ago, but nothing was stolen.
crash / drive / bump / run INTO ...
- He lost control of the car and crashed into a wall.
divide / cut / split something INTO two or more parts
- The book is divided into three parts.
translate a book etc. FROM one language INTO another
- She's a famous writer. Her books have been translated into many languages.

Verb + with

collide WITH ...
- There was an accident this morning. A bus collided with a car.
fill something WITH ...
- Take this saucepan and fill it with water.
provide / supply somebody WITH ...
- The school provides all its students with books.

Verb + to

happen TO ...
- What happened to that gold watch you used to have? (= where is it now?)
invite somebody TO a party / a wedding etc.
- They only invited a few people to their wedding.
prefer one thing/person TO another
- I prefer tea to coffee.

Verb + on

concentrate ON ...
- I tried to concentrate on my work, but I kept thinking about other things.
insist ON ...
- I wanted to go alone, but some friends of mine insisted on coming with me.
spend (money) ON ...
- How much do you spend on food each week?
Exercises

136.1 Complete the sentences using these verbs (in the correct form) + a preposition:

believe  concentrating  divide  drive  fill  happen  insist  invite  succeed

1. I wanted to go alone, but my friends **insisted** on coming with me.
2. I haven’t seen Mike for ages. I wonder what has **happened** to him.
3. We’ve been **driving** the party, but unfortunately we can’t go.
4. It’s a very large house. It’s **divided** into four apartments.
5. I don’t **believe** in ghosts. I think people imagine that they see them.
6. Steve gave me an empty bucket and told me to **fill** it with water.
7. I was driving along when the car in front stopped suddenly. I couldn’t stop in time and **hit** the back of it.
8. Don’t try and do two things together. **Do** one thing at a time.
9. It wasn’t easy, but in the end we **found** a solution to the problem.

136.2 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first.

1. There was a collision between a bus and a car.
   A bus collided **with** a car.
2. I don’t mind big cities, but I prefer small towns.
   I prefer **living** in small towns.
3. I got all the information I needed from Jane.
   Jane provided me **with** all the information.
4. This morning I bought a pair of shoes which cost £70.
   This morning I spent **on** shoes.
5. There are ten districts in the city.
   The city is divided **into** ten districts.

136.3 Put in the correct preposition. If the sentence is already complete, leave the space empty.

1. The school provides all its students **with** books.
2. A strange thing happened **to** me a few days ago.
3. Mark decided to give up sport to concentrate **on** his studies.
4. Money should be used well. I don’t believe **in** wasting it.
5. My present job isn’t wonderful, but I prefer it **to** what I did before.
6. I hope you succeed **in** getting what you want.
7. As I was coming out of the room, I collided **with** somebody who was coming in.
8. There was an awful noise as the car crashed **into** a tree.
9. Patrick is a photographer. He specialises **in** sports photography.
10. Do you spend a lot of money **on** clothes?
11. I was amazed when Joe walked into the room. I couldn’t believe **it**.
12. Somebody broke **into** my car and stole the radio.
13. I was quite cold, but Tom insisted **on** having the window open.
14. The teacher decided to split the class **into** four groups.
15. I filled the tank, but unfortunately I filled it **with** the wrong kind of petrol.
16. Some words are difficult to translate **from** one language **to** another.

136.4 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences. Use a preposition.

1. I wanted to go out alone, but my friend insisted **on** coming with me.
2. I spend a lot of money **on** clothes.
3. I saw the accident. The car crashed **into** a tree.
4. Chris prefers basketball **to** football.
5. The restaurant we went to specialises **in** Italian food.
6. Shakespeare’s plays have been translated **into** many languages.
Phrasal verbs 1  General points

We often use verbs with the following words:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>in</th>
<th>on</th>
<th>up</th>
<th>away</th>
<th>by</th>
<th>about</th>
<th>over</th>
<th>round</th>
<th>or around</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>out</td>
<td>off</td>
<td>down</td>
<td>back</td>
<td>through</td>
<td>along</td>
<td>forward</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

So you can say look out / get on / take off / run away etc. These are phrasal verbs.

We often use on/off/out etc. with verbs of movement. For example:

- **get on**
  - The bus was full. We couldn’t get on.
- **drive off**
  - A woman got into the car and drove off.
- **come back**
  - Sarah is leaving tomorrow and coming back on Saturday.
- **turn round**
  - When I touched him on the shoulder, he turned round.

But often the second word (on/off/out etc.) gives a special meaning to the verb. For example:

- **break down**
  - Sorry I’m late. The car broke down. (= the engine stopped working)
- **look out**
  - Look out! There’s a car coming. (= be careful)
- **take off**
  - It was my first flight, I was nervous as the plane took off. (= went into the air)
- **get on**
  - How was the exam? How did you get on? (= How did you do?)
- **get by**
  - My French isn’t very good, but it’s enough to get by. (= manage)

For more phrasal verbs, see Units 138–145.

Sometimes a phrasal verb is followed by a **preposition**. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>phrasal verb</th>
<th>preposition</th>
<th>object</th>
<th>object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>run away</td>
<td>from</td>
<td>Why did you run away from me?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keep up</td>
<td>with</td>
<td>You’re walking too fast. I can’t keep up with you.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look up</td>
<td>at</td>
<td>We looked up at the plane as it flew above us.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look forward</td>
<td>to</td>
<td>Are you looking forward to your trip?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sometimes a phrasal verb has an **object**. Usually there are two possible positions for the object. So you can say:

- **I turned on the light.** or **I turned the light on.**

If the object is a **pronoun** (it/them/me/him etc.), only one position is possible:

- **I turned it on.** (not I turned on it)

Some more examples:

- **Can you fill in this form?**
  - fill in this form?
  - fill this form in?
- **Don’t throw away this box.**
  - throw away this box.
  - throw this box away.
- **I’m going to take off my shoes.**
  - take off my shoes.
  - take my shoes off.
- **The baby is asleep. Don’t wake her up.**
  - wake up the baby.
  - wake the baby up.
Exercises

137.1 Complete each sentence using a verb from A (in the correct form) + a word from B. You can use a word more than once.

A fly get go look sit speak B away by down on
out round up

1. The bus was full. We couldn’t _________ on.
2. I’ve been standing for the last two hours. I’m going to ___________ for a bit.
3. A cat tried to catch the bird, but it ___________ just in time.
4. We were trapped in the building. We couldn’t _________.
5. I can’t hear you very well. Can you ___________ a little?
6. ‘Do you speak German?’ ‘Not very well, but I can ___________.’
7. Everything has got so expensive. Prices have ___________ a lot.
8. I thought there was somebody behind me, but when I ___________ , there was nobody there.

137.2 Complete the sentences using a word from A and a word from B. You can use a word more than once.

A away back forward in up B at through to with

1. You’re walking too fast. I can’t keep up with you.
2. My holidays are nearly over. Next week I’ll be ___________ work.
3. We went ___________ the top floor of the building to admire the view.
4. The meeting tomorrow is going to be difficult. I’m not looking ___________ it.
5. There was a bank robbery last week. The robbers got ___________ £50,000.
6. I love to look ___________ the stars in the sky at night.
7. I was sitting in the kitchen when a bird flew ___________ the open window.

137.3 Complete the sentences using these phrasal verbs + it/Them/me:

-fill-in get out give back switch on take off wake up

1. They gave me a form and told me to ___________ it in.
2. I’m going to bed now. Can you ___________ me at 6.30?
3. I’ve got something in my eye and I can’t ___________.
4. I don’t like it when people borrow things and don’t ___________.
5. I want to use the hair dryer. How do I ___________ it?
6. My shoes are dirty. I’d better ___________ before going into the house.

137.4 Use your own ideas to complete the sentences. Use a noun (this box etc.) or a pronoun (it/them etc.) + the word in brackets (away/up etc.).

1. Don’t throw ___________ this box. I want to keep it.
2. I don’t want this newspaper. You can throw ___________ away.’
3. I borrowed these books from the library. I have to take ___________ tomorrow.
4. We can turn ___________. Nobody is watching it.
5. A: How did the vase get broken?
   B: I’m afraid I knocked ___________ while I was cleaning.
6. Shh! My mother is asleep. I don’t want to wake ___________.
7. It’s cold today. You should put ___________ if you’re going out.
8. It was only a small fire. I was able to put ___________ easily.
9. A: Is this hotel more expensive than when we stayed here last year?
   B: Yes, they’ve put ___________.
10. It’s a bit dark in this room. Shall I turn ___________ ?
Phrasal verbs 2 in/out

Compare in and out:

**in** = into a room, a building, a car etc.
- How did the thieves **get in**?
- Here’s a key, so you can **let yourself in**.
- Lisa walked up to the edge of the pool and **dived in** (= into the water)
- I’ve got a new apartment. I’m **moving in** on Friday.
- As soon as I got to the airport, I **checked in**.

In the same way you can say **go in**, **come in**, **walk in**, **break in** etc.

**out** = out of a room, building, a car etc.
- He just stood up and **walked out**.
- I had no key, so I was **locked out**.
- She swam up and down the pool, and then **climbed out**.
- Andy opened the window and **looked out**.
- (at a hotel) What time do we have to **check out**?

In the same way you can say **go out**, **get out**, **move out**, **let somebody out** etc.

Compare **in** and **into**:
- I’m moving **in** next week.
- I’m moving **into my new flat** on Friday.

Compare **out** and **of**:
- He walked **out**.
- He walked **out of the room**.

Other verbs + in

drop in = visit somebody for a short time without arranging to do this
- I **dropped in** to see Chris on my way home.
join in = take part in an activity that is already going on
- They were playing cards, so I **joined in**.
plug in an electrical machine = **connect it to the electricity supply**
- The fridge isn’t working because you haven’t **plugged it in**.
fill in a form, a questionnaire etc. = write the necessary information on a form
- Please **fill in** the application form and send it to us by 28 February.
You can also say **fill out** a form.
take somebody in = deceive somebody
- The man said he was a policeman and I believed him. I was completely **taken in**.

Other verbs + out

eat out = eat at a restaurant, not at home
- There wasn’t anything to eat at home, so we decided to **eat out**.
drop out of college, university, a course, a race = stop before you have completely finished a course/race etc.
- Gary went to university but **dropped out** after a year.
get out of something that you arranged to do = avoid doing it
- I promised I’d go to the wedding. I don’t want to go, but I can’t **get out** of it now.
cut something out (of a newspaper etc.)
- There was a beautiful picture in the magazine, so I **cut it out** and kept it.
leave something out = omit it, not include it
- In the sentence ’She said that she was ill’, you can **leave out** the word ‘that’.
cross something out / rub something out
- Some of the names on the list had been **crossed out**.
Exercises

138.1 Complete the sentences using a verb in the correct form.

1. Here's a key so that you can __________ yourself in.
2. Liz doesn't like cooking, so she __________ out a lot.
3. Amy isn't living in this apartment any more. She __________ out a few weeks ago.
4. If you're in our part of town, you should __________ in and say hello.
5. When I __________ in at the airport, I was told my flight would be delayed.
6. There was an article in the paper that I wanted to keep, so I __________ it out.
7. I wanted to iron some clothes, but there was nowhere to __________ the iron in.
8. I hate __________ in questionnaires.
9. Steve was upset because he'd been __________ out of the team.
10. Be careful! The water's not very deep here, so don't __________ in.
11. If you write in pencil and you make a mistake, you can __________ it out.
12. Paul started doing a Spanish course, but he __________ out after a few weeks.

138.2 Complete the sentences with in, into, out or out of.

1. I've got a new flat. I'm moving __________ on Friday.
2. We checked __________ the hotel as soon as we arrived.
3. As soon as we arrived at the hotel, we checked __________.
4. The car stopped and the driver got __________.
5. Thieves broke __________ the house while we were away.
6. Why did Sarah drop college? Did she fail her exams?

138.3 Complete the sentences using a verb + in or out of.

1. Lisa walked to the edge of the pool, __________ in and swam to the other end.
2. Not all the runners finished the race. Three of them __________.
3. I went to see Joe and Sophie in their new house. They __________ last week.
4. I've told you everything you need to know. I don't think I've __________ anything.
5. Some people in the crowd started singing. Then a few more people __________ and soon everybody was singing.
6. We go to restaurants a lot. We like __________.
7. Don't be __________ him. If I were you, I wouldn't believe anything he says.
8. I __________ to see Laura a few days ago. She was fine.
9. A: Can we meet tomorrow morning at 10?
   B: Probably. I'm supposed to go to another meeting, but I think I can __________.

138.4 Complete the sentences. Use the word in brackets in the correct form.

1. A: The fridge isn't working.
   B: That's because you haven't __________ in. (plug)
2. A: What do I have to do with these forms?
   B: __________ and send them to this address. (fill)
3. A: I've made a mistake on this form.
   B: That's all right. Just __________ and correct it. (cross)
4. A: Did you believe the story they told you?
   B: Yes, I'm afraid they completely __________. (take)
5. A: Have you been to that new club in Bridge Street?
   B: We wanted to go there a few nights ago, but they wouldn't __________ because we weren't members. (let)
out = not burning, not shining

- go out
- put out a fire / a cigarette / a light
- turn out a light
- blow out a candle

Suddenly all the lights in the building went out.
We managed to put the fire out.
I turned the lights out before leaving.
We don’t need the candle. You can blow it out.

work out

- work out = do physical exercises
  - Rachel works out at the gym three times a week.

- work out = develop, progress
  - Good luck for the future. I hope everything works out well for you.
  - A: Why did James leave the company?
  - B: Things didn’t work out (= things didn’t work out well)

- work out (for mathematical calculations)
  - The total bill for three people is £84.60. That works out at £28.20 each.

work something out = calculate, think about a problem and find the answer

- 345 x 76? I need to do this on paper. I can’t work it out in my head.

Other verbs + out

- carry out an order, an experiment, a survey, an investigation, a plan etc.
  - Soldiers are expected to carry out orders.
  - An investigation into the accident will be carried out as soon as possible.

- fall out (with somebody) = stop being friends
  - They used to be very good friends. I’m surprised to hear that they have fallen out.
  - David fell out with his father and left home.

- find out that/what/when ... etc., find out about something = get information
  - The police never found out who committed the murder.
  - I just found out that it’s Helen’s birthday today.
  - I checked a few websites to find out about hotels in the town.

- give/hand things out = give to each person
  - At the end of the lecture, the speaker gave out information sheets to the audience.

- point something out (to somebody) = draw attention to something
  - As we drove through the city, our guide pointed out all the sights.
  - I didn’t realise I’d made a mistake until somebody pointed it out to me.

- run out (of something)
  - We ran out of petrol on the motorway. (= we used all our petrol)

- sort something out = find a solution to, put in order
  - There are a few problems we need to sort out.
  - All these papers are mixed up. I’ll have to sort them out.

- turn out to be ..., turn out good/nice etc., turn out that ...
  - Nobody believed Paul at first, but he turned out to be right. (= it became clear in the end that he was right)
  - The weather wasn’t so good in the morning, but it turned out nice later.
  - I thought they knew each other, but it turned out that they’d never met.

- try out a machine, a system, a new idea etc. = test it to see if it is OK
  - The company is trying out a new computer system at the moment.
Exercises

139.1 Which words can go together? Choose from the list.

- a candle
- a cigarette
- a light
- a mess
- a mistake
- a new product
- an order

1 turn out a light
2 point out
3 blow out
4 carry out
5 put out
6 try out
7 sort out

139.2 Complete the sentences using a verb + out.

1 The company is trying out a new computer system at the moment.
2 Steve is very fit. He does a lot of sport and regulary.
3 The road will be closed for two days next week while building work is.
4 We didn’t manage to discuss everything at the meeting. We of time.
5 You have to the problem yourself. I can’t do it for you.
6 I don’t know what happened exactly. I need to.
7 The new drug will be on a small group of patients.
8 I thought the two books were the same until a friend of mine the difference.
9 They got married a few years ago, but it didn’t and they separated.
10 There was a power cut and all the lights.
11 We thought she was American at first, but she to be Swedish.
12 Sometimes it cheaper to eat in a restaurant than to cook at home.
13 I haven’t applied for the job yet. I want to more about the company first.
14 It took the fire brigade two hours to the fire.

139.3 For each picture, complete the sentence using a verb + out.

1 a: Was the fire serious?
   b: No, we were able to put it out.

2 a: This recipe looks interesting.
   b: Yes, let’s.

3 a: How much money do I owe you exactly?
   b: Just a moment. I’ll have to.

4 a: What happened about your problem with your bank?
   b: It’s OK now. I went to see them and we.

139.4 Complete the sentences. Each time use a verb + out.

1 a: Was the fire serious?
   b: No, we were able to put it out.

2 a: This recipe looks interesting.
   b: Yes, let’s.

3 a: How much money do I owe you exactly?
   b: Just a moment. I’ll have to.

4 a: What happened about your problem with your bank?
   b: It’s OK now. I went to see them and we.

→ Additional exercises 37–41 (pages 323–25)
On and off for lights, machines etc.

We say: the light is on / put the light on / leave the light on etc.

turn the light on/off or switch the light on/off

☐ Shall I leave the lights on or turn them off?
☐ 'Is the heating on?' 'No, I switched it off.'
☐ We need some boiling water, so I'll put the kettle on.

Also put on some music / a CD etc.

☐ I haven't listened to this CD yet. Shall I put it on? (= shall I play it)

On and off for events etc.

go on = happen

☐ What's all that noise? What's going on? (= what's happening)

call something off = cancel it

☐ The open air concert had to be called off because of the weather.

put something off, put off doing something = delay it

☐ The wedding has been put off until January.
☐ We can't put off making a decision. We have to decide now.

On and off for clothes etc.

put on clothes, glasses, make-up, a seat belt etc.

☐ My hands were cold, so I put my gloves on.

Also put on weight = get heavier

☐ I've put on two kilograms in the last month.

try on clothes (to see if they fit)

☐ I tried on a jacket in the shop, but it didn't fit me very well.

take off clothes, glasses etc.

☐ It was warm, so I took off my jacket.

Off = away from a person or place

be off (to a place)

☐ Tomorrow I’m off to Paris / I’m off on holiday.
(= I’m going to Paris / I’m going on holiday)

walk off / run off / drive off / ride off / go off (similar to walk away / run away etc.)

☐ Diane got on her bike and rode off.
☐ Mark left home at the age of 18 and went off to Canada.

set off = start a journey

☐ We set off very early to avoid the traffic. (= We left early)

take off = leave the ground (for planes)

☐ After a long delay the plane finally took off.

see somebody off = go with them to the airport/station to say goodbye

☐ Helen was going away. We went to the station with her to see her off.
Exercises

140.1 Complete the sentences using put on + the following:

- a CD
- the heating
- the kettle
- the light
- the oven

1. It was getting dark, so I put on the light.
2. It was getting cold, so I
3. I wanted to bake a cake, so I
4. I wanted to make some tea, so I
5. I wanted to listen to some music, so I

140.2 Complete the sentences. Each time use a verb + on or off.

1. It was warm, so I took off my jacket.
2. What are all these people doing? What's going on?
3. The weather was too bad for the plane to take off, so the flight was delayed.
4. I didn't want to be disturbed, so I turned off my phone.
5. Rachel got into her car and sped off at high speed.
6. Tim has put on weight since I last saw him. He used to be quite thin.
7. A: What time are you leaving tomorrow?
   B: I'm not sure yet, but I'd like to leave as early as possible.
8. Don't put off until tomorrow what you can do today.
9. There was going to be a strike by bus drivers, but now they have been offered more money and the strike has been called off.
10. Are you cold? Shall I get you a sweater to put on?
11. When I go away, I prefer to be alone at the station or airport. I don't like it when people come to say goodbye to me.

140.3 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

1. Her hands were cold, so she put her gloves on.
2. The plane took off at 10.55.
3. Maria but it was too big for her.
4. The match was because of the weather.
5. Mark's parents went to the airport to say goodbye.
6. He took his sunglasses out of his pocket and
Phrasal verbs 5 on/off (2)

Verb + on = continue doing something

- drive on / walk on / play on = continue driving/walking/playing etc.
  - Shall we stop at this petrol station or shall we drive on to the next one?
- go on = continue
  - The party went on until 4 o’clock in the morning.
- go on / carry on doing something = continue doing something
  - We can’t go on spending money like this. We’ll have nothing left soon.
  - I don’t want to carry on working here. I’m going to look for another job.

Also go on with / carry on with something

- Don’t let me disturb you. Please carry on with what you’re doing.

keep on doing something = do it continuously or repeatedly

- He keeps on criticising me. I’m fed up with it!

Get on

get on = progress

- How are you getting on in your new job? (= How is it going?)

get on (with somebody) = have a good relationship

- Joanne and Karen don’t get on. They’re always arguing.
- Richard gets on well with his neighbours. They’re all very friendly.

get on with something = continue doing something you have to do, usually after an interruption

- I must get on with my work. I have a lot to do.

Verb + off

doze off / drop off / nod off = fall asleep

- The lecture wasn’t very interesting. In fact I dozed off in the middle of it.

finish something off = do the last part of something

- A: Have you finished painting the kitchen?
  - B: Nearly. I’ll finish it off tomorrow.

go off = explode

- A bomb went off in the city centre, but fortunately nobody was hurt.

Also an alarm can go off = ring

- Did you hear the alarm go off?

put somebody off (doing something) = cause somebody not to want something or to do something

- We wanted to go to the exhibition, but we were put off by the long queue.
- What put you off applying for the job? Was the salary too low?

rip somebody off = cheat somebody (informal)

- Did you really pay £2,000 for that painting? I think you were ripped off.
  (= you paid too much)

show off = try to impress people with your ability, your knowledge etc.

- Look at that boy on the bike riding with no hands. He’s just showing off.

tell somebody off = speak angrily to somebody because they did something wrong

- Clare’s mother told her off for wearing dirty shoes in the house.
Exercises

141.1 Change the underlined words. Keep the same meaning, but use a verb + on or off.

1 Did you hear the bomb *explode*?
   Did you hear the bomb *go off*?

2 The meeting *continued* longer than I expected.
   The meeting *ran on* longer than I expected.

3 We didn’t stop to rest. We *continued* walking.
   We didn’t stop to rest. We *kept on* walking.

4 I *fell asleep* while I was watching TV.
   I *kept on* sleeping while I was watching TV.

5 Gary doesn’t want to retire. He wants to *continue* working.
   Gary doesn’t want to retire. He wants to *keep on* working.

6 The fire alarm *rang* in the middle of the night.
   The fire alarm *continued* ringing in the middle of the night.

7 Martin *phones me* continuously. It’s very annoying.
   Martin *keeps on* phoning me. It’s very annoying.

141.2 Complete each sentence using a verb + on or off.

1 We can’t *go on* spending money like this. We’ll have nothing left soon.

2 I was standing by the car when suddenly the alarm *went off*.

3 I’m not ready to go home yet. I have a few things to *finish*.

4 ‘Shall I stop the car here?’ ‘No, *keep on* driving.’

5 Bill paid too much for the car he bought. I think he was *rip off*.

6 ‘Is Emma enjoying her course at university?’ ‘Yes, she’s *carrying on* very well.’

7 I was very tired at work today. I nearly *ripped off* my desk a couple of times.

8 Ben was *told off* by his boss for being late for work repeatedly.

9 I really like working with my colleagues. We all *get along* really well together.

10 There was a very loud noise. It sounded like a bomb *exploded*.

11 I *can’t stand* making the same mistake. It’s very frustrating.

12 I’ve just had a coffee break, and now I must *carry on* with my work.

13 Peter is always trying to impress people. He’s always *carrying on*.

14 We decided not to go to the concert. We were *ripped off* by the cost of tickets.

141.3 Complete the sentences. Use the following verbs (in the correct form) + on or off. Sometimes you will need other words as well:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>carry</th>
<th>finish</th>
<th>get</th>
<th>get</th>
<th>get</th>
<th>go</th>
<th>rip</th>
<th>tell</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1 a: How *are you getting on* in your new job?
   b: Fine, thanks. It’s going very well.

2 a: Have you written the letter you had to write?
   b: I’ve started it. I’ll *carry on* in the morning.

3 a: We took a taxi to the airport. It cost £40.
   b: £40! Normally it costs about £20. You *carried on*.

4 a: Why were you late for work this morning?
   b: I overslept. My alarm clock didn’t *go off*.

5 a: How *did you get on* in your interview? Do you think you’ll get the job?
   b: I hope so. The interview was OK.

6 a: Did you stop playing tennis when it started to rain?
   b: No, we *carried on*. The rain wasn’t very heavy.

7 a: Some children at the next table in the restaurant were behaving very badly.
   b: Why didn’t their parents *go off*?

8 a: Why does Paul want to leave his job?
   b: He *told off* his boss.
# Phrasal verbs 6  up/down

**Compare up and down:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>put something up</strong> (on a wall etc.)</th>
<th><strong>take something down</strong> (from a wall etc.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I put a picture up on the wall.</td>
<td>I didn’t like the picture, so I took it down.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>pick something up</strong></th>
<th><strong>put something down</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>There was a letter on the floor.</td>
<td>I stopped writing and put down my pen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I picked it up and looked at it.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>stand up</strong></th>
<th><strong>sit down / bend down / lie down</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Alan stood up and walked out.</td>
<td>I bent down to tie my shoelace.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>turn something up</strong></th>
<th><strong>turn something down</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I can’t hear the TV. Can you turn it up a bit?</td>
<td>The oven is too hot. Turn it down to 150 degrees.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Knock down, cut down etc.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>knock down a building, blow something down, cut something down</strong> etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Some old houses were knocked down to make way for the new shopping centre.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Why did you cut down the tree in your garden?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>be knocked down</strong> (by a car etc.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A man was knocked down by a car and taken to hospital.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>burn down</strong> = <strong>be destroyed by fire</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>They were able to put out the fire before the house burnt down.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Down = getting less**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>slow down</strong> = <strong>go more slowly</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>You’re driving too fast. Slow down.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>calm (somebody) down</strong> = <strong>become calmer, make somebody calmer</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Calm down. There’s no point in getting angry.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>cut down (on something)</strong> = <strong>eat, drink or do something less often</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I’m trying to cut down on coffee. I drink too much of it.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Other verbs + down**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>break down</strong> = <strong>stop working</strong> (for machines, cars, relationships etc.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The car broke down and I had to phone for help.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Their marriage broke down after only a few months.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>close down / shut down</strong> = <strong>stop doing business</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>There used to be a shop at the end of the street; it closed down a few years ago.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>let somebody down</strong> = <strong>disappoint them because you didn’t do what they hoped</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>You can always rely on Paul. He’ll never let you down.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>turn somebody/something down</strong> = <strong>refuse an application, an offer etc.</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I applied for several jobs, but I was turned down for all of them.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rachel was offered the job, but she decided to turn it down.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>write something down</strong> = <strong>write something on paper</strong> because you may need the information later</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I can’t remember Tim’s address. I wrote it down, but I can’t find it.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
For each picture, complete the sentences using a verb + up or down. In most sentences you will need other words as well.

1. There used to be a tree next to the house, but we cut it down.
2. There used to be some shelves on the wall, but I...
3. The ceiling was so low, he couldn’t straight.
4. She couldn’t hear the radio very well, so she ...
5. While they were waiting for the bus, they on the ground.
6. A few trees .. in the storm last week.
7. We've got some new curtains, but we haven’t yet.
8. Lisa dropped her keys, so she and

Complete the sentences. Use the following verbs (in the correct form) + down:
- calm
- let
- take
- turn
- turn
- write

1. I don't like this picture on the wall. I'm going to take it down.
2. The music is too loud. Can you ........ ............................
3. David was very angry. I tried to ........ ............................
4. Sarah gave me her phone number. I ........ ............................
5. I promised I would help Anna. I don't want to ........ ............................
6. I was offered the job, but I decided I didn't want it. So I

Complete each sentence using a verb (in the correct form) + down.
1. I stopped writing and put down my pen.
2. I was really angry. It took me a long time to ........ .............................
3. The train ........ ............................. as it approached the station.
4. Sarah applied to study medicine at university, but she ........ .............................
5. Our car is very reliable. It has never ........ .............................
6. I need to spend less money. I'm going to ........ ............................. on things I don't really need.
7. I didn't play very well. I felt that I had ........ ............................. the other players in the team.
8. The shop ........ ............................. because it was losing money.
9. This is a very ugly building. Many people would like it to ........ .............................
10. I can't understand why you ........ ............................. the chance of working abroad for a year. It would have been a great experience for you.
11. a: Did you see the accident? What happened exactly?
   b: A man ........ ............................. by a car as he was crossing the road.
12. Peter got married when he was 20, but unfortunately the marriage a few years later.

Additional exercises 37–41 (pages 323–25)
go up / come up / walk up (to ...) = approach
- A man came up to me in the street and asked me for money.

catch up (with somebody), catch somebody up = move faster than somebody in front of you so that you reach them
- I'm not ready to go yet. You go on and I'll catch up with you / I'll catch you up.

keep up (with somebody) = continue at the same speed or level
- You're walking too fast. I can't keep up (with you).
- You're doing well. Keep it up!

set up an organisation, a company, a business, a system, a website etc. = start it
- The government has set up a committee to investigate the problem.

take up a hobby, a sport, an activity etc. = start doing it
- Laura took up photography a few years ago. She takes really good pictures.

fix up a meeting etc. = arrange it
- We've fixed up a meeting for next Monday.

grow up = become an adult
- Ann was born in Hong Kong but grew up in Australia.

bring up a child = raise, look after a child
- Her parents died when she was a child and she was brought up by her grandparents.

clean up / clear up / tidy up something = make it clean, tidy etc.
- Look at this mess! Who's going to tidy up? (or tidy it up)

wash up = wash the plates, dishes etc. after a meal
- I hate washing up. (or I hate doing the washing-up.)

end up somewhere, end up doing something etc.
- There was a fight in the street and three men ended up in hospital. (= that's what happened to these men in the end)
- I couldn't find a hotel and ended up sleeping on a bench at the station. (= that's what happened to me in the end)

give up = stop trying, give something up = stop doing it
- Don't give up. Keep trying!
- Sue got bored with her job and decided to give it up. (= stop doing it)

make up something, be made up of something
- Children under 16 make up half the population of the city. (= half the population are children under 16)
- Air is made up mainly of nitrogen and oxygen. (= Air consists of ...)

take up space or time = use space or time
- Most of the space in the room was taken up by a large table.

turn up / show up = arrive, appear
- We arranged to meet David last night, but he didn't turn up.

use something up = use all of it so that nothing is left
- I'm going to make some soup. We have a lot of vegetables and I want to use them up.
Exercises

143.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use three words each time, including a verb from Section A.

1. A man came up to me in the street and asked me the way to the station.
2. Sue .................................................. the front door of the house and rang the doorbell.
3. Tom was a long way behind the other runners, but he managed to .................................................. them.
4. Tanya was running too fast for Paul. He couldn’t .................................................. her.

143.2 Complete the sentences. Use the following verbs (in the correct form) + up:

- end - end - give - give - grow - make - take - take - turn - use - wash

1. I couldn’t find a hotel and ended up sleeping on a bench at the station.
2. I’m feeling very tired now. I’ve .................................................. all my energy.
3. After dinner I .................................................. and put the dishes away.
4. People often ask children what they want to be when they .................................................. .
5. We invited Tom to the party, but he didn’t .................................................. .
6. Two years ago James .................................................. his studies to be a professional footballer.
7. A: Do you do any sports?  
   B: Not at the moment, but I’m thinking of .................................................. tennis.
8. You don’t have enough determination. You .................................................. too easily.
9. Karen travelled a lot for a few years and .................................................. in Canada, where she still lives.
10. I do a lot of gardening. It .................................................. most of my free time.
11. There are two universities in the city, and students .................................................. 20 per cent of the population.

143.3 Complete the sentences. Use the following verbs + up (with any other necessary words):

- bring - catch - fix - give - go - keep - keep - make - set - tidy

1. Sue got bored with her job and decided to .................................................. it up.
2. I’m not ready yet. You go on and I’ll .................................................. you.
3. The room is in a mess. I’d better .................................................. .
4. We expect to go away on holiday sometime in July, but we haven’t .................................................. yet.
5. Stephen is having problems at school. He can’t .................................................. the rest of the class.
6. Although I .................................................. in the country, I have always preferred cities.
7. Our team started the game well, but we couldn’t .................................................. and in the end we lost.
8. I saw Mike at the party, so I .................................................. him and said hello.
9. When I was on holiday, I joined a tour group. The group .................................................. two Americans, three Germans, five Italians and myself.
10. Helen has her own internet website. A friend of hers helped her to .................................................. .

⇒ Additional exercises 37–41 (pages 323–25)
bring up a topic etc. = introduce it in a conversation
- I don’t want to hear any more about this matter. Please don’t bring it up again.

come up = be introduced in a conversation
- Some interesting points came up in our discussion yesterday.

come up with an idea, a suggestion etc. = produce an idea
- Sarah is very creative. She’s always coming up with new ideas.

make something up = invent something that is not true
- What Kevin told you about himself wasn’t true. He made it all up.

cheer up = be happier, cheer somebody up = make somebody feel happier
- You look so sad! Cheer up!
- Helen is depressed at the moment. What can we do to cheer her up?

save up for something / to do something = save money to buy something
- Dan is saving up for a trip round the world.

clear up = become bright (for weather)
- It was raining when I got up, but it cleared up later.

blow up = explode, blow something up = destroy it with a bomb etc.
- The engine caught fire and blew up.
- The bridge was blown up during the war.

tear something up = tear it into pieces
- I didn’t read the letter. I just tore it up and threw it away.

beat somebody up = hit someone repeatedly so that they are badly hurt
- A friend of mine was attacked and beaten up a few days ago. He was badly hurt and had to go to hospital.

break up / split up (with somebody) = separate
- I’m surprised to hear that Sue and Paul have split up. They seemed very happy together.

do up a coat, a shoelace, buttons etc. = fasten, tie etc.
- It’s quite cold. Do up your coat before you go out.

do up a building, a room etc. = repair and improve it
- The kitchen looks great now that it has been done up.

look something up in a dictionary, encyclopaedia etc.
- If you don’t know the meaning of a word, you can look it up in a dictionary.

put up with something = tolerate it
- We live on a busy road, so we have to put up with a lot of noise from the traffic.

hold up a person, a plan etc. = delay
- Don’t wait for me. I don’t want to hold you up.
- Plans to build a new factory have been held up because of the company’s financial problems.

mix up people/things, get people/things mixed up = you think one is the other
- The two brothers look very similar. Many people mix them up. (or ... get them mixed up)
Exercises

144.1 Which goes with which?

1 I'm going to tear up
2 Jane came up with
3 Paul is always making up
4 I think you should do up
5 I don't think you should bring up
6 I'm saving up for
7 We had to put up with

1 a new camera
2 a lot of bad weather
3 your jacket
4 an interesting suggestion
5 excuses
6 the letter
7 that subject

144.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. You will need two or three words each time.

The weather was horrible this morning, but it's cleared up now.

Amy was late because she was in the traffic.

They bought an old house and . It's really nice now.

Joe was really depressed. We took him out for a meal to .

144.3 Complete the sentences using a verb (in the correct form) + up. Sometimes you will need other words as well.

1 Some interesting matters came up in our discussion yesterday.
2 The ship and sank. The cause of the explosion was never discovered.
3 Two men have been arrested after a man was outside a restaurant last night. The injured man was taken to hospital.
4 'Is Robert still going out with Tina?’ ‘No, they’ve .'
5 My hands were so cold, I found it hard to my shoelaces.
6 I wish it would stop raining! I hope it soon.
7 I wanted to phone Chris, but I dialled Laura's number by mistake. I got their phone numbers

144.4 Complete the sentences using a verb + up. You will need other words as well.

1 Don't wait for me. I don't want to hold you up .
2 I don't know what this word means. I'll have to
3 There's nothing we can do about the problem. We'll just have to it.
4 'Was that story true?’ 'No, I .'
5 I think we should follow Tom's suggestion. Nobody has a better plan.
6 I hate this photo. I'm going to
7 I'm trying to spend less money at the moment. I'm a trip to Australia.
Phrasal verbs 9  
**away/back**

### Compare away and back:

- **away** = away from home
  - We’re going away on holiday today.
- **away** = away from a place, a person etc.
  - The woman got into her car, started the engine and drove away.
  - I tried to take a picture of the bird, but it flew away.
  - I dropped the ticket and it blew away in the wind.
  - The police searched the house and took away a computer.

In the same way you can say:
- walk away, run away, look away etc.

- **back** = back home
  - We’ll be back in three weeks.
- **back** = back to a place, a person etc.
  - a: I’m going out now.
  - b: What time will you be back?
  - After eating at a restaurant, we walked back to our hotel.
  - I’ve still got Jane’s keys. I forgot to give them back to her.
  - When you’ve finished with that book, can you put it back on the shelf?

### Other verbs + away

- **get away** = escape, leave with difficulty
  - We tried to catch the thief, but she managed to get away.
- **get away with something** = do something wrong without being caught
  - I parked in a no-parking zone, but I got away with it. I didn’t have to pay a fine.
- **keep away (from ...)** = don’t go near
  - Keep away from the edge of the pool. You might fall in.
- **give something away** = give it to somebody else because you don’t want it any more
  - ‘Did you sell your old computer?’ ‘No, I gave it away.’
- **put something away** = put it in the place where it is kept, usually out of sight
  - When the children had finished playing with their toys, they put them away.
- **throw something away** = put it in the rubbish
  - I kept the letter, but I threw away the envelope.

### Other verbs + back

- **wave back / smile back / shout back / write back / hit somebody back**
  - I waved to her and she waved back.
- **call/phone/ring (somebody) back** = return a phone call
  - I can’t talk to you now. I’ll call you back in ten minutes.
- **get back to somebody** = reply to them by phone etc.
  - I sent him an email, but he never got back to me.
- **look back (on something)** = think about what happened in the past
  - My first job was in a travel agency. I didn’t like it very much at the time but, looking back on it, I learnt a lot and it was a very useful experience.
- **pay back** money, pay somebody back
  - If you borrow money, you have to pay it back.
  - Thanks for lending me the money. I’ll pay you back next week.
Exercises

145.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

1. She waved to him and he waved back.
2. It was windy. I dropped a twenty-pound note and it.......................... in the envelope.
3. Sue opened the letter, read it and.......................... in the envelope.
4. He tried to talk to her, but she just.......................... .
5. Ellie threw the ball to Ben and he.......................... .
6. His shoes were worn out, so he.......................... .

145.2 Complete the sentences. Use a verb + away or back.

1. I was away all day yesterday. I got back very late.
2. I haven’t seen our neighbours for a while. I think they must.......................... .
3. I’m going out now.’ ‘OK. What time will you.......................... ?’
4. A man was trying to break into a car. When he saw me, he.......................... .
5. I smiled at him, but he didn’t.......................... .
6. If you cheat in the exam, you might.......................... with it. But you might get caught.
7. Be careful! That’s an electric fence........................... from it.

145.3 Complete the sentences using a verb in the correct form.

1. The woman got into her car, started the engine and drove away.
2. Here’s the money you need.......................................................... me back when you can.
3. Don’t throw that box away. It could be useful.
4. Jane doesn’t do anything at work. I don’t know how she.......................... away with it.
5. I’m going out now. I’ll.......................... back in about an hour.
6. You should think more about the future; don’t.......................... all the time.
7. Gary is very generous. He won some money in the lottery and it all away.
8. I’ll.......................... back to you as soon as I have the information you need.

145.4 Complete the sentences. Use the verb in brackets + away or back.

1. a: Do you still have my keys?
   b: No. Don’t you remember? I gave them back to you yesterday. (give)
2. a: Do you want this magazine?
   b: No, I’ve finished with it. You can.......................... me back when you can. (throw)
3. a: How are your new jeans? Do they fit you OK?
   b: No, I’m going to......................... to the shop. (take)
4. a: Here’s the money you asked me to lend you.
   b: Thanks. I’ll.......................... as soon as I can. (pay)
5. a: What happened to all the books you used to have?
   b: I didn’t want them any more, so I.......................... . (give)
6. a: Did you phone Sarah?
   b: She wasn’t there. I left a message asking her to......................... . (call)
Appendix 1
Regular and irregular verbs

1.1 Regular verbs
If a verb is regular, the past simple and past participle end in -ed. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>infinitive</th>
<th>clean</th>
<th>finish</th>
<th>use</th>
<th>paint</th>
<th>stop</th>
<th>carry</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>past simple</td>
<td>cleaned</td>
<td>finished</td>
<td>used</td>
<td>painted</td>
<td>stopped</td>
<td>carry</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For spelling rules, see Appendix 6.

For the past simple (I cleaned / they finished / she carried etc.), see Unit 5.

We use the past participle to make the perfect tenses and all the passive forms.

Perfect tenses (have/has/had cleaned):
- I have cleaned the windows. (present perfect – see Units 7-8)
- They were still working. They hadn’t finished. (past perfect – see Unit 15)

Passive (is cleaned / was cleaned etc.):
- He was carried out of the room. (past simple passive)
- This gate has just been painted. (present perfect passive)

See Units 42-44

1.2 Irregular verbs
When the past simple and past participle do not end in -ed (for example, I saw / I have seen), the verb is irregular.

With some irregular verbs, all three forms (infinitive, past simple and past participle) are the same. For example, hit:
- Don’t hit me. (infinitive)
- Somebody hit me as I came into the room. (past simple)
- I’ve never hit anybody in my life. (past participle – present perfect)
- George was hit on the head by a stone. (past participle – passive)

With other irregular verbs, the past simple is the same as the past participle (but different from the infinitive). For example, tell → told:
- Can you tell me what to do? (infinitive)
- She told me to come back the next day. (past simple)
- Have you told anybody about your new job? (past participle – present perfect)
- I was told to come back the next day. (past participle – passive)

With other irregular verbs, all three forms are different. For example, wake → woke/woken:
- I’ll wake you up. (infinitive)
- I woke up in the middle of the night. (past simple)
- The baby has woken up. (past participle – present perfect)
- I was woken up by a loud noise. (past participle – passive)

1.3 The following verbs can be regular or irregular:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb</th>
<th>regular form</th>
<th>irregular form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>burn</td>
<td>burned</td>
<td>burnt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dream</td>
<td>dreamed</td>
<td>dreamt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lean</td>
<td>leaned</td>
<td>leant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>learn</td>
<td>learned</td>
<td>learnt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smell</td>
<td>smelled</td>
<td>smelt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spell</td>
<td>spelled</td>
<td>spelt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spill</td>
<td>spilled</td>
<td>spilt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spoil</td>
<td>spoiled</td>
<td>spoilt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* pronunciation

So you can say:
- I leant out of the window. or I leaned out of the window.
- The dinner has been spoiled. or The dinner has been spoilt.

In British English the irregular form (burnt/learnt etc.) is more usual. For American English, see Appendix 7.
### 1.4 List of irregular verbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>infinitive</th>
<th>past simple</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>be</td>
<td>was/were</td>
<td>been</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beat</td>
<td>beat</td>
<td>beaten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>become</td>
<td>became</td>
<td>become</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin</td>
<td>began</td>
<td>begun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bend</td>
<td>bent</td>
<td>bent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bet</td>
<td>bit</td>
<td>bitten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bite</td>
<td>bit</td>
<td>bitten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blow</td>
<td>blew</td>
<td>blown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break</td>
<td>broke</td>
<td>broken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring</td>
<td>brought</td>
<td>brought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>broadcast</td>
<td>broadcast</td>
<td>broadcast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>build</td>
<td>built</td>
<td>built</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>burst</td>
<td>burst</td>
<td>burst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buy</td>
<td>bought</td>
<td>bought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catch</td>
<td>caught</td>
<td>caught</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>choose</td>
<td>chose</td>
<td>chosen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come</td>
<td>came</td>
<td>come</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>creep</td>
<td>crept</td>
<td>crept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deal</td>
<td>dealt</td>
<td>dealt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dig</td>
<td>dug</td>
<td>dug</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>done</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>draw</td>
<td>drew</td>
<td>drawn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drink</td>
<td>drank</td>
<td>drunk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drive</td>
<td>drove</td>
<td>driven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eat</td>
<td>ate</td>
<td>eaten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fall</td>
<td>fell</td>
<td>fallen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feed</td>
<td>fed</td>
<td>fed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feel</td>
<td>felt</td>
<td>felt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fight</td>
<td>fought</td>
<td>fought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find</td>
<td>found</td>
<td>found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flee</td>
<td>fled</td>
<td>fled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fly</td>
<td>flew</td>
<td>flown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forbid</td>
<td>forbade</td>
<td>forbidden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forget</td>
<td>forgot</td>
<td>forgotten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forgive</td>
<td>forgave</td>
<td>forgiven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>freeze</td>
<td>froze</td>
<td>frozen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get</td>
<td>got</td>
<td>got/gotten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give</td>
<td>gave</td>
<td>given</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
<td>went</td>
<td>gone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grow</td>
<td>grew</td>
<td>grown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hang</td>
<td>hung</td>
<td>hung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td>had</td>
<td>had</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hear</td>
<td>heard</td>
<td>heard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hide</td>
<td>hid</td>
<td>hidden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hit</td>
<td>hit</td>
<td>hit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hold</td>
<td>held</td>
<td>held</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>hurt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keep</td>
<td>kept</td>
<td>kept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kneel</td>
<td>knelt</td>
<td>knelt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know</td>
<td>knew</td>
<td>known</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lay</td>
<td>laid</td>
<td>laid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lead</td>
<td>led</td>
<td>led</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leave</td>
<td>left</td>
<td>left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lend</td>
<td>lent</td>
<td>lent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>let</td>
<td>let</td>
<td>let</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lie</td>
<td>lay</td>
<td>lain</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### infinitive | past simple | past participle
light | lit | lit
lose | lost | lost
make | made | made
mean | meant | meant
meet | met | met
pay | paid | paid
put | put | put
read | read [red]* | read [red]*
ride | rode | ridden
ring | rang | rung
rise | rose | risen
run | ran | run
say | said | said
see | saw | seen
seek | sought | sought
sell | sold | sold
send | sent | sent
set | set | set
sew | sewed | sewn/sewed
shake | shook | shaken
shine | shone | shone
shoot | shot | shot
show | showed | shown/showed
shrink | shrank | shrunk
shut | shut | shut
sing | sang | sung
sink | sank | sunk
sit | sat | sat
sleep | slept | slept
slide | slid | slid
speak | spoke | spoken
spend | spent | spent
spit | spat | spat
split | split | split
spread | spread | spread
spring | sprang | sprung
stand | stood | stood
steal | stole | stolen
stick | stuck | stuck
sting | stung | stung
stink | stank | stank
strike | struck | struck
swear | swore | sworn
sweep | swept | swept
swim | swim | swim
swing | swung | swung
take | took | taken
teach | taught | taught
tear | tore | torn
tell | told | told
think | thought | thought
throw | threw | thrown
understand | understood | understood
wake | woke | woken
wear | wore | worn
weep | wept | wept
win | won | won
write | wrote | written

* pronunciation
## Appendix 2
### Present and past tenses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Continuous</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>simple</strong></td>
<td><strong>continuous</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I do</td>
<td>I am doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>present simple</em> (→ Units 2–4)</td>
<td><em>present continuous</em> (→ Units 1, 3–4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ann often plays tennis.</td>
<td>'Where's Ann?' 'She's playing tennis.'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I work in a bank, but I don't enjoy it much.</td>
<td>Please don't disturb me now. I'm working.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you like parties?</td>
<td>Hello. Are you enjoying the party?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It doesn't rain so much in summer.</td>
<td>It isn't raining at the moment.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Continuous</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>perfect</strong></td>
<td><strong>perfect</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I have done</td>
<td>I have been doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>present perfect simple</em> (→ Units 7–8, 10–14)</td>
<td><em>present perfect continuous</em> (→ Units 9–11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ann has played tennis many times.</td>
<td>Ann is tired. She has been playing tennis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I've lost my key. Have you seen it anywhere?</td>
<td>You're out of breath. Have you been running?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How long have you and Sam known each other?</td>
<td>How long have you been learning English?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a: Is it still raining? b: No, it has stopped.</td>
<td>It's still raining. It has been raining all day.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The house is dirty. I haven't cleaned it for weeks.</td>
<td>I haven't been feeling well recently. Perhaps I should go to the doctor.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Past</th>
<th>Past</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>simple</strong></td>
<td><strong>perfect</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I did</td>
<td>I had done</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>past simple</em> (→ Units 5–6, 13–14)</td>
<td><em>past perfect</em> (→ Unit 15)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ann played tennis yesterday afternoon.</td>
<td>It wasn't her first game of tennis. She had played many times before.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I lost my key a few days ago.</td>
<td>They couldn't get into the house because they had lost the key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There was a film on TV last night, but we didn't watch it.</td>
<td>The house was dirty because I hadn't cleaned it for weeks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What did you do when you finished work yesterday?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Past</th>
<th>Past</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>perfect</strong></td>
<td><strong>perfect</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I was doing</td>
<td>I had been doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>past continuous</em> (→ Unit 6)</td>
<td><em>past perfect continuous</em> (→ Unit 16)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I saw Ann at the sports centre yesterday. She was playing tennis.</td>
<td>Ann was tired yesterday evening because she had been playing tennis in the afternoon.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I dropped my key when I was trying to open the door.</td>
<td>James decided to go to the doctor because he hadn't been feeling well.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The television was on, but we weren't watching it.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What were you doing at this time yesterday?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For the passive, see Units 42–44.
Appendix 3
The future

3.1 List of future forms:
- I’m leaving tomorrow.
- My train leaves at 9.30.
- I’m going to leave tomorrow.
- I’ll leave tomorrow.
- I’ll be leaving tomorrow.
- I’ll have left by this time tomorrow.
- I hope to see you before I leave tomorrow.

present continuous (→ Unit 19 A)
present simple (→ Unit 19B)
(be) going to (→ Units 20, 23)
will (→ Units 21-23)
future continuous (→ Unit 24)
future perfect (→ Unit 24)
present simple (→ Unit 25)

3.2 Future actions

We use the present continuous (I’m doing) for arrangements:
- I’m leaving tomorrow. I’ve got my plane ticket. (already planned and arranged)
- ‘When are they getting married?’ ‘On 24 July.’

We use the present simple (I leave / it leaves etc.) for timetables, programmes etc.:
- My train leaves at 11.30. (according to the timetable)
- What time does the film begin?

We use (be) going to ... to say what somebody has already decided to do:
- I’ve decided not to stay here any longer. I’m going to leave tomorrow. (or I’m leaving tomorrow.)
- ‘Your shoes are dirty.’ ‘Yes, I know. I’m going to clean them.’

We use will (‘ll) when we decide or agree to do something at the time of speaking:
- A: I don’t want you to stay here any longer.
- B: OK. I’ll leave tomorrow. (B decides this at the time of speaking)
- That bag looks heavy. I’ll help you with it.
- I won’t tell anybody what happened. I promise. (won’t = will not)

3.3 Future happenings and situations

Most often we use will to talk about future happenings (‘something will happen’) or situations (‘something will be’):
- I don’t think John is happy at work. I think he’ll leave soon.
- This time next year I’ll be in Japan. Where will you be?

We use (be) going to when the situation now shows what is going to happen in the future:
- Look at those black clouds. It’s going to rain. (you can see the clouds now)

3.4 Future continuous and future perfect

Will be (doing) will be in the middle of (doing something):
- This time next week I’ll be on holiday. I’ll be lying on a beach or swimming in the sea.
We also use will be -ing for future actions (see Unit 24C):
- What time will you be leaving tomorrow?

We use will have (done) to say that something will already be complete before a time in the future:
- I won’t be here this time tomorrow. I’ll have already left.

3.5 We use the present (not will) after when/if/while/before etc. (see Unit 25):
- I hope to see you before I leave tomorrow. (not before I will leave)
- When you are in London again, come and see us. (not When you will be)
- If we don’t hurry, we’ll be late.
Appendix 4
Modal verbs (can/could/will/would etc.)

This appendix is a summary of modal verbs. For more information, see Units 21–41.

4.1 Compare can/could etc. for actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Modal Verb</th>
<th>Example 1</th>
<th>Example 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>can</td>
<td>I can go out tonight. (= there is nothing to stop me)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I can’t go out tonight.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>could</td>
<td>I could go out tonight, but I’m not very keen.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I couldn’t go out last night. (= I wasn’t able)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can or may</td>
<td>Can I go out tonight? (= do you allow me?)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>May I go out tonight?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>will/won’t</td>
<td>I think I’ll go out tonight.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I promise I won’t go out.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>would</td>
<td>I would go out tonight, but I have too much to do.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I promised I wouldn’t go out.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shall</td>
<td>Shall I go out tonight? (do you think it is a good idea?)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>should</td>
<td>I should go out tonight. (= it would be a good thing to do)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I ought to go out tonight. (= it is necessary)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>must</td>
<td>I must go out tonight. (= it is necessary)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I mustn’t go out tonight. (= it is necessary that I don’t go out)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>needn’t</td>
<td>I needn’t go out tonight. (= it is not necessary)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.2 We use will/would/may etc. to say whether something is possible, impossible, probable, certain etc. Compare:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Modal Verb</th>
<th>Example 1</th>
<th>Example 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>could</td>
<td>I could have gone out last night, but I decided to stay at home.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>would</td>
<td>I would have gone out last night, but I had too much to do.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>should or ought to</td>
<td>I should have gone out last night. I’m sorry I didn’t.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>must</td>
<td>I must have gone out last night. (= I went out, but it was not necessary)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can’t</td>
<td>I can’t possibly have gone out last night. (= it’s impossible)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Compare could have ... / would have ... etc.:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Modal Verb</th>
<th>Example 1</th>
<th>Example 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>could</td>
<td>I could have gone out last night, but I decided to stay at home.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>would</td>
<td>I would have gone out last night, but I had too much to do.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>should or ought to</td>
<td>I should have gone out last night. I’m sorry I didn’t.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>must</td>
<td>I must have gone out last night. (= I went out, but it was not necessary)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can’t</td>
<td>I can’t possibly have gone out last night. (= it’s impossible)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.3 We use will/would/may etc. to say whether something is possible, impossible, probable, certain etc. Compare:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Modal Verb</th>
<th>Example 1</th>
<th>Example 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>will</td>
<td>She will be here soon. (= I expect she will be here soon)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>She would be here soon. (= I expect she will be here soon)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>should or ought to</td>
<td>She should be here soon. (= I expect she will be here soon)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>must</td>
<td>She must be here. I saw her come in.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can’t</td>
<td>She can’t possibly be here. I know for certain that she’s away on holiday.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Compare would have ... / should have ... etc.:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Modal Verb</th>
<th>Example 1</th>
<th>Example 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>will</td>
<td>She will have arrived by now. (= before now)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>would</td>
<td>She would have arrived earlier, but she was delayed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>should or ought to</td>
<td>I wonder where she is. She should have arrived by now.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>must</td>
<td>She must have arrived by now. (= I’m sure – there is no other possibility)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can’t</td>
<td>She can’t possibly have arrived yet. It’s much too early. (= it’s impossible)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Appendix 5
Short forms (I'm / you've / didn't etc.)

5.1 In spoken English we usually say I'm / you've / didn't etc. (short forms or contractions) rather than I am / you have / did not etc. We also use these short forms in informal writing (for example, a letter or message to a friend).

When we write short forms, we use an apostrophe ('') for the missing letter(s):

I'm = I am you've = you have didn't = did not

5.2 List of short forms:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>'m = am</th>
<th>I'm</th>
<th>he's</th>
<th>she's</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'s = is or has</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'re = are</td>
<td>I've</td>
<td>he'll</td>
<td>she'll</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'ve = have</td>
<td>I'll</td>
<td>he'd</td>
<td>she'd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'ll = will</td>
<td>I'd</td>
<td>he'd</td>
<td>she'd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'d = would or had</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

's can be is or has:

□ She’s ill. (= She is ill.)
□ She’s gone away. (= She has gone)

But let’s = let us:

□ Let's go now. (= Let us go)

’d can be would or had:

□ I’d see a doctor if I were you. (= I would see)
□ I’d never seen her before. (= I had never seen)

We use some of these short forms (especially 's) after question words (who/what etc.) and after that/there/here:

□ Who's that woman over there? (= who is)
□ What's happened? (= what has)
□ Do you think there'll be many people at the party? (= there will)

We also use short forms (especially 's) after a noun:

□ Katherine's going out tonight. (= Katherine is)
□ My best friend's just got married. (= My best friend has)

You cannot use 'm / 's / 're / 've / 'll / 'd at the end of a sentence (because the verb is stressed in this position):

□ 'Are you tired?' 'Yes, I am.' (not Yes, I'm.)
□ Do you know where she is? (not Do you know where she's?)

5.3 Negative short forms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>isn't (= is not)</th>
<th>don't (= do not)</th>
<th>haven't (= have not)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aren't (= are not)</td>
<td>doesn't (= does not)</td>
<td>hasn't (= has not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wasn't (= was not)</td>
<td>didn't (= did not)</td>
<td>hadn't (= had not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weren't (= were not)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can't (= cannot)</td>
<td>couldn't (= could not)</td>
<td>mustn't (= must not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>won't (= will not)</td>
<td>wouldn't (= would not)</td>
<td>needn't (= need not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shan't (= shall not)</td>
<td>shouldn't (= should not)</td>
<td>daren't (= dare not)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Negative short forms for is and are can be:

he isn't / she isn't / it isn't or he's not / she's not / it's not
you aren't / we aren't / they aren't or you're not / we're not / they're not
Appendix 6
Spelling

6.1 Nouns, verbs and adjectives can have the following endings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun + -s/-es (plural)</th>
<th>books</th>
<th>ideas</th>
<th>matches</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Verb + -s/-es (after he/she/it)</td>
<td>works</td>
<td>enjoys</td>
<td>washes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verb + -ing</td>
<td>working</td>
<td>enjoying</td>
<td>washing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verb + -ed</td>
<td>worked</td>
<td>enjoyed</td>
<td>washed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjective + -er (comparative)</td>
<td>cheaper</td>
<td>quicker</td>
<td>brighter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjective + -est (superlative)</td>
<td>cheapest</td>
<td>quickest</td>
<td>brightest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjective + -ly (adverb)</td>
<td>cheaply</td>
<td>quickly</td>
<td>brightly</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When we use these endings, there are sometimes changes in spelling. These changes are listed below.

6.2 Nouns and verbs + -s/-es
The ending is -es when the word ends in -s/-ss/-sh/-ch/-x:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bus/buses</th>
<th>miss/misses</th>
<th>wash/washes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>match/matches</td>
<td>search/searches</td>
<td>box/boxes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note also:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>potato/potatoes</th>
<th>tomato/tomatoes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>do/does</td>
<td>go/goes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6.3 Words ending in -y (baby, carry, easy etc.)

If a word ends in a consonant* + y (-by/-ry/-sy/-vy etc.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>baby/babies</th>
<th>story/stories</th>
<th>country/countries</th>
<th>secretary/secretaries</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hurry/hurries</td>
<td>study/studies</td>
<td>apply/applies</td>
<td>try/tries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>y changes to i before the ending -ed:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hurry/hurried</td>
<td>study/studied</td>
<td>apply/applied</td>
<td>try/tried</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>y changes to i before the endings -er and -est:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>easy/easier/easiest</td>
<td>heavy/heavier/heaviest</td>
<td>lucky/luckier/luckiest</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>y changes to i before the ending -ly:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>easy/easily</td>
<td>heavy/heavily</td>
<td>temporary/temporarily</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

y does not change before -ing:

hurrying studying applying trying

y does not change if the word ends in a vowel* + y (-ay/-ey/-oy/-uy):

play/plays/played monkey/monkeys enjoy/enjoys/enjoyed buy/buys

An exception is: day/daily

Note also: pay/paid lay/laid say/said

6.4 Verbs ending in -ie (die, lie, tie)
If a verb ends in -ie, ie changes to y before the ending -ing:

die/dying lie/lying tie/tying

* a e i o u are vowel letters.
The other letters (b c d f g etc.) are consonant letters.
Words ending in -e (hope, dance, wide etc.)

Verbs
If a verb ends in -e, we leave out e before the ending -ing:

- hope/hoping
- smile/smiling
- dance/dancing
- confuse/confusing

Exceptions are be/being
and verbs ending in -ee:

- see/seeing
- agree/agreeing

If a verb ends in -e, we add -d for the past (of regular verbs):

- hope/hoped
- smile/smiled
- dance/danced
- confuse/confused

Adjectives and adverbs
If an adjective ends in -e, we add -r and -st for the comparative and superlative:

- wide/wider/widest
- late/later/latest
- large/larger/largest

If an adjective ends in -e, we keep e before -ly in the adverb:

- polite/politely
- extreme/extremely
- absolute/absolutely

If an adjective ends in -le (simple, terrible etc.), the adverb ending is -ply, -bly etc.:

- simple/simply
- terrible/terribly
- reasonable/reasonably

Doubling consonants (stop/stopping/stopped, wet/wetter/wettest etc.)

Sometimes a word ends in vowel + consonant. For example:

- stop
- plan
- rub
- big
- wet
- thin
- prefer
- regret

Before the endings -ing/-ed/-er/-est, we double the consonant at the end. So p → pp, n → nn etc.

For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb</th>
<th>doubling</th>
<th>ending</th>
<th>ending</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>stop</td>
<td>p → pp</td>
<td>stopping</td>
<td>stopped</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plan</td>
<td>n → nn</td>
<td>planning</td>
<td>planned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rub</td>
<td>b → bb</td>
<td>rubbing</td>
<td>rubbed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>big</td>
<td>g → gg</td>
<td>bigger</td>
<td>biggest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wet</td>
<td>t → tt</td>
<td>wetter</td>
<td>wettest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thin</td>
<td>n → nn</td>
<td>thinner</td>
<td>thinnest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If the word has more than one syllable (prefer, begin etc.), we double the consonant at the end only if the final syllable is stressed:

- prefer / preferring / preferred
- regret / regretting / regretted
- permit / permitting / permitted
- begin / beginning
- regret / regretting / regretted
- develop / developing / developed
- remember / remembering / remembered

In British English, verbs ending in -l have -ll- before -ing and -ed whether the final syllable is stressed or not:

- travel / travelling / travelled
- cancel / cancelling / cancelled

For American spelling, see Appendix 7.

Note that
we do not double the final consonant if the word ends in two consonants (-rt, -lp, -ng etc.):

- start / starting / started
- help / helping / helped
- long / longer / longest

we do not double the final consonant if there are two vowel letters before it (-oil, -eed etc.):

- boil / boiling / boiled
- need / needing / needed
- explain / explaining / explained
- loud / louder / loudest
- quiet / quieter / quietest

we do not double y or w at the end of words. (At the end of words y and w are not consonants.)

- stay / staying / stayed
- grow / growing
- new / newer / newest
Appendix 7
American English

There are a few grammatical differences between British English and American English:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit</th>
<th>BRITISH</th>
<th>AMERICAN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 7A–B and 13A | The present perfect or past simple can be used for new or recent happenings. The present perfect is more common:  
- I've lost my key. Have you seen it?  
  (or I lost my key. Did you see it?)  
- Sally isn't here. She's gone out.  
The present perfect or past simple can be used with just, already and yet. The present perfect is more common:  
- I'm not hungry. I've just had lunch.  
  (or I just had lunch.)  
- A: What time is Mark leaving?  
  B: He's already left.  
- Have you finished your work yet? | The present perfect or past simple can be used for new or recent happenings. The past simple is more common:  
- I lost my key. Did you see it?  
  (or I've lost my key. Have you seen it?)  
- Sally isn't here. She went out.  
The present perfect or past simple can be used with just, already and yet. The past simple is more common:  
- I'm not hungry. I just had lunch.  
  (or I've just had lunch.)  
- A: What time is Mark leaving?  
  B: He already left.  
- Did you finish your work yet? |
| 17C | British speakers usually say:  
- have a bath  
- have a shower  
- have a break  
- have a holiday | American speakers say:  
- take a bath  
- take a shower  
- take a break  
- take a vacation |
| 21D and 22D | Will or shall can be used with I/we:  
- I will/shall be late this evening.  
Shall I ... ? and shall we ... ? are used to ask for advice etc.:  
- Which way shall we go? | Shall is unusual:  
- I will be late this evening.  
Should I ... ? and should we ... ? are more usual to ask for advice etc.:  
- Which way should we go? |
| 28 | British speakers use can't to say they believe something is not probable:  
- Sarah hasn't contacted me. She can't have got my message. | American speakers use must not in this situation:  
- Sarah hasn't contacted me. She must not have gotten my message. |
| 32 | You can use needn't or don't need to:  
- We needn't hurry.  
or  
- We don't need to hurry. | Needn't is unusual. The usual form is don't need to:  
- We don't need to hurry. |
| 34A–B | After insist, demand etc. you can use should:  
- I insisted that he should apologise.  
Many people are demanding that something should be done about the problem. | The subjunctive is normally used. Should is unusual after insist, demand etc.:  
- I insisted that he apologize.  
Many people are demanding that something be done about the problem. |
| 51B | British speakers generally use Have you? / Isn't she? etc.:  
- A: Lisa isn't very well today.  
  B: Isn't she? What's wrong with her? | American speakers generally use You have? / She isn't? etc.:  
- A: Lisa isn't very well today.  
  B: She isn't? What's wrong with her? |
| 70B | Accommodation is usually uncountable:  
- There isn't enough accommodation. | Accommodation can be countable:  
- There aren't enough accommodations. |

*Many verbs ending in -ise in British English (apologise/organise/specialise etc.) are spelt with -ize (apologize/organize/specialize etc.) in American English.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit</th>
<th>BRITISHROUTE</th>
<th>AMERICANROUTE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>74B</td>
<td>to/in hospital (without the):</td>
<td>to/in the hospital:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Three people were injured and taken to hospital.</td>
<td>Three people were injured and taken to the hospital.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>79C</td>
<td>Nouns like government/team/family etc. can have a singular or plural verb:</td>
<td>These nouns normally take a singular verb in American English:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The team is/are playing well.</td>
<td>The team is playing well.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121B</td>
<td>at the weekend / at weekends:</td>
<td>on the weekend / on weekends:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Will you be here at the weekend?</td>
<td>Will you be here on the weekend?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124D</td>
<td>at the front / at the back (of a group etc.):</td>
<td>in the front / in the back (of a group etc.):</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Let’s sit at the front (of the cinema).</td>
<td>Let’s sit in the front (of the movie theater).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>131C</td>
<td>different from or different to:</td>
<td>different from or different than:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>It was different from/to what I’d expected.</td>
<td>It was different from/than what I’d expected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>137A</td>
<td>British speakers use both round and around:</td>
<td>American speakers use around (not usually 'round'):</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>He turned round. or He turned around.</td>
<td>He turned around.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>137C</td>
<td>British speakers use both fill in and fill out:</td>
<td>American speakers use fill out:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Can you fill in this form? or Can you fill out this form?</td>
<td>Can you fill out this form?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>141B</td>
<td>get on = progress:</td>
<td>American speakers do not use get on in this way.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>How are you getting on in your new job?</td>
<td>American speakers use get along (with somebody):</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>get on (with somebody):</td>
<td>Richard gets along well with his new neighbors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Richard gets on well with his new neighbours.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>144D</td>
<td>do up a house etc.:</td>
<td>fix up a house etc.:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>That old house looks great now that it has been done up.</td>
<td>That old house looks great now that it has been fixed up.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Present and past (Units 1–6)

**Put the verb into the correct form: present simple (I do), present continuous (I am doing), past simple (I did) or past continuous (I was doing).**

1. We can go out now. It isn't raining (it / not / rain) any more.
2. Katherine was waiting (wait) for me when I arrived (I / arrive).
3. (I / get) hungry. Let's go and have something to eat.
4. What (you / do) in your spare time? Do you have any hobbies?
5. The weather was horrible when (we / arrive). It was cold and (it / rain) hard.
6. Louise usually (phone) me on Fridays, but (she / not / phone) last Friday.
7. A: When I last saw you, (you / think) of moving to a new flat.  
   B: That's right, but in the end (I / decide) to stay where I was.
8. Why (you / look) at me like that? What's the matter?
9. It's usually dry here at this time of the year. (it / not / rain) much.
10. Sorry I'm late. My phone (ring) three times while (I / get) ready to go out.
11. Lisa was busy when (we / go) to see her yesterday. She had an exam today and (she / prepare) for it.  
    (we / not / want) to disturb her, so (we / not / stay) very long.
12. When I first (tell) Tom what happened, (he / not / believe) me.  
    (he / think) that (I / joke).
Present and past

Which is correct?

1. Everything is going well. We didn't have / haven't had any problems so far.
   (haven't had is correct)
2. Lisa didn't go / hasn't gone to work yesterday. She wasn't feeling well.
3. Look! That man over there wears / is wearing the same sweater as you.
4. I went / have been to New Zealand last year.
5. I didn't hear / haven't heard from Jess recently. I hope she's OK.
6. I wonder why James is / is being so nice to me today. He isn't usually like that.
7. Jane had a book open in front of her, but she didn't read / wasn't reading it.
8. I wasn't very busy. I didn't have / wasn't having much to do.
9. It begins / It's beginning to get dark. Shall I turn on the light?
10. After finishing school, Tim got / has got a job in a factory.
11. When Sue heard the news, she wasn't / hasn't been very pleased.
12. This is a nice restaurant, isn't it? Is this the first time you are / you've been here?
13. I need a new job. I'm doing / I've been doing the same job for too long.
14. 'Anna has gone out.' 'Oh, has she? What time did she go / has she gone?'
15. 'You look tired.' 'Yes, I've played / I've been playing basketball.'
16. Where are you coming / do you come from? Are you American?
17. I'd like to see Tina again. It's a long time since I saw her / that I didn't see her.
18. Robert and Maria have been married since 20 years / for 20 years.

Complete each question using a suitable verb.

1. a: I'm looking for Paul. Have you seen him?
   b: Yes, he was here a moment ago.
2. a: Why did you go to bed so early last night?
   b: I was feeling very tired.
3. a: Where ................................................ ?
   b: Just to the shop at the end of the street. I'll be back in a few minutes.
4. a: ................................................... TV every evening?
   b: No, only if there's something special on.
5. a: Your house is very beautiful. How long ................................................ here?
   b: Nearly ten years.
6. a: How was your holiday? ................................................ a nice time?
   b: Yes, thanks. It was great.
7. a: ................................................... Sarah recently?
   b: Yes, we had lunch together a few days ago.
8. a: Can you describe the woman you saw? What ................................................ ?
   b: A red sweater and black jeans.
9. a: I'm sorry to keep you waiting. ................................................ long?
   b: No, only about ten minutes.
10. a: How long ................................................ you to get to work in the morning?
    b: Usually about 45 minutes. It depends on the traffic.
11. a: ................................................ a horse before?
    b: No, this is the first time. I'm a little nervous.
12. a: ................................................ to the United States?
    b: No, never, but I went to Canada a few years ago.
Additional exercises

4 Use your own ideas to complete B’s sentences.

1 a: What’s the new restaurant like? Is it good?
   b: I’ve no idea. I’ve never been there.

2 a: How well do you know Ben?
   b: Very well. We’ve been friends since we were children.

3 a: Did you enjoy your holiday?
   b: Yes, it was really good. It’s the best holiday I’ve ever had.

4 a: Is David still here?
   b: No, I’m afraid he isn’t. He left about ten minutes ago.

5 a: I like your suit. I haven’t seen it before.
   b: It’s new. It’s the first time I’ve worn it.

6 a: How did you cut your knee?
   b: I slipped and fell when I was playing tennis.

7 a: Do you ever go swimming?
   b: Not these days. I haven’t been swimming for a long time.

8 a: How often do you go to the cinema?
   b: Very rarely. It’s nearly a year since I last went.

9 a: I’ve bought some new shoes. Do you like them?
   b: Yes, they’re very nice. Where did you buy them?

Present and past

5 Put the verb into the correct form: past simple (I did), past continuous (I was doing), past perfect (I had done) or past perfect continuous (I had been doing).

1 Yesterday afternoon Sarah went (go) to the station to meet Paul. When she got (get) there, Paul was already (already / wait) for her. His train had been (arrive) early.

2 When I got home, Ben was (lie) on the sofa. The TV was on, but he was not (not / watch) it. He had fallen (fall) asleep and was (snore) loudly. I had turned (turn) the TV off and just then he had woken (wake) up.
Last night I (just / go) to bed and (read) a book when suddenly I (hear) a noise. I (get) up to see what it was, but I (not / see) anything, so I (go) back to bed.

Lisa had to go to New York last week, but she almost (miss) the plane. She (stand) in the queue at the check-in desk when she suddenly (realise) that she (leave) her passport at home. Fortunately she lives near the airport, so she (have) time to take a taxi home to get it. She (get) back to the airport just in time for her flight.

I (meet) Peter and Lucy yesterday as I (walk) through the park. They (be) to the sports centre where they (play) tennis. They (go) to a cafe and (invite) me to join them, but I (arrange) to meet another friend and (not / have) time.

Make sentences from the words in brackets. Put the verb into the correct form: present perfect (I have done), present perfect continuous (I have been doing), past perfect (I had done) or past perfect continuous (I had been doing).

1 Amanda is sitting on the ground. She’s out of breath.
   (she / run) She has been running.

2 Where’s my bag? I left it under this chair.
   (somebody / take / it)

3 We were all surprised when Jess and Nick got married last year.
   (they / only / know / each other / a few weeks)

4 It’s still raining. I wish it would stop.
   (it / rain / all day)

5 Suddenly I woke up. I was confused and didn’t know where I was.
   (I / dream)
Additional exercises

6 I wasn’t hungry at lunchtime, so I didn’t have anything to eat.
   (I / have / a big breakfast)

7 Every year Robert and Tina spend a few days at the same hotel by the sea.
   (they / go / there for years)

8 I’ve got a headache.
   (I / have / it / since I got up)

9 Next month Gary is going to run in a marathon.
   (he / train / very hard for it)

Put the verb into the correct form.

Sarah and Joe are old friends. They meet by chance at a train station.

SARAH: Hello, Joe. (1) (I / not / see)
you for ages. How are you?

JOE: I’m fine. How about you?
   (2) (you / look) good.

SARAH: Thanks. You too.
   So, (3) (you / go) somewhere or
   (4) (you / meet) somebody?

JOE: (5) (I / go) to London for a business meeting.

SARAH: Oh. (6) (you / often / go) away on business?

JOE: Quite often, yes. And you? Where (?)
   (you / go)?

SARAH: Nowhere. (8) (I / meet) a friend.
   Unfortunately her train (9) (be) delayed –
   (10) (I / wait) here for nearly an hour.

JOE: How are your children?

SARAH: They’re all fine, thanks. The youngest (11)
   (just / start) school.

JOE: How (12) (she / get) on?
   (13) (she / like) it?

SARAH: Yes, (14) (she / think) it’s great.

JOE: (15) (you / work) at the moment? The last time I
   (16) (speak) to you, (17)
   (you / work) in a travel agency.

SARAH: That’s right. Unfortunately the company (18)
   (go) out of business a couple of months after (19)
   (I / start) work there, so (20)
   (I / lose) my job.

JOE: And (21) (you / not / have) a job since then?

SARAH: Not a permanent job. (22) (I / have) a few temporary
   jobs. By the way, (23) (you / see) Matt recently?

JOE: Matt? He’s in Canada.

SARAH: Really? How long (24) (he / be) in Canada?

JOE: About a year now. (25) (I / see) him a few days before
   (26) (he / go). (27) (he / decide) to try his
   luck somewhere else. (28)
   (he / really / look forward)
   to going.

SARAH: So, what (30) (he / do) there?

JOE: I have no idea. (31) (I / not / hear) from him since
   (32) (he / leave). Anyway, I have to go and catch my train.

SARAH: It was really nice to see you again.

JOE: Thanks. Bye. Have a good trip.

Put the verb into the most suitable form.

1. Who ...................................   (invent) the bicycle?
2. ‘Do you still have a headache?’ ‘No, (it/go). I’m OK now.’
3. I was the last to leave the office last night. Everybody else ..........................   (go) home when I ...................................   (leave).
4. What .................................... (you / do) last weekend? ...................................... (you / go) away?
5. I like your car. How long ................................ (you / have) it?
6. It’s a shame the trip was cancelled. I ..................................   (look) forward to it.
7. Jane is an experienced teacher and loves her job. ................................. (she / teach) for 15 years.
8. (I / buy) a new jacket last week, but .......................................................... (I / not / wear) it yet.
9. A few days ago .................................. (I / see) a man at a party whose face ........................................... (be) very familiar. At first I couldn’t think where ........................................... (I / see) him before. Then suddenly .................................. (I / remember) who ........................................... (it/be).
10. (you / hear) of Agatha Christie? ........................................ (she / be) a writer who .................................   (die) in 1976 .................................(she / write) more than 70 detective novels. ........................................ (you / read) any of them?
11. a: What .................................. (this word / mean)?
    b: I’ve no idea. ............................... (I / never / see) it before. Look it up in the dictionary.
12. a: (you / get) to the theatre in time for the play last night?
    b: No, we were late. By the time we got there, .................................. (it / already / start).
13. I went to Sarah’s room and .................................. (knock) on the door, but there .................................. (be) no answer. Either .................................. (she / go) out or .................................. (she / not / want) to see anyone.
14. Patrick asked me how to use the photocopier. .................................. (he / never / use) it before, so .................................. (he / not / know) what to do.
15. Lisa ......................................... (go) for a swim after work yesterday. ...................................... (she / need) some exercise because .................................. (she / sit) in an office all day in front of a computer.

Past continuous and used to

Complete the sentences using the past continuous (was/were -ing) or used to ... . Use the verb in brackets.

1. I haven’t been to the cinema for ages now. .......................... (go) a lot. (go)
2. Ann didn’t see me wave to her. She .................................. in the other direction. (look)
3. I ......................................... a lot, but I don’t use my car very much these days. (drive)
4. I asked the taxi driver to slow down. She .................................. too fast. (drive)
5. Rosemary and Jonathan met for the first time when they .................................. in the same bank. (work)
6. When I was a child, I .................................. a lot of bad dreams. (have)
7. I wonder what Joe is doing these days. .......................... in Spain when I last (live)
heard from him. (live)
8. ‘Where were you yesterday afternoon?’ ‘I .................................. volleyball.’ (play)
9. ‘Do you do any sports?’ ‘Not these days, but I .................................. volleyball.’ (play)
10. George looked very nice at the party. .......................... a very smart suit. (wear)
Additional exercises

The future

10 What do you say to your friend in these situations? Use the words given in brackets. Use the present continuous (I am doing), going to or will (I'll).

1 You have made all your holiday arrangements. Your destination is Jamaica.
   FRIEND: Have you decided where to go for your holiday yet?
   YOU: I'm going to Jamaica. (I/go)

2 You have made an appointment with the dentist for Friday morning.
   FRIEND: Shall we meet on Friday morning?
   YOU: I can't on Friday........................................... (I/go)

3 You and some friends are planning a holiday in Spain. You have decided to hire a car, but you haven't arranged this yet.
   FRIEND: How do you plan to travel round Spain? By train?
   YOU: No, (we/hire)

4 Your friend has two young children. She wants to go out tomorrow evening. You offer to look after the children.
   FRIEND: I want to go out tomorrow evening, but I don't have a babysitter.
   YOU: That's no problem...............     (I/look after)

5 You have already arranged to have lunch with Sue tomorrow.
   FRIEND: Are you free at lunchtime tomorrow?
   YOU: No, (have lunch)

6 You are in a restaurant. You and your friend are looking at the menu. Maybe your friend has decided what to have. You ask her/him.
   YOU: What ...  ? (you/have)
   FRIEND: I don't know. I can't make up my mind.

7 You and a friend are reading. It's getting a bit dark and your friend is having trouble reading. You decide to turn on the light.
   FRIEND: It's getting a bit dark, isn't it? It's difficult to read.
   YOU: Yes. .......... (I/turn on)

8 You and a friend are reading. It's getting a bit dark and you decide to turn on the light. You stand up and walk towards the light switch.
   FRIEND: What are you doing?
   YOU: (I/turn on)

11 Put the verb into the most suitable form. Use a present tense (simple or continuous), will (I'll) or shall.

Conversation 1 (in the morning)

JENNY: (1) Are you doing (you/do) anything tomorrow evening, Helen?
HELEN: No, why?
JENNY: Well, would you like to go to the cinema? Strangers on a Plane is on. I want to see it, but I don't want to go alone.
HELEN: OK, (2) (I / come) with you. What time (3) (we/meet)?
JENNY: Well, the film (4) (start) at 8.45, so (5) (I/meet) you at about 8.30 outside the cinema, OK?
HELEN: Fine. (6) (I/see) Tina later this evening.
JENNY: (7) (I/ask) her if she wants to come too?
HELEN: Yes, do that. (8) (I/see) you tomorrow then. Bye.
Conversation 2 (later the same day)

HELEN: Jenny and I (go) to the cinema tomorrow night to see Strangers on a Plane. Why don’t you come too?

TINA: I’d love to come. What time (start) the film?

HELEN: 8.45.

TINA: (meet) outside the cinema?

HELEN: Yes, at 8.30. Is that OK for you?

TINA: Yes, (be) there at 8.30.

Put the verb into the most suitable form. Sometimes there is more than one possibility.

1. A has decided to learn a language.
   - A: I’ve decided to try and learn a foreign language.
   - B: Have you? Which language (learn) you are going to learn (you / learn)?
     - A: Spanish.
     - B: (do) you a course?
     - A: Yes, (start) next week.
     - B: That’s great. I’m sure (enjoy) it.
     - A: I hope so. But I think (be) difficult.

2. A wants to know about B’s holiday plans.
   - A: I hear (go) on holiday soon.
   - B: That’s right. (go) to Finland.
   - A: I hope (have) a nice time.
   - B: Thanks. (send) you a postcard and (get) in touch with you when (get) back.

3. A invites B to a party.
   - A: (have) a party next Saturday. Can you come?
   - B: On Saturday? I’m not sure. Some friends of mine (come) to stay with me next week, but I think (leave) by Saturday. But if (be) still here, (get) able to come to the party.
   - A: OK. Well, tell me as soon as (know).
   - B: Right. (call) you during the week.

4. A and B are two secret agents arranging a meeting. They are talking on the phone.
   - A: Well, what time (meet)?
   - B: Come to the cafe by the station at 4 o’clock.
   - (wait) for you when (arrive).
   - (sit) by the window and (wear) a bright green sweater.
   - A: OK. (Agent 307 / come) too?
   - B: No, she can’t be there.
   - A: Oh. (bring) the documents?
   - B: Yes. (explain) everything when (see) you. And don’t be late.
   - A: OK. (try) to be on time.
Additional exercises

Put the verb into the correct form. Choose from the following:

*present continuous* (I am doing) will (I'll) / won't
*present simple* (I do) will be doing
*going to* (I'm going to do) shall

1 I feel a bit hungry. I think ........................................ (I / have) something to eat.
2 Why are you putting on your coat? ........................................ (you / go) somewhere?
3 What time ........................................ (I / phone) you tonight? About 7.30?
4 Look! That plane is flying towards the airport. ........................................ (it / land).
5 We must do something soon, before ........................................ (it / be) too late.
6 I'm sorry you've decided to leave the company. ........................................ (I / miss) you
when ........................................ (you / go).
7 ........................................ (I / give) you my phone number? If ........................................ (I / give) you my number, ........................................ (you / call) me?
8 Are you still watching that programme? What time ........................................ (it / end)?
9 ........................................ (I / go) to a wedding next weekend. A friend of mine ........................................ (get) married.
10 I'm not ready yet. ........................................ (I / tell) you when ........................................ (I / be) ready. I promise ........................................ (I / not / be) very long.

Past, present and future

Use your own ideas to complete B's sentences.

1 A: How did the accident happen?
   b: I ........................................ too fast and couldn't stop in time.
2 A: Is that a new camera?
   b: No, I ........................................ it a long time.
3 A: Is that a new computer?
   b: Yes, I ........................................ it a few weeks ago.
4 A: I can't talk to you right now. You can see I'm very busy.
   b: OK. I ........................................ back in about half an hour.
5 A: This is a nice restaurant. Do you come here often?
   b: No, it's the first time I ........................................ here.
6 A: Do you do any sport?
   b: No, I ........................................ football, but I gave it up.
7 A: I'm sorry I'm late.
   b: That's OK. I ........................................ long.
8 A: When you went to the US last year, was it your first visit?
   b: No, I ........................................ there twice before.
9 A: Do you have any plans for the weekend?
   b: Yes, I ........................................ to a party on Saturday night.
10 A: Do you know what Steve's doing these days?
    b: No, I ........................................ him for ages.
11 A: Will you still be here by the time I get back?
    b: No, I ........................................ by then.
Robert is travelling in North America. He sends an email to a friend in Winnipeg (Canada). Put the verb into the most suitable form.

Subject: 
To:

Hi
(1) I’ve just arrived (I / just / arrive) in Minneapolis.  (2)  
(I / travel) for more than a month now, and (3)  (I / begin) to think about coming home. Everything (4)  (I / see) so far
(5) (be) really interesting, and (6) (I / meet) some really kind people.

(7) (I / leave) Kansas City a week ago.  (8)  
(I / stay) there with Emily, the aunt of a friend from college. She was really helpful and hospitable and although (9)  (I / plan) to stay only a couple of days, (10)  (I / end up) staying more than a week.

(11) (I / enjoy) the journey from Kansas City to here.
(12) (I / take) the Greyhound bus and (13)  (meet) some really interesting people – everybody was really friendly.

So now I’m here, and (14)  (I / stay) here for a few days before (15)  (I / continue) up to Canada. I’m not sure exactly when (16)  (I / get) to Winnipeg – it depends what happens while (17)  (I / be) here. But (18)  (I / let) you know as soon as (19)  (I / know) myself.

(20) (I / stay) with a family here – they’re friends of some people I know at home. Tomorrow (21)  (we / visit) some people they know who (22)  (build) a house in the mountains. It isn’t finished yet, but (23)  (it / be) interesting to see what it’s like.

Anyway, that’s all for now. (24)  (I / be) in touch again soon.

Robert

---

Modal verbs (can/must/would etc.)

Which alternatives are correct? Sometimes only one alternative is correct, and sometimes two of the alternatives are possible.

1. ‘What time will you be home tonight?’ ‘I’m not sure. I ___________________ late.’  
   A may be  B might be  C can be  (both A and B are correct)

2. I can’t find the theatre tickets. They ___________________ out of my pocket.  
   A must have fallen  B should have fallen  C had to fall

3. Somebody ran in front of the car as I was driving. Fortunately I ___________________ just in time.  
   A could stop  B could have stopped  C managed to stop

4. We’ve got plenty of time. We ___________________ yet.  
   A mustn’t leave  B needn’t leave  C don’t need to leave
Additional exercises

5 I ................................ out but I didn’t feel like it, so I stayed at home.
   A could go   B could have gone   C must have gone

6 I’m sorry I ................................ come to your party last week.
   A couldn’t come   B couldn’t have come   C wasn’t able to come

7 ‘What do you think of my theory?’ ‘I’m not sure. You ................................ right.’
   A could be   B must be   C might be

8 I couldn’t wait for you any longer. I ................................, and so I went.
   A must go   B must have gone   C had to go

9 ‘Do you know where Sarah is?’ ‘No. I suppose she ................................ shopping.’
   A should have gone   B may have gone   C could have gone

10 At first they didn’t believe me when I told them what had happened, but in the end
    I ................................ them that I was telling the truth.
   A was able to convince   B managed to convince   C could convince

11 I promised I’d call Gary this evening. I ................................ .
   A mustn’t forget   B needn’t forget   C don’t have to forget

12 Why did you leave without me? You ................................ for me.
   A must have waited   B had to wait   C should have waited

13 Lisa called me and suggested ................................ lunch together.
   A we have   B we should have   C to have

14 You look nice in that jacket, but you hardly ever wear it. ................................ it more often.
   A You’d better wear   B You should wear   C You ought to wear

15 Shall I buy a car? What’s your advice? What ................................ ?
   A will you do   B would you do   C shall you do

Complete the sentences using the words in brackets.

1 Don’t phone them now.
   They ................................ lunch. (might / have)

2 I’ve eaten too much. Now I feel sick.
   I ................................ so much. (shouldn’t / eat)

3 I wonder why Tom didn’t phone me.
   He ................................ . (must / forget)

4 Why did you go home so early?
   You ................................ home so early. (needn’t / go)

5 You’ve signed the contract.
   It ................................ now. (can’t / change)

6 ‘What’s Linda doing?’ ‘I’m not sure.’
   She ................................ TV. (may / watch)

7 Laura was standing outside the cinema.
   She ................................ for somebody. (must / wait)

8 He was in prison at the time that the crime was committed.
   He ................................ it. (couldn’t / do)

9 Why weren’t you here earlier?
   You ................................ here earlier. (ought / be)

10 Why didn’t you ask me to help you?
   I ................................ you. (would / help)

11 I’m surprised you weren’t told that the road was dangerous.
   You ................................ about it. (should / warn)

12 Gary was in a strange mood yesterday.
   He ................................ very well. (might not / feel)
Additional exercises

18 Complete B’s sentences using can/could/might/must/should/would + the verb in brackets. In some sentences you need to use have: must have ... / should have ... etc. In some sentences you need the negative (can’t/couldn’t etc.).

1 a: I’m hungry.
   b: But you’ve just had lunch. You can’t be hungry already. (be)

2 a: I haven’t seen our neighbours for ages.
   b: No. They must have gone away. (go)

3 a: What’s the weather like? Is it raining?
   b: Not at the moment, but it may later. (rain)

4 a: Where’s Julia?
   b: I’m not sure. She must have gone out. (go)

5 a: I didn’t see you at Michael’s party last week.
   b: No, I had to work that night, so I must have gone. (go)

6 a: I think I saw you at Michael’s party last week.
   b: No, you couldn’t have. I didn’t go to Michael’s party. (see)

7 a: What time will we get to Sue’s house?
   b: Well, it takes about one and a half hours, so if we leave at 3 o’clock, we should be there by 4.30. (get)

8 a: When was the last time you saw Bill?
   b: Years ago. I must have seen him if I saw him now. (recognise)

9 a: Did you hear the explosion?
   b: What explosion?
   a: There was a loud explosion about an hour ago. You must have heard it. (hear)

10 a: We weren’t sure which way to go. In the end we turned right.
   b: You went the wrong way. You should have turned left. (turn)

19 Put the verb into the correct form.

1 If you found a wallet in the street, what would you do with it? (you/find)

2 I must hurry. My friend will be annoyed if I’m not on time. (I/not/be)

3 I didn’t realise that Gary was in hospital. If I’d known he was in hospital, I would have gone to visit him. (I/know)

4 If the phone rings, can you answer it? (ring)

5 I can’t decide what to do. What would you do if you were in my position? (you/be)

6 a: What shall we do tomorrow?
   b: Well, if it’s a nice day, we can go to the beach. (it/be)

7 a: Let’s go to the beach.
   b: No, it’s too cold. If it was warmer, I wouldn’t mind going. (it/be)

8 a: Did you go to the beach yesterday?
   b: No, it was too cold. I didn’t go to the beach. (I/go)

9 If you had enough money to go anywhere in the world, where would you go? (you/have)

10 I’m glad we had a map. I’m sure we would have got lost if we’d not had one. (we/not/have)

11 The accident was your fault. If you’d driven more carefully, it wouldn’t have happened. (you/drive)

12 a: Why do you read newspapers?
   b: Well, if I didn’t read newspapers, I wouldn’t know what was happening in the world. (I/not/read)
Additional exercises

**20 Complete the sentences.**

1. Lisa is tired all the time. She shouldn’t go to bed so late.
   If Lisa ________ go to bed so late, she ________ tired all the time.
2. It’s getting late. I don’t think Sarah will come to see us now.
   I’d be surprised if Sarah ________ to see us now.
3. I’m sorry I disturbed you. I didn’t know you were busy.
   If ________ you were busy, I ________ you.
4. I don’t want them to be upset, so I’ve decided not to tell them what happened.
   If I ________ them what happened, they ________ upset.
5. The dog attacked you, but only because you frightened it.
   If you ________ the dog, it ________ you.
6. Unfortunately I didn’t have an umbrella and so I got very wet in the rain.
   I ________ so wet if I ________ an umbrella.
7. Martin failed his driving test. He was very nervous and that’s why he failed.
   If he ________ so nervous, he ________ the test.

**21 Use your own ideas to complete the sentences.**

1. I’d go out tonight if ________
2. I’d have gone out last night if ________
3. If you hadn’t reminded me, ________
4. If I had my camera, ________
5. If you give me the camera, ________
6. Who would you phone if ________
7. We wouldn’t have been late if ________
8. If I’d been able to get a ticket, ________
9. If I’d done better at the interview, ________
10. You wouldn’t be hungry now if ________
11. Cities would be nicer places if ________
12. If there was no TV, ________

**Passive**

**22 Put the verb into the most suitable passive form.**

1. There’s somebody behind us. I think we’re being ________ (we / follow).
2. A mystery is something that ________ (can’t / explain) (can’t / explain).
3. We didn’t play football yesterday. The game ________ (cancel).
4. The TV ________ (repair). It’s working again now.
5. In the middle of the village there is a church which ________ (restore) at the moment. The work is almost finished.
6. The tower is the oldest part of the church. ________ (it / believe) to be over 600 years old.
7. If I didn’t do my job properly, ________ (I / would / sack).
8. A: I left a newspaper on the desk last night and it isn’t there now.
   B: ________ (it / might / throw) away.
9. I learnt to swim when I was very young. ________ (I / teach) by my mother.
10. After ________ (arrest), I was taken to the police station.
11. ‘ ________ (you / ever / arrest)?’ ‘No, never.’
12. Two people ________ (report) to ________ (injure) in an explosion at a factory in Birmingham early this morning.
23 Put the verb into the correct form, active or passive.

1. This house is quite old. It **was built** (build) over 100 years ago.
2. My grandfather was a builder. He **built** (build) this house many years ago.
3. ‘Is your car still for sale?’ ‘No, I **sell** (sold) it.’
4. a: Is the house at the end of the street still for sale?
   b: No, it **sell** (sold).
5. Sometimes mistakes **must** (might / steal).
6. I wouldn’t leave your car unlocked. It **might / steal**
7. My bag has disappeared. It **must / steal**
8. I can’t find my hat. Somebody **must / take** it by mistake.
9. It’s a serious problem. I don’t know how it **can / solve**
10. We didn’t leave early enough. We **should / leave** earlier.
11. Nearly every time I travel by plane, my flight **delay**
12. A new bridge **build** across the river. Work started last year and the bridge **expect** to open next year.

24 Read these newspaper reports and put the verbs into the most suitable form.

**Castle Fire**

Winton Castle **was damaged** (damage) in a fire last night. The fire, which **discover** (discover) at about 9 o’clock, spread very quickly. Nobody **injure** (injure), but two people had to **rescue** (rescue) from an upstairs room. A number of paintings **believe / destroy** (believe / destroy). It **not / know** (not / know) how the fire started.

**SHOP ROBBERY**

In Paxham yesterday a shop assistant **force** (force) to hand over £500 after **threaten** (threaten) by a man with a knife. The man escaped in a car which **steal** earlier in the day. The car **find** (later / find) in a car park where it **abandon** (abandon) by the thief. A man **arrest** (arrest) in connection with the robbery and **question** (still / question) by the police.

**ROAD DELAYS**

Repair work started yesterday on the Paxham–Longworth road. The road **resurface** (resurface) and there will be long delays. Drivers **ask** (ask) to use an alternative route if possible. The work **expect** (expect) to last two weeks. Next Sunday the road **close** (close), and traffic **divert** (divert).

**Accident**

A woman **take** (take) to hospital after her car collided with a lorry near Norstock yesterday. She **allow** (allow) home later after treatment. The road **block** (block) for an hour after the accident, and traffic had to **divert** (divert). A police inspector said afterwards: ‘The woman was lucky. She could **kill** (kill).’
Complete the sentences using reported speech.

1. Can I speak to Paul, please?
   I'll try again later.
   Paul has gone out. I don't know when he'll be back. Do you want to leave a message?

A woman phoned at lunchtime yesterday and asked if she could speak to Paul. I told her ....................................................... and ..............................................................

but she said ....................................................... later. But she never did.

2. We have no record of a reservation in your name.
   We're sorry, but the hotel is full.

I went to London recently, but my visit didn't begin well. I had reserved a hotel room, but when I got to the hotel they told ....................................................... . When I asked ....................................................... , they said ....................................................... , but

There was nothing I could do. I just had to look for somewhere else to stay.

3. Why are you visiting the country?
   We're on holiday.
   How long do you intend to stay?
   Where will you be staying during your visit?

After getting off the plane, we had to queue for an hour to get through immigration. Finally it was our turn. The immigration official asked us ....................................................... , and we told ....................................................... .

Then he wanted to know ....................................................... and

He seemed satisfied with our answers, checked our passports and wished us a pleasant stay.

4. I'll phone you from the airport when I arrive.
   Don't come to the airport. I'll take the bus.

A: What time is Sue arriving this afternoon?
   B: About three. She said ....................................................... .

A: Aren't you going to meet her?
   B: No, she said ....................................................... . She said
A few days ago a man phoned from a marketing company and started asking me questions. He wanted to know and asked. I don't like people phoning and asking questions like that, so I told and I put the phone down.

Louise and Sarah are in a restaurant waiting for Paul.

LOUISE: I wonder where Paul is. He said.

SARAH: Maybe he's got lost.

LOUISE: I don't think so. He said And I told

Five minutes later

JOE: Is there anything to eat?

JANE: You just said

JOE: Well, I am now. I'd love a banana.

JANE: A banana? But you said

You told

- **ing and to ...**

26 Put the verb into the correct form.

1. How old were you when you learnt **to drive**? (drive)
2. I don't mind **walking** home, but I'd rather **get** a taxi. (walk, get)
3. I can't make a decision. I keep **changing** my mind. (change)
4. He had made his decision and refused **changing** his mind. (change)
5. Why did you change your decision? What made you **change** your mind? (change)
6. It was a really good holiday. I really enjoyed **being** by the sea again. (be)
7. Did I really tell you I was unhappy? I don't remember **saying** that. (say)
8. ‘Remember **to call** Tom tomorrow.’ ‘OK. I won’t forget.’ (call)
Additional exercises

9 The water here is not very good. I'd avoid it if I were you. (drink)
10 I pretended interested in the conversation, but really it was very boring. (be)
11 I got up and looked out of the window what the weather was like. (see)
12 I have a friend who claims to be able to speak five languages. (be)
13 I like carefully about things before a decision. (think, make)
14 I had a flat in the centre of town but I didn't like there, so I decided to move. (live, move)
15 Steve used to be a footballer. He had to stop because of an injury. (be, play)
16 After being stopped by the police, the man admitted stealing the car, but denied driving it at 100 miles an hour. (stop, steal, drive)

27 Make sentences from the words in brackets.

1 I can't find the tickets. (I / seem / lose / them)
   I seem to have lost them.
2 I don't have far to go. (it / not / worth / take / a taxi)
   It's not worth taking a taxi.
3 I'm feeling a bit tired. (I / not / fancy / go / out)

4 Tim isn't very reliable. (he / tend / forget / things)

5 I've got a lot of luggage. (you / mind / help / me?)

6 There's nobody at home. (everybody / seem / go out)

7 We don't like our apartment. (we / think / move)

8 The vase was very valuable. (I / afraid / touch / it)

9 Ben never carries a lot of money with him. (he / afraid / robbed)

10 I wouldn't go to see the film. (it / not / worth / see)

11 I'm very tired after that long walk. (I / not / used / walk / so far)

12 Sue is on holiday. I received a postcard from her yesterday. (she / seem / enjoy / herself)

13 Dan had lots of photographs he'd taken while on holiday. (he / insist / show / them to me)

14 I don't want to do the shopping. (I'd rather / somebody else / do / it)

318
Additional exercises

Complete the second sentence so that the meaning is similar to the first.

1. I was surprised I passed the exam.
   I didn’t expect to pass the exam.
2. Did you manage to solve the problem?
   Did you succeed in solving the problem?
3. I don’t read newspapers any more.
   I’ve given up.
4. I’d prefer not to go out tonight.
   I’d rather.
5. He finds it difficult to sleep at night.
   He has trouble.
6. Shall I phone you this evening?
   Do you want?
7. Nobody saw me come in.
   I came in without.
8. They said I was a cheat.
   I was accused.
9. It will be good to see them again.
   I’m looking forward.
10. What do you think I should do?
    What do you advise me?
11. It’s a pity I couldn’t go out with you last night.
    I’d like.
12. I wish I’d taken your advice.
    I regret.

Put in a/an or the where necessary. Leave the space empty if the sentence is already complete.

1. I don’t usually like staying at hotels, but last summer we spent two weeks at a very nice hotel by the sea.
2. If you go to live in a foreign country, you should try and learn a language.
3. Helen is an economist. She lives in the United States and works for an investment company.
4. I love a sport, especially a game of tennis. I play two or three times a week if I can, but I’m not a very good player.
5. I won’t be home for dinner this evening. I’m meeting some friends after work and we’re going to the cinema.
6. When unemployment is high, it’s difficult for people to find work. It’s a big problem.
7. There was an accident as I was going home last night. Two people were taken to the hospital. I think most accidents are caused by people driving too fast.
8. a: What’s the name of the hotel where you’re staying?
   b: The Ambassador. It’s in Queen Street in the city centre. It’s near the station.
9. I have two brothers. The older one is training to be a pilot with British Airways. The younger one is still at school. When he leaves school, he wants to go to a university to study law.
Additional exercises

Pronouns and determiners

Which alternatives are correct? Sometimes only one alternative is correct, and sometimes two alternatives are possible.

1. I don't remember __________ about the accident.
   A. anything  B. something  C. nothing  (A is correct)

2. Chris and I have known __________ for quite a long time.
   A. us  B. each other  C. ourselves

3. "How often do the buses run?" __________ twenty minutes.
   A. All  B. Each  C. Every

4. I shouted for help, but __________ came.
   A. nobody  B. no-one  C. anybody

5. Last night we went out with some friends of __________.
   A. us  B. our  C. ours

6. It didn't take us a long time to get here. __________ traffic.
   A. It wasn't much  B. There wasn't much  C. It wasn't a lot

7. Can I have __________ milk in my coffee, please?
   A. a little  B. any  C. some

8. Sometimes I find it difficult to __________.
   A. concentrate  B. concentrate me  C. concentrate myself

9. There's __________ on at the cinema that I want to see, so there's no point in going.
   A. something  B. anything  C. nothing

10. I drink __________ water every day.
    A. much  B. a lot of  C. lots of

11. __________ in the centre are open on Sunday.
    A. Most of shops  B. Most of the shops  C. The most of the shops

12. There were about twenty people in the photo. I didn't recognise __________ of them.
    A. any  B. none  C. either

13. I've been waiting __________ for Sarah to phone.
    A. all morning  B. the whole morning  C. all the morning

14. I can't afford to buy anything in this shop. __________ so expensive.
    A. All is  B. Everything is  C. All are

Adjectives and adverbs

There are mistakes in some of these sentences. Correct the sentences where necessary. Write 'OK' if the sentence is already correct.

1. The building was total destroyed in the fire.
   C. totally destroyed

2. I didn't like the book. It was such a stupid story.

3. The city is very polluted. It's the more polluted place I've ever been to.

4. I was disappointing that I didn't get the job. I was well-qualified and the interview went well.

5. It's warm today, but there's quite a strong wind.

6. Joe works hardly, but he doesn't get paid very much.

7. The company's offices are in a modern large building.

8. Dan is a very fast runner. I wish I could run as fast as him.
9 I missed the three last days of the course because I was ill.
10 You don't look happy. What's the matter?
11 The weather has been unusual cold for the time of the year.
12 The water in the pool was too dirty to swim in it.
13 I got impatient because we had to wait so long time.
14 Is this box big enough or do you need a bigger one?
15 This morning I got up more early than usual.

Conjunctions

Which is correct?

1 I'll try to be on time, but don't worry if / when I'm late.  (if is correct)
2 Don't throw that bag away. If / When you don't want it, I'll have it.
3 Please report to reception if / when you arrive at the hotel.
4 We've arranged to go to the beach tomorrow, but we won't go if / when it's raining.
5 Tanya is in her final year at school. She still doesn't know what she's going to do if / when she leaves.
6 What would you do if / when you lost your keys?
7 I hope I'll be able to come to the party, but I'll let you know if / unless I can't.
8 I don't want to be disturbed, so don't phone me if / unless it's something important.
9 Please sign the contract if / unless you're happy with the conditions.
10 I like travelling by ship as long as / unless the sea is not rough.
11 You might not remember the name of the hotel, so write it down if / in case you forget it.
12 It's not cold now, but take your coat with you if / in case it gets cold later.
13 Take your coat with you and then you can put it on if / in case it gets cold later.
14 They always have the TV on, even if / if nobody is watching it.
15 Even / Although I left home early, I got to work late.
16 Despite / Although we've known each other a long time, we're not particularly close friends.
17 'When did you leave school?' 'As / When I was 17.'
18 I think Ann will be very pleased as / when she hears the news.

Prepositions (time)

Put in one of the following: at on in during for since by until

1 Jack has gone away. He'll be back in a week.
2 We're having a party on Saturday. Can you come?
3 I've got an interview next week. It's 9.30 Tuesday morning.
4 Sue isn't usually here at weekends. She goes away.
5 The train service is very good. The trains are nearly always on time.
6 It was a confusing situation. Many things were happening at the same time.
7 I couldn't decide whether or not to buy the sweater. By the end I decided not to.
8 The road is busy all the time, even during the night.
9 I met a lot of nice people during my stay in New York.
10 I saw Helen on Friday, but I haven't seen her since then.
11 Robert has been doing the same job since five years.
12 Lisa's birthday is on the end of March. I'm not sure exactly which day it is.
13 We have some friends staying with us the moment. They're staying by Friday.
14 If you're interested in applying for the job, your application must be received by Friday.
15 I'm just going out. I won't be long - I'll be back in ten minutes.
Additional exercises

**Prepositions (position and other uses)**

**34 Put in the missing preposition.**

1. I'd love to be able to visit every country ______ the world.
2. Jessica White is my favourite author. Have you read anything ______ her?
3. 'Is there a bank near here?' ‘Yes, there's one ______ the end of this road.’
4. Tim is away at the moment. He's ______ holiday.
5. We live ______ the country, a long way from the nearest town.
6. I've got a stain ______ my jacket. I'll have to have it cleaned.
7. We went ______ a party ______ Lisa's house on Saturday.
8. Boston is ______ the east coast of the United States.
9. Look at the leaves ______ that tree. They're a beautiful colour.
10. 'Have you ever been ______ Tokyo?' ‘No, I've never been ______ Japan.’
11. Mozart died ______ Vienna in 1791 ______ the age of 35.
12. 'Are you ______ this photo?' ‘Yes, that's me, ______ the left.’
13. We went ______ the theatre last night. We had seats ______ the front row.
14. 'Where's the light switch?' ‘It's ______ the wall ______ the door.’
15. It was late when we arrived ______ the hotel.
16. I couldn't decide what to eat. There was nothing ______ the menu that I liked.
17. We live ______ a tower block. Our apartment is ______ the fifteenth floor.
18. A: What did you think of the film?
   B: Some parts were a bit stupid, but ______ the whole I enjoyed it.
19. 'When you paid the restaurant bill, did you pay cash?' ‘No, I paid ______ credit card.’
20. ‘How did you get here? Did you come ______ the bus?’ ‘No, ______ car.’
21. A: I wonder what's ______ TV this evening. Do you have a newspaper?
   B: Yes, the TV programmes are ______ the back page.
22. Helen works for a telecommunications company. She works ______ the customer services department.
23. Anna spent two years working ______ Chicago before returning ______ Italy.
24. ‘Did you enjoy your trip ______ the beach?’ ‘Yes, it was great.’
25. Next summer we're going ______ a trip to Canada.

**Noun/adjective + prepositions**

**35 Put in the missing preposition.**

1. The plan has been changed, but nobody seems to know the reason ______ this.
2. Don’t ask me to decide. I’m not very good ______ making decisions.
3. Some people say that Sue is unfriendly, but she’s always very nice ______ me.
4. What do you think is the best solution ______ the problem?
5. There has been a big increase ______ the price of oil recently.
6. He lives a rather lonely life. He doesn’t have much contact ______ other people.
7. Paul is a keen photographer. He likes taking pictures ______ people.
8. Michael got married ______ a woman he met when he was studying at college.
9. He's very brave. He's not afraid ______ anything.
10. I’m surprised ______ the amount of traffic today. I didn’t think it would be so busy.
11. Thank you for lending me the guidebook. It was full ______ useful information.
12. I’m afraid I've had to change my plans, so I can't meet you tomorrow. I’m sorry ______ that.
**Verb + preposition**

Complete each sentence with a preposition where necessary. If no preposition is necessary, leave the space empty.

1. She works quite hard. You can't accuse her ______ being lazy.
2. Who's going to look ______ your children while you're at work?
3. The problem is becoming serious. We have to discuss ______ it.
4. The problem is becoming serious. We have to do something ______ it.
5. I prefer this chair ______ the other one. It's more comfortable.
6. I need to phone ______ the office to tell them I won't be at work today.
7. The river divides the city ______ two parts.
8. 'What do you think ______ your new boss?' 'She's all right, I suppose.'
9. Can somebody please explain ______ me what I have to do?
10. I said hello to her, but she didn't answer ______ me.
11. 'Do you like staying at hotels?' 'It depends ______ the hotel.'
12. 'Have you ever been to Borla?' 'No, I've never heard ______ it. Where is it?'
13. You remind me ______ somebody I knew a long time ago. You look just like her.
14. This is wonderful news! I can't believe ______ it.
15. George is not an idealist - he believes ______ being practical.
16. What's funny? What are you laughing ______ ?
17. What did you do with all the money you had? What did you spend it ______ ?
18. If Alex asks ______ you ______ money, don't give him any.
19. I apologised ______ Sarah ______ keeping her waiting so long.
20. Lisa was very helpful. I thanked ______ her ______ everything she'd done.

**Phrasal verbs**

A says something and B replies. Which goes with which?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 I've made a mistake on this form.</td>
<td>a Don't worry. I'll clear it up.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 I'm too warm with my coat on.</td>
<td>b No problem. I can fix it up.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 This jacket looks nice.</td>
<td>c Kate pointed it out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 My phone number is 576920.</td>
<td>d That's OK. Cross it out and correct it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 This room is in a mess.</td>
<td>e Yes, why don't you try it on?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 What's 45 euros in dollars?</td>
<td>f OK, I won't bring it up.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 How did you find the mistake?</td>
<td>g Just a minute. I'll write it down.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 I'm not sure whether to accept their offer or not.</td>
<td>h Why don't you take it off then?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 I need a place to stay when I'm in London.</td>
<td>i You can look it up.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 It's a subject he doesn't like to talk about.</td>
<td>j I think you should turn it down.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 I don't know what this word means.</td>
<td>k Give me a moment. I'll work it out.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Additional exercises

38 Only one alternative is correct. Which is it?

1 Nobody believed Paul at first but he ............ to be right. (B is correct)
   A came out B turned out C worked out D carried out

2 Here's some good news. It will ..................
   A turn you up B put you up C blow you up D cheer you up

3 I was annoyed with the way the children were behaving, so I ............
   A told them up B told them off C told them out D told them over

4 The club committee is ................ of the president, the secretary and seven other members.
   A set up B made up C set out D made out

5 You were going to apply for the job, and then you decided not to. So what ............ ?
   A put you off B put you out C turned you off D turned you away

6 I had no idea that he was lying to me. I was completely ............
   A taken in B taken down C taken off D taken over

7 Helen started a course at college, but she ............ after six months.
   A went out B fell out C turned out D dropped out

8 You can’t predict everything. Often things don’t ............ as you expect.
   A make out B break out C work out D get out

9 Why are all these people here? What’s ............ ?
   A going off B getting off C going on D getting on

10 It’s a very busy airport. There are planes ............ or landing every few minutes.
   A going up B taking off C getting up D driving off

11 The traffic was moving slowly because a bus had ............ and was blocking the road.
   A broken down B fallen down C fallen over D broken up

12 How are you ................ in your new job? Are you enjoying it?
   A keeping on B going on C carrying on D getting on

39 Complete the sentences. Use two words each time.

1 Keep away from the edge of the pool. You might fall in.

2 I didn’t notice that the two pictures were different until Tanya pointed it ............ me.

3 I asked Dan if he had any suggestions about what we should do, but he didn’t come ............ anything.

4 I’m glad Sarah is coming to the party. I’m really looking ............ seeing her again.

5 Things are changing all the time. It’s difficult to keep ............ all these changes.

6 I don’t want to run ............ food for the party. Are you sure we have enough?

7 Don’t let me interrupt you. Carry ............ your work.

8 Steve was very happy in his job until he fell ............ his boss. After that, it was impossible for them to work together, and Steve decided to leave.

9 I’ve had enough of being treated like this. I’m not going to put ............ it any more.

10 I didn’t enjoy the trip very much at the time, but when I look ............ it now, I realise it was a good experience and I’m glad I went on it.

11 The wedding was supposed to be a secret, so how did you find ............ it? Did Jess tell you?

12 There is a very nice atmosphere in the office where I work. Everybody gets ............ everybody else.
Complete each sentence using a phrasal verb that means the same as the words in brackets.

1. The football match had to be **called off** because of the weather. (cancelled)
2. The story Kate told wasn’t true. She **made it up**. (invented it)
3. A bomb **exploded** near the station, but no-one was injured. (exploded)
4. Paul finally **arrived** nearly an hour late. (arrived)
5. Here’s an application form. Can you **complete it** and sign it, please? (complete it)
6. A number of buildings are going to be **demolished** to make way for the new road. (demolished)
7. I’m having a few problems with my computer which need to be **put right** as soon as possible. (put right)
8. Be positive! You must never **stop trying**! (stop trying)
9. I was very tired and **fell asleep** in front of the television. (fell asleep)
10. After eight years together, they’ve decided to **separate**. (separate)
11. The noise is terrible. I can’t **tolerate it** any longer. (tolerate it)
12. We don’t have a lot of money, but we have enough to **manage**. (manage)
13. I’m sorry I’m late. The meeting **continued** longer than I expected. (continued)
14. We need to make a decision today at the latest. We can’t **delay it** any longer. (delay it)

Complete the sentences. Use one word each time.

1. You’re driving too fast. Please **slow** down.
2. It was only a small fire and I managed to **put it out** with a bucket of water.
3. The house is empty at the moment, but I think the new tenants are **moving in** next week.
4. I’ve **put on** weight. My clothes don’t fit any more.
5. Their house is really nice now. They’ve **renovated it** up really well.
6. I was talking to the woman sitting next to me on the plane, and it **turned out** that she works for the same company as my brother.
7. ‘Do you know what happened?’ ‘Not yet, but I’m going to **find out**.’
8. There’s no need to get angry. **Shut up!**
9. If you’re going on a long walk, plan your route carefully before you **set off**.
10. Sarah has just phoned to say that she’ll be late. She’s been **stuck up**.
11. You’ve written my name wrong. It’s Martin, not Marin – you **spelled it out**.
12. Three days at £45 a day – that **makes £135**.
13. We had a really interesting discussion, but Jane didn’t **contribute** in. She just listened.
14. Jonathan is pretty fit. He **goes** out in the gym every day.
15. Come and see us more often. You can **pop in** in any time you like.
16. We are still discussing the contract. There are still a couple of things to **work out**.
17. My alarm clock **went off** in the middle of the night and **woke me up**.
Study guide

This guide is to help you decide which units you need to study. The sentences in the guide are grouped together (Present and past, Articles and nouns etc.) in the same way as the units in the Contents (pages iii–vi).

Each sentence can be completed using one or more of the alternatives (A, B, C etc.). There are between two and five alternatives each time. IN SOME SENTENCES MORE THAN ONE ALTERNATIVE IS POSSIBLE.

If you don’t know or if you are not sure which alternatives are correct, then you probably need to study the unit(s) in the list on the right. You will also find the correct sentence in this unit. (If two or three units are listed, you will find the correct sentence in the first one.)

There is a key to this study guide on page 372.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT</th>
<th>STUDY UNIT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present and past</td>
<td>1, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1 At first I didn’t like my job, but __________________ to enjoy it now.</td>
<td>2, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A I’m beginning</td>
<td>2, 3, 110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B I begin</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2 I don’t understand this sentence. What __________________?</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A does mean this word</td>
<td>6, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B does this word mean</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C means this word</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3 Robert __________________ away two or three times a year.</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A is going usually</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B is usually going</td>
<td>11, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C usually goes</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4 How __________________ now? Better than before?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A you are feeling</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B do you feel</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C are you feeling</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5 It was a boring weekend. ________________ anything.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A I didn’t</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B I don’t do</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C I didn’t do</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6 Matt __________________ while we were having dinner.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A phoned</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B was phoning</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C has phoned</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present perfect and past</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.1 James is on holiday. He _________________ to Italy.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A is gone</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B has gone</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C has been</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2 Everything is going well. We _______________ any problems so far.</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A didn’t have</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B don’t have</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C haven’t had</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3 Sarah has lost her passport again. It’s the second time this ________________.</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A has happened</td>
<td>11, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B happens</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C happened</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D is happening</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.4 You’re out of breath. ________________?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Are you running</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B Have you run</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C Have you been running</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5 Where’s the book I gave you? What __________________ with it?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A have you done</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B have you been doing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C are you doing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.6 ‘__________________ each other for a long time?’ ‘Yes, since we were at school.’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Do you know</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B Have you known</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C Have you been knowing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.7 Sally has been working here _______________.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A for six months</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B since six months</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C six months ago</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

2.8 It’s two years __________ Joe.
   A that I don’t see    B that I haven’t seen    C since I didn’t see
   D since I last saw

2.9 It __________ raining for a while, but now it’s raining again.
   A stopped    B has stopped    C was stopped

2.10 My mother __________ in Italy.
    A grew up    B has grown up    C had grown up

2.11 __________ a lot of sweets when you were a child?
    A Have you eaten    B Had you eaten    C Did you eat

    A lived    B has lived    C has been living

2.13 The man sitting next to me on the plane was very nervous. He __________ before.
    A hasn’t flown    B didn’t fly    C hadn’t flown    D wasn’t flying

2.14 Katherine was sitting in an armchair resting. She was tired because __________ very hard.
    A she was working    B she’s been working    C she’d been working

2.15 __________ a car when you were living in Paris?
    A Had you    B Were you having    C Have you had    D Did you have

2.16 I __________ tennis a lot, but I don’t play very much now.
    A was playing    B was used to play    C used to play

Future

3.1 I’m tired. __________ to bed now. Goodnight.
    A I go    B I’m going

3.2 __________ tomorrow, so we can go out somewhere.
    A I’m not working    B I don’t work    C I won’t work

3.3 That bag looks heavy. __________ you with it.
    A I’m helping    B I help    C I’ll help

3.4 I think the weather __________ be nice later.
    A will    B shall    C is going to

3.5 ‘Anna is in hospital.’ ‘Yes, I know. __________ her this evening.’
    A I visit    B I’m going to visit    C I’ll visit

3.6 We’re late. The film __________ by the time we get to the cinema.
    A will already start    B will be already started    C will already have started

3.7 Don’t worry __________ late tonight.
    A if I’m    B when I’m    C when I’ll be    D if I’ll be
Study guide

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

Modals

4.1 The fire spread through the building very quickly, but fortunately everybody
A was able to escape  B managed to escape  C could escape

4.2 I’m so tired I ____________________ for a week.
A can sleep  B could sleep  C could have slept

4.3 The story ____________________ be true, but I don’t think it is.
A might  B can  C could  D may

4.4 Why did you stay at a hotel when you were in Paris? You ____________________ with Sarah.
A can stay  B could stay  C could have stayed

4.5 ‘I’ve lost one of my gloves.’ ‘You ____________________ it somewhere.’
A must drop  B must have dropped  C must be dropping  D must have been dropping

4.6 ‘Why wasn’t Amy at the meeting yesterday?’ ‘She ____________________ about it.’
A might not know  B may not know  C might not have known  D may not have known

4.7 What was the problem? Why ____________________ leave early?
A had you to  B did you have to  C must you  D you had to

4.8 We’ve got plenty of time. We ____________________ hurry.
A don’t need to  B mustn’t  C needn’t

4.9 You missed a great party last night. You ____________________ Why didn’t you?
A must have come  B should have come  C ought to have come  D had to come

4.10 Jane won the lottery. I ____________________ a car with the money she’d won.
A suggested that she buy  B suggested that she should buy  C suggested her to buy  D suggested that she bought

4.11 You’re always at home. You ____________________ out more often.
A should go  B had better go  C had better to go

4.12 It’s late. It’s time ____________________ home.
A we go  B we must go  C we should go  D we went  E to go

4.13 ____________________ a little longer, but I really have to go now.
A I’d stay  B I’ll stay  C I can stay  D I’d have stayed

If and wish

5.1 I’m not going to bed yet. I’m not tired. If I ____________________ to bed now, I wouldn’t sleep.
A go  B went  C had gone  D would go

5.2 If I were rich, ____________________ a lot.
A I’ll travel  B I can travel  C I would travel  D I travelled

5.3 I wish I ____________________ have to work tomorrow, but unfortunately I do.
A don’t  B didn’t  C wouldn’t  D won’t
### Study guide

#### Reported speech

7.1 Paul left the room suddenly. He said he ********* to go.

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>had</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>has</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>have</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7.2 Hi, Joe. I didn’t expect to see you. Sonia said you ********* in hospital.

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>were</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>was</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>should be</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7.3 Ann ********* and left.

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>said goodbye to me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>said me goodbye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>told me goodbye</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Questions and auxiliary verbs

8.1 ‘What time ********’ ‘At 8.30.’

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>starts the film</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>does start the film</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>does the film start</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8.2 ‘Do you know where ********’ ‘No, he didn’t say.’

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Tom has gone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>has Tom gone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>has gone Tom</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8.3 The police officer stopped us and asked us where ********

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>were we going</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>are we going</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>we are going</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>were we going</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
 IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

9.2
Do you know where Karen is, ____________? ‘Sorry, I have no idea.’
A don’t you  B do you  C is she  D are you

9.1
You can’t stop me ____________ what I want.
A doing  B do  C to do  D that I do

9.4
I know I locked the door. I clearly remember ____________ it.
A locking  B to lock  C to have locked

9.5
She tried to be serious, but she couldn’t help ____________.
A laughing  B to laugh  C that she laughed  D laugh

9.3
Do you want ____________ with you or do you want to go alone?
A me coming  B me to come  C that I come  D that I will come

9.2
I must go now. I promised ____________ late.
A not being  B not to be  C to not be  D I wouldn’t be

9.7
It’s not my favourite job, but I like ____________ the kitchen as often as possible.
A cleaning  B clean  C to clean  D that I clean

9.8
I’m tired. I’d rather ____________ out this evening, if you don’t mind.
A not going  B not to go  C don’t go  D not go

9.9
I’d rather ____________ anyone what I said.
A you don’t tell  B not you tell  C you didn’t tell  D you wouldn’t tell

9.10
Are you looking forward ____________ on holiday?
A going  B to go  C to going  D that you go

9.11
When Lisa came to Britain, she had to get used ____________ on the left.
A driving  B to driving  C to drive

9.12
I’m thinking ____________ a house. Do you think that’s a good idea?
A to buy  B of to buy  C of buying  D about buying

9.13
I had no ____________ a place to stay. In fact it was surprisingly easy.
A difficulty to find  B difficulty finding  C trouble to find  D trouble finding

9.14
I phoned the restaurant ____________ a table.
A for reserve  B to reserve  C for reserving  D for to reserve

9.15
James doesn’t speak very clearly. ____________
A It is difficult to understand him.  B He is difficult to understand.
C He is difficult to understand him.
9.16 The path was icy, so we walked very carefully. We were afraid _____________.
A of falling  B from falling  C to fall  D to falling

9.17 I didn’t hear you _____________. You must have been very quiet.
A come  B to come  C came

9.18 ____________ a hotel, we looked for somewhere to have dinner.
A Finding  B After finding  C Having found  D We found

Articles and nouns
10.1 It wasn’t your fault. It was _____________.
A accident  B an accident  C some accident

10.2 Where are you going to put all your _____________ ?
A furniture  B furnitures

10.3 ‘Where are you going?’ ‘I’m going to buy _____________.’
A a bread  B some bread  C a loaf of bread

10.4 Sandra is _____________. She works at a large hospital.
A nurse  B a nurse  C the nurse

10.5 Helen works six days _____________. week.
A in  B for  C a  D the

10.6 There are millions of stars in _____________.
A space  B a space  C the space

10.7 Every day _____________ begins at 9 and finishes at 3.
A school  B a school  C the school

10.8 _____________ a problem in most big cities.
A Crime is  B The crime is  C The crimes are

10.9 When _____________ invented?
A was telephone  B were telephones  C were the telephones  D was the telephone

10.10 Have you been to _____________.
A Canada or United States  B the Canada or the United States  C Canada or the United States  D the Canada or United States

10.11 On our first day in Moscow, we visited _____________.
A Kremlin  B a Kremlin  C the Kremlin

10.12 What time _____________ on TV?
A is the news  B are the news  C is news  D is the new

10.13 It took us quite a long time to get here. It was _____________ journey.
A three hour  B a three-hours  C a three-hour

10.14 This isn’t my book. It’s _____________.
A my sister  B my sister’s  C from my sister  D of my sister  E of my sister’s
IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

Pronouns and determiners

11.1 What time shall we ____________ tomorrow?
   A meet       B meet us       C meet ourselves

11.2 I'm going to a wedding on Saturday. ____________ is getting married.
   A A friend of me    B A friend of mine    C One my friends

11.3 They live on a busy road. ____________ a lot of noise from the traffic.
   A It must be       B It must have      C There must have    D There must be

11.4 He's lazy. He never does ____________ work.
   A some       B any       C no

11.5 'What would you like to eat?' 'I don't mind. ____________ – whatever you have.'
   A Something       B Anything       C Nothing

11.6 We couldn't buy anything because ____________ of the shops were open.
   A all       B no-one       C none       D nothing

11.7 We went shopping and spent ____________ money.
   A a lot of       B much       C lots of    D many

11.8 ____________ don't visit this part of the town.
   A The most tourists       B Most of tourists       C Most tourists

11.9 I asked two people the way to the station, but ____________ of them could help me.
   A none       B either       C both       D neither

11.10 ____________ had a great time at the party.
   A Everybody       B All       C All of us       D Everybody of us

11.11 The bus service is excellent. There's a bus ____________ ten minutes.
   A each       B every       C all

Relative clauses

12.1 I don't like stories ____________ have unhappy endings.
   A that       B they       C which       D who

12.2 I didn't believe them at first, but in fact everything ____________ was true.
   A they said       B that they said       C what they said

12.3 What's the name of the man ____________?
   A you borrowed his car       B which car you borrowed       C whose car you borrowed       D his car you borrowed

12.4 Anna told me about her new job, ____________ a lot.
   A that she's enjoying       B which she's enjoying       C she's enjoying       D she's enjoying it

12.5 Sarah couldn't meet us, ____________ was a shame.
   A that       B it       C what       D which

12.6 George showed me some pictures ____________ by his father.
   A painting       B painted       C that were painted       D they were painted
Adjectives and adverbs

13.1 Jane doesn’t enjoy her job any more. She’s ______________ because every day she does exactly the same thing.
A boring  B bored

13.2 Lisa was carrying a __________ bag.
A black small plastic  B small and black plastic  C small black plastic  D plastic small black

13.3 Maria’s English is excellent. She speaks ____________.
A perfectly English  B English perfectly  C perfect English  D English perfect

13.4 He ____________ to find a job, but he had no luck.
A tried hard  B tried hardly  C hardly tried

13.5 I haven’t seen her for ______________, I’ve forgotten what she looks like.
A so long  B so long time  C a such long time  D such a long time

13.6 We don’t have ______________ on holiday right now.
A money enough to go  B enough money to go  C money enough for going  D enough money for go

13.7 Sarah is doing OK at the moment. She has ______________.
A a quite good job  B quite a good job  C a pretty good job

13.8 The exam was quite easy – ______________ I expected.
A more easy that  B more easy than  C easier than  D easier as

13.9 The more electricity you use, ______________.
A your bill will be higher  B will be higher your bill  C the higher your bill will be  D higher your bill will be

13.10 Patrick is a fast runner. I can’t run as fast as ______________.
A he  B him  C he can

13.11 The movie was really boring. It’s ______________ I’ve ever seen.
A most boring movie  B the more boring movie  C the movie more boring  D the most boring movie

13.12 Ben likes walking. ________________
A Every morning he walks to work.  B He walks to work every morning.
C He walks every morning to work.  D He every morning walks to work.

13.13 Joe never phones me. ________________
A Always I have to phone him.  B I always have to phone him.
C I have always to phone him.  D I have to phone always him.

13.14 Lucy ________________. She left last month.
A still doesn’t work here  B doesn’t still work here  C no more works here  D doesn’t work here any more

13.15 ________________ she can’t drive, she bought a car.
A Even  B Even when  C Even if  D Even though
Conjunctions and prepositions

14.1 I couldn't sleep __________ very tired.
A although I was  B despite I was  C despite of being  D in spite of being

14.2 You should insure your bike __________ stolen.
A in case it will be  B if it will be  C in case it is  D if it is

14.3 The club is for members only. You __________ you're a member.
A can't go in if  B can go in only if  C can't go in unless  D can go in unless

14.4 We watched TV all evening __________ we didn't have anything better to do.
A when  B as  C while  D since

14.5 'What's that noise?' 'It sounds __________ a baby crying.'
A as  B like  C as if  D as though

14.6 They are very kind to me. They treat me __________ their own son.
A as I am  B as if I would be  C as if I am  D as if I were

14.7 I'll be in Singapore next week. I hope to see some friends of mine __________ there.
A while I'll be  B while I'm  C during my visit  D during I'm

14.8 Joe is away at the moment. I don't know exactly when he's coming back, but I'm sure he'll be back __________ Monday.
A by  B until

Prepositions

15.1 Bye! I'll see you __________.
A at Friday morning  B on Friday morning  C in Friday morning  D Friday morning

15.2 I'm going away __________ the end of January.
A at  B on  C in

15.3 When we were in Italy, we spent a few days __________ Venice.
A at  B to  C in

15.4 Our apartment is __________ the second floor of the building.
A at  B on  C in  D to

15.5 I saw Steve __________ a conference on Saturday.
A at  B on  C in  D to

15.6 When did they __________ the hotel?
A arrive to  B arrive at  C arrive in  D get to  E get in

15.7 I'm going __________ holiday next week. I'll be away for two weeks.
A at  B on  C in  D for

15.8 We travelled __________ 6.45 train, which arrived at 8.30.
A in the  B on the  C by the  D by

15.9 'Have you read anything __________ Ernest Hemingway?' 'No, what sort of books did he write?'
A of  B from  C by
### IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

<p>| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 15.10 | The accident was my fault, so I had to pay for the damage __________________________ the other car.  
   | A of | B for | C to | D on | E at |
| 15.11 | I like them very much. They have always been very nice __________________________ me.  
   | A of | B for | C to | D with |
| 15.12 | I’m not very good __________________________ repairing things.  
   | A at | B for | C in | D about |
| 15.13 | I don’t understand this sentence. Can you __________________________?  
   | A explain to me this word | B explain me this word | C explain this word to me |
| 15.14 | If you’re worried about the problem, you should do something __________________________ it.  
   | A for | B about | C against | D with |
| 15.15 | ‘Who is Tom Hart?’ ‘I have no idea. I’ve never heard __________________________ him.’  
   | A about | B from | C after | D of |
| 15.16 | ‘What time will you be home?’ ‘I don’t know. It depends __________________________ the traffic.’  
   | A of | B from | C to | D on |
| 15.17 | I prefer tea __________________________ coffee.  
   | A to | B than | C against | D from |

**Phrasal verbs**

<p>| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 16.1 | These shoes are uncomfortable. I’m going to __________________________.  
   | A take off | B take them off | C take off them |
| 16.2 | They were playing cards, so I __________________________.  
   | A joined in | B came in | C got in | D broke in |
| 16.3 | Nobody believed Paul at first, but he __________________________ to be right.  
   | A worked out | B came out | C found out | D turned out |
| 16.4 | We can’t __________________________ making a decision. We have to decide now.  
   | A put away | B put over | C put off | D put out |
| 16.5 | ‘Have you finished painting the kitchen?’ ‘Nearly. I’ll __________________________ tomorrow.’  
   | A finish it out | B finish it over | C finish it off |
| 16.6 | You can always rely on Paul. He’ll never __________________________.  
   | A put you up | B let you down | C take you over | D see you off |
| 16.7 | Children under 16 __________________________ half the population of the city.  
   | A make up | B put up | C take up | D bring up |
| 16.8 | I’m surprised to hear that Sue and Paul have __________________________. They seemed very happy together.  
   | A broken up | B ended up | C finished up | D split up |
| 16.9 | I parked in a no-parking zone, but I __________________________ it.  
   | A came up with | B got away with | C made off with | D got on with |
Key to Exercises

In some of the exercises you have to use your own ideas to write sentences. Example answers are given in the Key. If possible, check your answers with somebody who speaks English well.

UNIT 1

1.1
2 e
3 g
4 a
5 d
6 h
7 b
8 c

1.2
What's / What is he studying
Is he enjoying
2 's / is your new job going
it's getting / it is getting
he isn't enjoying / he's not enjoying
he's beginning / he is beginning

1.3
I'm not listening / I am not listening
2 She's having / She is having
3 I'm not eating / I am not eating
He's learning / He is learning
4 They aren't speaking / They're not speaking
5 They are not speaking
6 I'm getting / I am getting
9 isn't working / 's not working / is not working
10 I'm looking / I am looking

1.4
is changing
2's getting / is getting
3 is rising
5 is starting

UNIT 2

2.1
2 drink
3 opens
4 causes
5 live
6 take
7 connects

2.2
2 do the banks close
3 don't use
4 does Ricardo come
5 do you
6 takes ... does it take
7 does this word mean
8 doesn't do

2.3
3 rises
4 make
5 don't eat
6 doesn't believe
7 translates
8 don't tell
9 flows

2.4
2 Does your sister play tennis?
3 Which newspaper do you read?
4 What does your brother do?
5 How often do you go to the cinema?
6 Where do your grandparents live?

2.5
2 I promise
3 I insist
4 I apologise
5 I recommend

UNIT 3

3.1
3 is trying
4 are they talking
5 OK
6 It's getting / It is getting
7 OK
8 I'm coming / I am coming
9 are you getting
10 He always gets

3.2
1 OK
3 Everybody's waiting / Everybody is waiting
4 Are you listening
5 Do you listen
6 flows
7 's flowing / is flowing
8 We usually grow ... we aren't growing / we're not growing / we are not growing
9 it's improving / it is improving
10 She's staying / She is staying ... She always stays
11 I'm starting / I am starting
12 I'm learning / I am learning ... 's teaching / is teaching
13 I finish ... I'm working / I am working
14 live ... do your parents live
15 's looking / is looking ...
She's staying / She is staying
16 does your brother do ...
he isn't working / he's not working / he is not working
17 I usually enjoy ... I'm not enjoying / I am not enjoying

3.3
2 It's always breaking down.
3 I'm always making the same mistake. / ... that mistake.
4 You're always forgetting your glasses.

UNIT 4

4.1
2 I'm using / I am using
3 I need
4 does he want
5 is he looking
6 believes
7 I don't remember / I do not remember or I can't remember
8 I'm thinking / I am thinking
9 I think ... You don't use
10 consists

4.2
2 What are you doing?
I'm thinking.
3 Who does this umbrella belong to?
The dinner smells good.
5 Is anybody sitting there?
6 These gloves don't fit me.

4.3
2 Do you believe
3 OK (I feel is also correct)
4 it tastes
5 I think

4.4
2 's being / is being
3 's / is
4 are you being
5 Is he

UNIT 5

5.1
2 She had
3 She walked to work
4 It took her (about) half an hour
5 She started work
6 She didn't have (any) lunch. / ... eat (any) lunch.
7 She finished work
8 She was tired when she got home.
9 She cooked
10 She didn't go
11 She went to bed
12 She slept
Key to Exercises

5.2
2 taught
3 sold
4 fell ... hurt
5 threw ... caught
6 spent ... bought ... cost

5.3
2 did you travel / did you go
3 did it take (you)
4 did you stay
5 Was the weather
6 Did you go to / Did you see / Did you visit

5.4
3 didn't disturb
4 left
5 didn't sleep
6 flew

UNIT 6

6.1
Example answers:
3 I was working.
4 I was in bed asleep.
5 I was getting ready to go out.
6 I was watching TV at home.

6.2
Example answers:
2 was having a shower
3 were driving home
4 was reading the paper
5 was watching it

6.3
1 didn't see ... was looking
2 met ... were going ... was going ... had ... were waiting / waited
3 was cycling ... stepped ... was going ... managed ... didn't hit

6.4
2 were you doing
3 Did you go
4 were you driving ... happened
5 took ... wasn't looking
6 didn't know
7 saw ... was trying
8 was walking ... heard ... was following ... started
9 wanted
10 dropped ... was doing ... didn't break

UNIT 7

7.1
2 Lisa has broken her leg.
3 The bus fare has gone up.
4 Her English has improved.
5 Dan has grown a beard.
6 The letter has arrived.
7 The temperature has fallen.

7.2
2 been
3 gone
4 gone
5 been

7.3
2 Yes, I've just seen her. / Yes, I have just seen her. or
3 He's already left. / He has already left. or
4 I haven't read it yet. or
5 I didn't read it yet.
6 No, she's already seen the film. / No, she has already seen ... or
7 Yes, they've just arrived. / Yes, they have just arrived. or
8 We haven't told him yet. or
9 We didn't tell him yet.

7.4
2 he's just gone out / he has just gone out or he just went out
3 I haven't finished yet or
4 I didn't finish yet
5 I've already done it / I have already done it or i already did it
6 Have you found a place to live yet? or
7 Did you find a place ... ?
8 I haven't decided yet or
9 She's just come back / she has just come back or she just came back

UNIT 8

8.1
2 Have you ever been to California?
3 Have you ever run (in) a marathon?
4 Have you ever spoken to a famous person?
5 What's the most beautiful place you've ever visited? / ... you have ever visited?

8.2
3 haven't eaten
4 I haven't played (it)
5 I've had / I have had
6 I haven't read
7 I've never been / I haven't been
8 it's happened / it has happened or
9 that's happened / that has happened
10 I've never tried / I haven't tried or
11 I've never eaten / I haven't eaten

8.3
Example answers:
2 I haven't travelled by bus this week.
3 I haven't been to the cinema recently.
4 I haven't read a book for ages.
5 I haven't lost anything today.

8.4
2 Have you played tennis before?
3 Have you ridden a horse before? / Have you been on a horse before?
4 Have you been to Japan before?

UNIT 9

9.1
2 She's been watching television. / She has been watching television.
3 They've been playing tennis. / They have been playing tennis.
4 He's been running. / He has been running.

9.2
2 Have you been waiting long?
3 What have you been doing?
4 How long have you been working there?
5 How long have you been selling mobile phones?

9.3
2 've been waiting / have been waiting
3 've been learning Spanish / have been learning Spanish
4 She's been working there / She has been working there
5 They've been going there / They have been going there

9.4
2 I've been looking / I have been looking
3 are you looking
4 She's been teaching / She has been teaching
5 I've been thinking / I have been thinking
6 he's working / he is working
7 She's been working / She has been working
**UNIT 10**

10.1

2 She's been travelling / She has been travelling
She's visited / She has visited
3 He's won / He has won ...
He's / He has been playing tennis
4 They've / They have been making (films ...)
They've / They have made (five films ...)

10.2

2 Have you been waiting long?
3 Have you caught any fish?
4 How many people have you invited?
5 How long have you been teaching?
6 How many books have you written?
How long have you been writing books?
7 How long have you been saving?
How much money have you saved?

10.3

2 Somebody's broken / Somebody has broken
3 Have you been working
4 Have you ever worked
5 has she gone
6 He's appeared / He has appeared
7 I haven't been waiting
8 it's stopped / it has stopped
9 I've lost / I have lost ... Have you seen
10 I've been reading / I have been reading ... I haven't finished
11 I've read / I have read
12 I've had / I have had

**UNIT 11**

11.1

3 have been married
4 OK
5 It's been raining / It has been raining
6 have you been living or have you lived
7 has been working
8 OK
9 I haven't drunk
10 have you had

11.2

2 How long have you been teaching English? or
How long have you taught ...
3 How long have you known Katherine?
4 How long has your brother been in Australia?
5 How long have you had that jacket?
6 How long has Joe been working at the airport? or
How long has Joe worked ...
7 How long have you been having guitar lessons?
8 Have you always lived in Chicago?

11.3

3 's been / has been
4 've been waiting / have been waiting
5 've known / have known
6 haven't played
7 's been watching / has been watching
8 haven't watched
9 've had / have had
10 hasn't been
11 've been feeling / have been feeling or 've felt / have felt
12 's lived / has lived or 's been living / has been living
13 haven't been
14 've always wanted / have always wanted

**UNIT 12**

12.1

2 since
3 for
4 for
5 since
6 for
7 since
8 since
9 for

12.2

2 How long has Kate been learning Japanese?
When did Kate start learning Japanese?
3 How long have you known Simon?
When did you first meet Simon? / When did you and Simon first meet?
4 How long have Rebecca and David been married?
When did Rebecca and David get married? / When did Rebecca and David marry?

12.3

3 He has been ill since Sunday.
4 He has been ill for a few days.
5 She got married a year ago.
6 I've had a headache since I woke up.
7 She went to Italy three weeks ago.
8 I've been working in a hotel for six months or I've worked in a hotel for six months.

12.4

2 No, I haven't seen Laura/her for about a month.
3 No, I haven't been to the cinema for a long time.
4 No, I haven't eaten in a restaurant for ages. / No, I haven't been to a restaurant for ages.
6 No, it's about a month since I (last) saw Laura/her. / No, it's been about a month since ...
7 No, it's a long time since I (last) went to the cinema. / No, it's been a long time since ...
8 No, it's ages since I (last) ate in a restaurant. / No, it's been ages since ...

**UNIT 13**

13.1

2 has gone
3 forgot
4 went
5 had
6 has broken

13.2

3 did William Shakespeare write
4 OK
5 OK
6 Who invented
7 were you born
8 OK
9 Albert Einstein was ... who developed

13.3

3 I've forgotten / I have forgotten
4 arrested
5 it's improved / it has improved
6 I've finished / I have finished (I'm finished is also correct)
7 I applied
8 It was
9 There's been / There has been
10 He broke or He's broken / He has broken ... did that happen ... he fell

**UNIT 14**

14.1

3 OK
4 I bought
5 Where were you
6 Lucy left school
7 OK
8 OK
9 OK
10 When was this book published?
UNIT 16

16.1
2 They'd been playing football. / They had been playing ...
3 I'd been looking forward to it. / I had been looking forward ...
4 She'd been dreaming. / She had been dreaming.
5 He'd been watching a film. / He had been watching ...

16.2
2 I'd been waiting for 20 minutes when I realised that I was in the wrong restaurant. / ... that I had come to the wrong restaurant.
3 At the time the factory closed down, Sarah had been working there for five years.
4 The orchestra had been playing for about ten minutes when a man in the audience started shouting.

Example answer:
I'd been walking along the road for about ten minutes when a car suddenly stopped just behind me.

UNIT 17

17.1
3 I don't have a ladder. / I haven't got a ladder.
4 We didn't have enough time.
5 He didn't have a map.
6 She doesn't have any money. / She hasn't got any money.
7 I don't have enough energy. / I haven't got enough energy.
8 They didn't have a camera.

UNIT 18

18.1
2 used to have/ride
3 used to live
4 used to eat/like/love
5 used to be
6 used to take
7 used to be
8 did you use to go

Example answers:
• She used to have lots of friends, but she doesn't know many people these days.
• She used to be very lazy, but she works very hard these days.
• She didn't use to like cheese, but she eats lots of cheese now.
• She used to be a hotel receptionist, but she works in a bookshop now.
• She used to play the piano, but she hasn't played the piano for years. / ... played it for years.
• She never used to read / She didn't use to read newspapers, but she reads a newspaper every day now.
• She didn't use to drink tea, but she likes it now.
• She used to have a dog, but it died two years ago.
• She used to go to a lot of parties, but she hasn't been to a party for ages.
18.3
Example answers:
3 I used to be a vegetarian, but now I eat meat sometimes.
4 I used to watch TV a lot, but I don’t watch it much now.
5 I used to hate getting up early, but now it’s no problem.
7 I didn’t use to drink coffee, but I drink it every day now.
8 I didn’t use to like hot weather, but now I love it.

UNIT 19
19.1
2 How long are you going for?
3 When are you leaving?
4 Are you going alone?
5 Are you travelling by car?
6 Where are you staying?
19.2
2 I’m working late. / I’m working till 9 o’clock.
3 I’m going to the theatre.
4 I’m meeting Julia.
19.3
Example answers:
2 I’m working tomorrow morning.
3 I’m not doing anything tomorrow evening.
4 I’m playing football next Sunday.
5 I’m going to a party this evening.
19.4
3 We’re having / We are having
4 finishes
5 I’m not going / I am not going ... I’m staying / I am staying
6 Are you doing
7 We’re going / We are going ...
   It starts
8 I’m leaving / I am leaving
9 we’re meeting / we are meeting
10 does this train get
11 I’m going / I am going ... Are you coming
12 does it end
13 I’m not using / I am not using
14 ‘s coming / is coming ...
   She’s travelling / She is travelling ...
   arrives

UNIT 20
20.1
2 What are you going to wear?
3 Where are you going to put it?
4 Who are you going to invite?
20.2
2 I’m going to take it back to the shop.
3 I’m not going to accept it.
4 I’m going to phone her tonight.
5 I’m going to complain.
20.3
2 He’s going to be late.
3 The boat is going to sink.
4 They’re going to run out of petrol.
20.4
2 was going to buy
3 were going to play
4 was going to phone
5 was going to give up
6 were you going to say

UNIT 21
21.1
2 I’ll turn / I’ll switch / I’ll put
3 I’ll send
4 I’ll do
5 I’ll show
6 I’ll have
7 I’ll stay / I’ll wait
8 I’ll pay / I’ll give
9 I’ll try
21.2
2 I’ll go to bed.
3 I think I’ll walk.
4 I’ll eat anything.
5 I don’t think I’ll go swimming.
21.3
3 I’ll meet
4 I’ll lend
5 I’m having
6 I won’t forget
7 does your train leave
8 won’t tell
9 Are you doing
10 Will you come
21.4
2 Shall I buy it?
3 What shall I give/buy/get Helen (for her birthday)?
4 Where shall we go (on holiday)?
5 Shall we go by car or (shall we) walk? /
   ... or (shall we go) on foot?
6 What time shall I come?

UNIT 22
22.1
2 I’m going
3 will get
4 is coming
5 we’re going
6 It won’t hurt
22.2
2 won’t
3 ’ll / will
4 won’t
5 ’ll / will
6 won’t
22.3
2 I’ll look
3 you’ll like / you will like
4 You’ll get / You will get
5 people will live
6 we’ll meet / we will meet
7 she’ll come / she will come
8 it will be
22.4
2 Do you think it will rain?
3 When do you think it will end?
4 How much do you think it will cost?
5 Do you think they’ll get married? / ...
   ... they will get married?
6 What time do you think you’ll be back? / ... you will be back?
7 What do you think will happen?
22.5
Example answers:
2 I’ll be in bed.
3 I’ll be at work.
4 I’ll probably be at home.
5 I don’t know where I’ll be this time next year.

UNIT 23
23.1
2 I’ll lend
3 I’ll get
4 I’m going to wash
5 are you going to paint
6 I’m going to buy
7 I’ll show
8 I’ll have
9 I’ll call
10 He’s going to have ... he’s going to do
23.2
2 I’m going to take ... I’ll join
3 you’ll find (’you’re going to find’ is possible)
4 I’m not going to apply or
   I’m not applying
5 We’re going to be late.
6 it’s going to fall down
7 I’ll take ... I’ll pick ...
   Kate is going to take or
   Kate is taking
UNIT 24

24.1
2 b is true
3 a and c are true
4 b and d are true
5 c and d are true
6 c is true

24.2
2 We'll have finished
3 we'll be playing
4 I'll be working
5 the meeting will have ended
6 he'll have spent
7 you'll still be doing
8 she'll have travelled
9 I'll be staying
10 Will you be seeing

UNIT 25

25.1
2 she goes
3 you know
4 Will you be ... I get
5 there are ... I'll call / I will call
6 it's / it is
7 you see ... you won't recognise / you will not recognise
8 I'll be / I will be ... he gets
9 you need ... I'm / I am
10 I'll wait / I will wait ... you're / you are

25.2
2 I'll give you my address when I find somewhere to live. or ... when I've found somewhere to live.
3 I'll come straight back home after I do the shopping. or ... after I've done the shopping.
4 Let's go home before it gets dark.
5 I won't speak to her until she apologises. or ... until she has apologised.

25.3
2 you go / you leave
3 you decide or you've decided / you have decided
4 you're in Hong Kong / you go to Hong Kong
5 build the new road or 've built the new road / have built the new road

UNIT 26

26.1
2 can
3 be able to
4 been able to
5 can or will be able to
6 be able to

26.2
Example answers:
2 I used to be able to run fast.
3 I'd like to be able to play the piano.
4 I've never been able to get up early.

26.3
2 could run
3 can wait
4 couldn't eat
5 can't hear
6 couldn't sleep

26.4
2 was able to finish it
3 were able to find it
4 was able to get away

26.5
4 couldn't
5 managed to
6 could
7 managed to
8 could
9 managed to
10 couldn't

UNIT 27

27.1
2 We could have fish.
3 You could phone (her) now.
4 You could give her a book.
5 We could hang it in the kitchen.

27.2
3 I could kill him!
4 OK (could have is also possible)
5 I could stay here all day
6 it could be in the car (may/might are also possible)
7 OK
8 OK (could borrow is also possible)
9 You could fail. (may/might are also possible)

27.3
2 could have come/gone
3 could apply
4 could have been
5 could have got/taken
6 could come

UNIT 28

28.1
2 must
3 can't
4 must
5 must
6 must

28.2
3 go
4 have taken / have stolen / have moved
5 be
6 have been
7 be looking
8 have been
9 have heard
10 be following

28.3
3 It must have been very expensive.
4 They must have gone away.
5 I must have left it in the restaurant last night.
6 It can't have been easy for her.
7 He must have been waiting for somebody.
8 She can't have understood what I said. or She couldn't have understood what I said.
9 I must have forgotten to lock it.
10 My neighbours must have been having a party.

UNIT 29

29.1
2 She might be busy.
3 She might be working.
4 She might want to be alone.
5 She might have been ill yesterday.
6 She might have gone home early.
7 She might have had to go home early.
8 She might have been working yesterday.
9 She might not want to see me.
10 She might not be working today.
11 She might not have been feeling well yesterday.

You can use may instead of might in all these sentences.
Key to Exercises

29.2
2 be
3 have been
4 be waiting
5 have arrived / have come

29.3
a She might be watching TV.
b She might have gone out.
3 a it might be in the car.
b You might have left it in the restaurant.
4 a He might have gone to bed early.
b He might not have heard the doorbell.
c He might have been in the shower.

You can use may instead of might in all these sentences.

29.4
3 might not have received it / might not have got it
4 couldn't have been an accident
5 couldn't have tried
6 might not have been American

UNIT 30
30.1
2 I might buy a Honda.
3 He might come on Saturday.
4 I might hang it in the dining room.
5 She might go to university.
You can use may instead of might in all these sentences.

30.2
2 might wake
3 might bite
4 might need
5 might slip
6 might break
You can use may instead of might in all these sentences.

30.3
2 might be able to meet
3 might have to work
4 might have to leave
5 might have to sell
6 might be able to fix
You can use may instead of might in all these sentences.

30.4
2 I might not go out this evening.
3 We might not be able to get tickets for the game.
4 Sam might not be able to go out with us tonight.
You can use may instead of might in all these sentences.

UNIT 31
31.1
3 We had to close
4 She has to leave or She'll have to leave / She will have to leave
5 do you have to be
6 I have to go or I'll have to go / I will have to go
7 Does he have to travel
8 do you have to go or will you have to go
9 did you have to wait
10 had to do

31.2
3 have to make
4 don't have to do
5 had to ask
6 don't have to pay or won't have to pay / will not have to pay
7 didn't have to go
8 has to make
9 will have to drive or is going to have to drive

31.3
3 OK (have to is also correct)
4 He has to work.
5 I had to work late yesterday evening.
6 OK (have to is also correct)
7 She has had to wear glasses since she was very young. For the present perfect (has had) with for and since, see Units 11-12.

31.4
3 don't have to
4 mustn't
5 don't have to
6 mustn't
7 doesn't have to
8 mustn't
9 mustn't
10 don't have to

UNIT 32
32.1
2 don't need to
3 must
4 mustn't
5 don't need to

32.2
2 needn't come
3 needn't walk
4 needn't ask
5 needn't explain

32.3
2 You needn't have walked home. You could have taken a taxi.
3 You needn't have stayed at a hotel. You could have stayed with us.
4 She needn't have phoned me in the middle of the night. She could have waited until the morning.
5 You needn't have shouted at me. You could have been more patient.
6 You needn't have left without saying anything. You could have said goodbye to me.

32.4
3 You needn't worry / You don't need to worry / You don't have to worry
4 You needn't wait / You don't need to wait / You don't have to wait
5 OK (You needn't keep is also correct)
6 I didn't need to go / I didn't have to go
7 OK

UNIT 33
33.1
2 You should look for another job.
3 He shouldn't go to bed so late.
4 You should take a photo.
5 She shouldn't use her car so much.
6 He should put some pictures on the walls.

33.2
2 I don't think you should go out. / I think you should stay at home.
3 I think you should apply for it. / ... for the job.
4 I don't think the government should increase taxes.

33.3
3 should come
4 should do
5 should have done
6 should have won
7 should win
8 should be
9 should have turned
33.4
3 We should have reserved a table.
4 The shop should be open (now). / The shop should have opened by now. or It should ...
5 She shouldn't be doing 50. / She shouldn't be driving so fast. / She should be driving more slowly.
6 I should have written down her address. / I should have written her address down. or I should have written it down.
7 The driver in front shouldn't have stopped without warning. / ... shouldn't have stopped so suddenly.
8 I should have been looking where I was going. / I shouldn't have been looking behind me.

UNIT 34
34.1
2 I should stay / I stay / I stayed a little longer
3 they should visit / they visit / they visited the museum after lunch
4 we should pay / we pay / we paid the rent by Friday
5 I should go / I go / I went away for a few days
34.2
1 b OK
c close/shut
d hadn't
2 a did
b was done
c thought
34.3
2 should say
3 should worry
4 should leave
5 should ask
6 should listen
34.4
2 If it should rain
3 If there should be any problems
4 If anyone should ask
5 Should there be any problems
6 Should anyone ask (where I'm going)
34.5
2 I should keep
3 I should phone
4 I should get

UNIT 35
35.1
2 You'd better put a plaster on it.
3 We'd better reserve a table.
4 You'd better not go to work (this morning).
5 I'd better hurry! / I'd better hurry!
6 I'd better not disturb him.
35.2
3 'd better
4 should
5 should
6 'd better
7 should
8 should
35.3
1 b 'd/had
c close/shut
d hadn't
2 a did
b was done
c thought
35.4
2 It's time I had a holiday.
3 It's time the train left.
4 It's time I/we had a party.
5 It's time some changes were made. / It's time the company made some changes.
6 It's time he tried something else.

UNIT 36
36.1
Example answers:
2 I wouldn't like to be a teacher.
3 I'd love to learn to fly a plane.
4 It would be nice to have a big garden.
5 I'd like to go to Mexico.
36.2
2 'd enjoy / would enjoy
3 'd have enjoyed / would have enjoyed
4 would you do
5 'd have stopped / would have stopped
6 would have been
7 'd be / would be
8 'd have passed / would have passed
9 would have
36.3
2 e
3 b
4 f
5 a
6 d

UNIT 37
37.1
2 Can/Could I leave a message (for her)? or Can/Could you give her a message?
3 Can/Could you tell me how to get to the station? or ... the way to the station? or ... where the station is?
4 Can/Could I try these trousers? or Can/Could I try these (trousers) on?
5 Can I give/offer you a lift?
37.2
3 Do you think you could check these forms (for me)? / ... check them (for me)?
4 Do you mind if I leave work early?
5 Do you think you could turn the music down? / ... turn it down?
6 Is it OK if I close the window?
7 Do you think I could have a look at your paper? / ... at your newspaper?
37.3
2 Can/Could/Would you show me?
3 Can/Could/Would you show me?
4 Could you please show me?
5 Would you like to sit down?
or Would you like a seat?
or Can I offer you a seat?
4 Can/Could/Would you slow down?
or Do you think you could ... ?
5 Can/Could/May I/we have the bill, please? or Do you think I/we could have ... ?
6 Would you like to borrow it?

UNIT 38
38.1
2 b 5 b
3 a 6 a
4 b 7 b
Key to Exercises

38.2
2 bought
3 asked
4 would lose
5'd be / would be
6 were ... stopped
7 gave ... 'd have / would have

38.3
2 If he did his driving test now, he'd fail (it) /... he would fail (it).
3 if we stayed at a hotel, it would cost too much.
4 If she left her job, she wouldn't get another one.
5 if we invited Ben (to the party), we'd have to invite his friends too. /
6 set would have to ...
7 If I told him what happened, he wouldn't believe me.

38.4
Example answers:
2 I'd be very angry if somebody broke into my house.
3 If you bought a car, it would cost you a lot to maintain it.
4 I'd be surprised if the economic situation improved.
5 Would you mind if I didn't go out with you tonight?

UNIT 39
39.1
3 I'd help / I would help
4 we lived
5 we'd live / we would live
6 It would taste
7 were/was
8 I wouldn't wait ... I'd go / I would go
9 you didn't go
10 there weren't ... there wouldn't be

39.2
2 I'd buy it / I would buy it if it weren't / wasn't so expensive.
3 We'd go out / We would go out more often if we could afford it.
4 If I didn't have to work late, I could meet you tomorrow. or ...
5 I'd meet / I would meet ... or ... I'd be able to meet ...
6 We could have lunch outside if it weren't raining / wasn't raining.
7 If I wanted his advice, I'd ask for it / I would ask for it.
8 I wish I had a computer.
9 I wish Helen were / was here.
10 I wish it weren't / wasn't so cold.
11 I wish I didn't live in a big city.
12 I wish I could go to the party.
13 I wish I didn't have to get up early tomorrow.
14 I wish I knew something about cars.
15 I wish I were / was feeling better.

38.3
2 If he did his driving test now, he'd fail (it) /... he would fail (it).
3 if we stayed at a hotel, it would cost too much.
4 If she left her job, she wouldn't get another one.
5 If we invited Ben (to the party), we'd have to invite his friends too. /
6 set would have to ...
7 If I told him what happened, he wouldn't believe me.

38.4
Example answers:
2 I'd be very angry if somebody broke into my house.
3 If you bought a car, it would cost you a lot to maintain it.
4 I'd be surprised if the economic situation improved.
5 Would you mind if I didn't go out with you tonight?

UNIT 40
40.1
2 If he'd missed / he had missed (the train), he'd have missed / he would have missed (his flight too).
3 I'd have forgotten / I would have forgotten (if) you hadn't reminded me.
4 I'd had / I had had (your address), I'd have sent / I would have sent (you an email).
5 We'd have enjoyed / We would have enjoyed (it more if the weather) had been (better).
6 It would have been (quicker if) I'd walked / I had walked.
7 I were / I was
8 I'd been / I had been...

40.2
2 If the road hadn't been icy, the accident wouldn't have happened.
3 If I'd known / If I had known that Joe had to get up early, I'd have woken him up.
4 If I hadn't lost my phone (or if I'd had my phone), I'd have called you / I would have called you / I could have called you.
5 If Karen hadn't been wearing a seat belt, she'd have been injured / she would have been injured (in the crash). or ... she might/could have been injured.
6 If you'd had / If you had had breakfast, you wouldn't be hungry now.
7 If I'd had / If I had had enough money, I'd have got / I would have got a taxi.

40.3
2 I wish I'd applied / I wish I had applied for it. or ... for the job.
3 I wish I'd learned / I wish I had learned to play a musical instrument (when I was younger). or I wish I could play ... I wish I was able to play.
4 I wish I hadn't painted it red. or ... the gate red.
5 I wish I'd brought / I wish I had brought my camera. or I wish I had my camera (with me).
6 I wish they'd phoned / I wish they had phoned me first (to say they were coming). or I wish I'd known / I wish I had known they were coming.

UNIT 41
41.1
2 hope
3 wish
4 wished

41.2
2 I wish Jane / she would come.
3 I wish somebody would give me a job.
4 I wish the / that baby would stop crying.
5 I wish you would buy some new clothes. or I wish you would get some new clothes.
6 I wish you wouldn't drive so fast.
7 I wish you wouldn't leave the door open (all the time).
8 I wish people wouldn't drop litter in the street.

41.3
2 OK
3 I wish I had more free time.
4 I wish our flat was / were a bit bigger.
5 OK
6 OK
7 I wish everything wasn't / weren't so expensive.

41.4
2 OK
3 I wish I had more free time.
4 I wish our flat was / were a bit bigger.
5 OK
6 OK
7 I wish everything wasn't / weren't so expensive.

344
UNIT 42

42.1
2 is made
3 was damaged
4 were invited
5 are shown
6 are held
7 was written ... was translated
8 were overtaken
9 is surrounded

42.2
2 When was television invented?
3 How are mountains formed?
4 When were antibiotics discovered?
5 What is silver used for?

42.3
3 covers
4 is covered
5 are locked
6 was sent ... arrived
7 sank ... was rescued
8 died ... were brought up
9 grew up
10 was stolen
11 disappeared
12 did Sue resign
13 was Ben fired
14 is owned
15 called ... was injured ...
16 weren't needed
17 'm not bothered / am not bothered

42.4
2 All flights were cancelled because of fog.
3 This road isn't used much.
4 I was accused of stealing money.
5 How are languages learned/learnt?
6 We were warned not to go out alone.

UNIT 43

43.1
2 it can't be broken
3 it can be eaten
4 it can't be used
5 it can't be seen
6 it can be carried

43.2
3 be made
4 be spent
5 have been repaired
6 be carried
7 be woken up
8 have been arrested
9 have been caused

43.3
2 The computer is being used at the moment.
3 I didn't realise that our conversation was being recorded.
4 ... we found that the game had been cancelled.
5 A new ring road is being built round the city.
6 A new hospital has been built near the airport.

43.4
3 It's been stolen! / It has been stolen!
4 Somebody has taken it. or taken my umbrella.
5 He's been promoted. / He has been promoted.
6 It's being redecorated. / It is being redecorated.
7 It's working again. / It is working again.
8 The furniture had been moved.
9 He hasn't been seen since then.
10 I haven't seen her for ages.
11 Have you ever been mugged?

UNIT 44

44.1
2 I was asked some difficult questions at the interview.
3 Amy was given a present by her colleagues when she retired.
4 I wasn't told about the meeting.
5 How much will you be paid for your work?
6 I think Tom should have been offered the job.
7 Have you been shown what to do?

44.2
2 being invited
3 being given
4 being knocked down
5 being treated
6 being stuck

44.3
2-6
- Ludwig van Beethoven was born in 1770.
- Galileo was born in 1564.
- Mahatma Gandhi was born in 1869.
- Michael Jackson was born in 1958.
- Martin Luther King was born in 1929.
- Elvis Presley was born in 1935.
- William Shakespeare was born in 1564.
- Leonardo da Vinci was born in 1452.
7 I was born in ...

UNIT 45

45.1
2 The weather is expected to be good tomorrow.
3 The thieves are believed to have got in through a window in the roof.
4 Many people are reported to be homeless after the floods.
5 The prisoner is thought to have escaped by climbing over a wall.
6 The man is alleged to have been driving at 110 miles an hour.
7 The building is reported to have been badly damaged by the fire.

45.2
2 He is supposed to know a lot of famous people.
3 He is supposed to be very rich.
4 He is supposed to have twelve children.
5 He is supposed to have been an actor when he was younger.

45.3
2 You're / You are supposed to be my friend.
3 I'm / I am supposed to be on a diet.
4 It was supposed to be a joke.
5 Or maybe it's / it is supposed to be a flower.
6 You're / You are supposed to be working.

45.4
2 're / are supposed to start
3 was supposed to phone
4 aren't / 're not / are not supposed to block
5 was supposed to depart

UNIT 46

46.1
1 b
2 a
3 a
4 b
Key to Exercises

46.2
1. Sarah has her car serviced once a year.
2. It cost twelve pounds to have my suit cleaned.
3. The last time I had my eyes tested was two years ago.
4. We've had some new cupboards fitted in the kitchen.
5. We need to get this document translated as soon as possible.

46.3
1. I had it cut.
2. We had them cleaned.
3. We all had our bags searched.
4. We have had the washing machine fixed.
5. We've had some new cupboards fitted in the kitchen.

46.4
2. have another key made
3. you had your hair cut
4. Do you have a newspaper delivered?
5. we're having / we are having
6. Have you had the washing machine fixed / Did you have the washing machine fixed?
7. have your ears pierced
8. She had her credit cards stolen.
9. have your hair cut
10. We had them cleaned.

47.1
2. He said (that) his father wasn't very well.
3. He said (that) Rachel and Mark were getting married next month.
4. He said (that) his sister had had a baby.
5. He said (that) he didn't know what Joe was doing.
6. He said (that) he'd seen / he had seen Helen at a party in June and she seemed / she had seemed fine. or He said (that) he saw Helen ... and she seemed ...
7. He said (that) he hadn't seen Amy recently.
8. He said (that) he wasn't enjoying his job very much.
9. He said (that) he could come and stay at his place if I was ever in London.
10. He said (that) his car had been stolen a few days ago.

47.2
Example answers:
2. she wasn't coming / she was going somewhere else / she couldn't come
3. they didn't like each other / they didn't get on with each other / they couldn't stand each other
4. he didn't know anyone
5. she would be away / she was going away
6. you were staying at home
7. he couldn't speak / he didn't speak any other languages
8. he'd seen you / he saw you last weekend

UNIT 48
48.1
2. But you said you didn't like fish.
3. But you said you couldn't drive.
4. But you said she had a very well-paid job.
5. But you said you didn't have any brothers or sisters.
6. But you said you'd / you had never been to the United States.
7. But you said you were working tomorrow evening.
8. But you said she was a friend of yours.

48.2
2. Tell 7 tell ... said
3. Say 8 tell ... say
4. said 9 told
5. told 10 said
6. said

48.3
2. her to slow down
3. her not to worry
4. asked Tom to give me a hand or ... to help me
5. asked me to open my bag
6. asked him to get (me) a paper
7. told him to mind his own business
8. asked her to marry him
9. told her not to wait (for me) if I was late

UNIT 49
49.1
2. Were you born there?
3. Are you married?
4. How long have you been married?
5. Have you got (any) children? or Do you have (any) children?
6. How old are they?
7. What do you do?
8. What does your wife do?

UNIT 50
50.1
2. c 6 c
3. a 7 b
4. b 8 a
5. b

50.2
2. How far is it to the airport?
3. I wonder how old Tom is.
4. When is Lisa going on holiday?
5. Could you tell me where the post office is?
6. I don't know whether anyone was injured in the accident.
7. Do you know what time you will arrive tomorrow?

50.3
2. He asked me where I'd been / ... where I had been.
3. He asked me how long I'd been back / ... how long I had been back.
4. He asked me what I was doing now.
5. He asked me why I'd come back / ... why I had come back. or ... why I came back.
6. He asked me where I was living.
7. He asked me if/whether I was glad to be back.
8. He asked me if/whether I could help him find a job.
UNIT 51
51.1
2 doesn't
3 was
4 will
5 am ... isn't or 'm not ... is or can ... can't or can't ... can or am ... can't or can't ... is
6 should
7 won't
8 do
9 didn't
10 would ... could ... can't
51.2
3 Do you? I don't.
4 Didn't you? I did.
5 Haven't you? I have.
6 Did you? I didn't.
51.3
Example answers:
3 So did I. or Did you? What did you watch?
4 Neither will I. or Won't you? Where will you be?
5 So do I. or Do you? What sort of books do you like?
6 So would I. or Would you? Where would you like to live?
7 Neither can I. or Can't you? Why not?
51.4
2 I hope so.
3 I expect so.
4 I don't think so.
5 I'm afraid not.
6 I'm afraid so.
7 I suppose so.
8 I hope not.
9 I think so.
UNIT 52
52.1
3 don't you
4 were you
5 does she
6 isn't he
7 hasn't she
8 can't you
9 will they
10 aren't there
11 shall we
12 is it
13 aren't I
14 would you
15 hasn't she
16 should I
17 had he
18 will you
52.2
2 It's (very) expensive, isn't it?
3 The course was great, wasn't it?
4 You've had your hair cut, haven't you?
or You had your hair cut, didn't you?
5 She has a good voice, hasn't she? or She's got / She has got a good voice, hasn't she? or She has a
good voice, doesn't she?
6 It doesn't look very good, does it?
7 This bridge isn't very safe, is it? or ... doesn't look very safe, does it?
52.3
2 Joe, you couldn't give me a hand (with this table), could you?
3 Kate, you don't know where Sarah is, do you? or ... you haven't seen Sarah, have you?
4 Helen, you haven't got a bicycle pump, have you? or ... you don't have a bicycle pump, do you?
5 Ann, you couldn't take me to the station, could you? or ... you couldn't give me a lift to the station, could you?
6 Robert, you haven't seen my keys, have you?
UNIT 53
53.1
2 playing tennis
3 driving too fast
4 going swimming
5 breaking the DVD player
6 waiting a few minutes
53.2
2 making
3 listening
4 applying
5 reading
6 living
7 using
8 forgetting
9 paying
10 being
11 trying
12 losing
53.3
2 travelling
3 painting the kitchen
4 turning the music down
5 not interrupting
53.4
Example answers:
2 going out
3 sitting on the floor
4 having a picnic
5 laughing
6 breaking down
UNIT 54
54.1
2 to help him
3 to carry her bag (for her)
4 to meet at 8 o'clock
5 to tell him her name / to give him her name
6 not to tell anyone
54.2
2 to get
3 to live
4 (how) to use
5 to tell
6 say or to say
54.3
2 to look
3 walking
4 waiting
5 to finish
6 barking
7 to call
8 having
9 missing
10 to be
54.4
2 Tom appears to be worried about something
3 You seem to know a lot of people.
4 My English seems to be getting better.
5 That car appears to have broken down.
6 David tends to forget things.
7 They claim to have solved the problem.
54.5
2 what to do
3 how to ride
4 whether to go
5 where to put
6 how to use
UNIT 55
55.1
2 or do you want me to lend you some
3 or would you like me to shut it
4 or would you like me to show you
5 or do you want me to repeat it
6 or do you want me to wait
55.2
2 to stay with them
3 her to call Joe
4 him to be careful
5 her to give him a hand
55.3
2 I didn’t expect it to rain.
3 Let him do what he wants.
4 Tim’s glasses make him look older.
5 I want you to know the truth.
6 Sarah persuaded me to apply for the job.
7 My lawyer advised me not to say anything to the police.
8 I was warned not to believe everything he says.
9 Having a car enables you to get around more easily.

UNIT 57
57.1
2 Try turning it the other way.
3 Have you tried restarting it?
4 You could try phoning his office.
5 Have you tried taking an aspirin?
57.2
2 It needs painting.
3 It needs cutting.
4 They need tightening.
5 It needs emptying.
57.3
1 b knocking
c to put
d asking
e to reach
f to concentrate
2 a to go
b looking
c cleaning
d cutting
e You don’t need to iron ...
   it doesn’t need ironing
3 a overearing
b get or to get
c smiling
d make or to make

UNIT 58
58.1
Example answers:
2 I don’t mind playing cards.
3 I don’t like being alone. or ...
   to be alone.
4 I enjoy going to museums.
5 I love cooking, or I love to cook.
6 He can remember falling into the river.
7 He can’t remember saying he wanted to be a doctor. or
   He can’t remember wanting to be a doctor.
8 He doesn’t remember being bitten by a dog.
58.2
3 prefer
4 eat/stay
5 I’d rather (wait) / I’d prefer to (wait)
6 to go
7 I’d rather (think) /
   I’d prefer to (think)
8 I’d prefer to stand
9 go
10 I’d prefer to go for a swim rather than play tennis.
11 I’d rather eat at home than go to a restaurant.
12 I’d prefer to think about it for a while rather than decide now.
13 I’d rather listen to some music than watch TV.
58.3
2 (would you rather) I told her
3 would you rather I did it
4 would you rather I phoned her
58.4
2 I would like / I’d like to have seen the programme.
3 I would hate / I’d hate to have lost my watch.
4 I would love / I’d love to have met your parents.
5 I wouldn’t like to have been alone.
6 I would prefer / I’d prefer to have travelled by train.

UNIT 59
59.1
Example answers:
2 I prefer basketball to football.
3 I prefer going to the cinema to watching DVDs at home.
4 I prefer being very busy to having nothing to do.
5 I prefer to go to the cinema rather than watch DVDs at home.
6 I prefer to be very busy rather than have nothing to do.
59.2
3 prefer
4 eat/stay
5 I’d rather (wait) / I’d prefer to (wait)
6 to go
7 I’d rather (think) /
   I’d prefer to (think)
8 I’d prefer to stand
9 go
10 I’d prefer to go for a swim rather than play tennis.
11 I’d rather eat at home than go to a restaurant.
12 I’d prefer to think about it for a while rather than decide now.
13 I’d rather listen to some music than watch TV.
59.3
2 (would you rather) I told her
3 would you rather I did it
4 would you rather I phoned her
59.4
2 stayed/remained/waited
3 stay
4 didn’t
5 were
6 didn’t
UNIT 60
60.1
2 applying for the job
3 remembering names
4 winning the lottery
5 being late
6 eating at home, we went to a restaurant
7 having to queue or queuing
8 playing very well
60.2
2 by standing on a chair
3 by turning a key
4 by borrowing too much money
5 by driving too fast
6 by putting some pictures on the walls
60.3
2 paying/settling
3 going
4 using
5 going
6 being/travelling/sitting
7 asking/telling/consulting
8 doing/having
9 turning/going
10 taking
60.4
2 I'm looking forward to seeing her. / ... seeing Kate.
3 I'm not looking forward to going to the dentist (tomorrow).
4 She's looking forward to leaving school (next summer).
5 I'm looking forward to playing tennis (tomorrow).

UNIT 61
61.1
2 When Jack started working in this job, he wasn't used to driving two hours to work every morning, but after some time he got used to it. Now it's no problem for him. He's used to driving two hours every morning. / He is used to driving ...
3 She wasn't used to working nights and it took her a few months to get used to it. Now, after a year, it's OK for her. She's used to working nights. / She is used to working ...
61.2
2 No, I'm used to sleeping on the floor.
3 I'm used to working long hours.
4 Yes, I'm not used to going to bed so late.

UNIT 62
62.1
2 doing
3 coming/go ing
4 spending/having
5 buying/having
6 seeing
7 watching
8 solving
9 buying/having
62.2
2 of causing
3 from walking. / (or stop people walking)
4 for interrupting
5 of using
6 of doing
7 from escaping. / (or prevent the prisoner escaping)
8 on telling
9 to eating
10 for being
11 for inviting
12 of (not) wearing
62.3
2 on taking Ann to the station
3 on getting married
4 Sue for coming to see her
5 (to me) for not phoning earlier
6 me of being selfish

UNIT 63
63.1
2 There's no point in working if you don't need money.
3 There's no point in trying to study if you feel tired.
4 There's no point in hurrying if you've got plenty of time.
63.2
2 asking David
3 in going out
4 phoning her/Lisa
5 complaining (about what happened)
6 keeping
63.3
2 remembering people's names
3 getting a job
4 getting a ticket for the game
5 understanding him
63.4
2 reading
3 packing / getting ready
4 watching
5 going/climbing/walking
6 getting/being
63.5
2 went swimming
3 go skiing
4 goes riding
5 gone shopping

UNIT 64
64.1
2 I opened the box to see what was in it.
3 I'm saving money to go to Canada.
4 I need a knife to chop these onions.
5 I'm wearing two sweaters to keep warm.
6 I phoned the police to report the accident.
64.2
2 to read
3 to walk / to go on foot
4 to drink
5 to put / to carry
6 to discuss / to consider / to talk about
7 to go / to travel
8 to talk / to speak
9 to wear / to put on
10 to celebrate
11 to help / to assist
64.3
2 for
3 to
4 to
5 for
6 to
7 for
8 for ... to
Key to Exercises

64.4
2 so that I wouldn't be cold.
3 so that he could contact me. / ... would be able to contact me.
4 so that nobody else would hear our conversation. / so that nobody else could hear ... / ... would be able to hear ...
5 so that we can start the meeting on time. / so that we'll be able to start ...
6 so that we wouldn't forget anything.

UNIT 65
65.1
2 This machine is easy to use.
3 The window was very difficult to open.
4 Some words are impossible to translate.
5 A car is expensive to maintain.

65.2
2 It's an easy mistake to make.
3 It's a nice place to live, or ...
4 Some words are impossible to translate.
5 A car is expensive to maintain.

UNIT 66
66.1
2 I'm / I am glad to hear ... I was glad to hear ...
3 OK
4 Having bought our tickets, we went into the theatre.
5 Having had Lunch, they continued their journey.

UNIT 67
67.1
2 I fell asleep watching TV.
3 A friend of mine slipped and fell getting off a bus.
4 I got very wet walking home in the rain.
5 Laura had an accident driving to work yesterday.
6 Two people were overcome by smoke trying to put out the fire.

UNIT 68
68.1
2 Paul was the last (person) to arrive.
3 Emily was the only student to pass (the exam). / ... the only one to pass (the exam).
4 Sarah went out saying she would be back in an hour.
5 Lisa was in London for two years working in a bookshop.
6 Anna walked around the town looking at the sights and taking pictures.

UNIT 69
69.1
3 We went to a very nice restaurant ...
4 OK
5 I use a toothbrush ...
UNIT 71
71.1
3 It's a vegetable.
4 It's a game. / it's a board game.
5 They're birds.
6 It's a (tall/high) building.
7 They're planets.
8 It's a flower.
9 They're rivers.
10 They're musical instruments.
11 He was a writer / a poet / a playwright / a dramatist.
12 He was a scientist / a physicist.
13 They were US presidents / American presidents / presidents of the USA.
15 She was an actress / a film actress / a film star / a movie star.
16 They were singers.
17 They were painters / artists.
71.2
2 He's a waiter.
3 She's a journalist.
4 He's a surgeon.
5 He's a chef.
6 He's a plumber.
7 She's a tour guide.
8 She's an interpreter.
71.3
4 a
5 an
6 - (You're always asking questions!)
7 a
8 Some
9 - (Do you like staying in hotels?)
10 - (I've got sore feet.)
11 a
11 some
13 a ... a
14 - (Those are nice shoes.)
15 some
16 You need a visa to visit some countries
17 Jane is a teacher. Her parents were teachers too.
18 He's a liar. He's always telling lies.

UNIT 72
72.1
1 ... and a magazine. The newspaper is in my bag, but I can't remember where I put the magazine.
2 I saw an accident this morning. A car crashed into a tree. The driver of the car wasn't hurt, but the car was badly damaged.
3 ... a blue one and a grey one. The blue one belongs to my neighbours; I don't know who the owner of the grey one is.
4 My friends live in an old house in a small village. There is a beautiful garden behind the house. I would like to have a garden like that.
72.2
1 a a
   b the
   c the
2 a a
   b a
   c the
3 a a
   b the
   c the
4 a an ... The
   b the
   c the
5 a the
   b a
   c a
72.3
2 the dentist
3 the door
4 a mistake
5 the bus station
6 a problem
7 the post office
8 the floor
9 the book
10 a job in a bank
11 a small apartment in the city centre
12 a supermarket at the end of the street
72.4
Example answers:
2 About once a month.
3 Once or twice a year.
4 SO kilometres an hour.
5 About seven hours a night.
6 Two or three times a week.
7 About two hours a day.
8 About £20 a day.
UNIT 73
73.1
2 a nice holiday ... the best holiday
3 the nearest shop ... the end of this street
4 a lovely day ... a cloud in the sky
5 to the internet ... the same problem
6 the most expensive hotel ... a cheaper hotel
7 to travel in space ... go to the moon
8 a star ... a planet ... the largest planet in the solar system
73.2
2 watching TV
3 the radio
4 The television
5 had dinner
6 the same time
7 the capital
8 for breakfast
9 the ground ... the sky
73.3
2 the same thing
3 Room 25 is on the second floor.
4 The moon goes round the earth every 27 days. or
... goes round Earth ...
5 a very hot day ... the hottest day of the year
6 We had lunch in a nice restaurant by the sea.
7 at the cinema
8 eat a good breakfast
9 on the wrong platform
10 The next train ... from Platform 3
11 You'll find the information you need at the top of page 15.
73.4
2 the sea 5 breakfast
3 question 8 6 the gate
4 the cinema 7 Gate 21
UNIT 74
74.1
2 to school
3 at home
4 to work
5 in hospital
6 at university
7 in bed
8 to prison
74.2
2 school
3 the school
4 School
5 ... get to and from school ... The school isn't very far.
6 school
UNIT 75
75.1
Example answers:
2-5
- I like cats.
- I don't like zoos.
- I don't mind snow.
- I'm not interested in boxing.
75.2
3 spiders
4 meat
5 the questions
6 the people
7 History
8 lies
9 The hotels
10 The water
11 the grass
12 patience
75.3
2 Apples
3 the apples
4 Women ... men
5 tea
6 The vegetables
7 Life
8 holidays (= 'holidays by the sea' in general)
9 education
10 the people
11 people ... aggression
12 All the books
13 the rooms
14 war
15 The First World War
16 films
17 the history of modern art
18 the marriage
19 Most people ... marriage ... family life ... society
UNIT 76
76.1
1 b the cheetah
c the kangaroo (and the rabbit)
2 a the swan
c the owl
3 a the wheel
c the airplane
c the telescope
4 a the rupee
b the (Canadian) dollar
c the ...
76.2
2 a
3 the
c a
4 a
c a
6 the
c a
7 a
c The
76.3
2 the injured
3 the unemployed
4 the sick
5 the rich ... the poor
76.4
2 a German Germans
c a Frenchman/Frenchwoman
the French
4 a Russian Russians
c a Chinese
the Chinese
6 a Brazilian Brazilians
c a
8 an Englishman/Englishwoman
the English
8 ...
UNIT 77
77.1
2 the
3 the ... the
4 – (President Kennedy was assassinated in 1963.)
5 a
6 – (I'm looking for Professor Brown.)
77.2
3 OK
4 the United States
5 The south of England ... the north
6 OK
7 the Channel
8 the Middle East
9 OK
10 the Swiss Alps
11 The UK
12 The Seychelles ... the Indian Ocean
13 OK
14 The river Volga ... the Caspian Sea
77.3 2 (in) South America
3 the Nile
4 Sweden
5 the United States
6 the Rockies
7 the Mediterranean
8 Australia
9 the Pacific
10 the Indian Ocean
11 the Thames
12 the Danube
13 Thailand
14 the Panama Canal
15 the Amazon

UNIT 78
78.1 2 Turner's in Carter Road
3 the Crown (Hotel) in Park Road
4 St Peter's in Market Street
5 the City Museum in George Street
6 Blackstone's (Books) in Forest Avenue
7 Mario's (Pizza) in George Street
8 Victoria Park at the end of Market Street

78.2 2 The Eiffel Tower
3 Buckingham Palace
4 The White House
5 The Kremlin
6 Broadway
7 The Acropolis
8 Gatwick Airport

78.3 2 Central Park
3 St James's Park
4 The Imperial Hotel ... Baker Street
5 Dublin Airport
6 Liverpool University
7 Harrison's
8 the Park Plaza
9 The Statue of Liberty ... New York Harbour
10 the Science Museum
11 IBM ... British Telecom
12 The Classic
13 the Great Wall
14 The Times
15 Cambridge University Press
16 the College of Art

UNIT 79
79.1 3 shorts
4 a means
5 means
6 some scissors or a pair of scissors
7 a series
8 series
9 species
10 truck driver
11 is or are
12 enjoy

79.2 2 politics
3 economics
4 athletics
5 physics
6 gymnastics
7 electronics

79.3 2 don't
3 want
4 was
5 aren't
6 are
7 wasn't
8 does or do
9 they are
10 Do
11 is or are

79.4 2 ... wearing black jeans.
3 OK
4 very nice people.
5 Ten pounds isn't ...
6 Ten pounds isn't ...
7 ... buy some new pyjamas or buy a new pair of pyjamas.
8 OK (The committee hasn't is also correct)
9 There was a police officer / a policeman / a policewoman ...
10 What are the police ...
11 These scissors aren't ...

UNIT 80
80.1 3 a job interview
4 (your) holiday pictures
5 milk chocolate
6 a factory inspector
7 a race horse
8 a horse race
9 running shoes
10 a university student
11 (your) exam results
12 the living room carpet
13 an oil company scandal
14 car factory workers
15 a road improvement scheme
16 a New York department store
17 a five-day course
18 a two-part question
19 a thirty-year-old man

80.2 2 seat belt
3 credit card
4 weather forecast
5 newspaper editor
6 shop window
7 room number
8 birthday party

80.3 2 twenty-pound
3 ten-pound
4 15-minute
5 60 minutes
6 two-hour
7 twelve-storrey
8 five days
9 Five-star
10 six years old
11 500-year-old
12 twelve-hour ... 24-hour

UNIT 81
81.1 3 your friend's umbrella
4 OK
5 Charles's daughter
6 Helen and Dan's son
7 OK
8 last Monday's newspaper
9 OK
10 OK
11 Your children's friends
12 Our neighbours' garden
13 OK
14 David's hair
15 Katherine's party
16 OK
17 Mike's parents' car
18 OK
19 OK (the government's economic policy is also correct)

81.2 2 a boy's name
3 children's clothes
4 a girls' school
5 a bird's nest
6 a women's magazine

81.3 2 Last week's storm caused a lot of damage.
3 The town's only cinema has closed down.
4 Britain's weather is very changeable.
5 The region's main industry is tourism.

81.4 2 twenty minutes' walk
3 two weeks' holiday / fourteen days' holiday / a fortnight's holiday
4 an / one hour's sleep
UNIT 82
82.1
2 hurt himself
3 blame herself
4 Put yourself
5 enjoyed themselves
6 burn yourself
7 express myself
82.2
2 me
3 myself
4 us
5 you
6 yourselves
7 themselves
8 them
9 themselves
82.3
2 feel
3 dried myself
4 concentrate
5 defend yourself
6 meeting
7 relax
82.4
2 themselves
3 each other
4 each other
5 yourselves
6 each other
7 ourselves
8 each other
9 introduced ourselves to each other
82.5
2 He cuts it himself.
3 No, I'll tell her myself.
4 Linda told me herself. / Linda herself told me. / Linda did herself.
5 Why can't you phone him yourself? / ... do it yourself?

UNIT 83
83.1
2 We met a relative of yours.
3 Jason borrowed a book of mine.
4 Lisa invited some friends of hers to her flat.
5 We had dinner with a neighbour of ours.
6 I went on holiday with two friends of mine.
7 Is that man a friend of yours?
8 I met a friend of Jane's at the party.
9 It's always been an ambition of mine (to travel round the world).
83.2
2 his own opinions
3 her own business
4 our own words
5 its own private beach
83.3
2 your own fault
3 her own ideas
4 your own problems
5 his own decisions
83.4
2 makes her own (clothes)
3 bake/make our own (bread)
4 clean your own (shoes)
5 write their own (songs)
83.5
2 my own
3 myself
4 himself
5 themselves
6 herself
7 their own
8 yourself
9 our own
10 her own

UNIT 84
84.1
3 There's / There is
4 there wasn't
5 is it ... it's / it is
6 Is there
7 there was
8 it isn't / it's not
9 there isn't
10 It was
11 There wasn't
12 Is there ... there's / there is
13 there was ... It was
14 It was
15 It's / It is ... There's / There is
84.2
2 There's / There is a lot of salt in the soup. or ... too much salt ...
3 There was nothing in the box. or There wasn't anything in the box
4 There's / There is a lot of violence in the film.
5 There were a lot of people in the shopping mall.
6 There is a lot to do in this town. / There is a lot happening in this town.
84.3
2 There may be
3 there will be / there'll be or there are going to be
4 There's going to be / There is going to be
5 There used to be
6 there should be
7 there wouldn't be
84.4
2 OK
3 there will be an opportunity
4 OK
5 There must have been a reason.
6 OK
7 There's sure to be a car park somewhere.
8 OK
9 There has been no change.
10 There used to be a church here
11 there would be somebody ... but there wasn't anybody.
12 OK

UNIT 85
85.1
2 some
3 any
4 any ... some
5 some
6 some ... any
7 any
8 any
9 some
10 any
11 some
85.2
2 somebody/someone
3 anybody/anyone
4 anything
5 something
6 somebody/someone ... anybody/anyone
7 something ... anybody/anyone
8 Anybody/Anyone
9 anybody/anyone
10 anywhere
11 somewhere
12 anywhere
13 anybody/anyone
14 something
15 Anybody/Anyone
16 anything
17 something
18 anybody/anyone ... anything
Key to Exercises

85.3
2 Any day
3 Anything
4 anywhere
5 Any job or Anything
6 Any time
7 Anybody/Anyone
8 Any newspaper or Any one

UNIT 86

86.1
3 no 8 No
4 any 9 no
5 None 10 any
6 none 11 none
7 any 12 no

86.2
2 Nobody/No-one.
3 None.
4 Nowhere.
5 None.
6 Nothing.
8 I wasn't talking to anybody/anyone.
9 I don't want any sugar.
10 I'm not going anywhere.
11 I didn't get any emails.
12 I didn't pay anything.

86.3
2 nobody/no-one
3 anyone
4 Anybody
5 Nothing
6 nothing
7 anywhere
8 Nobody/No-one said anything.

86.4
2 nobody 6 Anything
3 anyone 7 anything
4 Anybody 8 any
5 Nothing 9 No-one ... anyone

UNIT 87

87.1
3 a lot of salt
4 OK
5 It cost a lot
6 OK
7 many people or a lot of people
8 Mike travels a lot.
9 OK
10 a lot of money

87.2
2 He has (got) plenty of money.
3 There's plenty of room.
4 ... she still has plenty to learn.
5 There is plenty to see.
6 There are plenty of hotels.

87.3
2 little 5 few
3 many 6 little
4 much 7 many

87.4
2 a few dollars
3 a little time
4 OK
5 a little time
6 OK
7 only a few words
8 a few months

87.5
2 a little 6 a little
3 a few 7 little
4 few 8 a few
5 little

UNIT 88

88.1
3 –
4 of
5 –
6 –
7 of
8 of
9 (of is also correct)
10 –

88.2
3 of my spare time
4 accidents
5 of the buildings
6 of her friends
7 of the population
8 birds
9 of the players
10 of her opinions
11 European countries
12 (of) my dinner

88.3
Example answers:
2 the time
3 my friends
4 (of) the questions
5 the pictures / the photos / the photographs
6 (of) the money

88.4
2 All of them
3 none of us
4 some of it
5 none of them
6 None of it
7 Some of them
8 all of it

UNIT 89

89.1
2 Neither 4 Either
3 both 5 Neither

89.2
2 either
3 both
4 Neither of
5 neither driver ... both / both
6 the / both of the cars

89.3
2 either of them
3 both of them
4 Neither of us
5 neither of them

89.4
3 Both Joe and Sam are on holiday.
4 Neither Joe nor Sam has (got) a car.
5 Brian neither watches TV nor reads newspapers.
6 The movie was both boring and long.
7 That man's name is either Richard or Robert.
8 I have neither the time nor the money to go on holiday.
9 We can leave either today or tomorrow.

89.5
2 either 5 any
3 any 6 either
4 none 7 neither

UNIT 90

90.1
3 Everybody/Everyone
4 Everything
5 all
6 everybody/everyone
7 everything
8 All
9 everybody/everyone
10 All
11 everything/all
12 Everybody/Everyone
13 All
14 everything

90.2
2 The whole team played well.
3 He ate the whole box (of chocolates).
4 They searched the whole house.
5 The whole family play/plays tennis.
6 Ann/She worked the whole day.
7 It rained the whole week.
8 Ann worked all day.
9 It rained all week.

90.3
2 every four hours
3 every four years
4 every five minutes
5 every six months
### Key to Exercises

| 90.4 | 2 every day  
|      | 3 all day  
|      | 4 The whole building  
|      | 5 every time  
|      | 6 all the time  
|      | 7 all my luggage  

#### UNIT 91

| 91.1 | 3 Each 6 every  
|      | 4 Every 7 each  
|      | 5 Each 8 every  
| 91.2 | 3 Every 8 every  
|      | 4 Each 9 each  
|      | 5 every 10 Every  
|      | 6 every 11 each  
|      | 7 each 12 each  

| 91.3 | 2 Sonia and I had ten pounds each. / Sonia and I each had ten pounds.  
|      | 3 Those postcards cost 80 pence each. / Those postcards are 80 pence each.  
|      | 4 We paid £150 each. / We each paid £150.  

| 91.4 | 2 everyone  
|      | 3 every one  
|      | 4 Everyone  
|      | 5 every one  

### UNIT 92

| 92.1 | 2 A burglar is someone who breaks into a house to steal things.  
|      | 3 A customer is someone who buys something from a shop.  
|      | 4 A shoplifter is someone who steals from a shop.  
|      | 5 A coward is someone who is not brave.  
|      | 6 An atheist is someone who doesn’t believe in God.  
|      | 7 A pessimist is someone who expects the worst to happen.  
|      | 8 A tenant is someone who pays rent to live in a house or apartment.  
| 92.2 | 2 The waitress who/that served us was impolite and impatient.  
|      | 3 The building that/which was destroyed in the fire has now been rebuilt.  
|      | 4 The people who/that were arrested have now been released.  
|      | 5 The bus that/which goes to the airport runs every half hour.  

| 92.3 | 2 who/that runs away from home  
|      | 3 that/which were hanging on the wall  
|      | 4 that/which cannot be explained  
|      | 5 who/that stole my wallet  
|      | 6 that/which gives you the meaning of words  
|      | 7 who/that invented the telephone  
|      | 8 that/which can support life  

| 92.4 | 3 Each 6 every  
|      | 4 Every 7 each  
|      | 5 Each 8 every  

### UNIT 93

| 93.1 | 3 OK (the people who/that we met is also correct)  
|      | 4 The people who work in the office  
|      | 5 OK (the people who/that I work with is also correct)  
|      | 6 OK (the money that/which I gave you is also correct)  
|      | 7 the money that/which was on the table  
|      | 8 OK (the worst film that/which you’ve ever seen is also correct)  
|      | 9 the best thing that/which has ever happened to you  

| 93.2 | 2 you’re wearing or that/which you’re wearing  
|      | 3 you’re going to see or that/which you’re going to see  
|      | 4 I/we wanted to visit or that/which I/we wanted to visit  
|      | 5 I/we invited to the party or who/whom/that we invited …  
|      | 6 you had to do or that/which you had to do  
|      | 7 I/we rented or that/which I/we rented  

| 93.3 | 2 the wedding we were invited to  
|      | 3 the hotel you told me about  
|      | 4 the job I applied for  
|      | 5 the concert you went to  
|      | 6 somebody you can rely on  
|      | 7 the man you were with  

### UNIT 94

| 94.1 | 2 whose wife is an English teacher  
|      | 3 who owns a restaurant  
|      | 4 whose ambition is to climb Everest  
|      | 5 who have just got married  

| 94.2 | 2 where I can get some water  
|      | 3 (The) factory where I work  
|      | 4 (The) park where I/we play football  

### UNIT 95

| 95.1 | 3 We often go to visit our friends in Cambridge, which is not far from London.  
|      | 4 I went to see the doctor, who told me I needed to change my diet.  
|      | 5 Steven, who/whom I’ve known for a very long time, is one of my closest friends.  
|      | 6 Lisa, whose job involves a lot of travelling, is away from home a lot.  
|      | 7 The new stadium, which can hold 90,000 people, will be finished next month.  
|      | 8 Alaska, where my brother lives, is the largest state in the USA.  
|      | 9 Our teacher, whose name I have forgotten, was very kind.  

| 94.3 | 2 where 6 where  
|      | 3 who 7 whose  
|      | 4 whose 8 whom  

### Example answers

| 94.4 | 2 The reason I left my job was that the salary was very low.  
|      | 3 I’ll never forget the time I got stuck in a lift.  
|      | 4 Do you remember the day we first met?  
|      | 5 The reason they don’t have a car is that they don’t need one.  
|      | 6 2003 was the year Amanda got married.  

### UNIT 95
Key to Exercises

UNIT 95
95.2
3 The strike at the factory, which began ten days ago, is now over.
4 I've found the book I was looking for this morning; or ... the book that/which I was looking for.
5 My car, which I've had for 15 years, has never broken down.
6 Few of the people who/that applied for the job had the necessary qualifications.
7 Amy showed me a picture of her son, who is a police officer.

UNIT 96
96.3
2 My office, which is on the second floor, is very small.
3 OK (The office that/which I'm using is also correct)
4 Mark's father, who used to be in the army, now works for a TV company.
5 OK (The doctor who examined me is also correct)
6 The sun, which is one of millions of stars in the universe, provides us with heat and light.

UNIT 97
97.2
2 the gate damaged in the storm
3 Most of the suggestions made at the meeting
4 The paintings stolen from the museum
5 the man arrested by the police

UNIT 98
98.3
2 bored 7 boring
3 confusing 8 exhausted
4 disgusting 9 excited
5 interested 10 amusing
6 annoyed 11 interesting
7 sitting ... reading
8 working ... studying
98.4
3 There's somebody coming.
4 There were a lot of people travelling.
5 There was nobody else staying there.
6 There was nothing written on it.
7 There's a course beginning next Monday.

UNIT 99
99.3
2 tastes/tasted awful
3 feel fine
4 smell nice
5 look wet
6 sounds/sounded interesting

UNIT 100
100.3
2 badly
3 easily
4 patiently
5 unexpectedly
6 regularly
7 perfectly ... slowly ... clearly

357
UNIT 102

102.1
2 so
3 so
4 such a
5 so
6 such
7 such a
8 such
9 such a
10 such a

102.2
3 I was so tired (that) I couldn't keep my eyes open.
4 We had such a good time on holiday (that) we didn't want to come home.
5 She speaks English so well (that) you would think it was her native language. or She speaks such good English (that) ...
6 I've got such a lot to do (that) I don't know where to begin. or I've got so much to do (that) ...
7 The music was so loud (that) you could hear it from miles away.
8 I had such a big breakfast (that) I didn't eat anything else for the rest of the day.
9 It was such horrible weather (that) we spent the whole day indoors.
10 I was so surprised (that) I didn't know what to say.

Example answers:
2 a She's so friendly.
   b She's such a nice person.
3 a It's so lively.
   b It's such an exciting place.
4 a It's so exhausting.
   b It's such a difficult job.
5 a I haven't seen you for so long.
   b I haven't seen you for such a long time.

UNIT 103

103.1
3 enough money
4 enough milk
5 warm enough
6 enough room
7 well enough
8 enough time
9 big enough
10 enough cups

UNIT 104

104.1
2 quite hungry
3 Quite good
4 quite often
5 quite noisy
6 quite surprised
7 quite late
8 quite old

104.2
2 quite a good voice
3 quite a long way
4 a pretty cold wind
5 quite a lot of traffic
6 a pretty busy day

104.3
Example answers:
2 rather long
3 rather disappointed
4 rather strange
5 rather impatient

104.4
3 more than a little ...
4 completely
5 more than a little ...
6 more than a little ...
7 completely

104.5
2 quite safe
3 quite impossible
4 quite right
5 quite different
6 quite unnecessary
7 quite sure
UNIT 105
105.1
2 stronger
3 smaller
4 more expensive
5 warmer/hotter
6 more interesting / more exciting
7 nearer/closer
8 more difficult / more complicated
9 better
10 worse
11 longer
12 more quietly
13 more often
14 further/farther
15 happier / more cheerful
105.2
3 more serious than
4 thinner
5 bigger
6 more interested
7 more important than
8 simpler / more simple
9 more crowded than
10 more peaceful than
11 more easily
12 higher than
105.3
2 It takes longer by train than by car.
3 I ran further/farther than Dan.
4 Joe did worse than Chris in the test.
5 My friends arrived earlier than I expected.
6 The buses run more often than the trains, or The buses are more frequent than ...
7 We were busier than usual in the office today.
105.4
2 the more I liked him or the more I got to like him
3 the more profit you (will) make or the higher your profit (will be) or the bigger your profit (will be)
4 the harder it is to concentrate
5 the more impatient she became
105.5
2 more 7 elder or older
3 longer 8 slightly
4 any 9 no
5 the 10 less ... better
6 older
UNIT 106
106.1
2 much bigger
3 much more interesting than
4 a bit cooler
5 far more complicated than
6 a bit more slowly
7 a lot easier
8 slightly older
106.2
2 any sooner / any earlier
3 no higher than / no more expensive than / no worse than
4 any further/farther
5 no worse than
UNIT 107
107.1
2 My salary isn't as high as yours.
3 You don't know as much about cars as me, or ... as I do.
4 We aren't as busy today as we were yesterday, or ... as yesterday.
5 I don't feel as bad as I did earlier, or ... as I felt earlier.
6 Our neighbours haven't lived here as long as us, or ... as we have.
7 I wasn't as nervous (before the interview) as I usually am, or ... as usual.
107.2
3 The station wasn't as far as I thought.
4 The meal cost less than I expected.
5 I don't go out as much as I used to, or ... as often as I use to.
6 Karen used to have longer hair.
7 You don't know them as well as me, or ... as I do.
8 There aren't as many people at this meeting as at the last one.
107.3
2 as well as
3 as long as
4 as soon as
5 as often as
6 as quietly as
7 just as comfortable as
8 just as hard as
9 just as bad as
107.4
2 Your hair is the same colour as mine.
3 I arrived (at) the same time as you.
4 My birthday is (on) the same day as Tom's, or My birthday is the same as Tom's.
107.5
2 than him / than he does
3 as me / as I do
4 than us / than we were
5 than her / than she is
6 as them / as they have been
UNIT 108
108.1
2 It's the cheapest restaurant in the town.
3 It was the happiest day of my life.
4 She's the most intelligent student in the class.
5 It's the most valuable painting in the gallery.
6 It's the busiest time of the year.
8 He's one of the richest men in the country.
9 It's one of the biggest castles in Europe.
10 She's one of the best players in the team, (on the team is also possible)
11 It was one of the worst experiences of my life.
12 It's one of the most famous universities in the world.
108.2
3 larger
4 the smallest
5 better
6 the worst
7 the most popular
8 ... the highest mountain in the world ... It is higher than ...
9 the tallest
10 more comfortable
11 the quickest
12 quicker
13 the most expensive
14 The oldest or The eldest
108.3
2 That's the funniest joke I've ever heard.
3 This is the best coffee I've ever tasted.
4 She's the most generous person I've ever met.
5 That's the farthest/farthest I've ever run.
6 It's the worst mistake I've ever made, or It was the worst ...
7 Who's the most famous person you've ever met?
UNIT 109

109.1
3 Joe doesn’t like football very much.
4 OK
5 I ate my breakfast quickly and ...
6 ... a lot of people to the party?
7 OK
8 Did you go to bed last night?
9 OK
10 I met a friend of mine on my way home.

109.2
2 We won the game easily.
3 I closed the door quietly.
4 Tanya speaks German quite well.
5 Sam watches TV all the time.
6 Please don’t ask that question again.
7 Does Kevin play football every weekend?
8 I borrowed some money from a friend of mine.

UNIT 110

110.1
3 I usually have ...
4 OK
5 Steve hardly ever gets angry.
6 ... and I also went to the bank.
7 Jane always has to hurry ...
8 I’ve never worked / I have never worked ...
9 OK (I never have enough time.) I’m always busy. / I am always busy.

UNIT 111

111.1
3 He doesn’t write poems any more.
4 He still wants to be a teacher.
5 He isn’t / He’s not interested in politics any more.
6 He’s still single.
7 He doesn’t go fishing any more.
8 He doesn’t have a beard any more. or He hasn’t got ...
10-12 He no longer writes poems.
   He is / He’s no longer interested in politics.
   He no longer goes fishing.
   He no longer has a beard. or He’s no longer got a beard.

UNIT 112

112.1
2 even Lisa
3 not even Amy
4 even Lisa
5 even Kate
6 not even Lisa

112.2
2 We even painted the floor.
3 She’s even met the prime minister.
4 You could even hear it / You could even hear the noise from the next street.
   or You could hear it / You could hear the noise even from the next street.
5 I can’t even remember her name.
6 There isn’t even a cinema.
7 He didn’t even tell his wife (where he was going).
8 I don’t even know the people next door.

UNIT 111

111.2
2 He hasn’t gone yet.
3 They haven’t finished (repairing the road) yet.
4 They haven’t woken up yet.
5 Has she found a place to live yet?
6 I haven’t decided (what to do) yet.
7 It hasn’t taken off yet.

111.3
5 I don’t want to go out yet.
6 she doesn’t work there any more.
7 I still have a lot of friends there. or I’ve still got ...
8 We’ve already met.
9 Do you still live in the same place?
10 have you already eaten
11 He’s not here yet.
12 he still isn’t here (he isn’t here yet is also possible)
13 are you already a member
14 I can still remember it very clearly
15 These trousers don’t fit me any more.
16 “Have you finished with the paper yet?” “No, I’m still reading it.”

112.3
2 even older
3 even better
4 even more difficult
5 even worse
6 even less

112.4
2 if 6 Even
3 even if 7 even though
4 even 8 even if
5 even though 9 Even though
UNIT 113

113.1
2 Although I had never seen her before
3 although it was quite cold
4 although we don’t like them very much
5 Although I didn’t speak the language well
6 Although the heating was on
7 although I’d met her twice before
8 although we’ve known each other a long time

113.2
2 a In spite of (or Despite)
b Although
3 a because
b although
4 a because of
b in spite of (or despite)
5 a although
b because of

Example answers:
6 a he hadn’t studied very hard
b he had studied very hard
7 a 1 was hungry
b being hungry / my hunger / the fact (that) I was hungry

113.3
2 In spite of having very little money, they are happy,
or In spite of the fact (that) they have very little money ...
3 Although my foot was injured, I managed to walk home. or I managed to walk home although my ...
4 I enjoyed the film in spite of the silly story. / ... in spite of the story being silly. / ... in spite of the fact (that) the story was silly. or In spite of ... I enjoyed the film.
5 Despite living in the same street, we hardly ever see each other. or Despite the fact (that) we live in ... or We hardly ever see each other despite ...
6 Even though I was only out for five minutes, I got very wet in the rain. or I got very wet in the rain even though I was ...

113.4
2 It’s very windy though.
3 We ate it though.
4 I don’t like her husband though.

UNIT 114

114.1
2-5
• Take a map in case you get lost.
• Take an anorak in case it rains.
• Take a camera in case you want to take some pictures.
• Take some water in case you’re thirsty. / ... in case you are thirsty. or ... you get thirsty.

114.2
2 I’ll say goodbye now in case I don’t see you again (before you go).
3 Can you check the list in case we forgot something? or ... forgot anything?
4 You should back up your files in case there’s a problem with your computer. / ... there is a problem with your computer.

114.3
2 in case I forgot it.
3 in case they were worried (about me).
4 in case she didn’t get the first one. / in case she hadn’t got ... / in case she hadn’t gotten ...
5 in case they came to London (one day).

114.4
3 If 7 if
4 if 8 in case
5 in case 9 in case
6 if

UNIT 115

115.1
2 You won’t know what to do unless you listen carefully.
3 I’ll never speak to her again unless she apologises to me. or Unless she apologises to me, I’ll ...
4 He won’t be able to understand you unless you speak very slowly. or Unless you speak very slowly, he ...
5 The company will have to close unless business improves soon. or Unless business improves soon, the company ...

115.2
2 I’m not going (to the party) unless you go too. / ... unless you’re going too.
3 The dog won’t attack you unless you move suddenly.
4 Ben won’t speak to you unless you ask him something.
5 The doctor won’t see you unless it’s an emergency.

115.3
2 unless
3 providing
4 as long as
5 unless
6 unless

115.4
Example answers:
2 it’s not too hot
3 there isn’t too much traffic
4 it isn’t raining
5 I’m in a hurry
6 you have something else to do
7 you pay it back next week
8 you take risks

UNIT 116

116.1
2 I listened as she told me her story.
3 I burnt myself as I was taking a hot dish out of the oven.
4 The crowd cheered as the two teams came onto the field.
5 A dog ran out in front of the car as we were driving along the road.

116.2
2 As today is a public holiday, many of the shops are shut.
3 As I didn’t want to disturb anybody, I was very quiet.
4 As I don’t know what to do, I need some advice.
5 As none of us had a watch, we didn’t know what time it was.

116.3
3 because
4 at the same time as
5 at the same time as
6 because
7 because

116.4
3 OK
4 when I was in London
5 When I left school
6 OK
7 when I was a child

116.5
Example answers:
1 I saw you as you were getting into your car.
2 It started to rain just as we started playing tennis.
3 As I didn’t have enough money for a taxi, I had to walk home.
4 Just as I took the picture, somebody walked in front of the camera.
UNIT 117
117.1
2 like her mother
3 people like him
5 OK
6 like most of his friends or as most of his friends are
7 like talking to the wall
8 OK
9 OK
10 OK
11 like a bomb exploding
12 like a fish
117.2
2 like blocks of ice
3 like a beginner
4 as a tour guide
5 like a theatre
6 as a birthday present
7 like winter
8 like a child
117.3
2 like
3 as
4 like
5 like
6 as or like
7 like
8 as
9 as
10 like or such as
UNIT 118
118.1
2 You look like you’ve seen a ghost. / like you saw a ghost.
3 You sound as if you’re having a good time.
4 I feel like I’ve (just) run a marathon. / like I (just) ran a marathon.
118.2
2 It looks like it’s going to rain.
3 It sounds like they’re having an argument.
4 It looks like there’s been an accident.
5 It looks like we’ll have to walk.
6 It sounds like you should see a doctor.
118.3
2 as if he meant what he said
3 as if she’s hurt her leg / as if she hurt her leg
4 as if he hadn’t eaten for a week
5 as if she was enjoying it
6 as if I’m going to be sick
7 as if she didn’t want to come
8 as if I didn’t exist
118.4
2 as if I was/were
3 as if she was/were
4 as if it was/were
UNIT 119
119.1
3 during 9 during
4 for 10 for
5 during 11 for
6 for 12 for
7 for 13 during
8 for 14 for
119.2
3 while 9 while
4 While 10 during
5 During 11 while
6 while 12 during
7 during 13 while
8 During 14 while
119.3
Example answers:
3 Nobody came to see me while I was in hospital.
4 Can you wait for me while I make a quick phone call?
5 Most of the students looked bored during the lesson.
6 I was asked a lot of questions during the interview.
7 Don’t open the car door while the car is moving.
8 The lights suddenly went out while we were watching TV.
9 It started to rain during the game.
10 It started to rain while we were walking home.
11 What are you going to do while you’re on holiday?
UNIT 120
120.1
2 I have to be at the airport by 8.30
3 Let me know by Saturday whether you can come to the party.
4 Please make sure that you’re here by 2 o’clock.
5 If we leave now, we should arrive by lunchtime.
120.2
2 by
3 by
4 until
5 until (5.30) ... by (now)
6 by
7 until
8 by
9 by
10 until
11 By
12 by
120.3
Example answers:
3 until I come back
4 by 5 o’clock
5 by next Friday
6 until midnight
120.4
2 By the time I got to the station / By the time I’d got to the station
3 By the time I finished (my work) / By the time I’d finished (my work)
4 By the time the police arrived / By the time the police had arrived
5 By the time we got to the top (of the mountain) / By the time we’d got to the top (of the mountain)
UNIT 121
121.1
2 on
3 in
4 At or On
5 on or I last saw her Tuesday. (no preposition)
6 in
7 in
8 at
9 on or There are usually a lot of parties New Year’s Eve. (no preposition)
10 at
11 in
12 at
13 on
14 in
15 On Saturday night or Saturday night (no preposition) ... at midnight
16 at 5 o’clock in the morning
17 on / January ... in April
18 at home on Tuesday morning or at home Tuesday morning (no preposition) ... in the afternoon
121.2
2 at night
3 in the evening
4 on 21 July 1969
5 at the same time
6 in the 1920s
7 in about 20 minutes
8 at the moment
9 in the Middle Ages
10 in 11 seconds
11 on Saturdays or ... works Saturdays (no preposition)
Key to Exercises

121.3  
3 a  
4 both  
5 b  
6 b  
7 both  
8 a  
9 b  
10 a  

UNIT 122

122.1  
2 on time  
3 in time  
4 on time  
5 in time  
6 on time  
7 in time  
8 in time  
9 on time  

122.2  
2 I got home just in time.  
3 I stopped him just in time.  
4 We got to the cinema just in time for the beginning of the film. / ... just in time to see the beginning of the film.  

122.3  
2 at the end of the month  
3 at the end of the course  
4 at the end of the race  
5 at the end of the interview  

122.4  
2 In the end she resigned (from her job).  
3 In the end I gave up (trying to learn German).  
4 In the end we decided not to go (to the party).  
5 In the end we didn’t go (to the party).  

122.5  
2 in 6 at  
3 at ... at 7 in  
4 in 8 at  
5 in 9 in  

UNIT 123

123.1  
2 On his arm.  
3 At the traffic lights.  
4 a On the door.  
5 On the wall.  
6 In Paris.  
7 a At the gate.  
8 On the beach.  

123.2  
2 on my guitar  
3 at the next petrol station  
4 in your coffee  
5 on that tree  
6 in the mountains  
7 on the island  
8 at the window  

123.3  
2 on  
3 at  
4 on  
5 in  
6 on  
7 at  
8 in  
9 on  
10 in  
11 on the wall in the kitchen  

UNIT 124

124.1  
2 On the second floor.  
3 At/On the corner.  
4 In the corner.  
5 At the top of the stairs.  
6 In the back of the car.  
7 At the front.  
8 On the left.  
9 In the back row.  
10 On a farm.  

124.2  
2 on the right  
3 in the world  
4 on the way to work  
5 on the west coast  
6 in the front row  
7 at the back of the class  
6 on the back of this card  

124.3  
2 in 6 at  
3 in 9 in  
4 in 10 on  
5 at 11 in  
6 in 12 on  
7 at 13 in  
8 in 14 on ... on  

UNIT 125

125.1  
2 on a train  
3 at a conference  
4 in hospital / in the hospital  
5 at the hairdresser’s  
6 on his bike  
7 in New York  
8 at the Savoy Theatre  

125.2  
2 in a taxi  
3 at the cinema  
4 in prison  
5 at school  
6 at the sports centre  
7 in hospital  
8 at the airport  
9 on the plane  
10 in Tokyo  

125.3  
2 at  
3 in  
4 at  
5 at/in a very comfortable hotel ... in Amsterdam  
6 in  
7 on  
8 at  
9 in  
10 at  
11 in  
12 at home or be home (no preposition) ... at work  
13 in  
14 in Birmingham ... at Birmingham University  

UNIT 126

126.1  
3 at  
4 to  
5 to  
6 into  
7 in  
8 to  
9 into  
10 to  
11 at  
12 to  
13 into  
14 to  
15 get home (no preposition) ... going to bed  
16 returned to France ... two years in Brazil  
17 born in Chicago ... moved to New York ... lives in New York  

126.2  
Example answers:  
2–4  
• I’ve been to Sweden once.  
• I’ve never been to the United States.  
• I’ve been to Paris a few times.  

126.3  
2 in  
3 – (no preposition)  
4 at  
5 to  
6 – (no preposition)
Key to Exercises

126.4
2 I got on
3 I got out of the car. /... my car.
4 I got off the train.
5 I got into the taxi, or I got in the taxi.
6 I got off the plane.

UNIT 127
127.1
2 in cold weather
3 in pencil
4 in love
5 in capital letters
6 in the shade
7 in my opinion

127.2
2 on strike
3 on a tour
4 on TV
5 on purpose
6 on a diet
7 on business
8 on holiday
9 on the phone
10 on the whole
11 on
12 in

UNIT 128
128.1
2 by mistake
3 by hand
4 by credit card
5 by canal

128.2
2 on
3 by
4 by car ... on my bike
5 in
6 on
7 by
8 on
9 by
10 in
11 for
12 at
13 to
14 with
15 of
16 at
17 in
18 on

UNIT 129
129.1
2 to the problem
3 with her brother
4 in the cost of living
5 to your question
6 for a new road
7 in or to working at home
8 in the number of people without jobs
9 for shoes like these any more
10 between your job and mine

UNIT 130
130.1
2 That was nice of him.
3 That was generous of her.
4 That wasn't very nice of them.
5 That's very kind of you.
6 That isn't very polite of him.
7 That's a bit childish of them.

130.2
2 kind to
3 angry with
4 excited about
5 impressed by / impressed with
6 bored with (bored by is also possible)
7 amazed at / amazed by
8 careless of

130.3
2 of
3 to
4 with
5 with (by or in are also possible)
6 to
7 at/by
8 with
9 about
10 about
11 for
12 about/by/at
13 to
14 of
15 by/with
16 about
17 at/by
18 about
19 with us for making
20 sorry for/about ... angry with

128.3
2 travelling by bus or travelling on the bus or travelling on buses
3 taken with a very good camera
4 this music is by Beethoven
5 pay cash or pay in cash
6 a mistake by one of our players

128.4
Example answers:
3–5
• Ulysses is a novel by James Joyce.
• Yesterday is a song by Paul McCartney.
• Guernica is a painting by Pablo Picasso.

128.5
2 by
3 with
4 by
5 by
6 by car ... in your car
7 by the bed with a lamp and a clock on it

128.6
2 The price has gone up by ten pence.
3 Helen won by two votes.
4 I missed her/Kate by five minutes.

UNIT 129
129.2
2 invitation to
3 contact with
4 key to (key for is also possible)
5 cause of
6 reply to
7 connection between
8 photographs of
9 reason for
10 damage to

129.3
2 to
3 in
4 of
5 in or to
6 for
7 to or towards
8 with
9 in
10 to
11 of
12 for a rise in pay
13 to
14 with
UNIT 131
131.1
2 similar to
3 afraid of
4 interested in
5 responsible for
6 proud of
7 different from / different to
     (different than is also possible)
8 capable of

131.2
2 of furniture
3 on sport
4 of time
5 at tennis
6 to a Russian / to a Russian man / to a Russian guy
7 of him / of Robert
8 from yours / to yours or from your problem / to your problem

131.3
2 for
3 of
4 of
5 in
6 of or about
7 of ... of
8 on
9 of
10 with
11 of
12 in
13 of
14 of
15 at
16 of
17 on
18 of

131.4
Example answers:
2 I'm hopeless at telling jokes.
3 I'm not very good at maths.
4 I'm pretty good at remembering names.
5 I'm good at sport.

UNIT 132
132.1
2 a
3 b
4 b
5 a
6 a
7 b
8 a
9 b
10 b
11 a
12 b

132.2
3 speak to
4 point (them) at
5 look at
6 listen to
7 throw (stones) at
8 throw (it) to
9 reply to

132.3
2 at
3 at
4 to
5 to
6 at
7 at
8 to
9 at
10 at
11 to

UNIT 133
133.1
2 for
3 of
4 to
5 for
6 about
7 – (no preposition)
8 about
9 – (no preposition)
10 for
11 of
12 about
13 for
14 for

133.2
2 of
3 about
4 for
5 of
6 for
7 about
8 – (no preposition)

133.3
2 looking for
3 looked after
4 looking for
5 look for
6 looks after

133.4
2 wait for
3 talk about
4 asked (the waiter) for
5 applied for
6 do (something) about
7 looks after or has looked after
8 left (Boston) for

UNIT 134
134.1
2 hear about
3 heard from
4 heard of
5 hear from
6 hear about
7 heard of

134.2
2 think about
3 think of
4 think of
5 thinking of/about
6 think of
7 thought about
8 think (much) of
9 thinking about/of
10 think of

134.3
2 about
3 to us about
4 of
5 of
6 about ... about ... about ...
   about
7 of
8 about
9 about/of

134.4
2 complaining about
3 think about
4 think of
5 thinking of/about
6 think of
7 thought about
8 think (much) of
9 thinking about/of

UNIT 135
135.1
2 for
3 of
4 of
5 – (no preposition)
6 for
7 of
8 for
9 of
10 for
11 on

135.2
2 for the misunderstanding
3 her/jane on winning the tournament
4 him from his enemies
5 of eleven players
6 on bread and eggs
7 me for your problems / your problems on me
Key to Exercises

UNIT 135

135.3
2 paid for
3 accused of
4 depends on
5 live on
6 apologise to
7 suffers from
8 congratulated (him) on

135.4
2 from
3 on
4 – (no preposition)
5 from
6 depends how (no preposition) or
    depends on how
7 on
8 of
9 on

UNIT 136

136.1
2 happened to
3 invited to
4 divided into
5 believe in
6 fill (it) with
7 drove into
8 Concentrate on
9 succeeded in

136.2
2 I prefer small towns to big cities
3 Jane provided me with all the
    information I needed
4 This morning I spent £70 on a pair of
    shoes
5 The city is divided into ten districts

136.3
2 to
3 on
4 in
5 to
6 in
7 with
8 into
9 in
10 on
11 – (no preposition)
12 into
13 on
14 into
15 with
16 from (one language) into another

136.4
Example answers:
2 on petrol
3 into a wall
4 to volleyball
5 in seafood
6 into many languages

UNIT 137

137.1
2 sit down
3 flew away
4 got out
5 speak up
6 get by
7 gone up
8 looked round

137.2
2 back at
3 up to
4 forward to
5 away with
6 up at
7 in through

137.3
2 wake me up
3 get it out
4 give them back
5 switch it on
6 take them off

137.4
3 I have to take them back
4 We can turn the television off
   or We can turn off the television
5 I knocked it over
6 I don't want to wake her up
7 (example answer) You should put
   your coat on or You should put on your coat
8 I was able to put it out
9 (example answer) they've put the
   price(s) up or they've put up the price(s)
10 Shall I turn the light(s) on? or
   Shall I turn on the light(s)?

UNIT 138

138.1
2 eats
3 moved
4 drop
5 checked
6 cut
7 plug
8 filling / to fill
9 left
10 dive
11 rub / cross
12 dropped

138.2
2 into
3 in
4 out
5 into
6 out of

138.3
2 dropped out
3 moved in
4 left out
5 joined in
6 eating out or to eat out
7 taken in
8 dropped in
9 get out of

138.4
2 Fill them in or Fill them out
3 cross it out
4 took me in
5 let us in

UNIT 139

139.1
2 a mistake
3 a candle
4 an order
5 a cigarette / a candle
6 a new product
7 a mess

139.2
2 works out
3 carried out
4 ran out
5 sort out / work out
6 find out
7 tried out
8 pointed out
9 work out
10 went out
11 turned out
12 works out / turns out
13 find out
14 put out

139.3
2 giving out / handing out
3 turned out nice / fine / sunny
4 working out
5 fallen out
6 work out how to use the camera / her new camera

139.4
2 try it out
3 work it out
4 sorted it out / worked it out

UNIT 140

140.1
2 put the heating on
3 put the oven on
4 put the kettle on
5 put a CD on
Key to Exercises

UNIT 140
140.2
2 going on
3 take off
4 switched off / turned off
5 drove off / went off
6 put on
7 set off / be off
8 put off
9 called off
10 put on
11 see (me) off

140.3
2 took off
3 tried on a / the hat or tried a/the hat on
4 was called off
5 see him off
6 put them on

UNIT 141
141.1
2 went on / carried on
3 walked on / carried on or carried on walking
4 dozed off / dropped off / nodded off
5 go on / carry on / keep on
6 went off
7 keeps on phoning me

141.2
2 went off
3 finish off
4 drive on / carry on
5 ripped off
6 getting on
7 dozed off / dropped off / nodded off
8 told off
9 get on
10 going off
11 keep on
12 get on
13 showing off
14 put off

141.3
2 finish it off
3 were ripped off
4 go off
5 did you get on
6 carried on (playing) / went on (playing)
7 tell them off
8 doesn't get on (well) with

UNIT 142
142.1
2 took them down
3 stand up
4 turned it up
5 put their bags down
6 were blown down / fell down
7 put them up
8 bent down (and) picked them up
142.2
2 turn it down
3 calm him down
4 wrote it down
5 let her down
6 turned it down
142.3
2 calm down
3 slowed down
4 was turned down
5 broken down
6 cut down
7 let down
8 (has) closed down
9 be knocked down (or be pulled down or be torn down)
10 turned down
11 was knocked down
12 broke down

UNIT 143
143.1
2 went up to / walked up to
3 catch up with
4 keep up with

143.2
2 used up
3 washed up
4 grow up
5 turn up / show up
6 gave up
7 taking up
8 give up
9 ended up
10 takes up
11 make up

143.3
2 tidy it up / tidy up
3 fixed it up
4 keep up with
5 was brought up
6 keep it up
7 went up to
8 was made up of
10 set it up / fix it up

UNIT 144
144.1
2 d
3 e
4 c
5 g
6 a
7 b

144.2
2 held up
3 did it up
4 cheer him up

144.3
2 blew up
3 beaten up
4 broken up / split up
5 do up
6 clears up / will clear up
7 mixed up

144.4
2 look it up
3 put up with
4 made it up
5 come up with
6 tear it up
7 saving up for

UNIT 145
145.1
2 blew away
3 put it back
4 walked away
5 threw it back (to her)
6 threw them away

145.2
2 be away / have gone away
3 be back
4 ran away
5 smile back
6 get away
7 Keep away / Keep back

145.3
2 Pay
3 throw
4 gets
5 be
6 look
7 gave
8 get

145.4
2 throw it away
3 take them back
4 pay you back / pay it back
5 gave them away
6 call back / call me back
1
I'm getting / I am getting
2 do you do
3 we arrived ... it was raining
4 phones ... she didn't phone
5 you were thinking ... I decided
6 are you looking
7 It doesn't rain
8 rang ... I was getting
9 we went... she was preparing ...
10 told ... he didn't believe ... He thought ... I was joking

did you go
3 is wearing
4 went
5 haven't heard
6 is being
7 wasn't reading
8 didn't have
9 It's beginning
10 got
11 wasn't
12 you've been
13 I've been doing
14 did she go
15 I've been playing
16 do you come
17 since I saw her
18 for 20 years

3
3 are you going
4 Do you watch
5 have you lived / have you been living / have you been
6 Did you have
7 Have you seen
8 was she wearing
9 Have you been waiting / Have you been here
10 does it take
11 Have you ridden / Have you ridden on / Have you been on
12 Have you (ever) been

4
2 've known each other / have known each other or 've been friends / have been friends
3 I've ever had / I've ever been on / I've had for ages etc.
4 He went / He went home / He went out / He left
5 I've worn it
6 I was playing
7 been swimming for
8 since I've been / since I (last) went
9 did you buy / did you get

5
1 got ... was already waiting ... had arrived
2 was lying ... wasn't watching ... 'd fallen / had fallen ... was snoring ... turned ... woke
3 'd just gone / had just gone ... was reading ... heard ... got ... didn't see ... went
4 missed ... was standing ... realised ... 'd left / had left had had got
5 met ... was walking ... 'd been / had been ... 'd been playing / had been playing ... were going ... invited ... 'd arranged / had arranged ... didn't have

6
2 Somebody has taken it.
3 They'd only known / They had only known each other (for) a few weeks.
4 It's been raining / It has been raining all day. or It's rained / It has rained all day.
5 I'd been dreaming / I had been dreaming.
6 I'd had / I had had a big breakfast.
7 They've been going / They have been going there for years.
8 I've had it / I have had it since I got up.
9 He's been training / He has been training very hard for it.

7
1 I haven't seen
2 You look / You're looking
3 are you going
4 are you meeting
5 I'm going
6 Do you often go
7 are you going
8 I'm meeting
9 has been
10 I've been waiting
11 has just started / just started
12 is she getting
13 Does she like
14 she thinks
15 Are you working
16 spoke
17 you were working
18 went
19 I started / I'd started
20 I lost
21 you haven't had
22 I've had
23 have you seen
24 has he been
25 I saw

8
1 invented
2 it's gone / it has gone
3 had gone ... left
4 did you do ... Did you go
5 have you had
6 was looking or 'd been looking / had been looking
7 She's been teaching / She has been teaching
8 I bought ... I haven't worn or I didn't wear
9 I saw ... was ... I'd seen / I had seen ... I remembered ... it was
t10 Have you heard ... She was ... died ... She wrote ... Have you read
t11 does this word mean ... I've never seen
t12 Did you get ... it had already started
13 knocked ... was ... she'd gone / she had gone ... she didn't want
14 He'd never used / He had never used ... he didn't know
15 went ... She needed or She'd needed / She had needed ... she'd been sitting / she had been sitting

9
3 used to drive
4 was driving
5 were working
6 used to have
7 was living
8 was playing
9 used to play
10 was wearing

10
2 I'm going to the dentist.
3 No, we're going to hire a car.
4 I'll look after the children.
5 I'm having lunch with Sue.
6 What are you going to have? / What are you having?
7 I'll turn on the light.
8 I'm going to turn on the light.
### Key to Additional exercises

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>11</th>
<th>12</th>
<th>13</th>
<th>14</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 I'll come</td>
<td>2 I'll come</td>
<td>3 I'll have</td>
<td>4 I've had / I have had</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 shall we meet</td>
<td>3 I bought or I got</td>
<td>5 I'll come / I will come or I'll be / I will be</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 starts</td>
<td>6 I'll have been / I've been / I have been / I have had</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 I'll meet</td>
<td>7 I've been visiting / I've been here</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 I'm seeing</td>
<td>8 I'm going / I am going</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 Shall I I ask</td>
<td>9 I haven't been seen or I haven't heard from</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 I'll see</td>
<td>10 I won't be waiting</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 are going</td>
<td>11 I'll have gone / I will have gone or I'll have left / I will have left</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 does the film start</td>
<td>12 I'll be</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 Are you meeting</td>
<td>13 I'll be</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 I'll be</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Example answers:
1. I wasn't feeling so tired
2. I hadn't had so much to do
3. I would have forgotten Jane's birthday
4. I'd take a picture of you
5. I'll take a picture of you
6. You were in trouble
7. You hadn't taken so long to get ready
8. I would have gone to the concert
9. I might have got the job
10. You'd eaten lunch
11. There was less traffic
12. People would go out more


Key to Additional exercises

22
1 10 being arrested / having been
11 10 should have Left
12 is being built... is expected
13 are reported ... have been injured
11 Have you ever been arrested
12 is delayed
7 I'd be sacked / 1 would be sacked
4 has been repaired
3 was cancelled
2 was allowed
1 was taken
Accident
7 is still being questioned
7 I'd be sacked / 1 would be sacked
4 has been repaired
3 was cancelled
2 was later found
1 was taken
Road delays
1 is being resurfaced
2 are asked / are being asked / have been asked
3 is expected
4 will be closed / is going to be closed
5 will be diverted / is going to be diverted
Accident
1 was taken
2 was allowed
3 was blocked
4 be diverted
5 have been killed
25
1 I told her (that) Paul had gone out
2 I had reserved a hotel room, but
21 then I got to the hotel they told
22 me (that) they had no record of a
23 reservation in my name.
24 When I asked (them) if/whether
25 they had any rooms free anyway,
26 they said (that) they were sorry,
27 but the hotel was full.
3 The immigration official asked us
4 why we were visiting the country,
5 and we told him (that) we were on
6 holiday.
7 Then he wanted to know how long
8 we intended to stay and where we
9 would be staying during our visit.
10 She said (that) she'd phone (us)
11 from the airport when she arrived.
12 or She said (that) she'll phone (us)
13 from the airport when she arrives.
14 No, she said not to come to the
15 airport.
16 She said (that) she'd take the bus.
17 or She said (that) she'll take the
18 bus.
19 He wanted to know what my job
20 was and asked (me) how much I
21 earned.
22 or He wanted to know what my job is
23 and asked (me) how much I earn.
24 so I told him to mind his own
25 business and I put the phone down.
26 He said (that) he'd be at the
27 restaurant at 7.30.
28 He said (that) he knew where the
29 restaurant was.
30 And I told him to phone me if there was any
31 problem.
32 You just said (that) you weren't
33 hungry.
34 But you said (that) you didn't like
35 bananas. You told me not to buy
36 any.

27
3 I don't fancy going out.
4 He tends to forget things.
5 Would you mind helping me? / Do you mind helping me?
6 Everybody seems to have gone out.
7 We're / We are thinking of moving.
8 I was afraid to touch it.
9 He's / He is afraid of being robbed.
10 It's / It is not worth seeing
11 I'm not used to walking so far.
12 She seems to be enjoying herself.
13 He insisted on showing them to me.
14 I'd rather somebody else did it.

28
3 I've given up reading newspapers.
4 I'd rather not go out tonight / ... stay at home tonight.
5 He has trouble sleeping at night.
6 Do you want me to phone you this evening?
7 I came in without anybody/anyone seeing me / ... without being seen.
8 I was accused of being a cheat / ... of cheating.
9 I'm looking forward to seeing them again.
10 What do you advise me to do?
11 I'd like to have gone out with you last night.
12 I regret not taking your advice / ... that I didn't take your advice.

29
2 a foreign country ... the language
3 an economist ... in the United States ... for an investment company
4 I love sport, especially tennis ... two or three times a week ... not a very good player
5 for dinner ... after work ... to the cinema
6 When unemployment is ... for people to find work ... a big problem
7 an accident ... going home / taken to hospital / taken to the hospital ... I think most accidents ... by people driving
8 the name of the hotel ... The Ambassador ... in Queen Street in the city centre ... near the station
9 The older one ... a pilot with British Airways ... The younger one ... at school ... he leaves school ... go to university ... study law
30
2 B
3 C
4 A or B
5 C
6 B
7 A or C
8 A
9 C
10 B or C
11 B
12 A
13 A or B
14 B

31
3 It's the most polluted place ...
4 I was disappointed that ...
5 OK
6 Joe works hard, but ...
7 ... in a large modern building.
8 OK (as fast as he can is also correct)
9 I missed the last three days ...
10 OK
11 The weather has been unusually cold ...
12 The water in the pool was too dirty to swim in.
13 ... to wait such a long time. or ...
14 OK
15 ... I got up earlier than usual.

32
2 If 11 in case
3 when 12 in case
4 if 13 if
5 when 14 even if
6 if 15 Although
7 if 16 Although
8 unless 17 When
9 if 18 when
10 as long as

33
2 on
3 at 9.30 on Tuesday morning
4 at / on
5 on
6 at
7 In
8 at
9 during
10 on Friday ... since then
11 for
12 at
13 at the moment ... until Friday
14 by
15 in

34
1 in
2 by
3 at
4 on
5 in
6 on
7 to a party at Lisa's house
8 on
9 on
10 to ... to
11 in Vienna ... at the age of 35
12 in this photo ... on the left
13 to the theatre ... in the front row
14 on the wall ... by the door / next to the door / beside the door
15 at
16 on
17 in a tower block ... on the fifteenth floor
18 on
19 by
20 on the bus ... by car
21 on ... on
22 in
23 in Chicago ... to Italy
24 to
25 on

35
1 for 7 of
2 at 8 to
3 to 9 of
4 to 10 at/by
5 in 11 of
6 with 12 about

36
1 of
2 after
3 - (no preposition)
4 about
5 to
6 - (no preposition)
7 into
8 of (about is also possible)
9 to
10 - (no preposition)
11 on
12 of
13 of
14 - (no preposition)
15 in
16 at (about is also possible)
17 on
18 If Alex asks you for money
19 I apologised to Sarah for keeping ...
20 I thanked her for everything

37
2 h 7 c
3 e 8 j
4 g 9 b
5 a 10 f
6 k 11 i
38
2 D B C
3 B 9 C
4 B 10 B
5 A 11 A
6 A 12 D
7 D
39
2 out to 8 out with
3 up with 9 up with
4 forward to 10 back on
5 up with 11 out about
6 out of 12 out with
7 on with

40
3 went off
4 turned up / showed up
5 fill it in / fill it out
6 knocked down / pulled down / torn down
7 sorted out
8 give up
9 dozed off / dropped off / nodded off
10 split up / break up
11 put up with it
12 get by / live on
13 went on
14 put it off

41
2 put
3 moving
4 put
5 done
6 turned / turns
7 find
8 Calm
9 set
10 held
11 left / 've left / have left or missed / 've missed / have missed
12 works
13 join
14 works
15 drop / call
16 sort / work
17 went off ... woke me up

371
### Key to Study Guide

#### Present and past

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>B, C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Present perfect and past

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2.1</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.4</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.6</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.7</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.8</td>
<td>D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.9</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.10</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.11</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.12</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.13</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.14</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.15</td>
<td>D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.16</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Future

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3.1</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4</td>
<td>A, C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.6</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.7</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Modals

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4.1</td>
<td>A, B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.2</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.3</td>
<td>A, C, D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.4</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.5</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.6</td>
<td>C, D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.7</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.8</td>
<td>A, C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.9</td>
<td>B, C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.10</td>
<td>A, B, D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.11</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.12</td>
<td>D, E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.13</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Articles and nouns

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10.1</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.2</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.3</td>
<td>B, C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.4</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.5</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.6</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.7</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.8</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.9</td>
<td>D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.10</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.11</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.12</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.13</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.14</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### If and wish

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5.1</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.2</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.4</td>
<td>D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.5</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Passive

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6.1</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.3</td>
<td>D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.4</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.5</td>
<td>A, B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Relative clauses

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12.1</td>
<td>A, C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.2</td>
<td>A, B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.3</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.4</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.5</td>
<td>D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.6</td>
<td>B, C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Reported speech

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7.1</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.2</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Questions and auxiliary verbs

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8.1</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.2</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.3</td>
<td>D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.4</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.5</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### -ing and to ...

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>9.1</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.2</td>
<td>B, D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.3</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.4</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.5</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.6</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.7</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.8</td>
<td>D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.9</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.10</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.11</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.12</td>
<td>C, D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.13</td>
<td>B, D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.14</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.15</td>
<td>A, B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.16</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.17</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.18</td>
<td>B, C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Adjectives and adverbs

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>13.1</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.2</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.3</td>
<td>B, C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.4</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.5</td>
<td>A, D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.6</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.7</td>
<td>B, C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.8</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.9</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.10</td>
<td>B, C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.11</td>
<td>D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.12</td>
<td>A, B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.13</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.14</td>
<td>D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.15</td>
<td>D</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Conjunctions and prepositions

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>14.1</td>
<td>A, D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.2</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.3</td>
<td>B, C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.4</td>
<td>B, D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.5</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.6</td>
<td>C, D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.7</td>
<td>B, C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.8</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Prepositions

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>15.1</td>
<td>B, D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.2</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.3</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.4</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.5</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.6</td>
<td>B, D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.7</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.8</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.9</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.10</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.11</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.12</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.13</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.14</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.15</td>
<td>D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.16</td>
<td>D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.17</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Phrasal verbs

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>16.1</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.2</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.3</td>
<td>D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.4</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.5</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.6</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.7</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.8</td>
<td>A, D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.9</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### American English

**Index**

The numbers in the index are unit numbers, not page numbers.

| a/an | 69–72 |
| a/an and the | 72, 73B |
| a little / a few | 87D |
| a/an with quite and pretty | 104B |
| such a/an | 102 |
| able (be able to) | 26 |
| about | 130, 131B |
| adjective + about | 130, 131B |
| verb + about | 133–134 |
| accuse (of) | 62B, 135A |
| active and passive | 42 |
| adjectives | 98–101 |
| adjectives + to | 65–66 |
| the + adjective | 76B |
| adjectives ending in -ing and -ed | 98 |
| order of adjectives | 99 |
| adjectives after verbs | 99C |
| adjectives and adverbs | 100–101 |
| comparatives | 105–107 |
| superlatives | 108 |
| adjectives + preposition | 130–131 |
| admit (+ -ing) | 53, 56A |
| advantage (of/in/to) | 60A, 129B |
| adverbs | 100–101 |
| adjectives and adverbs | 100–101 |
| comparatives | 105–107 |
| adjectives and preposition | 130–131 |
| advice (uncountable noun) | 70B |
| advise (+ to ... and -ing) | 55C |
| afford (+ to ...) | 54A, 56A |
| afraid (of) | 131A |
| I'm afraid so/not | 51D |
| afraid to do and afraid of doing | 66A |
| after | 25A–B |
| after + present simple / present perfect | 25A–B |
| after + -ing | 60B, 68C |
| a/an | 69–72 |
| a/an and the | 72, 73B |
| the | 72–78 |
| school / the school etc. | 74 |
| children / the children etc. | 75 |
| the with names | 77–78 |
| as | 107, 116–118 |
| as soon as | 25A–B |
| as ... (in comparative sentences) | 107 |
| as long as | 115B |
| as (= at the same time as) | 116A |
| as and when | 116 |
| as (= because) | 116B |
| as and like | 117 |
| as if / as though | 118 |
| ashamed (of) | 131A |
| ask | 48D, 55A |
| ask in passive sentences | 44A |
| ask (somebody) to do something | 48D, 55A |
| ask how/what + to ... | 54D |
| ask somebody (no preposition) | 132B |
| ask (somebody) for | 133B |
| astonished (at/by) | 130C |
| at | 121 |
| at (time) | 121 |
| at the end and in the end | 122B |
| at (position) | 123–5 |
| at the age of | 127D |
| adjectives + at | 130C, 131C |
| verbs + at | 132 |
| back | 145 |
| in/at/on the back | 124D |
| verb + back | 145 |
| bad (at) | 131C |
| baggage (uncountable noun) | 70B |
| because (of) | 113B–C |
| bed (in bed / to bed) | 74C, 124A, 126A |
| been to | 8A, 126A |
| been to and gone to | 7C |
| before | 25A |
| before + present simple | 25A |
| before + -ing | 60B |
| begin (+ -ing or to ...) | 56C |
| beginning (at the beginning) | 122B |
| being (he is and he is being) | 4E |
| believe (in) | 136A |
| believed (it is believed ...) | 45A |
| better | 105C |
| had better | 35A–B |
| between (noun + between) | 129E |
| blame | 135B |
| bored | 9B |
| bored and boring | 9B |
| bored with | 130C |
| born | 44C |
| both (of) | 89 |
| both ... and | 89C |
| both and all | 89D |
| position of both | 110D |
| bother (+ -ing or to ...) | 56C |
| bottom (at the bottom) | 124C |
| bound (bound to do) | 65E |
| bread (uncountable noun) | 70B |
| break | 136B |
| break into | 136B |
| break down | 137A, 142D |
| break up | 144D |
| busy (busy doing something) | 63D |
| by | 120, 128 |
| by after the passive | 42B, 128C |
| by (+ -ing) | 60B |
| by myself / yourself etc. | 83D |
| by (the time) | 120 |
| by and until | 120B |
| by chance / by post etc. | 128A |
| by car / by bus etc. | 128B |
| a play by Shakespeare etc. | 128C |
| adjective + by | 130C |
Index

374

I wish I could 41C
could/you ... ? 37
could and other modal verbs
 Appendix 4
country and uncountable nouns
69–70
crash (into) 136B
critical (of) 131A
crowded (with) 131C
damage (uncountable noun) 70B
damage to 129D
dare 54B
decide
decide + to ... 54, 56A
decide against + -ing 62A
delighted (with) 130B
demand
demand + should 34A–B
a demand for 129A
deny (+ -ing) 53, 56A
depend (on) 135D
dependent (on) 131C
depressed (and depressing) 98
deserve (+ to ...) 54A, 56A
despite 113
did (in past simple questions and negatives) 5C
die (of) 135A
difference (between) 129E
different (from/to) 131C
difficulty (have difficulty + -ing) 63C
direct speech and reported speech
47–48, 50B

disappointed
disappointed + to ... 65C
disappointed and disappointing 98
disappointed with 130B
discuss (no preposition) 133A
divide (into) 136B
do/does (in present simple questions and negatives) 2C
do up 144D
down (verb + down) 137, 142
dream
dream of + -ing 62A, 66D
dream about/of 134C
during 119
each (of) 91
each other 82C
-ed clauses 97
either (of) 89
not ... either 51C
either ... or 89C
either and any 89D
elder 106E
elest 108C
encourage (+ to ...) 55B
end
in the end and at the end 122B
at the end (position) 124C
end up 143E
enjoy (+ -ing) 53A, 54A, 56A, 58A

enough 103
evious (of) 131A
even 112
position of even 110
even if/when 112D
even though 112D, 113E
ever (with the present perfect) 8A
every 90
every and all 90
everybody/everyone/everything 90A–C
every and each 91
everyone and every one 91D
excited (about) 130B
exclamations (What ... !) 71A–B
excuse (for) 62B
expect
I expect so / I don’t expect so 51D
expect + to ... 55A
expected (it is expected that) 45A
experience (countable or uncountable noun) 70A
explain 54D, 132A
fail (+ to ...) 54A, 56A, 66D
fairly 104
famous (for) 131C
fancy (+ -ing) 53A, 56A
far
far/further/farther 105C
far + comparative 106A
fast 101B
fed up (with) 60A, 130C
feel
how do you feel and how are you feeling
4D
feel like 62A
feel + -ing 53
feel off 141C
first
it’s the first time I’ve ... 8D
the first/last/next + to ... 65D
the first two days 99D
fund (of) 131A
for
for with the present perfect 8B, 9B, 11–12
for and since 12A
for and to ... (purpose) 64C, 103C
for and during 119
noun + for 129A
adjective + for 130D, 131C
verb + for 133, 135B
forget (+ to ...) 54, 56A
give (for) 135B
frightened (of) 131A
from
adjective + from 131C
verb + from 135C
Index

questions 49–50
present simple questions 2C, 49B
past simple questions 5C, 49B
negative questions 49D
embedded questions (Do you know what ...?) 50A
reported questions 50B
question tags 52

quite 104

rather
would rather 59C
I'd rather you did something 59D
rather cold / rather nice etc. 104

reason (for) 129A
recommend 34A–B

reflexive pronouns (myself, yourself etc.) 82
by myself / yourself etc. 83D

refuse (+ to ...) 54A, 56A
regret (+ -ing and to ...) 53D, 56B
regular and irregular verbs
Appendix 1

relationship (with / between) 129E

relative clauses 92–96
relative clauses as object 93
prepositions in relative clauses 93C
two types of relative clause 95

relative pronouns 92–96
who 92–96
which 92–93, 95–96
that 92–94
that and what 92D
whose 94A, 95B
whom 94B, 95B, 96A–B
where 94C, 95B
of whom / of which 96B

relies (on) 135D

remember
remember + to ... -ing 56B
remember how / what + to ... 54D

remind
remind + to ... 55B
remind of/about 134E
reported speech 47–48
reported questions 50B

responsible for 131C
rise (in) 129C
risk (+ -ing) 53, 56A
room (countable or uncountable noun) 70A

's (apostrophe s) 81, Appendix 5.1
said (it is said that) 45A
same (the same as) 73A, 107C

satisfied
satisfied and satisfying 98
satisfied with 130B

say
say and tell 48C
say (+ to ...) 48D

scared (of) 131A

scenery (uncountable noun) 70B

school (school / the school) 74A

sea (sea / the sea) 74D

search (for) 133B

see
with the present simple or can 4C
see someone doing 67
see off 140D

seem
seem + to ... 54C
seem + adjective 99C

self (myself / yourself etc.) 82, 83D
series 79B

shall and will 22D
shall / we? 21D
Let's ... shall we? 52D
shall and other modal verbs
Appendix 4
American English Appendix 7

shocked
shocked and shocking 96
shocked at / by 130C

short (of) 131B

short forms ('m, you've, didn't etc.)
Appendix 5

should 33–34
should and had better 35B
should and other modal verbs
Appendix 4

shout (at / to) 132D

show
show in passive sentences 44A
show someone how / what + to ... 54D
show off 141C
show up 143E

similar (to) 131C

simple past see past simple

simple present see present simple

since
with present perfect 88, 98, 11–12
since and for 12A
how long is it since ... ? 12C
since (= because) 116B

singular and plural 69, 71, 79
they / them / their used for somebody / nobody etc. 85E, 86C, 90C

slightly (+ comparative) 106A

smell
with the present simple and can 4C
smell something (burning) 67D

smell + adjective 99C

so
so am I, so do / etc. 51C
I think so, I hope so etc. 51D
so that (purpose) 64D
so and such 102
so + adjective + that 102B
so long as 115B

solution (to) 129D

some
69C, 71, 85
some with countable nouns 71
some and any 85
somebody / someone / something / somewhere 85
some of 88

soon (as soon as) 25A–B

sorry
sorry + to ... 65C
sorry to do and sorry for / about doing 66C
sorry about / for 130D

feel sorry for 130D

sound
sound + adjective 99C
sound as if 118

space (space and a space) 73B

speak (to) 132A

species 79B

spelling Appendix 6

spend (spend money) 63D, 136E

spite (in spite of) 113

start (start + to ... or -ing) 56C

state verbs (like, know, belong etc.) 4A, 66, 10D, 16E, 17A

still 111
still and yet 111C

stop
stop + -ing 53, 56A
stop someone (from) + -ing 53C, 62B, 66D

stupid (stupid of someone to do something) 65B, 130A

subjunctive 34B
American English Appendix 7

succeed (in -ing) 62A, 66D, 136A

such
such and so 102
such as 117A

suffer (from) 135C

suggest
suggest + should 34A–C, 55B
suggest + -ing 53, 54A, 56A

superlative (longest / best etc.) 108

suppose (I suppose so / not) 51D

supposed (He is supposed to ...) 45B

sure
sure + to ... 65E, 84B
sure of/about 131B

surprised
surprised + to ... 65C
surprised and surprising 98
surprised at / by 130C

suspect (of) 62B, 135A

suspicious (of) 131A

tags (question tags) 52

take
take care of 133C
take somebody in 138B
take off 140

take down 142A
take up 143

talk
talk to somebody 132A
talk about something 62A, 133A

taste
with the present simple or can 4C
taste + adjective 99C

378
teach
  teach in passive sentences 44A
  teach somebody how to do something 54D
  teach + to ... 55B

telephone
  see phone

tell
  tell in passive sentences 44A
  tell and say 48C
  tell someone to do something 48D, 55B
  tell someone what to do 54D
  tell off 141C

temporal clauses (when clauses) 25
  tend (+ to ...) 54C
  than 105, 107
  thank (for) 62B, 132B, 135B
  that
  said that 47B
  in relative clauses 92–94
  the 72–78
  the and a/an 72, 73B
  the sea, the sky etc. 73B
  the cinema, the theatre etc. 73C
  school / the school 74
  children / the children 75
  the + adjective (the young etc.) 76B
  the + nationality words (the French etc.) 76C
  the with geographical names 77
  the with streets, buildings etc. 78
  the ... the ... (with comparatives) 106D
  the + superlative (the oldest etc.) 108B

there and it 84
  there’s no point in ... 63A
  there will/must/should etc. 84B
  there is + -ing or -ed 97D

they/them/their (used for somebody/ anybody/nobody/ everybody) 85E, 86C, 90C

think
  I think and I’m thinking 4B
  I think so, I don’t think so 51D
  think of + -ing 54A, 62A, 66D
  think about and think of 134B

though 113E
  as though 118
  even though 112D, 113E

threaten (+ to ...) 54A, 56A

throw
  throw to/at 132D
  throw away 137C, 145B

till see until
  it’s the first time I’ve ... 8D
  it’s time ... 35C
  countable or uncountable noun 70A
  on time and in time 122A

tired
  tired and tiring 98
  tired of 130C

to + infinitive (to be / to do etc.) see infinitive

to 126
  to + -ing 60C
  noun + to 129D
  adjective + to 130A, 131C
  verb + to 132, 136D
  too and enough 103
  top (at the top) 124C
  translate (from / into) 136B
  travel (uncountable noun) 70B
  trouble (have trouble doing something) 63C
  try
  try + to ... or -ing 57A
  try out 139C
  try on 140C
  turn
  turn out 139
  turn on/off 137C, 140A
  turn up 142A, 143E
  turn down 142

two-word verbs see phrasal verbs

typical of 131B

uncountable nouns 69–70
  understand (how / what + to ...) 54D
  university (university / the university) 74B
  unless 115A
  until (or till)
  until + present simple / present perfect 25A–B
  until and by 120B
  up (verb + up) 137, 142–144
  upset (about) 130B
  use (it’s no use + -ing) 63A
  used
  used to do 18
  be/get used to 61
  I am used to doing and I used to do 18F, 61D
  usually (position of usually) 110

verbs see also present, past, future, passive etc.
  verbs not used in continuous tenses 4A, 6E, 10D, 16E, 17A
  list of irregular verbs Appendix 1.4
  present and past tenses Appendix 2
  verbs + -ing and verbs + to ...
    (infinitive) 53–59
  verbs + preposition 62, 132–136
  phrasal verbs (break down / get on etc.) 137–145

wait (for) 133B
  want (+ to ...) 55A, 66D

warn
  warn someone (not) to do something 55B
  warn someone of/about something 134F
  was/were 5D
  was/were -ing (past continuous) 6
  was/were going to 20D
  was/were able to 26D
  was and were in if sentences 39C
  waste (waste time + -ing) 63D
  weather (uncountable noun) 70B
  well 101A
  were (used with / he / she / it) 39C, 118D

what
  what in questions 49
  what ... for? 64C
  what ...? (exclamations) 71A–B
  what and that (relative clauses) 92D, 93D
  what and which (relative clauses) 96C

when
  when + present simple / present perfect 25
  when and if 25D
  when + -ing 68B
  even when 112D
  when and as 116

where (in relative clauses) 94C, 95C

whether 50

which
  which in questions 49
  which in relative clauses 92–93, 95–96
  all / none / some of which 96B

while
  while + present simple / present perfect 25A
  while + -ing 68B
  while and during 119B

who
  who in questions 49
  who in relative clauses 92–96
  who and whose in relative clauses 94A
  who and whom in relative clauses 94B

whole 90D–E
  on the whole 127B

whom
  in questions 49C
  in relative clauses 94B, 96A–B
  all / none / some of whom 96B

whose (in relative clauses) 94A, 95C

why
  why isn’t / didn’t (etc.) ... 49D
  why in relative clauses 94E

will 21–22
  will you? 21C–D, 37A
  will and shall 21D, 22D
  will and going to 23
  will be doing (future continuous) 24
  will have done (future perfect) 24
  will in if and when sentences 25, 115C
  will and would 36B, Appendix 4
  will in the passive 43A
  Don’t ... will you? 52D
  will and other future forms Appendix 3
  will and other modal verbs Appendix 4
Index

wish 41
  I wish I knew etc. 39, 41
  I wish I'd known etc. 40C, 41
wish and hope 41A
wish ... would 41D

with
  noun + with 129E
  adjective + with 130B–C, 131C
  verb + with 136C

without (+ -ing) 608
won't (= will not) 21–22

word order
  have something done 46
  questions 49
  negative questions 49D
  embedded questions (Do you know
    what ... ?) 50A
  reported questions 50B
  order of adjectives 99
  verb and object together 109A
  place and time 109B
  position of adverbs with the verb (also,
    always etc.) 110
  word order with phrasal verbs (turn on
    the light, turn it on etc.) 137C

work
  uncountable noun 70B, 74C
  work out 139B
worried (about) 130B
worse 105C
worst 108A
worth (it's worth + -ing) 63B

would 36
  would and will 36B
  would you ... ? 37A
  would you like? I'd like 37E
  would in if sentences 38–40
  wish ... would 41D
  would like/love/hate/prefer + to ... 55A,
    58B–C
  would prefer 58B, 59B
  would rather 59C–D
  would and other modal verbs
    Appendix 4

write
  write to 132B
  write down 142D

yet
  yet and still 111C
  yet + present perfect 7D
active and passive

Many verbs can be active or passive. For example, build:

My grandfather built this house.  (active)
This house was built by my grandfather.  (passive)

The active sentence begins with My grandfather (the subject). This sentence tells us something about my grandfather and what he did (he built this house).

The passive sentence begins with This house (the subject). This sentence tells us something about the house (it was built by my grandfather).

Passive forms are be + past participle. Compare:

active       passive
I can't repair it.  It can't be repaired.
Somebody stole my wallet.  My wallet was stolen.
Have they cleaned the room?  Has the room been cleaned?

See Units 42–44.

adjective

An adjective is a word that tells us about somebody or something. Nice, tall, hungry, foreign and interesting are all adjectives.

Adjectives go before a noun:

a nice day  foreign languages
or after some verbs (be, get, seem, look, taste etc.)

she's tall  this looks interesting


adverb

Adverbs often end in -ly, for example:

slowly really fortunately
These -ly adverbs often tell us how somebody does something:

quietly carefully safely
Other adverbs do not end in -ly. Many of these adverbs tell us where, when or how often something happens. Here, yesterday and always are all adverbs.

Some adverbs (for example very, really and absolutely) are used with adjectives:

very sorry  really nice  absolutely enormous

See Units 100, 101 and 110.
apostrophe
We use an apostrophe (') instead of the missing letter(s) in a short form:
   I'm (= I am)   you've (= you have)   didn't (= did not)
We also use an apostrophe + s ('-s) to show possession:
   Rachel's car   my sister's friends   the cat's tail
See Unit 81 and Appendix 5.

article
A/an and the are articles. Articles are a type of determiner.
See Units 71–78.

auxiliary verb
We use auxiliary verbs together with other verbs:
   we are going   the plane has landed   I can't help   do you know
In these examples, going, landed, help and know are the main verbs. Are, has, can and do are auxiliary verbs.
See Units 51–52.

clause
A clause is a whole sentence or a part of a sentence. There is always a verb in a clause. Examples of clauses:
   I'm tired. (one clause, one sentence)
   I'm tired and I want to go home. (two clauses, one sentence)
   I was tired when I got home. (two clauses, one sentence)
   Although I was tired, I went out, which wasn't a good idea. (three clauses, one sentence)
Some clauses begin with a participle (talking/standing/injured/stolen etc.):
   Who were those people standing outside your office?
See Units 68 and 92–97.

comparative and superlative
Adjectives and adverbs have comparative and superlative forms.
The comparative form is -er or more ... :
   old → older   important → more important
The superlative form is -est or most ... :
   old → oldest   important → most important
See Units 105–108.

conjunction
A conjunction is a word that joins clauses. For example, in the following sentences but and if are conjunctions:
   We were hungry, but there was nothing to eat.
   If she gets the job, she'll be really happy.
Other conjunctions are and, so, or, when, because, although and that.
See Units 25, 38–40 and 113–120.
contraction  see short form

continuous
Continuous verb forms are be + -ing.  For example:

am working  present continuous
was working   past continuous
have been working present perfect continuous
had been working past perfect continuous
will be working continuous infinitive (= future continuous)
might be working continuous infinitive
might have been working perfect continuous infinitive
pretended to be working to + continuous infinitive

See Units 1, 3–4, 6, 9–12, 16, 19, 24 and 54.

countable and uncountable  see noun
determiner
These words are determiners:
a, an, the   (articles)
my, your, his, her, its, our, their   (possessives)

We use a determiner with a noun:
the airport  your new car  my best friend

The following words are determiners too (used with a noun), but they can also be pronouns (used without a noun):
this, that, these, those
some, any, no, all
many, much, few, little
both, either, neither, each

For example:
I like this jacket.  (determiner)
I like this.  (pronoun)

See Units 71–78 and 85–91.
direct speech and reported speech
When we use direct speech, we use the words of the speaker.  For example:
Paul went home early.  He said ‘I'm not feeling good.’

When we use reported (or indirect) speech, we change I'm not to he wasn’t:
Paul went home early.  He said he wasn't feeling good.

See Units 47–48.

future
To talk about the future, we use present tenses (I leave, I’m leaving etc.), will or (be) going to.

See Units 19–25 and Appendix 3.
infinitive
The infinitive form of a verb is the form without any extra ending (the form you will find when you look in a dictionary). Sometimes this is called 'the base form'. So understand, dance and stay are infinitive forms:

He doesn't understand.
Let's dance.
We can't stay here.

The infinitive is often used with to:

It's hard to understand.
I'm not going to dance.
We don't want to stay here.

irregular verb see regular and irregular verbs

modal verb
The following are modal verbs:

can could will would shall should may might must ought

These verbs are followed by the infinitive (can see, should go, must work etc.).

See Units 21–41.

negative
The negative form is verb + not: I'm not, he did not (didn't), they cannot (can't) etc.

noun
A noun is a word for somebody or something. In the sentence

My friend plays tennis most weekends.

friend, tennis and weekends are nouns.

A noun can be countable (friend/banana/weekend) or uncountable (tennis/water/electricity).

A countable noun can be singular (friend/banana/weekend) or plural (friends/bananas/weekends).

See Units 69–71.

object see subject and object

participle see present participle and past participle

passive see active and passive

past see tense
past participle

The past participle of regular verbs ends in -ed (cleaned, danced, played etc.).
Irregular verbs have different endings, for example lost, broken, done.

We use the past participle for perfect forms (have cleaned, had done etc.) and passive forms (is cleaned, was broken etc.).

See also Units 7, 42, 97 and Appendix 1

perfect

Perfect verb forms are have + past participle. For example:

- She has gone
- She had gone
- She must have gone
- She will have gone
- She would like to have gone

Perfect forms can also be continuous: I have been waiting / I had been waiting / I must have been waiting etc.

See Units 7–16, 24, 27–29, 33, 36, 40, 43, 45, 53–54 and 58.

phrasal verb

A phrasal verb is a verb + in/out/on/off/up/down/away/back etc. These words are sometimes called particles (a type of adverb). For example:

- Get on
- Take off
- Come back
- Break down
- Keep up

Sometimes phrasal verbs are used for movement and direction:

Go away and don’t come back!
I took my shoes off.

But often they have a special meaning. For example:

- My brother and I don’t get on very well. (= we don’t have a good relationship)
- There are a few problems I need to sort out. (= I need to solve)

Sometimes there is a preposition after a phrasal verb:

I don’t get on with my brother.

Here, get on is a phrasal verb and with is a preposition.

See Units 137–145.

plural see singular and plural

preposition

Some examples of prepositions:

- at, in, on, to, of, for, with, by, from, during

Prepositions are usually followed by a noun or pronoun:

- I don’t like going out at night.
- They live in a small village.
- What’s the name of this street?
- This is for you.

Sometimes (for example, in questions), there is a preposition at the end of a sentence:

- What are you looking for?

See Units 121–136.
present see tense

present participle
The present participle ends in -ing (going, dancing, thinking etc.).
We use the present participle for continuous forms of the verb (I'm going, they were dancing etc.).
We also use participles in sentences like:
  joe hurt his knee playing football.
See Units 68 and 97.

pronoun
These words are pronouns:
  I/me, you, he/him, she/her, we/us, they/them, it  (personal pronouns)
  mine/yours/his/hers/ours/their  (possessive pronouns)
  myself/yourself/theirselves etc.  (reflexive pronouns)
Other pronouns include:
  someone/nobody/everything etc.
  this/that/these/those
See Units 82–91. See also relative pronouns and determiners.

question tag
A question tag is a ‘mini-question’ that we sometimes put on the end of a sentence:
  You haven't seen Kate, have you?
  There was a lot of traffic, wasn't there?
See also Unit 52.

regular and irregular verbs
The past simple and past participle of regular verbs are the same and end in -ed. For example:
  I worked   (past simple)
  I have worked  (past participle used with have)
  Tom painted the room.  (past simple)
  The room will be painted.  (past participle used in the passive)
The past simple and past participle of irregular verbs are sometimes the same and sometimes different.
But they do not end in -ed. For example:
  I lost   (past simple)
  I have lost  (past participle with have)
  Somebody stole my phone.  (past simple)
  My phone was stolen.  (past participle used in the passive)
See Appendix 1.
relative clause
A relative clause gives information about something or somebody. Relative clauses often begin with relative pronouns (who, whom, whose, which, that):

- An architect is a person who designs buildings.
- Grace works for a company that makes furniture.

See Units 92–96.

relative pronoun    see relative clause

sentence
A sentence has one or more clauses.
- My phone rang. (one clause)
- My phone rang, so I answered it. (two clauses)
- If my phone rings, can you answer it for me, please? (two clauses)

A sentence begins with a capital letter (A, B, C etc.) and ends with a full stop (.).

short form (or contraction)
In spoken English, we usually say I’m / you’ve / didn’t etc. These are short forms or contractions. The full forms are I am / you have / did not.

When we write short forms, we use an apostrophe (’) for the missing letters.

See Appendix 5.

singular and plural
A singular form is used for one person or thing. For example: flower, school, child.

A plural form is used for more than one person or thing. For example: flowers, schools, children.

Verbs sometimes have different forms for singular and plural. For example:
- Where does she live? (singular)
- Where do they live? (plural)

See Units 71 and 79.

subject and object
In the following sentences, Tom is the subject:
- Tom is eating an apple.
- Tom saw Helen.
- Tom plays football.

After the subject, there is a verb (is eating, saw, plays) and an object (an apple, Helen, football). The object is what he’s eating, who he saw, what he plays.

The subject normally goes before the verb (Tom is eating), and the object goes after the verb (eating an apple). In questions, the verb usually goes before the subject – see Unit 49A.

Some verbs (for example give, show, buy) can have two objects. For example:
- Helen bought her mother a present.

Her mother is the indirect object (= the receiver) and a present is the direct object (what Helen bought).

See Units 42, 44A, 46B, 49, 55, 93, 94B, 95B and 137C.
subjunctive
The subjunctive has the same form as the infinitive: do, be, eat, play etc. You can use the subjunctive after insist, recommend, suggest etc. You can also use should:

I insisted that he apologise.
I insisted that he should apologise.

See Unit 34.

superlative
see comparative

syllable
A syllable is a part of a word. For example, the word remember has three syllables: re-mem-ber.

tense
A tense is a verb form that shows time. English verbs have two main tenses, present and past.

Present and past tenses can be simple or continuous. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>present</th>
<th>past</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I walk</td>
<td>I walked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I am walking</td>
<td>I was walking</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

All of these can also be perfect (with have):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>present perfect simple</th>
<th>past perfect simple</th>
<th>past perfect continuous</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I have walked</td>
<td>I had walked</td>
<td>I had been walking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I have been walking</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Units 1–18 and Appendix 2.

uncountable
see noun

verb
A verb is a word for an action (go, eat, work), a happening (rain, find, die) or a state (be, know, want).

In the sentence

Tom is hungry and wants something to eat.

is, wants and eat are all verbs.

Verbs have four or five different forms. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>infinitive (or base form)</th>
<th>+ s</th>
<th>+ ing (present participle)</th>
<th>past simple</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>work</td>
<td>works</td>
<td>working</td>
<td>worked</td>
<td>worked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buy</td>
<td>buys</td>
<td>buying</td>
<td>bought</td>
<td>bought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eat</td>
<td>eats</td>
<td>eating</td>
<td>ate</td>
<td>eaten</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

word order
Word order is the way words go together in a sentence. For example, we say:

a modern building (not a building modern)
I don’t know where she is. (not I don’t know where is she)
She always walks to work. (not She walks always)

See Units 49–50, 99, 109–110 and 137.